

IBM Spectrum Scale  
Version 5.0.3

*Concepts, Planning, and Installation  
Guide*





IBM Spectrum Scale  
Version 5.0.3

*Concepts, Planning, and Installation  
Guide*



**Note**

Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in “Notices” on page 477.

This edition applies to version 5 release 0 modification 3 of the following products, and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions:

- IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition ordered through Passport Advantage® (product number 5737-F34)
- IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition ordered through Passport Advantage (product number 5737-I39)
- IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition ordered through Passport Advantage (product number 5737-J34)
- IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition ordered through AAS (product numbers 5641-DM1, DM3, DM5)
- IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition ordered through AAS (product numbers 5641-DA1, DA3, DA5)
- IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition for IBM ESS (product number 5765-DME)
- IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition for IBM ESS (product number 5765-DAE)

Significant changes or additions to the text and illustrations are indicated by a vertical line (|) to the left of the change.

IBM welcomes your comments; see the topic “How to send your comments” on page xxv. When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

© Copyright IBM Corporation 2015, 2019.

US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

# Contents

<b>Figures</b>	<b>vii</b>
----------------	------------

<b>Tables</b>	<b>ix</b>
---------------	-----------

<b>About this information</b>	<b>xi</b>
-------------------------------	-----------

Prerequisite and related information	xxiv
Conventions used in this information	xxiv
How to send your comments	xxv

<b>Summary of changes</b>	<b>xxvii</b>
---------------------------	--------------

## Chapter 1. Introducing IBM Spectrum

<b>Scale</b>	<b>1</b>
--------------	----------

Overview of IBM Spectrum Scale	1
The strengths of IBM Spectrum Scale	1
The basic IBM Spectrum Scale structure	5
IBM Spectrum Scale cluster configurations	7
GPFS architecture.	9
Special management functions	9
Use of disk storage and file structure within a	
GPFS file system	12
GPFS and memory	15
GPFS and network communication	17
Application and user interaction with GPFS	19
NSD disk discovery	25
Failure recovery processing	25
Cluster configuration data files	26
GPFS backup data	27
Clustered configuration repository.	27
Protocols support overview: Integration of protocol	
access methods with GPFS	28
NFS support overview.	30
SMB support overview	32
Object storage support overview	33
Cluster Export Services overview	38
CES iSCSI support	40
Active File Management	41
Introduction to Active File Management (AFM)	41
Overview and concepts	42
Active File Management (AFM) features.	53
AFM Limitations	77
AFM-based Asynchronous Disaster Recovery (AFM	
DR)	78
Introduction	79
Recovery time objective (RTO)	81
Modes and concepts	81
AFM-based Asynchronous Disaster Recovery	
features.	81
AFM DR Limitations	87
AFM DR deployment considerations and best	
practices	89
Data protection and disaster recovery in IBM	
Spectrum Scale	97
Data backup options in IBM Spectrum Scale	97

Data restore options in IBM Spectrum Scale	97
Data mirroring in IBM Spectrum Scale	98
Protecting file data using snapshots	98
Introduction to Scale Out Backup and Restore	
(SOBAR)	98
Introduction to protocols cluster disaster recovery	
(DR).	98
Commands for data protection and recovery in	
IBM Spectrum Scale	99
Introduction to IBM Spectrum Scale GUI	100
IBM Spectrum Scale management API	103
Functional overview	104
API requests.	105
API responses	109
List of IBM Spectrum Scale management API	
commands	111
Introduction to Cloud services.	116
How Transparent cloud tiering works	118
How Cloud data sharing works	119
How Write Once Read Many (WORM) storage	
works	122
Supported cloud providers	123
Interoperability of Transparent cloud tiering	
with other IBM Spectrum Scale features	123
Interoperability of Cloud data sharing with	
other IBM Spectrum Scale features	125
Introduction to file audit logging.	127
Producers in file audit logging	127
The message queue in file audit logging	127
Consumers in file audit logging	128
The file audit logging filesset	128
File audit logging records	129
File audit logging events' descriptions	130
JSON attributes in file audit logging.	130
Remotely mounted file systems in file audit	
logging	132
Introduction to watch folder	133
Introduction to clustered watch	133
Producers in clustered watch	134
The message queue in clustered watch	134
Conduits in clustered watch	135
The message queue services monitor and	
clustered watch.	136
Interaction between clustered watch and the	
external Kafka sink	136
JSON attributes in clustered watch	137
IBM Spectrum Scale in an OpenStack cloud	
deployment	139
IBM Spectrum Scale product editions	142
IBM Spectrum Scale license designation	143
Capacity-based licensing	146
IBM Spectrum Storage Suite	147

## Chapter 2. Planning for IBM Spectrum Scale . . . . . 149

Planning for GPFS. . . . .	149
Hardware requirements . . . . .	149
Software requirements . . . . .	150
Recoverability considerations . . . . .	151
GPFS cluster creation considerations. . . . .	158
Disk considerations . . . . .	162
File system creation considerations . . . . .	167
Fileset considerations for creating protocol data exports . . . . .	183
Backup considerations for using IBM Spectrum Protect . . . . .	185
Planning for Quality of Service for I/O operations (QoS) . . . . .	194
Planning for extended attributes . . . . .	195
Planning for the Highly Available Write Cache feature (HAWC) . . . . .	198
Planning for systemd. . . . .	201
Planning for protocols . . . . .	202
Authentication considerations . . . . .	202
Planning for NFS . . . . .	214
Planning for SMB . . . . .	216
Planning for object storage deployment. . . . .	221
Planning for Cloud services . . . . .	227
Hardware requirements for Cloud services . . . . .	227
Software requirements for Cloud services . . . . .	228
Network considerations for Cloud services . . . . .	229
Cluster node considerations for Cloud services . . . . .	229
IBM Cloud Object Storage considerations . . . . .	230
Firewall recommendations for Cloud services . . . . .	232
Performance considerations. . . . .	233
Security considerations . . . . .	237
Planning for maintenance activities . . . . .	237
Backup considerations for Transparent cloud tiering. . . . .	238
Quota support for tiering . . . . .	239
Client-assisted recalls. . . . .	240
Planning for AFM. . . . .	240
Requirements for UID and GID on the cache and home clusters. . . . .	240
Recommended workerthreads on cache cluster . . . . .	240
Inode limits to set at cache and home . . . . .	240
Planning for AFM DR . . . . .	241
Requirements for UID/GID on primary and secondary clusters. . . . .	241
Recommended worker1threads on primary cluster. . . . .	241
NFS setup on the secondary cluster . . . . .	241
Firewall recommendations . . . . .	241
Considerations for GPFS applications . . . . .	241

## Chapter 3. Steps for establishing and starting your IBM Spectrum Scale cluster . . . . . 243

## Chapter 4. Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Linux nodes and deploying protocols . . . . . 245

Deciding whether to install IBM Spectrum Scale and deploy protocols manually or with the installation toolkit . . . . .	246
Installation prerequisites. . . . .	246
Preparing the environment on Linux nodes . . . . .	251
IBM Spectrum Scale packaging overview . . . . .	252
Preparing to install the GPFS software on Linux nodes . . . . .	252
Accepting the electronic license agreement on Linux nodes. . . . .	253
Extracting the IBM Spectrum Scale software on Linux nodes. . . . .	253
Extracting IBM Spectrum Scale patches (update SLES or Red Hat Enterprise Linux RPMs or Ubuntu Linux packages) . . . . .	255
Installing the IBM Spectrum Scale man pages on Linux nodes. . . . .	255
For Linux on Z: Changing the kernel settings . . . . .	255
Manually installing the IBM Spectrum Scale software packages on Linux nodes . . . . .	256
Building the GPFS portability layer on Linux nodes . . . . .	261
Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale and deploying protocols on Linux nodes. . . . .	263
Verifying the IBM Spectrum Scale installation on Ubuntu Linux nodes . . . . .	270
Verifying the IBM Spectrum Scale installation on SLES and Red Hat Enterprise Linux nodes . . . . .	270
Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x nodes . . . . .	271
Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage on Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS nodes . . . . .	272
Manually installing the performance monitoring tool. . . . .	273
Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI . . . . .	276
Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Linux nodes with the installation toolkit . . . . .	283
Overview of the installation toolkit . . . . .	283
Understanding the installation toolkit options . . . . .	287
Limitations of the installation toolkit . . . . .	289
Mixed operating system support with the installation toolkit. . . . .	297
Preparing to use the installation toolkit. . . . .	298
Using the installation toolkit to perform installation tasks: Explanations and examples. . . . .	300
Populating cluster definition file with current cluster state using the installation toolkit . . . . .	322
ESS awareness with the installation toolkit . . . . .	325

Configuration of an IBM Spectrum Scale stretch cluster in an export services environment: a sample use case . . . . .	326
Performing additional tasks using the installation toolkit . . . . .	337
Installing IBM Spectrum Scale by using the graphical user interface (GUI) . . . . .	342
Protocol node IP further configuration . . . . .	343
Object protocol further configuration . . . . .	344
Enabling multi-region object deployment initially . . . . .	345
Installing and using unified file and object access . . . . .	345
Enabling unified file and object access after upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2 or later to 4.2.2 or later . . . . .	346

## **Chapter 5. Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on AIX nodes. . . . . 349**

Creating a file to ease the AIX installation process	349
Verifying the level of prerequisite software . . . . .	349
Procedure for installing GPFS on AIX nodes . . . . .	350
Accepting the electronic license agreement . . . . .	350
Creating the GPFS directory . . . . .	350
Creating the GPFS installation table of contents file . . . . .	351
Installing the GPFS man pages . . . . .	351
Installing GPFS over a network . . . . .	351
Verifying the GPFS installation . . . . .	351

## **Chapter 6. Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Windows nodes . . . . . 353**

GPFS for Windows overview . . . . .	353
GPFS support for Windows . . . . .	354
GPFS limitations on Windows . . . . .	354
File system name considerations . . . . .	355
File name considerations . . . . .	355
Case sensitivity. . . . .	356
Antivirus software. . . . .	356
Differences between GPFS and NTFS . . . . .	356
Access control on GPFS file systems. . . . .	357
Installing GPFS prerequisites . . . . .	358
Configuring Windows . . . . .	358
Installing Cygwin . . . . .	359
Procedure for installing GPFS on Windows nodes	360
Running GPFS commands . . . . .	362
Configuring a mixed Windows and UNIX cluster	362
Configuring the Windows HPC server . . . . .	365

## **Chapter 7. Installing Cloud services on IBM Spectrum Scale nodes . . . . . 367**

Creating a user-defined node class for Transparent cloud tiering or Cloud data sharing . . . . .	367
Installation steps . . . . .	368
Setting up a Cloud services cluster . . . . .	369
Adding a Cloud services node to an existing Cloud services cluster . . . . .	370

## **Chapter 8. Installing and configuring IBM Spectrum Scale management API. 371**

## **Chapter 9. Installation of Active File Management (AFM). . . . . 373**

## **Chapter 10. Installing and upgrading AFM-based Disaster Recovery . . . . . 375**

## **Chapter 11. Installing call home . . . . . 377**

## **Chapter 12. Installing file audit logging . . . . . 379**

Requirements and limitations for file audit logging	379
Requirements for using file audit logging with remotely mounted file systems . . . . .	380
Manually installing file audit logging . . . . .	381
Reinstalling file audit logging . . . . .	382

## **Chapter 13. Installing watch folder 383**

Requirements for watch folder . . . . .	383
Watch folder limitations . . . . .	384
Manually installing watch folder . . . . .	385

## **Chapter 14. Installing clustered watch 387**

Requirements and limitations for clustered watch	387
Requirements for using clustered watch with remotely mounted file systems . . . . .	389
Manually installing clustered watch . . . . .	389

## **Chapter 15. Steps to permanently uninstall GPFS. . . . . 391**

Cleanup procedures required if reinstalling with the installation toolkit . . . . .	392
Uninstalling the performance monitoring tool . . . . .	397
Uninstalling the IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI . . . . .	397
Removing nodes from management GUI-related node class . . . . .	398
Permanently uninstall Cloud services and clean up the environment . . . . .	398

## **Chapter 16. Upgrading . . . . . 401**

IBM Spectrum Scale supported upgrade paths . . . . .	402
Upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.x from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.y or later . . . . .	403
Upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.y from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.x . . . . .	404
Upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.1.x from GPFS V4.1.0.x . . . . .	406
Upgrading from GPFS 3.5 . . . . .	408
Online upgrade support for protocols and performance monitoring. . . . .	413
Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale non-protocol Linux nodes . . . . .	414
Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale protocol nodes . . . . .	417
Upgrading AFM and AFM DR . . . . .	420

Using stop and start replication to upgrade AFM and AFM DR . . . . .	422		Upgrade process flow . . . . .	446
Upgrading object packages . . . . .	423		Performing online upgrade by using the installation toolkit . . . . .	451
Upgrading SMB packages . . . . .	424		Performing offline upgrade or excluding nodes from upgrade using installation toolkit . . . . .	454
Upgrading the SMB package after upgrading OS to Ubuntu 18.04 . . . . .	425		Upgrade rerun after an upgrade failure. . . . .	457
Upgrading NFS packages . . . . .	425		Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale on IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes using the installation toolkit . . . . .	458
Upgrading call home . . . . .	426		Changing the IBM Spectrum Scale product edition Changing Express Edition to Standard Edition . . . . .	459
Call home configuration changes to be made while upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.x from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.1 . . . . .	426		Completing the upgrade to a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale . . . . .	463
Call home configuration changes to be made while upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.1 from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.0 . . . . .	427		Reverting to the previous level of IBM Spectrum Scale . . . . .	464
Manually upgrading the performance monitoring tool. . . . .	427		Reverting to a previous level of GPFS when you have <i>not</i> issued mmchconfig release=LATEST . . . . .	468
Upgrading the performance monitoring packages after upgrading OS to Ubuntu 18.04 . . . . .	428		Reverting to a previous level of GPFS when you have issued mmchconfig release=LATEST . . . . .	469
Manually upgrading pmswift . . . . .	428		Coexistence considerations . . . . .	469
Manually upgrading the IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI . . . . .	430		Compatibility considerations . . . . .	470
Upgrading Cloud services . . . . .	431		Considerations for IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management . . . . .	470
Upgrading to Transparent cloud tiering 1.1.2 from Transparent cloud tiering 1.1.0 or 1.1.1 . . . . .	432		GUI user role considerations . . . . .	470
Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.2.1 from 1.1.2 . . . . .	432		Applying maintenance to your GPFS system . . . . .	470
Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.3 from 1.1.2 . . . . .	433		Guidance for upgrading the operating system on IBM Spectrum Scale nodes . . . . .	471
Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.3 from 1.1.0 and 1.1.1 . . . . .	433		Servicing IBM Spectrum Scale protocol nodes . . . . .	473
Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.4 from 1.1.2.x . . . . .	434			
Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.4 from 1.1.3 . . . . .	435			
Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.5 from 1.1.4 . . . . .	436			
Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.6 from 1.1.5 . . . . .	437			
Upgrading the Cloud services sensors . . . . .	438			
Upgrading to IBM Cloud Object Storage software level 3.7.2 and above . . . . .	442			
Upgrading file audit logging authentication . . . . .	442			
Manually upgrading file audit logging authentication . . . . .	442			
Upgrading file audit logging authentication using the mmmmsgqueue command . . . . .	443			
Upgrading file audit logging in remote cluster environments . . . . .	443			
Upgrading watch folder callbacks . . . . .	443			
Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale components with the installation toolkit . . . . .	444			

<b>Accessibility features for IBM Spectrum Scale . . . . .</b>	<b>475</b>
Accessibility features . . . . .	475
Keyboard navigation . . . . .	475
IBM and accessibility . . . . .	475
<b>Notices . . . . .</b>	<b>477</b>
Trademarks . . . . .	478
Terms and conditions for product documentation . . . . .	479
IBM Online Privacy Statement. . . . .	479
<b>Glossary . . . . .</b>	<b>481</b>
<b>Index . . . . .</b>	<b>487</b>



---

## Figures

1. A cluster with disks that are SAN-attached to all nodes . . . . .	8
2. A cluster with some nodes connected to disks . . . . .	8
3. A multicluster configuration . . . . .	9
4. GPFS files have a typical UNIX structure . . . . .	13
5. CES BLOCK iSCSI support . . . . .	40
6. Sample of an AFM relationship . . . . .	41
7. Global namespace implemented using AFM . . . . .	46
8. Read Only mode. . . . .	49
9. Single writer mode . . . . .	49
10. Behaviors with local files . . . . .	50
11. Independent writer mode. . . . .	52
12. Sample setup of HSM connected to home . . . . .	71
13. HSM connected to both home and cache . . . . .	72
14. IW cache (Side A) to home (Side B) . . . . .	73
15. IW cache site (Side A) and home site (Side B) . . . . .	74
16. Asynchronous disaster recovery. . . . .	79
17. IBM Spectrum Scale management API Version 2 architecture . . . . .	103
18. Transparent cloud tiering and Cloud data sharing features. . . . .	117
19. Exporting file system data to a cloud storage tier . . . . .	120
20. Importing object storage data into the file system. . . . .	121
21. WORM storage overview . . . . .	123
22. Guidance on which license to buy . . . . .	145
23. GPFS configuration using node quorum . . . . .	153
24. GPFS configuration using node quorum with tiebreaker disks . . . . .	154
25. An example of a highly available SAN configuration for a GPFS file system . . . . .	155
26. Configuration using GPFS replication for improved availability . . . . .	156
27. Shared fast storage. . . . .	200
28. Distributed fast storage . . . . .	201
29. High-level overview of protocol user authentication . . . . .	205
30. High-level flow of authentication for File protocols . . . . .	207
31. IBM Spectrum Scale integration with internal Keystone server and external AD or LDAP authentication server . . . . .	212
32. IBM Spectrum Scale for NFS architecture . . . . .	214
33. IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage architecture . . . . .	221
34. Synchronous mirroring with GPFS replication . . . . .	327
35. Local Site CES Group . . . . .	329



## Tables

1. IBM Spectrum Scale library information units	xii	26. Authentication support matrix when AD is the Authentication service being used	203
2. Conventions	xxiv	27. Authentication support matrix when NIS is the Authentication service being used	203
3. List of changes in documentation	xxxiv	28. Authentication support matrix when LDAP is the Authentication service being used	204
4. Comparison between NSD and NFS protocols	44	29. Authentication support matrix when AD is the Authentication service being used	204
5. Conditions in which disabling AFM fileset fails, with corresponding messages.	75	30. Authentication support matrix when "local" is the Authentication service being used	204
6. Availability and OS/architecture supported	78	31. Authentication support matrix when "user defined" is the Authentication service being used	204
7. Availability and OS/architecture supported	88	32. General authentication support matrix	213
8. Features associated with IBM Spectrum Scale GUI pages	100	33. Tested NFS clients	215
9. Getting information about filesets.	106	34. OS support matrix	228
10. Creating a snapshot	106	35. Recommended settings when creating a vault template on IBM Cloud Object Storage	231
11. Response codes	110	36. Port requirements	233
12. Operations supported for resources and resource elements in API version 2	112	37. <b>workerthreads</b> value per Backend.	240
13. Operations supported for resources and resource elements in API version 1	114	38. GUI packages required for each platform	277
14. HTTP methods supported for each type of resource in API version 2	115	39. Installation toolkit: List of features	285
15. HTTP methods supported for each type of resource in API version 1	116	40. <b>spectrumscale</b> command options for installing GPFS and deploying protocols	288
16. File audit logging events.	130	41. Installation toolkit limitations	289
17. JSON attributes in file audit logging	131	42. Operating systems supported with the installation toolkit in a mixed cluster.	297
18. File access events that are supported by watch folder	133	43. Validations by the installation toolkit in a mixed operating system cluster	297
19. Features that IBM Spectrum Scale supports for deploying the OpenStack cloud storage	141	44. Limitations of the config populate functionality	323
20. Features in IBM Spectrum Scale editions	143	45. Generating short names for Windows	355
21. GPFS cluster creation options	158	46. IBM Spectrum Scale supported online upgrade paths	402
22. File system creation options.	168	47. Other parameters with <b>mmchconfig release=LATEST</b>	465
23. Correspondence between <b>mount</b> options and the <b>-S</b> option in <b>mmcrfs</b> and <b>mmchfs</b>	175		
24. Comparison of <b>mmbackup</b> and IBM Spectrum Protect Backup-Archive client backup commands	187		
25. Authentication support matrix when LDAP is the Authentication service being used	203		



---

## About this information

This edition applies to IBM Spectrum Scale version 5.0.3 for AIX®, Linux, and Windows.

IBM Spectrum Scale is a file management infrastructure, based on IBM® General Parallel File System (GPFS™) technology, which provides unmatched performance and reliability with scalable access to critical file data.

To find out which version of IBM Spectrum Scale is running on a particular AIX node, enter:

```
lslpp -l gpfs\*
```

To find out which version of IBM Spectrum Scale is running on a particular Linux node, enter:

```
rpm -qa | grep gpfs      (for SLES and Red Hat Enterprise Linux)
```

```
dpkg -l | grep gpfs     (for Ubuntu Linux)
```

To find out which version of IBM Spectrum Scale is running on a particular Windows node, open **Programs and Features** in the control panel. The IBM Spectrum Scale installed program name includes the version number.

## Which IBM Spectrum Scale information unit provides the information you need?

The IBM Spectrum Scale library consists of the information units listed in Table 1 on page xii.

To use these information units effectively, you must be familiar with IBM Spectrum Scale and the AIX, Linux, or Windows operating system, or all of them, depending on which operating systems are in use at your installation. Where necessary, these information units provide some background information relating to AIX, Linux, or Windows. However, more commonly they refer to the appropriate operating system documentation.

**Note:** Throughout this documentation, the term “Linux” refers to all supported distributions of Linux, unless otherwise specified.

Table 1. IBM Spectrum Scale library information units

Information unit	Type of information	Intended users
IBM Spectrum Scale: Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide	<p>This guide provides the following information:</p> <p><b>Product overview</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Overview of IBM Spectrum Scale</li> <li>• GPFS architecture</li> <li>• Protocols support overview: Integration of protocol access methods with GPFS</li> <li>• Active File Management</li> <li>• AFM-based Asynchronous Disaster Recovery (AFM DR)</li> <li>• Data protection and disaster recovery in IBM Spectrum Scale</li> <li>• Introduction to IBM Spectrum Scale GUI</li> <li>• IBM Spectrum Scale management API</li> <li>• Introduction to Cloud services</li> <li>• Introduction to file audit logging</li> <li>• Introduction to watch folder</li> <li>• Introduction to clustered watch</li> <li>• IBM Spectrum Scale in an OpenStack cloud deployment</li> <li>• IBM Spectrum Scale product editions</li> <li>• IBM Spectrum Scale license designation</li> <li>• Capacity based licensing</li> <li>• IBM Spectrum Storage™ Suite</li> </ul> <p><b>Planning</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Planning for GPFS</li> <li>• Planning for protocols</li> <li>• Planning for Cloud services</li> <li>• Planning for AFM</li> <li>• Planning for AFM DR</li> <li>• Firewall recommendations</li> <li>• Considerations for GPFS applications</li> </ul>	System administrators, analysts, installers, planners, and programmers of IBM Spectrum Scale clusters who are very experienced with the operating systems on which each IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is based

Table 1. IBM Spectrum Scale library information units (continued)

Information unit	Type of information	Intended users
IBM Spectrum Scale: Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide	<b>Installing</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Steps for establishing and starting your IBM Spectrum Scale cluster</li> <li>• Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Linux nodes and deploying protocols</li> <li>• Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on AIX nodes</li> <li>• Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Windows nodes</li> <li>• Installing Cloud services on IBM Spectrum Scale nodes</li> <li>• Installing and configuring IBM Spectrum Scale management API</li> <li>• Installation of Active File Management (AFM)</li> <li>• Installing and upgrading AFM-based Disaster Recovery</li> <li>• Installing call home</li> <li>• Installing file audit logging</li> <li>• Installing watch folder</li> <li>• Installing clustered watch</li> <li>• Steps to permanently uninstall GPFS</li> </ul>	System administrators, analysts, installers, planners, and programmers of IBM Spectrum Scale clusters who are very experienced with the operating systems on which each IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is based

Table 1. IBM Spectrum Scale library information units (continued)

Information unit	Type of information	Intended users
IBM Spectrum Scale: Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide	<b>Upgrading</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IBM Spectrum Scale supported upgrade paths</li> <li>• Upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.x from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.y</li> <li>• Upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.y from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.x</li> <li>• Upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.1.x from GPFS V4.1.0.x</li> <li>• Upgrading from GPFS 3.5</li> <li>• Online upgrade support for protocols and performance monitoring</li> <li>• Upgrading IBM Spectrum™ Scale non-protocol Linux nodes</li> <li>• Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale protocol nodes</li> <li>• Upgrading AFM and AFM DR</li> <li>• Upgrading object packages</li> <li>• Upgrading SMB packages</li> <li>• Upgrading NFS packages</li> <li>• Upgrading call home</li> <li>• Manually upgrading the performance monitoring tool</li> <li>• Manually upgrading pmswift</li> <li>• Manually upgrading the IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI</li> <li>• Upgrading Cloud services</li> <li>• Upgrading to IBM Cloud Object Storage software level 3.7.2 and above</li> <li>• Upgrading file audit logging authentication</li> <li>• Upgrading watch folder callbacks</li> <li>• Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale components with the installation toolkit</li> <li>• Changing IBM Spectrum Scale product edition</li> <li>• Completing the upgrade to a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale</li> <li>• Reverting to the previous level of IBM Spectrum Scale</li> </ul>	System administrators, analysts, installers, planners, and programmers of IBM Spectrum Scale clusters who are very experienced with the operating systems on which each IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is based



Table 1. IBM Spectrum Scale library information units (continued)

Information unit	Type of information	Intended users
IBM Spectrum Scale: Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Coexistence considerations</li> <li>• Compatibility considerations</li> <li>• Considerations for IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management</li> <li>• GUI user role considerations</li> <li>• Applying maintenance to your GPFS system</li> <li>• Guidance for upgrading the operating system on IBM Spectrum Scale nodes</li> <li>• Servicing IBM Spectrum Scale protocol nodes</li> </ul>	

Table 1. IBM Spectrum Scale library information units (continued)

Information unit	Type of information	Intended users
IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide	<p>This guide provides the following information:</p> <p><b>Configuring</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configuring the GPFS cluster</li> <li>• Configuring the CES and protocol configuration</li> <li>• Configuring and tuning your system for GPFS</li> <li>• Parameters for performance tuning and optimization</li> <li>• Ensuring high availability of the GUI service</li> <li>• Configuring and tuning your system for Cloud services</li> <li>• Configuring file audit logging</li> <li>• Steps that are taken when a watch is enabled with the mmwatch command</li> <li>• Configuring Active File Management</li> <li>• Configuring AFM-based DR</li> <li>• Tuning for Kernel NFS backend on AFM and AFM DR</li> </ul> <p><b>Administering</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Performing GPFS administration tasks</li> <li>• Verifying network operation with the mmnetverify command</li> <li>• Managing file systems</li> <li>• File system format changes between versions of IBM Spectrum Scale</li> <li>• Managing disks</li> <li>• Managing protocol services</li> <li>• Managing protocol user authentication</li> <li>• Managing protocol data exports</li> <li>• Managing object storage</li> <li>• Managing GPFS quotas</li> <li>• Managing GUI users</li> <li>• Managing GPFS access control lists</li> <li>• Native NFS and GPFS</li> <li>• Considerations for GPFS applications</li> <li>• Accessing a remote GPFS file system</li> </ul>	System administrators or programmers of IBM Spectrum Scale systems

Table 1. IBM Spectrum Scale library information units (continued)

Information unit	Type of information	Intended users
IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Information lifecycle management for IBM Spectrum Scale</li> <li>• Creating and maintaining snapshots of file systems</li> <li>• Creating and managing file clones</li> <li>• Scale Out Backup and Restore (SOBAR)</li> <li>• Data Mirroring and Replication</li> <li>• Implementing a clustered NFS environment on Linux</li> <li>• Implementing Cluster Export Services</li> <li>• Identity management on Windows / RFC 2307 Attributes</li> <li>• Protocols cluster disaster recovery</li> <li>• File Placement Optimizer</li> <li>• Encryption</li> <li>• Managing certificates to secure communications between GUI web server and web browsers</li> <li>• Securing protocol data</li> <li>• Cloud services: Transparent cloud tiering and Cloud data sharing</li> <li>• Managing file audit logging</li> <li>• Performing a watch with watch folder</li> <li>• Administering AFM</li> <li>• Administering AFM DR</li> <li>• Highly-available write cache (HAWC)</li> <li>• Local read-only cache</li> <li>• Miscellaneous advanced administration</li> <li>• GUI limitations</li> </ul>	System administrators or programmers of IBM Spectrum Scale systems

Table 1. IBM Spectrum Scale library information units (continued)

Information unit	Type of information	Intended users
IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide	<p>This guide provides the following information:</p> <p><b>Monitoring</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Performance monitoring</li> <li>• Monitoring system health through the IBM Spectrum Scale GUI</li> <li>• Monitoring system health by using the mmhealth command</li> <li>• Monitoring events through callbacks</li> <li>• Monitoring capacity through GUI</li> <li>• Monitoring AFM and AFM DR</li> <li>• GPFS SNMP support</li> <li>• Monitoring the IBM Spectrum Scale system by using call home</li> <li>• Monitoring remote cluster through GUI</li> <li>• Monitoring file audit logging</li> <li>• Monitoring clustered watch</li> </ul> <p><b>Troubleshooting</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Best practices for troubleshooting</li> <li>• Understanding the system limitations</li> <li>• Collecting details of the issues</li> <li>• Managing deadlocks</li> <li>• Installation and configuration issues</li> <li>• Upgrade issues</li> <li>• Network issues</li> <li>• File system issues</li> <li>• Disk issues</li> <li>• Security issues</li> <li>• Protocol issues</li> <li>• Disaster recovery issues</li> <li>• Performance issues</li> <li>• GUI issues</li> <li>• AFM issues</li> <li>• AFM DR issues</li> <li>• Transparent cloud tiering issues</li> <li>• File audit logging issues</li> <li>• Troubleshooting watch folder</li> <li>• Troubleshooting mmwatch</li> <li>• Message queue issues</li> <li>• Maintenance procedures</li> <li>• Recovery procedures</li> <li>• Support for troubleshooting</li> <li>• References</li> </ul>	System administrators of GPFS systems who are experienced with the subsystems used to manage disks and who are familiar with the concepts presented in the <i>IBM Spectrum Scale: Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide</i>

Table 1. IBM Spectrum Scale library information units (continued)

Information unit	Type of information	Intended users
IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference	<p>This guide provides the following information:</p> <p><b>Command reference</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• gpfs.snap command</li> <li>• mmaddcallback command</li> <li>• mmaddddisk command</li> <li>• mmaddnode command</li> <li>• mmadquery command</li> <li>• mmafmconfig command</li> <li>• mmafmctl command</li> <li>• mmafmlocal command</li> <li>• mmapplypolicy command</li> <li>• mmaudit command</li> <li>• mmauth command</li> <li>• mmbackup command</li> <li>• mmbackupconfig command</li> <li>• mmblock command</li> <li>• mmbuildgpl command</li> <li>• mmcachectl command</li> <li>• mmcallhome command</li> <li>• mmces command</li> <li>• mmcesdr command</li> <li>• mmchattr command</li> <li>• mmchcluster command</li> <li>• mmchconfig command</li> <li>• mmchdisk command</li> <li>• mmcheckquota command</li> <li>• mmchfileset command</li> <li>• mmchfs command</li> <li>• mmchlicense command</li> <li>• mmchmgr command</li> <li>• mmchnode command</li> <li>• mmchnodeclass command</li> <li>• mmchnsd command</li> <li>• mmchpolicy command</li> <li>• mmchpool command</li> <li>• mmchqos command</li> <li>• mmclidecode command</li> <li>• mmclone command</li> <li>• mmcloudgateway command</li> <li>• mmcrcluster command</li> <li>• mmcrfileset command</li> <li>• mmcrfs command</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System administrators of IBM Spectrum Scale systems</li> <li>• Application programmers who are experienced with IBM Spectrum Scale systems and familiar with the terminology and concepts in the XDSM standard</li> </ul>

Table 1. IBM Spectrum Scale library information units (continued)

Information unit	Type of information	Intended users
IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• mmcrnodeclass command</li> <li>• mmcrnsd command</li> <li>• mmcrsnapshot command</li> <li>• mmdefedquota command</li> <li>• mmdefquotaoff command</li> <li>• mmdefquotaon command</li> <li>• mmdefragfs command</li> <li>• mmdelacl command</li> <li>• mmdelcallback command</li> <li>• mmdeldisk command</li> <li>• mmdelfileset command</li> <li>• mmdelfs command</li> <li>• mmdelnnode command</li> <li>• mmdelnnodeclass command</li> <li>• mmdelnnsd command</li> <li>• mmdelsnapshot command</li> <li>• mmdf command</li> <li>• mmdiag command</li> <li>• mmdsh command</li> <li>• mmeditacl command</li> <li>• mmedquota command</li> <li>• mmexportfs command</li> <li>• mmfsck command</li> <li>• mmfsctl command</li> <li>• mmgetacl command</li> <li>• mmgetstate command</li> <li>• mmhadoopctl command</li> <li>• mmhealth command</li> <li>• mmimgbackup command</li> <li>• mmimgrestore command</li> <li>• mmimportfs command</li> <li>• mmkeyserv command</li> <li>• mmlinkfileset command</li> <li>• mmlsattr command</li> <li>• mmlscallback command</li> <li>• mmlscluster command</li> <li>• mmlsconfig command</li> <li>• mmlsdisk command</li> <li>• mmlsfileset command</li> <li>• mmlsfs command</li> <li>• mmlslicense command</li> <li>• mmlsmgr command</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System administrators of IBM Spectrum Scale systems</li> <li>• Application programmers who are experienced with IBM Spectrum Scale systems and familiar with the terminology and concepts in the XDSM standard</li> </ul>

Table 1. IBM Spectrum Scale library information units (continued)

Information unit	Type of information	Intended users
IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• mmlsmount command</li> <li>• mmlsnodectl command</li> <li>• mmlsnsd command</li> <li>• mmlspolicy command</li> <li>• mmlspool command</li> <li>• mmlsqos command</li> <li>• mmlsquota command</li> <li>• mmlssnapshot command</li> <li>• mmmigratefs command</li> <li>• mmmount command</li> <li>• mmmmsgqueue command</li> <li>• mmnetverify command</li> <li>• mmmnfs command</li> <li>• mmnsddiscover command</li> <li>• mmobj command</li> <li>• mmperfmon command</li> <li>• mmpmon command</li> <li>• mmprotocoltrace command</li> <li>• mmrpsnap command</li> <li>• mmputacl command</li> <li>• mmquotaoff command</li> <li>• mmquotaon command</li> <li>• mmremotefluster command</li> <li>• mmremotefs command</li> <li>• mmrepquota command</li> <li>• mmrestoreconfig command</li> <li>• mmrestorefs command</li> <li>• mmrestripefile command</li> <li>• mmrestripefs command</li> <li>• mmrpldisk command</li> <li>• mmsdrrestore command</li> <li>• mmsetquota command</li> <li>• mmshutdown command</li> <li>• mmsmb command</li> <li>• mmsnapdir command</li> <li>• mmstartup command</li> <li>• mmtracectl command</li> <li>• mmumount command</li> <li>• mmunlinkfileset command</li> <li>• mmuserauth command</li> <li>• mmwatch command</li> <li>• mmwinservctl command</li> <li>• spectrumscale command</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System administrators of IBM Spectrum Scale systems</li> <li>• Application programmers who are experienced with IBM Spectrum Scale systems and familiar with the terminology and concepts in the XDSM standard</li> </ul>

Table 1. IBM Spectrum Scale library information units (continued)

Information unit	Type of information	Intended users
<i>IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference</i>	<b>Programming reference</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management API for GPFS information</li> <li>GPFS programming interfaces</li> <li>GPFS user exits</li> <li>IBM Spectrum Scale management API commands</li> <li>Watch folder API</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>System administrators of IBM Spectrum Scale systems</li> <li>Application programmers who are experienced with IBM Spectrum Scale systems and familiar with the terminology and concepts in the XDSM standard</li> </ul>
<i>IBM Spectrum Scale: Big Data and Analytics Guide</i>	<p>This guide provides the following information:</p> <p>Hadoop Scale Storage Architecture</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Elastic Storage Server (ESS)</li> <li>Share Storage (SAN-based storage)</li> <li>File Placement Optimizer (FPO)</li> <li>Deployment model</li> <li>Additional supported features about storage</li> </ul> <p>IBM Spectrum Scale support for Hadoop</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HDFS transparency</li> <li>Supported IBM Spectrum Scale storage modes</li> <li>Hadoop cluster planning</li> <li>Installation and configuration of HDFS transparency</li> <li>Application interaction with HDFS transparency</li> <li>Upgrading the HDFS Transparency cluster</li> <li>Rolling upgrade for HDFS Transparency</li> <li>Security</li> <li>Advanced features</li> <li>Hadoop distribution support</li> <li>Limitations and differences from native HDFS</li> <li>Problem determination</li> </ul> <p>IBM Spectrum Scale Hadoop performance tuning guide</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Overview</li> <li>Performance overview</li> <li>Hadoop Performance Planning over IBM Spectrum Scale</li> <li>Performance guide</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>System administrators of IBM Spectrum Scale systems</li> <li>Application programmers who are experienced with IBM Spectrum Scale systems and familiar with the terminology and concepts in the XDSM standard</li> </ul>



Table 1. IBM Spectrum Scale library information units (continued)

Information unit	Type of information	Intended users
IBM Spectrum Scale: Big Data and Analytics Guide	<p>Hortonworks Data Platform 3.X</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Planning</li> <li>• Installation</li> <li>• Upgrading and uninstallation</li> <li>• Configuration</li> <li>• Administration</li> <li>• Limitations</li> <li>• Problem determination</li> </ul> <p>Open Source Apache Hadoop</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Apache Hadoop 3.0.x Support</li> </ul> <p>BigInsights® 4.2.5 and Hortonworks Data Platform 2.6</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Planning</li> <li>• Installation</li> <li>• Upgrading software stack</li> <li>• Configuration</li> <li>• Administration</li> <li>• Troubleshooting</li> <li>• Limitations</li> <li>• FAQ</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System administrators of IBM Spectrum Scale systems</li> <li>• Application programmers who are experienced with IBM Spectrum Scale systems and familiar with the terminology and concepts in the XD SM standard</li> </ul>
IBM Spectrum Scale on AWS Guide	<p>IBM Spectrum Scale on AWS</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Summary of changes</li> <li>• Introduction to IBM Spectrum Scale on AWS</li> <li>• Setting up the IBM Spectrum Scale environment in the AWS Cloud</li> <li>• Deploying IBM Spectrum Scale on AWS</li> <li>• Cleaning up the cluster and the stack</li> <li>• Data security and AWS Identity and Access Management</li> <li>• Cluster lifecycle management and debug data collection</li> <li>• Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale</li> <li>• Active file management on AWS</li> <li>• Troubleshooting</li> <li>• Frequently Asked Questions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System administrators of IBM Spectrum Scale systems</li> <li>• Application programmers who are experienced with IBM Spectrum Scale systems and familiar with the terminology and concepts in the XD SM standard</li> </ul>

Table 1. IBM Spectrum Scale library information units (continued)

Information unit	Type of information	Intended users
IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition Guide	<p>IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Introduction to IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition</li> <li>• Planning for IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition</li> <li>• Installing IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition</li> <li>• Incorporating IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition in an Elastic Storage Server (ESS) cluster</li> <li>• Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition</li> <li>• Administering IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition</li> <li>• Troubleshooting</li> <li>• IBM Spectrum Scale RAID Administration <sup>1</sup></li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> <sup>1</sup> For PDF or EPUB format of IBM Spectrum Scale RAID Administration documentation, see Elastic Storage Server for Power documentation on IBM Knowledge Center.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• System administrators of IBM Spectrum Scale systems</li> <li>• Application programmers who are experienced with IBM Spectrum Scale systems and familiar with the terminology and concepts in the XD SM standard</li> </ul>

## Prerequisite and related information

For updates to this information, see IBM Spectrum Scale in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/ibmspectrumscale\\_welcome.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/ibmspectrumscale_welcome.html)).

For the latest support information, see the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

## Conventions used in this information

Table 2 describes the typographic conventions used in this information. UNIX file name conventions are used throughout this information.

**Note:** Users of IBM Spectrum Scale for Windows must be aware that on Windows, UNIX-style file names need to be converted appropriately. For example, the GPFS cluster configuration data is stored in the `/var/mmfs/gen/mmsdrfs` file. On Windows, the UNIX namespace starts under the `%SystemDrive%\cygwin64` directory, so the GPFS cluster configuration data is stored in the `C:\cygwin64\var\mmfs\gen\mmsdrfs` file.

Table 2. Conventions

Convention	Usage
<b>bold</b>	<p><b>Bold</b> words or characters represent system elements that you must use literally, such as commands, flags, values, and selected menu options.</p> <p>Depending on the context, <b>bold</b> typeface sometimes represents path names, directories, or file names.</p>

Table 2. Conventions (continued)

Convention	Usage
<b><u>bold underlined</u></b>	<b><u>bold underlined</u></b> keywords are defaults. These take effect if you do not specify a different keyword.
constant width	Examples and information that the system displays appear in constant-width typeface.  Depending on the context, constant-width typeface sometimes represents path names, directories, or file names.
<i>italic</i>	<i>Italic</i> words or characters represent variable values that you must supply.  <i>Italics</i> are also used for information unit titles, for the first use of a glossary term, and for general emphasis in text.
<key>	Angle brackets (less-than and greater-than) enclose the name of a key on the keyboard. For example, <Enter> refers to the key on your terminal or workstation that is labeled with the word <i>Enter</i> .
\	In command examples, a backslash indicates that the command or coding example continues on the next line. For example:  mkcondition -r IBM.FileSystem -e "PercentTotUsed > 90" \ -E "PercentTotUsed < 85" -m p "FileSystem space used"
{item}	Braces enclose a list from which you must choose an item in format and syntax descriptions.
[item]	Brackets enclose optional items in format and syntax descriptions.
<Ctrl-x>	The notation <Ctrl-x> indicates a control character sequence. For example, <Ctrl-c> means that you hold down the control key while pressing <c>.
item...	Ellipses indicate that you can repeat the preceding item one or more times.
	In <i>synopsis</i> statements, vertical lines separate a list of choices. In other words, a vertical line means <i>Or</i> .  In the left margin of the document, vertical lines indicate technical changes to the information.

**Note:** CLI options that accept a list of option values delimit with a comma and no space between values. As an example, to display the state on three nodes use **mmgetstate -N NodeA,NodeB,NodeC**. Exceptions to this syntax are listed specifically within the command.

## How to send your comments

Your feedback is important in helping us to produce accurate, high-quality information. If you have any comments about this information or any other IBM Spectrum Scale documentation, send your comments to the following e-mail address:

**mhvrcfs@us.ibm.com**

Include the publication title and order number, and, if applicable, the specific location of the information about which you have comments (for example, a page number or a table number).

To contact the IBM Spectrum Scale development organization, send your comments to the following e-mail address:

**gpfs@us.ibm.com**



---

## Summary of changes

This topic summarizes changes to the IBM Spectrum Scale licensed program and the IBM Spectrum Scale library. Within each information unit in the library, a vertical line (|) to the left of text and illustrations indicates technical changes or additions that are made to the previous edition of the information.

### | Summary of changes | for IBM Spectrum Scale version 5.0.3 | as updated, September 2019

| This release of the IBM Spectrum Scale licensed program and the IBM Spectrum Scale library includes the following improvements. All improvements are available after an upgrade, unless otherwise specified.

#### | AFM and AFM DR-related changes

- | • Added a new configuration parameter - **afmRefreshAsync** to enable cache data refresh operation in asynchronous mode. For more information, see the topic *mmchconfig command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.
- | • Added a use case - *Data migration by using AFM migration enhancements*.
- | • Added *Example of AFM support for kerberos-enabled NFS protocol exports* under *Administering AFM*.

#### | Authentication-related changes

- | • **mmuserauth service list** reports servers as "\*" indicating any domain controller in the environment can be used.
- | • **mmuserauth service check --server-reachability** output enhanced to report Domain Controller connected by each CES node.
- | • **mmuserauth service create** reports a warning message for clock skew greater than 5 minutes between CES node and domain controller.
- | • File Authentication configuration is supported with sudo setup.

#### | Big data and analytics changes

| For information on changes in IBM Spectrum Scale Big Data and Analytics support, see Big Data and Analytics - summary of changes.

#### | Cloud services changes

- | • A new container is automatically created during reconcile when the specified threshold of files is reached, thus enabling improved maintenance. For more information, see the topic *Binding your file system or fileset to the Cloud service by creating a container pair set* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
- | • Recalls are performed directly without any intervention or interaction with the Cloud services Server category of nodes thus improving efficiency and performance. For more information, see the topic *Client-assisted recalls* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide*.
- | • Microsoft Azure object storage service supported. For more information, see the topic *Microsoft Azure* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
- | • Linux on Z supported.

#### | File system core improvements

##### | Compatibility settings resolve the unit types that are returned by **statfs** and **statvfs**

| The **linuxStatfsUnits** attribute controls the types of units that are returned in **f\_bsize**,  
| **f\_rsize**, **f\_blocks**, and **f\_bfree** for compatibility with earlier or later versions of **statfs**

and **statvfs**. For more information, see the topic *mmchconfig command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

**QoS for I/O is enhanced to scale better in large clusters**

QoS dynamically adjusts the frequency of data collection based on the number of nodes that have mounted the file system. Alternatively you can configure a fixed-value custom frequency with the **mmchqos** command. For more information, see the topic *mmchqos command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

**zfast, alphae, and alphah libraries compress genomic data**

File compression methods for genomic data include **zfast** compression for active genomic data in FASTA, SAM, and VCF format and **alphae** and **alphah** compression for active genomic data in FASTQ format. For more information, see the topic *File compression* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

**The mmaddnode command assigns a license to the new node**

The **licenseType** node descriptor assigns a license of the specified type to the new node. For more information, see the topic *mmaddnode command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

**The proactiveReconnect parameter (mmchconfig command) reduces node expulsion that is caused by short-term network outages**

The **proactiveReconnect** attribute proactively closes and reestablishes problematic TCP connections between nodes. This feature can prevent nodes from being expelled from a cluster when TCP connections go into error states that are caused by packet loss in the network or in the adapter. For more information, see the topic *mmchconfig command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

**The mmfsck command repairs block allocation map corruption in online mode**

The command detects and repairs structural corruptions such as corrupted block headers and corrupted disk addresses in online mode. For more information, see the topic *mmfsck command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

**The mmkeyserv command shows certificate expiration dates**

The **server show** and **client show** parameters display expiration dates for the REST certificate and the KMIP certificate. For more information, see the topic *mmkeyserv command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

**The mmnetverify command checks RDMA connectivity**

The **rdma-connectivity** option verifies the **verbsPorts** configuration and checks node connectivity through the active InfiniBand interfaces. For more information, see the topic *mmnetverify command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

**The mmsdrrestore command repairs CCR files that are corrupted or lost on all quorum nodes**

The **--ccr-repair** parameter repairs files in the CCR committed directory when they have been lost or corrupted on all the quorum nodes. The manual procedure is no longer required. For AIX you must install Python 2.7.5 or later from the AIX Toolbox for Linux Applications. For more information, see the topic *mmsdrrestore command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

**The primary-secondary configuration server feature is deprecated**

The primary and secondary configuration server functionality is deprecated and will be removed in a future release. The default configuration service is CCR:

- The **mmcrcluster** command no longer creates primary and secondary configuration servers or allows a cluster to be created with a primary-secondary configuration. For more information, see the topic *mmcrcluster command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

- The **mmchcluster** command still switches from the CCR configuration to primary-secondary configuration, with warnings and checks. For more information, see the topic *mmchcluster command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

#### Other improvements

- You can use the **--use-stale-replica** option for the **mmfsck** command to read possible stale replica blocks from unrecovered disks. For more information, see the topic *mmfsck command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.
- You can install a **gpfs.gplbin** package on a machine that has a different Linux kernel than the machine on which the **gpfs.gplbin** package was built. For more information, see the topic *mmbuildgpl command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.
- I/O error checking is improved for locally attached disks of NSD servers. For more information, see the topic *Additional considerations for managing disks* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
- Performance is improved for a large number of nodes concurrently creating files in a small directory.
- Reporting is improved for possible network issues.
- Error messages are more detailed for failed CCR requests during mm-commands. For more information, see error messages 6027-4200 [E] through 6027-4207 [E] in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

#### IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition

IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition provides network-dispersed erasure coding, distributing data and metadata across the internal disks of a cluster of servers. This allows IBM Spectrum Scale to use internal disks as reliable storage with low overhead and high performance.

For more information, see IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition documentation.

#### IBM Spectrum Scale on AWS changes

For information about changes in IBM Spectrum Scale on AWS 1.2.0, see IBM Spectrum Scale on AWS 1.2.0: Summary of changes.

#### Installation toolkit changes

- Support for IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition. For more information, see *Overview of the installation toolkit* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide*.
- Support for SLES 15 on x86\_64 and s390x
- Upgrade related enhancements:
  - Upgrade flow changes to minimize I/O disruptions. For more information, see *Upgrade process flow* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide*.
  - Enhanced upgrade pre-checks to determine the packages that must be upgraded. The versions of the installed packages are compared with the versions in the repository of the packages that you want to upgrade to. In a mixed operating system cluster, the comparison is done with the package repository applicable for the operating system running on the respective nodes.
  - Mixed OS support for upgrade
  - Enhanced upgrade post-checks to ensure that all packages have been upgraded successfully
  - Enhanced dependency checks to ensure dependencies are met for each required package
  - Improvements in upgrade messaging to make the upgrade progress clearer to the user

#### Management API changes

Added the following API commands:

- GET: `/filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets/{filesetName}/quotadefaults`

- POST: /filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets/{filesetName}/quotadefaults
- PUT: filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets/{filesetName}/quotadefaults
- PUT: /filesystems/{filesystemName}/mount
- PUT: /filesystems/{filesystemName}/unmount
- GET: /filesystems/{filesystemName}/quotadefaults
- POST: /filesystems/{filesystemName}/quotadefaults
- PUT: /filesystems/{filesystemName}/quotadefaults
- GET: /filesystems/{filesystemName}/quotagracedefaults
- POST: /filesystems/{filesystemName}/quotagracedefaults

For more information on the API commands, see *IBM Spectrum Scale management API endpoints* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*. You can also access the documentation corresponding to each API command from the GUI itself. The API documentation is available in the GUI at: <https://<IP address or host name of API server>:<port>/ibm/api/explorer/>. For example: <https://scalegui.ibm.com:443/ibm/api/explorer>.

## Management GUI changes

The following changes are made to the GUI:

- Improved quota management features. The changes made to the **Files > Quotas** page are as follows:
  - You can now define both capacity and inode quotas for users, user groups, and filesets from the **Files > Quotas** page.
  - Introduced **Defaults** tab to improve user experience for defining and enabling default quotas for user, group, and fileset.
  - Introduced **Settings** tab. You can perform actions such as enable quota, disable quota, set quota accounting scope, check quota, and set grace time periods.
- Added options to configure user authentication for NFS and SMB protocol user access from the **Services > File Authentication** page.
- To prevent files from being changed or deleted unexpectedly, you can use the integrated archive mode (IAM) mode. You can set this option from the **Files > Filesets** page while creating the fileset or when you modify it.
- You can modify the list of file auditing events to be included in the file audit log by using the edit option that is available against **Events logged by file audit logging** option that is available under the Properties tab of the detailed view of File Systems page. You can access the detailed view of a file system by selecting **View Details** option that is available in the **Actions** menu.
- Introduced option in the **Files > Information Lifecycle** page to define a migration to external pool rule to migrate the data from local pool to external pools like tape or transparent cloud tiering.
- Introduced **Configure External Authentication** option in the **Services > GUI > External Authentication** page to configure an LDAP-based authentication method on an external authentication server for GUI user access management.
- NFS and SMB Performance details can be easily monitored through the newly introduced performance charts and metrics in the NFS Exports and SMB Shares pages.
- The **Protocols > NFS Exports** page now offers effective management of NFS client definitions and support for pseudo paths for NFSv4.
- Introduced separate Exports and Client Definition views in the **Protocols > NFS Exports** page for better manageability of client definitions.
- The following navigation menu updates are made in the GUI:
  - Removed the Access and Settings menus.
  - Introduced Cluster and Support menus.



- Moved File System ACL page from Access menu to Files menu.
- Moved Remote Connections page from Access menu to newly introduced Cluster menu.
- Moved Command Audit Log page from the Access menu to Monitoring menu.
- Moved Event Notifications page from the Settings menu to newly introduced Support menu.
- Moved Diagnostic Data and Call Home pages from the Settings menu to the new Support menu.
- Moved Network page to Cluster menu.

#### mmces command enhancements

The **node suspend** command has been extended with the `--stop` option, which stops all the running CES services.

The **node resume** command has been extended with the `--start` option, which starts all the enabled protocols.

For more information, see the *mmces command* section in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

#### NFS changes

- Increased send queues leading to improved NFS performance.
- Statistics counters for NFSv3, NFSv4 protocol versions and RPC queues provided might help identify the probable area of performance bottlenecks.
- Memory consumption and Readdir / listing improvements for CES NFS service that runs on protocol nodes.

#### Object changes

Updated the **mmobj** command with a new password file. For more information, see the topic *mmobj command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

#### SMB changes

- Support for SMB 3.1.1. SMB protocol version 3.1.1 is now supported with IBM Spectrum Scale. Support is automatically enabled on new installations. When upgrading, the support can be enabled by making the config change: `/usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/net conf setparm global 'server max protocol' SMB3_11`

**Note:** The limitations still apply. For more information, see the *SMB limitations* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide*.

- The SYNCHRONIZE bit in NFSv4 ACLS is now honored by the SMB server. Note that this bit is expected to be set for many file operations on Windows clients. For more information, see the *NFS V4 ACL Syntax* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
- FSCTL\_SET\_ZERO\_DATA is now supported on sparse files.

#### System Health changes

##### mmhealth command enhancements

##### The mmhealth command print output form can be selected

The **node show**, **cluster show**, and **node eventlog** commands can now have a color or non-colored output. For more information, see the *mmhealth command* section in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

##### The mmhealth command re-syncs health state and events

The **node show** commands can now re-sync all the health states and events of the current node with the cluster state manager. For more information, see the *mmhealth command* section in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*. command.

|       **The `mmhealth` command displays the unhealthy components**

|       The **`cluster show`** commands can now display the unhealthy components. For  
| more information, see the *mmhealth command* section in the *IBM Spectrum Scale:*  
| *Command and Programming Reference*.

|       **The `mmhealth` command displays health state of call home and NVMe components**

|       The **`node show`** and **`cluster show`** commands can now display the health state for  
| call home and NVMe components. For more information, see the *mmhealth*  
| *command* section in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

|       **Identifying ACTIVE THRESHOLD MONITOR role**

|       A pmcollector node that has been granted the ACTIVE THRESHOLD MONITOR role can now be  
| identified. For more information, see the *Monitoring the health of a node* section and the *Use*  
| *case 4 in the Threshold monitoring use case* section in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem*  
| *Determination Guide*.

|       **Call Home changes**

|       **Automatic data upload options for call home**

|       Following enhancements have been made to the automatic upload function in callhome:

|       **Event-based uploads**

- Added more events to the event-based uploads.
- Improved the performance and scalability of the uploads.

|       For more information on event-based uploads, see the *Event -based uploads* section  
| in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

|       **Heartbeats**

|       This type of upload is done once daily by each call home master node. The call  
| home master nodes sends basic cluster information to ECuRep. For more  
| information on heartbeats, see the *Heartbeats feature for call home* section in the  
| *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

|       **Other improvements**

- Performance improvement for **`mmcallhome`** command
- Scalability improvements for the scheduled data collection
- Call Home packages no longer needed for call home child nodes
- Perl-dependencies for **`gpfs.callhome`** removed
- SLES 15 support available

|       **Watch folder**

|       In IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.3, watch folder has a clustered watch capability. An entire file system,  
| fileset, or inode space can be watched. For more information, see *Introduction to clustered watch* in  
| the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide*.

|       **Documented commands, structures, and subroutines**

|       The following section lists the modifications to the documented commands, structures, and  
| subroutines:

|       **New commands**

|       There are no new commands in this release.

|       **New structures**

|       There are no new structures.

|       **New subroutines**

|       The following subroutine is new:

- **`gpfs_add_filesystem_watch`**

## Changed commands

The following commands are changed:

- **mmaddnode**
- **mmbuildgpl**
- **mmcallhome**
- **mmces**
- **mmchattr**
- **mmchcluster**
- **mmchconfig**
- **mmchfileset**
- **mmchqos**
- **mmcloudgateway**
- **mmcrcluster**
- **mmcrfileset**
- **mmcrfs**
- **mmdiag**
- **mmdelldisk**
- **mmfsck**
- **mmhealth**
- **mmkeyserv**
- **mmisattr**
- **mmnetverify**
- **mmobj**
- **mmsdrrestore**
- **mmuserauth**
- **mmwatch**
- **spectrumscale**

## Changed structures

There are no changed structures.

## Changed subroutines

There are no changed subroutines.

## Deleted commands

There are no deleted commands.

## Deleted structures

There are no deleted structures.

## Deleted subroutines

There are no deleted subroutines.

## Messages

The following are the new, changed, and deleted messages:

### New messages

6027-1285, 6027-1397, 6027-1965, 6027-3735, 6027-3736, 6027-3737, 6027-3738, 6027-3739, 6027-3740, 6027-3741, 6027-3742, 6027-3743, 6027-3744, 6027-3745, 6027-3746, 6027-3747, 6027-3748, 6027-3749, 6027-3938, 6027-3939, 6027-3940, 6027-3941, 6027-3942, 6027-3943, 6027-4100, 6027-4101, 6027-4102, 6027-4103, 6027-4104, 6027-4105, 6027-4106, 6027-4107, 6027-4108, 6027-4200, 6027-4201, 6027-4202, 6027-4203, 6027-4204, 6027-4205, 6027-4206, and 6027-4207

### Changed messages

6027-2409, 6027-2410, and 6027-2411

### Deleted messages

None.

### Changes in documentation

#### List of documentation changes in product guides and respective Knowledge Center sections

The following is a list of documentation changes including changes in topic titles, changes in placement of topics, and deleted topics:

Table 3. List of changes in documentation

Guide	Knowledge center section	List of changes
Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide	Installing	Moved the following topic under <i>Preparing to install the GPFS software on Linux nodes</i> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>For Linux on Z: <i>Changing the kernel settings in IBM Spectrum Scale: Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide</i></li></ul>
Administration Guide	Configuring	Moved the following topic under <i>Configuring and tuning your system for Cloud services</i> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><i>Configuration command execution matrix in IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide</i></li></ul>
	Administering	Added the following topic under <i>Administering AFM</i> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><i>Example of AFM support for kerberos-enabled NFS protocol exports in IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide</i></li></ul>
Problem determination Guide	Monitoring	Changed the location of the following sections under <i>Performance monitoring</i> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Moved the <i>Viewing and analyzing the performance data under Performance monitoring in the IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide</i>.</li><li>Moved the <i>Removing non-detectable resource identifiers from the performance monitoring tool database and Performance monitoring limitations</i> sections under <i>Using the performance monitoring tool in the IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide</i>.</li></ul>
		Moved the following topic under <i>Viewing and analyzing the performance data</i> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><i>Performance monitoring using IBM Spectrum Scale GUI in the IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide</i>.</li></ul>
		Changed the name of following section: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><i>Performance monitoring tool overview</i> to <i>Using the performance monitoring tool in the IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide</i>.</li></ul>
		Restructured the content in the <i>Monitoring, uploading, and sharing collected data with IBM® Support</i> section into the following three topics: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li><i>Space requirements for call home data upload</i></li><li><i>Types of call home data upload</i></li><li><i>Uploading custom files using call homeEnd of change</i></li></ul>
		Changed the location of the following sections under <i>Troubleshooting</i> : <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Moved the <i>Failures using the mmpmon command</i> section under <i>Performance issues in the IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide</i>.</li></ul>





---

# Chapter 1. Introducing IBM Spectrum Scale

---

## Overview of IBM Spectrum Scale

IBM Spectrum Scale is a cluster file system that provides concurrent access to a single file system or set of file systems from multiple nodes. The nodes can be SAN attached, network attached, a mixture of SAN attached and network attached, or in a shared nothing cluster configuration. This enables high performance access to this common set of data to support a scale-out solution or to provide a high availability platform.

IBM Spectrum Scale has many features beyond common data access including data replication, policy based storage management, and multi-site operations. You can create a cluster of AIX nodes, Linux nodes, Windows server nodes, or a mix of all three. IBM Spectrum Scale can run on virtualized instances providing common data access in environments, leverage logical partitioning, or other hypervisors. Multiple IBM Spectrum Scale clusters can share data within a location or across wide area network (WAN) connections.

## The strengths of IBM Spectrum Scale

IBM Spectrum Scale provides a global namespace, shared file system access among IBM Spectrum Scale clusters, simultaneous file access from multiple nodes, high recoverability and data availability through replication, the ability to make changes while a file system is mounted, and simplified administration even in large environments.

For more information, see the following:

- “Improved system performance” on page 2
- “File consistency” on page 2
- “Increased data availability” on page 2
- “Enhanced system flexibility” on page 3
- “Shared file system access among IBM Spectrum Scale clusters”
- “Simplified storage management” on page 4
- “Simplified administration” on page 4

## Shared file system access among IBM Spectrum Scale clusters

IBM Spectrum Scale allows you to share data between separate clusters within a location or across a WAN.

IBM Spectrum Scale clusters are independently managed but IBM Spectrum Scale also shares data access through remote cluster mounts. This is known as a multicluster environment. When multiple clusters are configured to access the same IBM Spectrum Scale file system, IBM Global Security Kit (GSKit) can be used to authenticate and check authorization for all network connections.

GSKit can be used for authentication and to encrypt data passed between the clusters. If you use a GSKit cipher, the data is encrypted for transmissions.

The multicluster environment has the following features:

- The cluster that is hosting the file system can specify different security levels for each cluster authorized to mount a particular file system.
- The local cluster can remain active while changing security keys. Periodic changing of keys is necessary for a variety of reasons:
  - The number of keys should remain small to facilitate good performance.

- Key changes prevent use or continued use of compromised keys.
- As a matter of policy, some institutions require security keys to be changed periodically.

IBM Spectrum Scale uses public key authentication in a manner similar to the host-based authentication mechanism of OpenSSH. Each cluster has a pair of these keys that identify the cluster. In addition, each cluster also has an `authorized_keys` list. Each line in the `authorized_keys` list contains the public key of one remote cluster and a list of the file systems that that cluster is authorized to mount. For details about multicluster (remote mount) file system access, see *Accessing a remote GPFS file system* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

For related information, see *Active file management* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Improved system performance

Using GPFS file systems can improve system performance in a number of ways.

- Allowing multiple processes or applications on all nodes in the cluster simultaneous access to the same files. That is, it allows concurrent reads and writes from multiple nodes.
- Increasing aggregate bandwidth of your file system by spreading reads and writes across multiple disks.
- Balancing the load evenly across all disks to maximize their combined throughput, eliminating storage hotspots.
- Supporting very large file and file system sizes.
- Allowing concurrent reads and writes from multiple nodes.
- Provides sophisticated token management that handles fast and fine grained access to cluster, file system, and file resources.
- Allowing for the specification of multiple networks for GPFS daemon communication and for GPFS administration command usage within your cluster.

Achieving high throughput to a single, large file requires striping data across multiple disks and multiple disk controllers. Rather than relying on striping in a separate volume manager layer, GPFS implements striping in the file system. Managing its own striping affords GPFS the control it needs to achieve fault tolerance and to balance load across adapters, storage controllers, and disks. Large files in GPFS are divided into equal sized blocks, and consecutive blocks are placed on different disks in a round-robin fashion.

GPFS automatically detects common data access patterns and automatically begins pre-fetching data accordingly. This pre-fetching and caching provides high throughput and fast response times. Some of the recognized I/O patterns include sequential, reverse sequential, and various forms of strided access patterns.

## File consistency

IBM Spectrum Scale provides concurrent access to clients across the cluster by utilizing sophisticated token management. This provides concurrent and detailed access to IBM Spectrum Scale features, file systems, and file resources.

For more information, see “GPFS architecture” on page 9.

## Increased data availability

GPFS provides multiple features that improve the reliability of your file system. This includes automatic features like file system logging and configurable features like intelligently mounting file systems on startup to providing tools for flexible synchronous replication.

GPFS allows you to organize your storage hardware into *failure groups*. A failure group is defined as a set of disks that share a common point of failure that could cause them all to become simultaneously unavailable. Failure groups are defined by the system administrator, so care needs to be taken when



defining disks to ensure proper failure group isolation. When used in conjunction with the *replication* feature of GPFS, the creation of multiple failure groups provides for increased file availability should a group of disks fail. Replication in GPFS ensures that there is a copy of each block of replicated data and metadata on disks in different failure groups. In this case, should a set of disks become unavailable, GPFS fails over to the replicated copies in another failure group.

During configuration, you assign a replication factor to indicate the total number of copies of data and metadata you wish to store. Currently, the maximum replication factor is 3. Replication allows you to set different levels of protection for each file or one level for an entire file system. Since replication uses additional disk space and requires extra write time, you should consider the impact of replication on your application, especially if the replication is occurring over a WAN. To reduce the overhead involved with the replication of data, you may also choose to replicate only metadata as a means of providing additional file system protection. For further information on GPFS replication, see “File system replication parameters” on page 177.

GPFS is a logging file system. It creates separate logs for each file system. GPFS automatically replicates recovery logs if multiple failure groups are available. When used in conjunction with geographic based replication, disaster recovery abilities are provided. For further information on failure groups, see “Network Shared Disk (NSD) creation considerations” on page 164. For further information on disaster recovery with GPFS, see *Data Mirroring and Replication in IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

Once your file system is created, it can be configured to mount whenever the GPFS daemon is started. This feature assures that whenever the system and disks are up, the file system will be available. When utilizing shared file system access among GPFS clusters, to reduce overall GPFS control traffic you may decide to mount the file system when it is first accessed. This is done through either the **mmremotefs** command or the **mmchfs** command using the **-A automount** option. GPFS mount traffic may be reduced by using automatic mounts instead of mounting at GPFS startup. Automatic mounts only produce additional control traffic at the point that the file system is first used by an application or user. Mounting at GPFS startup on the other hand produces additional control traffic at every GPFS startup. Thus startup of hundreds of nodes at once may be better served by using automatic mounts. However, when exporting the file system through Network File System (NFS) mounts, it might be useful to mount the file system when GPFS is started.

## Enhanced system flexibility

With GPFS, your system resources are not frozen. You can add or delete disks while the file system is mounted.

When the time is favorable and system demand is low, you can rebalance the file system across all currently configured disks.

With the QoS capability, you can prevent I/O-intensive, long-running administration commands from dominating file system performance and significantly delaying other tasks.

You can also add or delete nodes without having to stop and restart the GPFS daemon on all nodes.

**Note:** GPFS allows a large number of quorum nodes to facilitate maintaining quorum and continued cluster operation. GPFS also allows a tiebreaker disk configuration to further enhance cluster availability. For additional information, refer to “Quorum” on page 152.

If the physical connection to the disk is broken, GPFS dynamically switches disk access to the server nodes and continues to provide data through NSD server nodes. GPFS falls back to local disk access when it discovers that the path has been repaired.

After GPFS has been configured for your system, depending on your applications, hardware, and workload, you can re-configure GPFS to increase throughput. You can set up your GPFS environment for

your current applications and users, secure in the knowledge that you can expand in the future without jeopardizing your data. GPFS capacity can grow as your hardware expands.

## **Simplified storage management**

IBM Spectrum Scale can help you achieve information lifecycle management (ILM) through powerful policy-driven, automated tiered storage management.

IBM Spectrum Scale provides storage management based on the definition and use of:

- Storage pools
- Policies
- Filesets

### **Storage pools**

A *storage pool* is a collection of disks or RAID configurations with similar properties that are managed together as a group. Storage pools provide a method to partition storage within a file system. While you plan how to configure your storage, consider factors such as:

- Improved price-performance by matching the cost of storage to the value of the data
- Improved performance by:
  - Reducing the contention for premium storage
  - Reducing the impact of slower devices
- Improved reliability by providing for:
  - Replication based on need
  - Better failure containment

### **Policies**

Files are assigned to a storage pool based on defined *policies*. Policies provide for:

#### **Placement policies**

Placing files in a specific storage pool when the files are created

#### **File management policies**

- Migrating files from one storage pool to another
- Deleting files based on file characteristics
- Changing the replication status of files
- Snapshot metadata scans and file list creation
- Compressing static files

### **Filesets**

*Filesets* provide a method for partitioning a file system and allow administrative operations at a finer granularity than the entire file system. For example, filesets allow you to:

- Define data block and inode quotas at the fileset level
- Apply policy rules to specific filesets
- Create snapshots at the fileset level

For further information on storage pools, filesets, and policies, see *Information lifecycle management for IBM Spectrum Scale* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## **Simplified administration**

GPFS offers many of the standard file system interfaces allowing most applications to execute without modification.

Operating system utilities complement the GPFS utilities. That is, you can continue to also use the commands you have always used for ordinary file operations. For more information, see “Considerations for GPFS applications” on page 241.

GPFS administration commands are similar in name and function to UNIX and Linux file system commands with one important difference: *the GPFS commands operate on multiple nodes*. A single GPFS command can perform an administration function across the entire cluster. See the individual commands as documented in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

GPFS commands save configuration and file system information in one or more files. These are collectively known as GPFS cluster configuration data files. GPFS maintains the consistency of its configuration files across the cluster and this provides accurate and consistent confirmation information. See “Cluster configuration data files” on page 26.

## The basic IBM Spectrum Scale structure

IBM Spectrum Scale is a clustered file system defined over one or more nodes. On each node in the cluster, IBM Spectrum Scale consists of three basic components: administration commands, a kernel extension, and a multithreaded daemon.

For more information, see the following topics:

1. “GPFS administration commands”
2. “The GPFS kernel extension”
3. “The GPFS daemon”
4. For nodes in your cluster operating with the Linux operating system, “The GPFS open source portability layer” on page 6

For a detailed discussion of IBM Spectrum Scale, see “GPFS architecture” on page 9.

### GPFS administration commands

GPFS administration commands are scripts and programs that control the operation and configuration of GPFS.

By default, GPFS commands can be executed from any node in the cluster. If tasks need to be done on another node in the cluster, the command automatically redirects the request to the appropriate node for execution. For administration commands to be able to operate, passwordless remote shell communications between the nodes is required.

For more information, see the *Requirements for administering a GPFS file system* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

### The GPFS kernel extension

The GPFS kernel extension provides the interfaces to the operating system vnode and virtual file system (VFS) layer to register GPFS as a native file system.

Structurally, applications make file system calls to the operating system, which presents them to the GPFS file system kernel extension. GPFS uses the standard mechanism for the operating system. In this way, GPFS appears to applications as just another file system. The GPFS kernel extension will either satisfy these requests using resources which are already available in the system, or send a message to the GPFS daemon to complete the request.

### The GPFS daemon

The GPFS daemon performs all I/O operations and buffer management for GPFS. This includes read-ahead for sequential reads and write-behind for all writes not specified as synchronous. I/O operations are protected by GPFS token management, which ensures consistency of data across all nodes in the cluster.

The daemon is a multithreaded process with some threads dedicated to specific functions. Dedicated threads for services requiring priority attention are not used for or blocked by routine work. In addition

to managing local I/O, the daemon also communicates with instances of the daemon on other nodes to coordinate configuration changes, recovery, and parallel updates of the same data structures. Specific functions that execute in the daemon include:

1. Allocation of disk space to new files and newly extended files. This is done in coordination with the file system manager.
2. Management of directories including creation of new directories, insertion and removal of entries into existing directories, and searching of directories that require I/O.
3. Allocation of appropriate locks to protect the integrity of data and metadata. Locks affecting data that may be accessed from multiple nodes require interaction with the token management function.
4. Initiation of actual disk I/O on threads of the daemon.
5. Management of user security and quotas in conjunction with the file system manager.

The GPFS Network Shared Disk (NSD) component provides a method for cluster-wide disk naming and high-speed access to data for applications running on nodes that do not have direct access to the disks.

The NSDs in your cluster may be physically attached to all nodes or serve their data through an NSD server that provides a virtual connection. You are allowed to specify up to eight NSD servers for each NSD. If one server fails, the next server on the list takes control from the failed node.

For a given NSD, each of its NSD servers must have physical access to the same NSD. However, different servers can serve I/O to different non-intersecting sets of clients. The existing subnet functions in GPFS determine which NSD server should serve a particular GPFS client.

**Note:** GPFS assumes that nodes within a subnet are connected using high-speed networks. For additional information on subnet configuration, refer to “Using public and private IP addresses for GPFS nodes” on page 17.

GPFS determines if a node has physical or virtual connectivity to an underlying NSD through a sequence of commands that are invoked from the GPFS daemon. This determination, which is called *NSD discovery*, occurs at initial GPFS startup and whenever a file system is mounted.

**Note:** To manually cause this discovery action, use the **mmnsddiscover** command. For more information, see *mmnsddiscover command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

This is the default order of access used during NSD discovery:

1. Local block device interfaces for SAN, SCSI, IDE, or DASD disks
2. NSD servers

This order can be changed with the **useNSDserver** mount option.

It is suggested that you always define NSD servers for the disks. In a SAN configuration where NSD servers have also been defined, if the physical connection is broken, GPFS dynamically switches to the server nodes and continues to provide data. GPFS falls back to local disk access when it has discovered the path has been repaired. This is the default behavior, and it can be changed with the **useNSDserver** file system mount option.

For further information, see “Disk considerations” on page 162 and “NSD disk discovery” on page 25.

## The GPFS open source portability layer

On Linux platforms, GPFS uses a loadable kernel module that enables the GPFS daemon to interact with the Linux kernel. Source code is provided for the portability layer so that the GPFS portability can be built and installed on a wide variety of Linux kernel versions and configuration.

When installing GPFS on Linux, you build a portability module based on your particular hardware platform and Linux distribution to enable communication between the Linux kernel and GPFS. For more information, see “Building the GPFS portability layer on Linux nodes” on page 261.

## **IBM Spectrum Scale cluster configurations**

An IBM Spectrum Scale cluster can be configured in a variety of ways. The cluster can be a heterogeneous mix of hardware platforms and operating systems.

IBM Spectrum Scale clusters can contain a mix of all supported node types including Linux, AIX, and Windows Server and these operating systems can run on various hardware platforms such as IBM POWER®, x86-based servers, and IBM Z®. These nodes can all be attached to a common set of SAN storage or through a mix of SAN and network attached nodes. Nodes can all be in a single cluster, or data can be shared across multiple clusters. A cluster can be contained in a single data center or spread across geographical locations. To determine which cluster configuration is best for your application start by determining the following:

- Application I/O performance and reliability requirements
- Properties of the underlying storage hardware
- Administration, security, and ownership considerations

Understanding these requirements helps you determine which nodes require direct access to the disks and which nodes should access the disks over a network connection through an NSD server.

There are four basic IBM Spectrum Scale Configurations:

- All nodes attached to a common set of LUNS
- Some nodes are NSD clients
- A cluster is spread across multiple sites
- Data is shared between clusters

### **All nodes attached to a common set of LUNS**

In this type of configuration, all of the nodes in the cluster are connected to a common set of LUNS (for example, over a SAN). The following are areas to consider with this configuration:

- The maximum number of nodes accessing a LUN you want to support
- The fact that you cannot mix different operating systems with IBM Spectrum Scale to directly access the same set of LUNs on SAN.

For an example, see Figure 1 on page 8.

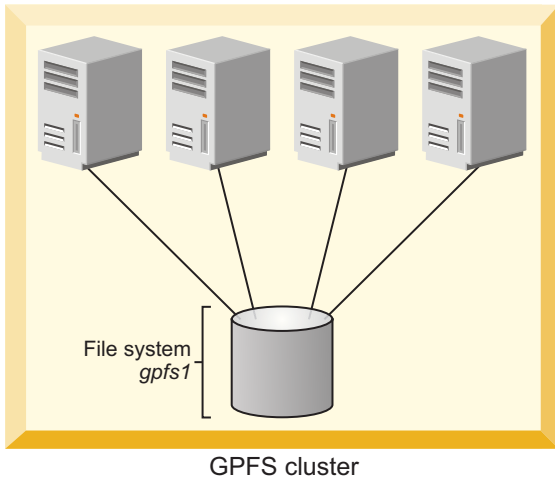


Figure 1. A cluster with disks that are SAN-attached to all nodes

### Some nodes are NSD clients

In this type of configuration, only some nodes are connected to disks. Other nodes access the disks using the NSD path.

For an example, see Figure 2.

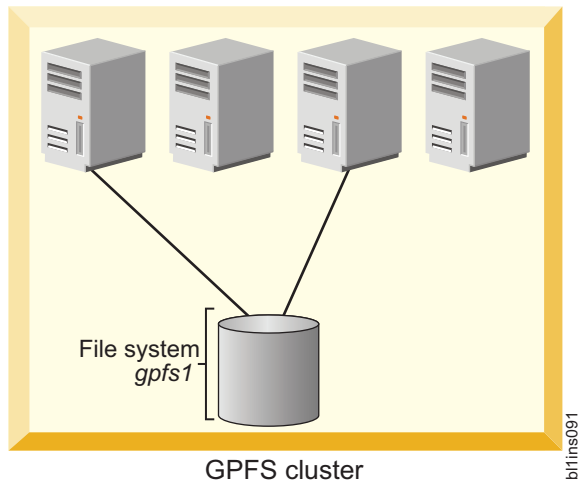


Figure 2. A cluster with some nodes connected to disks

### IBM Spectrum Scale Servers and clients

You can configure an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster in which some nodes have a direct attachment to the disks and others access the disks through other IBM Spectrum Scale nodes. This configuration is often used in large clusters or to provide a cost-effective, high-performance solution.

When an IBM Spectrum Scale node is providing access to a disk for another IBM Spectrum Scale node, the node that provides access is called an NSD Server. The node that accesses the data through an NSD server is called an IBM Spectrum Scale client.

## Sharing data across multiple IBM Spectrum Scale clusters

IBM Spectrum Scale allows you to share data across multiple IBM Spectrum Scale clusters. After a file system is mounted in another IBM Spectrum Scale cluster, all access to the data is the same as if you were in the host cluster. You can connect multiple clusters within the same data center or across long distances over a WAN. In a multicluster configuration, each cluster can be placed in a separate administrative group simplifying administration or provide a common view of data across multiple organizations.

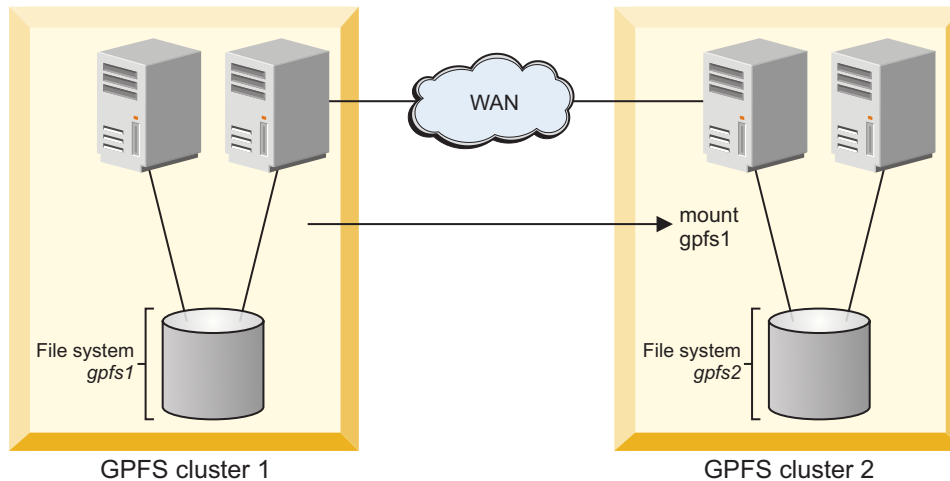


Figure 3. A multicluster configuration

**Note:** For more information, see *Accessing a remote GPFS file system in IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

---

## GPFS architecture

Use this information to understand the architecture of GPFS.

Interaction between nodes at the file system level is limited to the locks and control flows required to maintain data and metadata integrity in the parallel environment.

A discussion of GPFS architecture includes:

- “Special management functions”
- “Use of disk storage and file structure within a GPFS file system” on page 12
- “GPFS and memory” on page 15
- “GPFS and network communication” on page 17
- “Application and user interaction with GPFS” on page 19
- “NSD disk discovery” on page 25
- “Failure recovery processing” on page 25
- “Cluster configuration data files” on page 26
- “GPFS backup data” on page 27

## Special management functions

In general, GPFS performs the same functions on all nodes. It handles application requests on the node where the application exists. This provides maximum affinity of the data to the application.

In the following cases, one node provides a more global function affecting the operation of multiple nodes. These are nodes acting as:

1. "The GPFS cluster manager"
2. "The file system manager"
3. "The metanode" on page 12
4. "CES node (protocol node)" on page 12
5. "AFM Gateway node" on page 12

## The GPFS cluster manager

There is one GPFS cluster manager per cluster. The cluster manager is chosen through an election held among the set of quorum nodes designated for the cluster.

See "Quorum" on page 152 for more information.

The cluster manager performs the following tasks:

- Monitors disk leases.
- Detects failures and manages recovery from node failure within the cluster.

The cluster manager determines if a quorum of nodes exists to allow the GPFS daemon to start and for file system usage to continue.

- Distributes certain configuration changes that must be known to nodes in remote clusters.
- Selects the *file system manager* node.

The cluster manager prevents multiple nodes from assuming the role of file system manager to avoid data corruption. The token management service resides on the file system manager node and any other nodes you specify. For more information, see *Using multiple token servers* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

- Handles UID mapping requests from remote cluster nodes.
- Aggregates health information from all nodes in the cluster.

To identify the cluster manager, issue the **mmfsmgr -c** command. For more information, see *mmfsmgr command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

To change the cluster manager, issue the **mmchmgr -c** command. For more information, see *mmchmgr command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## The file system manager

There is one file system manager per file system, which handles all of the nodes using the file system.

The services provided by the file system manager include:

1. File system configuration

Processes the following file system changes:

- Adding disks
- Changing disk availability
- Repairing the file system

Mount and unmount processing is performed on both the file system manager and the node requesting the service.

2. Management of disk space allocation

Controls which regions of disks are allocated to each node, allowing effective parallel allocation of space.

3. Token management



The file system manager node may also perform the duties of the token manager server. If you have explicitly designated some of the nodes in your cluster as file system manager nodes, then the token server load will be distributed among all of the designated manager nodes. For more information, see *Using multiple token servers* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

The token management server coordinates access to files on shared disks by granting tokens that convey the right to read or write the data or metadata of a file. This service ensures the consistency of the file system data and metadata when different nodes access the same file. The status of each token is held in two places:

- a. On the token management server
- b. On the token management client holding the token

The first time a node accesses a file it must send a request to the token management server to obtain a corresponding **read** or **write** token. After having been granted the token, a node may continue to read or write to the file without requiring additional interaction with the token management server. This continues until an application on another node attempts to read or write to the same region in the file.

The normal flow for a token is:

- A message to the token management server.  
The token management server then either returns a granted token or a list of the nodes that are holding conflicting tokens.
- The token management function at the requesting node then has the responsibility to communicate with all nodes holding a conflicting token and get them to relinquish the token.  
This relieves the token server of having to deal with all nodes holding conflicting tokens. In order for a node to relinquish a token, the daemon must give it up. First, the daemon must release any locks that are held using this token. This may involve waiting for I/O to complete.

#### 4. Quota management

In a quota-enabled file system, the file system manager node automatically assumes quota management responsibilities whenever the GPFS file system is mounted. Quota management involves:

- Allocating disk blocks to nodes that are writing to the file system
- Comparing the allocated space to the quota limits at regular intervals

##### Notes:

- a. To reduce the number of space requests from nodes writing to the file system, the quota manager allocates more disk blocks than requested (see “Enabling quotas” on page 179). That allows nodes to write to the file system without having to go to the quota manager and check quota limits each time they write to the file system.
- b. File systems that have quotas enabled and more than 100,000 users or groups should avoid designating nodes as manager where memory is low or that are otherwise heavily loaded because of the high memory demands for quota manager operations.

The file system manager is selected by the cluster manager. If a file system manager should fail for any reason, a new file system manager is selected by the cluster manager and all functions continue without disruption, except for the time required to accomplish the takeover.

Depending on the application workload, the memory and CPU requirements for the services provided by the file system manager may make it undesirable to run a resource intensive application on the same node as the file system manager. GPFS allows you to control the pool of nodes from which the file system manager is chosen through:

- The **mmcrcluster** command, when creating your cluster
- The **mmaddnode** command, when adding nodes to your cluster
- The **mmchnode** command, to change a node's designation at any time

These preferences are honored except in certain failure situations where multiple failures occur. For more information, see *Multiple file system manager failures in IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*. You may list which node is currently assigned as the file system manager by issuing the **mmismgr** command or change which node has been assigned to this task through the **mmchmgr** command.

## The metanode

There is one metanode per open file. The metanode is responsible for maintaining file metadata integrity.

In almost all cases, the node that has had the file open for the longest continuous period of time is the metanode. All nodes accessing a file can read and write data directly, but updates to metadata are written only by the metanode. The metanode for each file is independent of that for any other file and can move to any node to meet application requirements.

## CES node (protocol node)

Only nodes that are designated as CES nodes can serve integrated protocol function.

Nodes in the cluster can be designated to be CES nodes using **mmchnode --ces-enable Node**. Each CES node will serve each of the protocols (NFS, SMB, Object) that are enabled. CES IP addresses assigned for protocol serving can failover to any of CES nodes that are up based on the failback policy configured. CES functionality can be designated only on nodes running on supported operating systems, and all the CES nodes must have the same platform (either all Intel or all POWER Big Endian).

For information about supported operating systems and their required minimum kernel levels, see IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html))

For more information about Cluster Export Services, see *Implementing Cluster Export Services and Configuring the CES and protocol configuration* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

### Related concepts:

“Protocols support overview: Integration of protocol access methods with GPFS” on page 28  
IBM Spectrum Scale provides additional protocol access methods. Providing these additional file and object access methods and integrating them with GPFS offers several benefits. It enables users to consolidate various sources of data efficiently in one global namespace. It provides a unified data management solution and enables not only efficient space utilization but also avoids having to make unnecessary data moves just because access methods might be different.

## AFM Gateway node

Each cache fileset in a cluster is served by one of the nodes designated as the gateway in the cluster.

The gateway node that is mapped to a fileset is called the primary gateway of the fileset. The primary gateway acts as the owner of the fileset and communicates with the home cluster. While using parallel data transfers, the primary gateway might also communicate with other participating gateway nodes for data transfer to home clusters.

All other nodes in the cluster, including other gateways, become the application nodes of the fileset. Therefore any node in the cache cluster can function as a gateway node and an application node for different filesets based on configuration of the node.

## Use of disk storage and file structure within a GPFS file system

A file system (or stripe group) consists of a set of disks that store file data, file metadata, and supporting entities such as quota files and recovery logs.

When a disk is assigned to a file system, a file system descriptor is written on each disk. The *file system descriptor* is written at a fixed position on each of the disks in the file system and is used by GPFS to

identify this disk and its place in a file system. The file system descriptor contains file system specifications and information about the state of the file system.

Within each file system, files are written to disk as in other UNIX file systems, using inodes, indirect blocks, and data blocks. Inodes and indirect blocks are considered *metadata*, as distinguished from data, or actual file content. You can control which disks GPFS uses for storing metadata when you create the file system with the **mmcrfs** command or when you modify the file system with the **mmchdisk** command.

The metadata for each file is stored in the inode and contains information such as file size and time of last modification. The inode also sets aside space to track the location of the data of the file. On file systems that are created in IBM Spectrum Scale v3.5 or later, if the file is small enough that its data can fit within this space, the data can be stored in the inode itself. This method is called data-in-inode and improves the performance and space utilization of workloads that use many small files. Otherwise, the data of the file must be placed in data blocks, and the inode is used to find the location of these blocks. The location-tracking space of the inode is then used to store the addresses of these data blocks. If the file is large enough, the addresses of all of its data blocks cannot be stored in the inode itself, and the inode points instead to one or more levels of indirect blocks. These trees of additional metadata space for a file can hold all of the data block addresses for large files. The number of levels that are required to store the addresses of the data block is referred to as the *indirection level* of the file.

To summarize, on file systems that are created in v3.5 or later, a file typically starts out with data-in-inode. When it outgrows this stage, or if the file system was created before v3.5, the inode stores direct pointers to data blocks; this arrangement is considered a zero level of indirection. When more data blocks are needed, the indirection level is increased by adding an indirect block and moving the direct pointers there; the inode then points to this indirect block. Subsequent levels of indirect blocks are added as the file grows. The dynamic nature of the indirect block structure allows file sizes to grow up to the file system size.

For security reasons, encrypted files skip the data-in-inode stage. They always begin at indirection level zero.

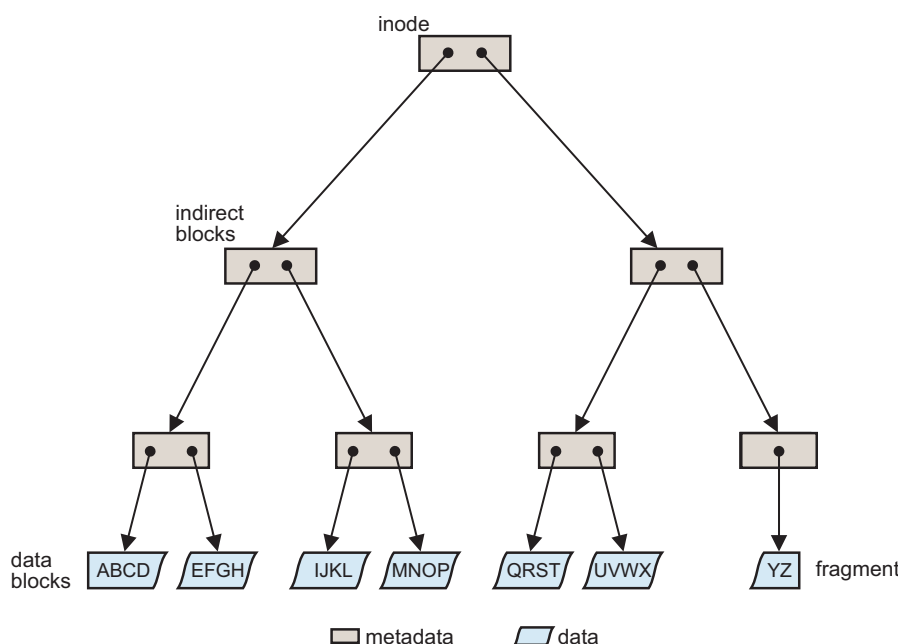


Figure 4. GPFS files have a typical UNIX structure

#### File system limitations:

1. The maximum number of mounted file systems within a GPFS cluster is 256.
2. The supported file system size depends on the version of GPFS that is installed.
3. The maximum number of files within a file system cannot exceed the architectural limit.

For the latest information on these file system limitations, see the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

GPFS uses the file system descriptor to find all of the disks that make up the file system's stripe group, including their size and order. Once the file system descriptor is processed, it is possible to address any block in the file system. In particular, it is possible to find the first inode, which describes the *inode file*, and a small number of inodes that contain the rest of the file system information. The inode file is a collection of fixed-length records that represent a single file, directory, or link. The unit of locking is the single inode. Specifically, there are fixed inodes within the inode file for the following components:

- Root directory of the file system
- *Block allocation map*, which is a collection of bits that represent the availability of disk space within the disks of the file system. One unit in the allocation map represents a subblock. A subblock is the smallest unit of contiguous disk space that can be allocated to a file. Block size, subblock size, and the number of subblocks per block are set when the file system is created and cannot be changed afterward. For more information, see the topic *mmcrfs command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*. The allocation map is broken into regions that reside on disk sector boundaries. The number of regions is set at file system creation time by the parameter that specifies how many nodes will access this file system. The regions are separately locked and as a result, different nodes can be allocating or deallocating space that is represented by different regions independently and concurrently.
- *Inode allocation map*, which represents the availability of inodes within the inode file. The *Inode allocation map* is located in the *inode allocation file*, and represents all the files, directories, and links that can be created. The **mmchfs** command can be used to change the maximum number of files that can be created in the file system up to the architectural limit.

The data contents of each of these files are taken from the data space on the disks. These files are considered metadata and are allocated only on disks where metadata is allowed. For more information, see the topic *mmcrfs command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## Quota files

For file systems with quotas enabled, quota files are created at file system creation time.

**Note:** Starting in GPFS 4.1, quota files no longer exist externally or they are no longer visible from the root directory of the file system; therefore, use **mmbackupconfig** to back up GPFS quota information.

There are three quota files for a file system:

- **user.quota** for users
- **group.quota** for groups
- **fileset.quota** for filesets

For every user who works within the file system, the **user.quota** file contains a record of limits and current usage within the file system for the individual user. If default quota limits for new users of a file system have been established, this file also contains a record for that value.

For every group whose users work within the file system, the **group.quota** file contains a record of common limits and the current usage within the file system of all the users in the group. If default quota limits for new groups of a file system have been established, this file also contains a record for that value.

For every fileset, the **fileset.quota** file contains a record of limits and current usage within the fileset. If default quota limits for filesets have been established, this file also contains a record for that value. The

quota limit on blocks and inodes in a fileset are independent of the limits for specific users or groups of users. During allocation, the corresponding limits for users, groups, and filesets are checked and the lowest threshold is applied.

## GPFS recovery logs

GPFS recovery logs are created at file system creation. Additional recovery logs are automatically created as needed. The file system manager assigns a recovery log to each node that accesses the file system.

GPFS maintains the atomicity of the on-disk structures of a file through a combination of rigid sequencing of operations and logging. The data structures maintained are the inode, indirect blocks, the allocation map, and the data blocks. Data blocks are written to disk before any control structure that references the data is written to disk. This ensures that the previous contents of a data block can never be seen in a new file. Allocation blocks, inodes, and indirect blocks are written and logged in such a way that there will never be a pointer to a block marked unallocated that is not recoverable from a log.

Recovery logs are replicated only if default metadata replication is turned on (**-m 2**) or if explicitly enabled for logs (**--log-replicas 2**). You can check to see if log replication is enabled for a file system using the **mmfsfs** command and looking at the value of the **-m** and **--log-replicas** parameters. If both are set, the **--log-replicas** value takes precedence over the **-m** value for log replication.

There are certain failure cases where blocks are marked allocated but not yet assigned to a file, and these can be recovered by running **mmfsck** in online or offline mode. Log recovery is run as part of:

1. The recovery of a node failure affecting the objects that the failed node might have had locked.
2. A **mount** after the file system has been unmounted everywhere.

**Note:** Space that is not used by metadata, quota files, and recovery logs is used for user data and directories and allocated from the block allocation map as needed.

## GPFS and memory

GPFS uses three areas of memory: memory allocated from the kernel heap, memory allocated within the daemon segment, and shared segments accessed from both the daemon and the kernel.

### Memory allocated from the kernel heap

GPFS uses kernel memory for control structures such as vnodes and related structures that establish the necessary relationship with the operating system.

### Memory allocated within the daemon segment

GPFS uses daemon segment memory for file system manager functions. Because of that, the file system manager node requires more daemon memory since token states for the entire file system are initially stored there. File system manager functions requiring daemon memory include:

- Structures that persist for the execution of a command
- Structures that persist for I/O operations
- States related to other nodes

The file system manager is a token manager, and other nodes may assume token management responsibilities; therefore, any manager node may consume additional memory for token management. For more information, see *Using multiple token servers* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

### Shared segments accessed from both the daemon and the kernel

Shared segments consist of both pinned and unpinned memory that is allocated at daemon startup. The initial values are the system defaults. However, you can change these values later using the **mmchconfig** command. See “Cluster configuration file” on page 162.

The pinned memory is called the *pagepool* and is configured by setting the **pagepool** cluster configuration attribute. This pinned area of memory is used for storing file data and for

optimizing the performance of various data access patterns. In a non-pinned area of the shared segment, GPFS keeps information about open and recently opened files. This information is held in two forms:

1. A full inode cache
2. A stat cache

## Pinned memory

GPFS uses pinned memory (also called page pool memory) for storing file data and metadata in support of I/O operations.

With some access patterns, increasing the amount of page pool memory can increase I/O performance. Increased page pool memory can be useful in the following cases:

- There are frequent writes that can be overlapped with application execution.
- There is frequent reuse of file data that can fit in the page pool.
- The I/O pattern contains various sequential reads large enough that the prefetching of data improves performance.

Pinned memory regions cannot be swapped out to disk, which means that GPFS will always consume at least the value of the **pagepool** attribute in system memory. So consider the memory requirements of GPFS and other applications running on the node when determining a value for the **pagepool** attribute.

## Non-pinned memory

There are two levels of cache used to store file metadata.

### Inode cache

The inode cache contains copies of inodes for open files and for some recently used files that are no longer open. The **maxFilesToCache** parameter controls the number of inodes cached by GPFS. Every open file on a node consumes a space in the inode cache. Additional space in the inode cache is used to store the inodes for recently used files in case another application needs that data.

The number of open files can exceed the value defined by the **maxFilesToCache** parameter to enable applications to operate. However, when the **maxFilesToCache** number is exceeded, there is no more caching of recently open files, and only open file inode data is kept in the cache.

### Stat cache

The stat cache contains enough information to respond to inquiries about the file and open it, but not enough information to read from it or write to it. There is sufficient data from the inode in the stat cache to respond to a **stat()** call (for example, when issuing the **ls -l** command on a UNIX node). A stat cache entry consumes significantly less memory than a full inode. Stat cache entries are kept for the following:

- Recently accessed files
- Directories recently accessed by a number of **stat()** calls

To set the value of the stat cache, use the **maxStatCache** attribute of the **mmchconfig** command.

### Notes:

1. GPFS prefetches data for stat cache entries if a pattern of use indicates this will be productive (for example, if a number of **ls -l** commands issued for a large directory).
2. In versions of IBM Spectrum Scale earlier than 5.0.2, the stat cache is not effective on the Linux platform unless the Local Read-Only Cache (LROC) is configured. For more information, see the description of the **maxStatCache** parameter in the topic *mmchconfig command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*. The size of the GPFS shared segment can limit the maximum setting of **maxStatCache**.
3. Each entry in the inode cache and the stat cache requires appropriate tokens:

- a. To ensure the cached information remains correct
  - b. For the storage of tokens on the file system manager node
4. Depending on the usage pattern, system performance may degrade when an information update requires revoking a token. This happens when two or more nodes share the same information and the most recent information is moved to a different location. When the current node needs to access the updated information, the token manager must revoke the token from the current node before that node can access the information in the new location.

## GPFS and network communication

Within the GPFS cluster, you can specify different networks for GPFS daemon communication and for GPFS command usage.

You make these selections using the **mmaddnode**, **mmchnode**, and **mmcrcluster** commands. In these commands, the node descriptor allows you to specify separate node interfaces for those functions on each node. The correct operation of GPFS is directly dependent upon these selections.

GPFS may not work properly if there is a firewall enabled on the nodes within the cluster. To ensure proper operation, you must either configure the firewall to allow the appropriate ports or disable the firewall. For more information, see *GPFS port usage* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide* and *mmnetverify* command in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

### GPFS daemon communication

In a cluster environment, the GPFS daemon depends on the correct operation of TCP/IP.

These dependencies exist because:

- The communication path between nodes must be built at the first attempt to communicate.
- Each node in the cluster is required to communicate with the cluster manager and the file system manager during startup and mount processing.
- Once a connection is established, it must remain active until the GPFS daemon is shut down on the nodes.

**Note:** Establishing other communication paths depends upon application usage among nodes.

The daemon also uses sockets to communicate with other instances of the file system on other nodes. Specifically, the daemon on each node communicates with the file system manager for allocation of logs, allocation segments, and quotas, as well as for various recovery and configuration flows. GPFS requires an active internode communications path between all nodes in a cluster for locking, metadata coordination, administration commands, and other internal functions. The existence of this path is necessary for the correct operation of GPFS. The instance of the GPFS daemon on a node will go down if it senses that this communication is not available to it. If communication is not available to another node, one of the two nodes will exit GPFS.

### Using public and private IP addresses for GPFS nodes:

GPFS permits the system administrator to set up a cluster such that both public and private IP addresses are in use. For example, if a cluster has an internal network connecting some of its nodes, it is advantageous to use private IP addresses to communicate on this network, and public IP addresses to communicate to resources outside of this network.

Public IP addresses are those that can be used to access the node from any other location for which a connection exists. Private IP addresses may be used only for communications between nodes directly connected to each other with a communications adapter. Private IP addresses are assigned to each node

at hardware setup time, and must be in a specific address range (IP addresses on a 10.0.0.0, 172.16.0.0, or 192.168.0.0 subnet). For more information on private IP addresses, refer to RFC 1597 - Address Allocation for Private Internets ([www.ip-doc.com/rfc/rfc1597](http://www.ip-doc.com/rfc/rfc1597)).

The **subnets** operand on the **mmchconfig** command specifies an ordered list of **subnets** available to GPFS for private TCP/IP communications. Each subnet listed may have a list of cluster names (allowing shell-style wild cards) that specifies other GPFS clusters that have direct access to the same subnet.

When the GPFS daemon starts on a node, it obtains a list of its own IP addresses and associated subnet masks from its local IP configuration. For each IP address, GPFS checks whether that address is on one of the subnets specified on the **subnets** configuration parameter. It records the list of its matching IP addresses and subnet masks, and then listens for connections on any of these addresses. If any IP address for the node (specified when the cluster was created or when the node was added to the cluster), is not specified with the **subnets** configuration parameter, GPFS automatically adds it to the end of the node's IP address list.

Therefore, when you use public IP addresses for a node, there is no need to explicitly list the public IP subnet with the **subnets** configuration parameter. For example, the normal way to configure a system would be to use host names that resolve to the external Ethernet IP address in the **mmcrcluster** command, and then, if the system administrator wants GPFS to use the High Performance Switch within the cluster, add one **subnets** configuration parameter for the HPS subnet. It is acceptable to add two **subnets** configuration parameters, one for the HPS and one for the external Ethernet, making sure that they are in that order. In this case, it does not matter which of each node's two addresses was specified when the cluster was created or when the node was added to the cluster. For example, to add remote access to an existing cluster that was using only switch addresses, it is sufficient to add two **subnets** configuration parameters.

When a node joins a cluster (its own cluster on startup, or another cluster when mounting a file system owned by another cluster), the node sends its list of IP addresses (ordered according to the order of **subnets** configuration parameters) to the cluster manager node, which forwards the list to all other nodes as part of the join protocol. No other additional information needs to be propagated.

When a node attempts to establish a connection to another node, GPFS determines the destination IP address to use according to this procedure:

1. For each of its own IP addresses, it searches the other node's list of IP addresses for an address that is on the same subnet.
  - For normal public IP addresses this is done by comparing IP address values ANDed with the node's subnet mask for its IP address.
  - For private IP addresses GPFS assumes that two IP addresses are on the same subnet only if the two nodes are within the same cluster, or if the other node is in one of the clusters that are explicitly listed in the **subnets** configuration parameter.
2. If the two nodes have more than one IP address pair on a common subnet, GPFS uses the first one found according to the order of **subnets** specified in the initiating node's configuration parameters.
3. If a given pair of nodes do not share a common subnet defined by the **subnets** configuration parameter, IBM Spectrum Scale uses the network based on the daemon address of the node, which is automatically added as the last entry in each node's network address list.

**Note:** When you use subnets, both the interface corresponding to the daemon address and the interface that matches the subnet settings must be operational.

For more information and an example, see *Using remote access with public and private IP addresses* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.



## Network communication and GPFS administration commands

Socket communications are used to process GPFS administration commands. Depending on the nature of the command, GPFS may process commands either on the node issuing the command or on the file system manager. The actual command processor merely assembles the input parameters and sends them along to the daemon on the local node using a socket.

Some GPFS commands permit you to specify a separate administrative network name. You make this specification using the **AdminNodeName** field of the node descriptor. For additional information, see *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference* for descriptions of these commands:

- **mmaddnode**
- **mmchnode**
- **mmcrcluster**

If the command changes the state of a file system or its configuration, the command is processed at the file system manager. The results of the change are sent to all nodes and the status of the command processing is returned to the node, and eventually, to the process issuing the command. For example, a command to add a disk to a file system originates on a user process and:

1. Is sent to the daemon and validated.
2. If acceptable, it is forwarded to the file system manager, which updates the file system descriptors.
3. All nodes that have this file system are notified of the need to refresh their cached copies of the file system descriptor.
4. The return code is forwarded to the originating daemon and then to the originating user process.

Be aware this chain of communication may allow faults related to the processing of a command to occur on nodes other than the node on which the command was issued.

## Application and user interaction with GPFS

There are four ways to interact with a GPFS file system.

You can interact with a GPFS file system using:

- The IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI described in “Introduction to IBM Spectrum Scale GUI” on page 100
- Operating system commands, which are run at GPFS daemon initialization time or at file system mount time (see “Operating system commands”)
- Operating system calls such as **open()**, from an application requiring access to a file controlled by GPFS (see “Operating system calls” on page 20)
- GPFS commands described in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*
- GPFS programming interfaces described in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*
- IBM Spectrum Scale management API described in “IBM Spectrum Scale management API” on page 103

### Operating system commands

Operating system commands operate on GPFS data during the following scenarios.

- The initialization of the GPFS daemon
- The mounting of a file system

#### Initialization of the GPFS daemon:

GPFS daemon initialization can be done automatically as part of the node startup sequence, or manually using the **mmstartup** command.

The daemon startup process loads the necessary kernel extensions, if they have not been previously loaded by another process. The daemon then waits for the cluster manager to declare that a quorum exists. When quorum is achieved, the cluster manager changes the state of the group from *initializing* to *active*. You can see the transition to active state when the “mmfsd ready” message appears in the GPFS log file (`/var/adm/ras/mmfs.log.latest`) or by running the **mmgetstate** command. When this state changes from *initializing* to *active*, the daemon is ready to accept mount requests.

### The mounting of a file system:

GPFS file systems are mounted using the GPFS **mmmount** command.

On AIX or Linux you can also use the operating system's **mount** command. GPFS mount processing builds the structures required to provide a path to the data and is performed on both the node requesting the mount and the file system manager node. If there is no file system manager, a call is made to the cluster manager, which appoints one. The file system manager ensures that the file system is ready to be mounted. The file system manager ensures that each of the following is true:

- There are no conflicting utilities being run by the **mmfsck** command, which checks and repairs a file system.
- There are no conflicting utilities being run by the **mmcheckquota**, which checks file system user, group and fileset quotas.
- All of the disks are available.
- Any necessary file system log processing is completed to ensure that metadata on the file system is consistent.

On the local node, the control structures required for a mounted file system are initialized and the token management function domains are created. In addition, paths to each of the disks that make up the file system are opened. Part of mount processing involves unfencing the disks, which may be necessary if this node had previously failed. This is done automatically without user intervention. If insufficient disks are up, the mount will fail. That is, in a replicated system if two disks are down in different failure groups, the mount will fail. In a non-replicated system, one disk down will cause the mount to fail.

### Operating system calls

The most common interface to files residing in a GPFS file system is through normal file system calls to the operating system.

When a file is accessed, the operating system submits the request to the GPFS kernel extension, which attempts to satisfy the application request using data already in memory. If this can be accomplished, control is returned to the application through the operating system interface. If the data is not available in memory, the request is transferred for execution by a daemon thread. The daemon threads wait for work in a system call in the kernel, and are scheduled as necessary. Services available at the daemon level include the acquisition of tokens and disk I/O.

Operating system calls operate on GPFS data during:

- The opening of a file
- The reading of data
- The writing of data

### Opening a GPFS file:

The **open** of a file residing in a GPFS file system involves the application making a call to the operating system specifying the name of the file.

Processing of a file **open** involves two stages:

1. Identifying the file specified by the application

## 2. Building the required data structures based on the inode

The kernel extension code processes the directory search. If the required information is not in memory, the daemon is called to acquire the necessary tokens for the directory or part of the directory needed to resolve the lookup, then reads the directory from disk into memory.

The lookup process occurs one directory at a time in response to calls from the operating system. In the final stage of **open**, the inode for the file is read from disk and connected to the operating system vnode structure. This requires acquiring locks on the inode and a lock that indicates the presence to the metanode. The metanode is discovered or created any time a file is opened.

- If no other node has this file open, this node becomes the metanode.
- If another node has a previous open, then that node is the metanode and this node interfaces directly with the metanode for metadata operations.

If the **open** involves the creation of a new file, the appropriate locks are obtained on the parent directory and the inode allocation file block. The directory entry is created, an inode is selected and initialized and then **open** processing is completed.

### Reading file data:

The GPFS **read** function is invoked in response to a **read** system call.

File **read** processing falls into three levels of complexity based on system activity and status:

1. Buffers are available in memory
2. Tokens are available in memory but data must be read
3. Data and tokens must be acquired

At the completion of a **read**, a determination of the need for prefetching is made. GPFS computes a desired read-ahead for each open file based on the performance of the disks, the data access pattern and the rate at which the application is reading data. If additional prefetching is needed, a message is sent to the daemon that processes it asynchronously with the completion of the current **read**.

#### *Buffer and locks available in memory:*

The simplest **read** operation occurs when the data is already available in memory, either because it has been pre-fetched or because it has been read recently by another **read** call.

In either case, the buffer is locally locked and the data is copied to the application data area. The lock is released when the copy is complete. Note that no token communication is required because possession of the buffer implies that the node at least has a read token that includes the buffer. After the copying, prefetching is initiated if appropriate.

#### *Tokens available locally but data must be read:*

The second, more complex, type of **read** operation is necessary when the data is not in memory.

This occurs under three conditions:

1. The token has been acquired on a previous **read** that found no contention.
2. The buffer has been stolen for other uses.
3. On some random **read** operations.

In the first of a series of reads, the token is not available locally, but in the second read it might be available.

In such situations, the buffer is not found and must be read from disk. No token activity has occurred because the node has a sufficiently strong token to lock the required region of the file locally. A message is sent to the daemon, which is handled on one of the waiting daemon threads. The daemon allocates a buffer, locks the file range that is required so the token cannot be stolen for the duration of the I/O, and initiates the I/O to the device holding the data. The originating thread waits for this to complete and is posted by the daemon upon completion.

*Data and tokens must be acquired:*

The third, and most complex **read** operation requires that tokens and data be acquired on the application node.

The kernel code determines that the data is not available locally and sends a message to the daemon waiting after posting the message. The daemon thread determines that it does not have the required tokens to perform the operation. In that case, a token acquire request is sent to the token management server. The requested token specifies a required length of that range of the file, which is needed for this buffer. If the file is being accessed sequentially, a desired range of data, starting at this point of this read and extending to the end of the file, is specified. In the event that no conflicts exist, the desired range is granted, eliminating the need for additional token calls on subsequent reads. After the minimum token needed is acquired, the flow proceeds with the token management process described in “The file system manager” on page 10.

### Writing file data:

**write** processing is initiated by a system call to the operating system, which calls GPFS when the **write** involves data in a GPFS file system.

GPFS moves data from a user buffer into a file system buffer synchronously with the application **write** call, but defers the actual write to disk. This asynchronous I/O technique allows better scheduling of the disk I/O operations and improved performance. The file system buffers come from the memory allocated based on the **pagepool** parameter in the **mmchconfig** command. Increasing the size of the pagepool may allow more writes to be deferred, which can improve performance in certain workloads.

A block of data is scheduled to be written to a disk when:

- The application has specified a synchronous **write**.
- The system needs the memory used to buffer the written data.
- The file token has been revoked.
- The last byte of a block of a file being written sequentially is written.
- A system **sync** command is run.

Until one of these occurs, the data remains in GPFS memory.

**write** processing falls into three levels of complexity based on system activity and status:

1. Buffer available in memory
2. Tokens available locally but data must be read
3. Data and tokens must be acquired

Metadata changes are flushed under a subset of the same conditions. They can be written either directly, if this node is the metanode, or through the metanode, which merges changes from multiple nodes. This last case occurs most frequently if processes on multiple nodes are creating new data blocks in the same region of the file.

#### *Buffer available in memory:*

The simplest path involves a case where a buffer already exists for this block of the file but may not have a strong enough token.

This occurs if a previous **write** call accessed the block and it is still resident in memory. The write token already exists from the prior call. In this case, the data is copied from the application buffer to the GPFS buffer. If this is a sequential **write** and the last byte has been written, an asynchronous message is sent to the daemon to schedule the buffer for writing to disk. This operation occurs on the daemon thread overlapped with the execution of the application.

#### *Token available locally but data must be read:*

There are two situations in which the token may exist but the buffer does not.

1. The buffer has been recently stolen to satisfy other needs for buffer space.
2. A previous **write** obtained a desired range token for more than it needed.

In either case, the kernel extension determines that the buffer is not available, suspends the application thread, and sends a message to a daemon service thread requesting the buffer. If the **write** call is for a full file system block, an empty buffer is allocated since the entire block will be replaced. If the **write** call is for less than a full block and the rest of the block exists, the existing version of the block must be read and overlaid. If the **write** call creates a new block in the file, the daemon searches the allocation map for a block that is free and assigns it to the file. With both a buffer assigned and a block on the disk associated with the buffer, the **write** proceeds as it would in "Buffer available in memory."

#### *Data and tokens must be acquired:*

The third, and most complex path through **write** occurs when neither the buffer nor the token exists at the local node.

Prior to the allocation of a buffer, a token is acquired for the area of the file that is needed. As was true for **read**, if sequential operations are occurring, a token covering a larger range than is needed will be obtained if no conflicts exist. If necessary, the token management function will revoke the needed token from another node holding the token. Having acquired and locked the necessary token, the **write** will continue as in "Token available locally but data must be read."

#### **The stat() system call:**

The **stat()** system call returns data on the size and parameters associated with a file. The call is issued by the **ls -l** command and other similar functions.

The data required to satisfy the **stat()** system call is contained in the inode. GPFS processing of the **stat()** system call differs from other file systems in that it supports handling of **stat()** calls on all nodes without funneling the calls through a server.

This requires that GPFS obtain tokens that protect the accuracy of the metadata. In order to maximize parallelism, GPFS locks inodes individually and fetches individual inodes. In cases where a pattern can be detected, such as an attempt to **stat()** all of the files in a larger directory, inodes will be fetched in parallel in anticipation of their use.

Inodes are cached within GPFS in two forms:

1. Full inode
2. Limited stat cache form

The full inode is required to perform data I/O against the file.

The stat cache form is smaller than the full inode, but is sufficient to open the file and satisfy a **stat()** call. It is intended to aid functions such as **ls -l**, **du**, and certain backup programs that scan entire directories looking for modification times and file sizes.

These caches and the requirement for individual tokens on inodes are the reason why a second invocation of directory scanning applications may run faster than the first.

## GPFS command processing

GPFS commands fall into two categories: those that are processed locally and those that are processed at the file system manager for the file system involved in the command.

The file system manager is used to process any command that alters the state of the file system. When commands are issued and the file system is not mounted, a file system manager is appointed for the task. The **mmchdisk** command and the **mmfsck** command represent two typical types of commands that are processed at the file system manager.

### The **mmchdisk** command:

The **mmchdisk** command is issued when a failure that caused the unavailability of one or more disks has been corrected. The need for the command can be determined by the output of the **mmlsdisk** command.

**mmchdisk** performs four major functions:

- It changes the availability of the disk to **recovering**, and to **up** when all processing is complete. All GPFS utilities honor an availability of **down** and do not use the disk. **recovering** means that recovery has not been completed but the user has authorized use of the disk.
- It restores any replicas of data and metadata to their correct value. This involves scanning all metadata in the system and copying the latest to the recovering disk. Note that this involves scanning large amounts of data and potentially rewriting all data on the disk. This can take a long time for a large file system with a great deal of metadata to be scanned.
- It stops or suspends usage of a disk. This merely involves updating a disk state and should run quickly.
- Change disk attributes' metadata.

Subsequent invocations of **mmchdisk** will attempt to restore the replicated data on any disk left in with an availability of **recovering**

For more information, see *mmchdisk command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

### The **mmfsck** command:

The **mmfsck** command repairs file system structures.

The **mmfsck** command operates in two modes:

1. online
2. offline

For performance reasons, GPFS logging allows the condition where disk blocks are marked **used** but not actually part of a file after a node failure. The online version of **mmfsck** cleans up that condition. Running **mmfsck -o -n** scans the file system to determine if correction might be useful. The online version of **mmfsck** runs on the file system manager and scans all inodes and indirect blocks looking for disk blocks that are allocated but not used. If authorized to repair the file system, it releases the blocks. If not authorized to repair the file system, it reports the condition to standard output on the invoking node.

The offline version of **mmfsck** is the last line of defense for a file system that cannot be used. It will most often be needed in the case where GPFS recovery logs are not available because of disk media failures.

The **mmfsck** command runs on the file system manager and reports status to the invoking node. It is mutually incompatible with any other use of the file system and checks for any running commands or any nodes with the file system mounted. It exits if any are found. It also exits if any disks are **down** and require the use of **mmchdisk** to change them to **up** or **recovering**. The **mmfsck** command performs a full file system scan looking for metadata inconsistencies. This process can be lengthy on large file systems. It seeks permission from the user to repair any problems that are found, which may result in the removal of files or directories that are corrupt. The processing of this command is similar to those for other file systems.

For more information, see *mmfsck command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## NSD disk discovery

When the GPFS daemon starts on a node, it discovers the disks defined as NSDs by reading a disk descriptor that is written on each disk owned by GPFS. This enables the NSDs to be found regardless of the current operating system device name assigned to the disk.

On UNIX, NSD discovery is done by the GPFS shell script **/usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mmdevdiscover**, which generates a list of available disk devices that appear in the node's local **/dev** file system. To override or enhance NSD discovery, you can create a script and name it **/var/mmfs/etc/nsddevices**. The user-created **nsddevices** script, if it exists, is executed before the default discovery process.

On Windows, NSDs have a GUID Partition Table (GPT) with a single GPFS partition. NSD discovery is done by scanning the system for a list of disks that contain a GPFS partition.

On all platforms, the list of disk devices is then used by the GPFS daemon to determine whether a device interface on the local node maps to an NSD name recorded in the configuration database. The process of mapping a device interface to an NSD involves GPFS opening each device in turn and reading any NSD volume identifier potentially recorded at sector two of the disk.

If GPFS discovers that an NSD volume identifier read from a disk device matches the volume identifier recorded with the NSD name in the GPFS configuration database, I/O for the local node proceeds over the local device interface.

If no device mapping appears on the local node for a particular NSD, I/O proceeds over the IP network to the first NSD server specified in the server list for that NSD. If the first NSD server in the server list is not available, I/O proceeds sequentially through the server list until it finds an available NSD server.

Consult the **/usr/lpp/mmfs/samples/nsddevices.sample** file for configuration guidelines on how to provide additional disk discovery capabilities unique to your configuration.

## Failure recovery processing

In general, it is not necessary to understand the internals of GPFS failure recovery processing since it is done automatically. However, some familiarity with the concepts might be useful when failures are observed.

It should be noted that only one state change, such as the loss or initialization of a node, can be processed at a time and subsequent changes are queued. This means that the entire failure processing must complete before the failed node can join the group again. All failures are processed first, which means that GPFS handles all failures prior to completing any recovery.

GPFS recovers from a node failure using join or leave processing messages that are sent explicitly by the cluster manager node. The cluster manager node observes that a node has failed when it no longer receives heartbeat messages from the node. The join or leave processing messages are broadcast to the entire group of nodes running GPFS, and each node updates its current status for the failing or joining

node. Failure of the cluster manager node results in a new cluster manager being elected by the cluster. Then the newly elected cluster configuration manager node processes the failure message for the failed cluster manager.

When notified that a node has failed or that the GPFS daemon has failed on a node, GPFS invokes recovery for each of the file systems that were mounted on the failed node. If necessary, new file system managers are selected for any file systems that no longer have one.

The file system manager for each file system ensures the failed node no longer has access to the disks comprising the file system. If the file system manager is newly appointed as a result of this failure, it rebuilds token state by querying the other nodes in the group. After this is complete, the actual recovery of the log of the failed node proceeds. This recovery rebuilds the metadata that was being modified at the time of the failure to a consistent state. In some cases there may be blocks that are allocated that are not part of any file and are effectively lost until **mmfsck** is run, online or offline. After log recovery is complete, the locks held by the failed nodes are released for this file system. When this activity is completed for all file systems, failure processing is done. The last step of this process allows a failed node to rejoin the cluster.

## Cluster configuration data files

GPFS commands store configuration and file system information in one or more files collectively known as GPFS cluster configuration data files. These files are not intended to be modified manually.

The GPFS administration commands are designed to keep these files synchronized between each other and with the GPFS system files on each node in the cluster. The GPFS commands constantly update the GPFS cluster configuration data files and any user modification made to this information may be lost without warning. On AIX nodes this includes the GPFS file system stanzas in **/etc/filesystems** and on Linux nodes the lists in **/etc/fstab**.

The GPFS cluster configuration data is stored in the **/var/mmfs/gen/mmsdrfs** file. This file is stored on the nodes designated as the *primary GPFS cluster configuration server* and, if specified, the secondary GPFS cluster configuration server. See “IBM Spectrum Scale cluster configuration information” on page 160. The first record in the **mmsdrfs** file contains a generation number. Whenever a GPFS command causes something to change in the cluster or any of the file systems, this change is reflected in the **mmsdrfs** file and the generation number is increased by one. The latest generation number is always recorded in the **mmsdrfs** file on the primary and secondary GPFS cluster configuration server nodes.

When running GPFS administration commands, it is necessary for the GPFS cluster configuration data to be accessible to the node running the command. Commands that update the **mmsdrfs** file require that both the primary and, if specified, the secondary GPFS cluster configuration server nodes are accessible. If one of the cluster configuration server nodes is inaccessible, you can designate a new primary or secondary cluster configuration servers using the **mmchcluster** command. Similarly, when the GPFS daemon starts up, at least one of the two server nodes must be accessible.

Starting with GPFS 4.1, the master copy of configuration data files may be stored redundantly on all quorum nodes instead of the separately designated primary/backup configuration server nodes. This method of storing configuration data is called the cluster configuration repository (CCR) and is the default for new clusters created on GPFS 4.1 or later. Existing clusters can be converted to the new repository type using the **-ccr-enable** option of the **mmchcluster** command.

Using CCR has the advantage that full read/write access to the configuration data remains available as long as a majority of quorum nodes are accessible. For example, in a cluster with five quorum nodes, commands that update the **mmsdrfs** file will continue to work normally, even if any two of the five quorum nodes have failed. In a two-node cluster with tiebreaker disks, it is still possible to run commands that change the **mmsdrfs** file if one of the two nodes has failed, as long as the surviving node has access to the tiebreaker disks. In general, full configuration command functionality remains available



as long as enough nodes and, if specified, tiebreaker disks are accessible for GPFS to reach quorum. The CCR also has the advantage that it allows changing the tiebreaker disk configuration, including switching between node-based quorum and node quorum with tiebreaker, without first shutting down GPFS on all of the nodes.

Based on the information in the GPFS cluster configuration data, the GPFS commands generate and maintain a number of system files on each of the nodes in the GPFS cluster.

#### **Linux /etc/fstab**

On Linux nodes, contains lists for all GPFS file systems that exist in the cluster.

#### **AIX /etc/filesystems**

On AIX nodes, contains lists for all GPFS file systems that exist in the cluster.

#### **All GPFS nodes**

##### **/var/mmfs/gen/mmfsNodeData**

Contains GPFS cluster configuration data pertaining to the node.

##### **/var/mmfs/gen/mmsdrfs**

Contains a local copy of the **mmsdrfs** file found on the primary and secondary GPFS cluster configuration server nodes.

##### **/var/mmfs/gen/mmfs.cfg**

Contains GPFS daemon startup parameters.

## **GPFS backup data**

The GPFS **mmbackup** command creates several files during command execution. Some of the files are temporary and deleted at the end of the backup operation. There are other files that remain in the root directory of the fileset or the file system and they must not be deleted.

The **mmbackup** command creates other files that begin with **.mmbackupShadow.\***. These files are associated with the **mmbackup** command and are required for proper backups to be complete, so do not manually delete or change them.

For more information, see *mmbackup command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## **Clustered configuration repository**

The Clustered Configuration Repository (CCR) is used by GPFS and many other IBM Spectrum Scale components like GUI, the CES services and the monitoring service to store files and values across the cluster, and to return requested files and values to the caller.

The CCR is also responsible for electing the cluster manager and for notifying registered nodes about CCR file and value updates by using the User Exist Script (UES) callback mechanism.

Nearly all mm-commands use the CCR function. The master copy of the IBM Spectrum Scale configuration file, **mmsdrfs**, is located in the CCR, and each mm-command tries to pull the current version of the file out of the CCR. The mm-command tries to extract the latest version of the **mmsdrfs** file in case the local version of this configuration file is outdated. .

The information maintained by the CCR is stored redundantly on each quorum node and optionally on one or more tiebreaker disks. The CCR state consists of files and directories under **/var/mmfs/ccr**, as well as the CCR state cached in the memory of the appropriate GPFS daemon. The consistency of CCR state replicas is maintained using a majority consensus algorithm. This means the CCR state from a majority of quorum nodes or tiebreaker disks must be available for the CCR to function properly. For example, a clusters with just one or two quorum nodes and no tiebreaker disks, has zero fault tolerance. In case of

an unavailable CCR state on one of the quorum nodes, the cluster complains of quorum loss. In case the CCR state is unavailable on both quorum nodes, the cluster complains of a broken cluster. You can create fault tolerance by assigning more quorum nodes or tiebreaker disks.

You can get an unavailable CCR state due to one of the following reasons:

- A quorum node has failed, which results in a temporarily unavailable CCR state. In such cases, you must wait until the node restarts.
- A quorum node is permanently lost due to a hardware failure. This includes hardware failure of the internal disk containing the /var/ file system.
- Complete or partial corruption of /var/. For example, a hard power-off of VM host results in the files in /var/mmfs/ccr and its sub-directories being truncated to zero length.

For information on how to recover cluster configuration information when no CCR backup is available, see the topic *Recovery of cluster configuration information when no CCR backup is available* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

---

## Protocols support overview: Integration of protocol access methods with GPFS

IBM Spectrum Scale provides additional protocol access methods. Providing these additional file and object access methods and integrating them with GPFS offers several benefits. It enables users to consolidate various sources of data efficiently in one global namespace. It provides a unified data management solution and enables not only efficient space utilization but also avoids having to make unnecessary data moves just because access methods might be different.

Protocol access methods that are integrated with GPFS are NFS, SMB, and Object access by using OpenStack Swift. While each of these server functions (NFS, SMB and Object) use open source technologies, this integration adds value by providing scaling and by providing high availability by using the clustering technology in GPFS.

The CES BLOCK service provides iSCSI protocol support. You can export a file resident in a GPFS™ file system as a virtual iSCSI volume to an iSCSI initiator by using the iSCSI protocol.

- The integration of file and object serving with GPFS allows the ability to create NFS exports, SMB shares, and OpenStack Swift containers that have data in GPFS file systems for access by client systems that do not run GPFS.
- Some nodes (at least two recommended) in the GPFS cluster have to be designated as protocol nodes (also called CES nodes) from which (non-GPFS) clients can access data that resides in and managed by GPFS by using the appropriate protocol artifacts (exports, shares, or containers).
- The protocol nodes need to have GPFS server license designations.
- The protocol nodes must be configured with “external” network addresses that are used to access the protocol artifacts from clients. The (external) network addresses are different from the GPFS cluster address that is used to add the protocol nodes to the GPFS cluster.
- The integration that is provided allows the artifacts to be accessed from any of the protocol nodes through the configured network addresses. Further, the integration that is provided allows network addresses that are associated with protocol nodes to fail over to other protocol nodes when a protocol node fails.

All protocol nodes must be running on the supported operating systems, and must be of the same architecture. The other nodes in the GPFS cluster could be on other platforms and operating systems.

For information about supported operating systems for protocol nodes and their required minimum kernel levels, see IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

Like GPFS, the protocol serving functionality is also delivered only as software.

- The intent of the functionality is to provide access to data managed by GPFS through more access methods.
- While the protocol function provides several aspects of NAS file serving, the delivery is not a NAS appliance. Therefore, in other words, the GPFS-style command line interface requiring root access is still available, and GPFS is not like an appliance from an administrative management perspective.
- Role-based access control of the command line interface is not offered.
- Further, the types of workloads suited for this delivery continue to be workloads that require the scaling/consolidation aspects that are associated with traditional GPFS.

**Note:** Some NAS workloads might not be suited for delivery in the current release. For instance, extensive use of snapshots, or support for a large number of SMB users. For SMB limitations, see “SMB limitations” on page 217.

For more information, see IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

Along with the protocol-serving function, the delivery includes the installation toolkit as well as some performance monitoring infrastructure.

- The GPFS code, including the server function for the three (NFS, SMB, Object) protocols, along with the installation toolkit and performance monitoring infrastructure, are delivered via a self-extracting archive package just like traditional GPFS.
- The use of the protocol server function requires extra licenses that need to be accepted. A GPFS package without protocols continues to be provided for those users who do not wish to accept these additional license terms.

**Note:** Even though some of the components that are provided are open source, the specific packages that are provided must be used. If there are existing versions of these open source packages on your system, they must be removed before you install this software.

Several commands are introduced or enhanced to enable the use of the described functions.

- The commands for managing these functions include **spectrumscale**, **mmces**, **mmuserauth**, **mmnfs**, **mmsmb**, **mmobj**, and **mmperfmon**.
- In addition, **mmdumpperfdata** and **mmprotocoltrace** are provided to help with data collection and tracing.
- Existing GPFS commands are expanded with some options for protocols include **mmcluster**, **mmchnode**, and **mmchconfig**.
- The **gpfs.snap** command is enhanced to include data by gathering about the protocols to help with problem determination.

For information on the use of CES including administering and managing the protocols, see the *Implementing Cluster Export Services* chapter of *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

IBM Spectrum Scale enables you to build a **data ocean** solution to eliminate silos, improve infrastructure utilization, and automate data migration to the best location or tier of storage anywhere in the world. You can start small with just a few commodity servers by fronting commodity storage devices and then grow to a data lake architecture or even an ocean of data. IBM Spectrum Scale is a proven solution in some of the most demanding environments with massive storage capacity under the single global namespace. Furthermore, your data ocean can store either files or objects and you can run analytics on the data in-place, which means that there is no need to copy the data to run your jobs.

The installation toolkit is provided to help with the installation and configuration of GPFS as well as protocols.

- While it is designed for a user who might not be familiar with GPFS, it can help ease the installation and configuration process of protocols even for experienced GPFS administrators.
- The installation toolkit can help with prechecks to validate environment, distribution of the RPMs from one node to the other nodes, and multiple GPFS administrative steps. **spectrumscale deploy** can be used to configure protocols on an existing GPFS cluster with an existing GPFS file system.

**Note:** The installation toolkit is only supported on some operating systems. Therefore, all nodes in the cluster must be running on supported operating systems if you want to use the **spectrumscale install** command. All protocol nodes must be on supported operating systems if you want to use the **spectrumscale deploy** command.

In addition to the installation toolkit, IBM Spectrum Scale also includes a performance monitoring toolkit. Sensors to collect performance information are installed on all protocol nodes, and one of these nodes is designated as a collector node. The **mmperfmon query** command can be used to view the performance counters that have been collected.

The **mmhealth** command can be used to monitor the health of the node and the services hosted on that node.

#### Some protocol use considerations:

- At time of release, several features in GPFS are not explicitly tested with protocol functionality. These include Local Read Only Cache, Multicluster, Encryption, File Placement Optimizer, and Hierarchical Storage Management. This is expected to work with protocols and will be tested with protocols over time. However, if you use one of these features before IBM claims support of it, ensure that it is tested with the expected workloads before you put it into production.

For protocol support on remote clusters, see *Using NFS/SMB protocol over remote cluster mounts* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

- Use of Clustered NFS (CNFS) is not compatible with use of Clustered Export Service (CES). You must choose one or the other. CNFS (which uses kernel NFS, a different NFS stack than the stack used by the CES infrastructure) continues to be supported; however, if you choose CNFS, you cannot take advantage of the integration of SMB and Object server functionality. If you choose to migrate from CNFS to CES, the CES infrastructure does not support a complete equivalent of CNFS group feature to control failover of IP addresses.
- For information regarding specific limitations about protocols and their integration with GPFS, see the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)) and IBM Spectrum Scale in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/ibmspectrumscale\\_welcome.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/ibmspectrumscale_welcome.html)).

## NFS support overview

The NFS support for IBM Spectrum Scale enables clients to access the GPFS file system by using NFS clients with their inherent NFS semantics.

The following features are provided:

### Clustered NFS Support

NFS clients can connect to any of the protocol nodes and get access to the exports defined. A clustered registry makes sure that all nodes see the same configuration data. This means that it does not matter to the client to which of the CES nodes the connections are established. Moreover, the state of opened files is also shared among the CES nodes so that data integrity is maintained. On failures, clients can reconnect to another cluster node as the IP addresses of failing nodes are automatically transferred to another healthy cluster node. The supported protocol levels are NFS version 3 (NFSv3) and NFS version 4 (NFSv4.0).

## Export management commands

With the **mmnfs export** command, IBM Spectrum Scale provides a comprehensive entry point to manage all NFS-related export tasks such as creating, changing, and deleting NFS exports. The **mmnfs export** command follows the notions of supported options, that is, a limited set of NFS-related options that have proven useful. For more information, see the **mmnfs** command in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## Export configuration commands

With the **mmnfs config** command, IBM Spectrum Scale provides a tool for administering the global NFS configuration. You can use this command to set and list default settings such as the port number for the NFS service, the default access mode for exported file systems, and the NFS server log level. This command follows the notions of supported options, that is, a limited set of NFS-related options that have proven useful. For more information, see the **mmnfs** command in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## NFS monitoring

The monitoring framework detects issues with the NFS services and triggers failover in case of an unrecoverable error. Moreover, the **mmces** command provides a quick access to current and past system states and these states enable you to diagnose issues with the NFS services on the CES nodes. Issues that are detected and causing failover are, for example, GPFS daemon failures, node failures, or NFS service failures. For more information, see the **mmces** command in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## Integrated install

The integrated installer allows the installation of NFS services, CES framework, and the other protocols (SMB and Object), if desired.

## NFS performance metrics

The NFS services provide performance metrics that are collected by the performance monitor framework. The **mmperfmon query** tool provides access to the most important NFS metrics through predefined queries. For more information, see the **mmperfmon** command in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## Cross-protocol integration with SMB

IBM Spectrum Scale enables concurrent access to the same file data by using NFS, SMB, and native POSIX access (limitations apply). The first release does not allow the sharing of data through the traditional file protocols and Object.

## Authentication and ID mapping

You can configure NFS services to authenticate against the most popular authentication services such as Microsoft Active Directory and LDAP. Mapping Microsoft security identifiers (SIDs) to the POSIX user and group IDs on the file server can either be done automatically or by using the external ID mapping service like RFC 2307. If none of the offered authentication and mapping schemes match the environmental requirements, the option to establish a user-defined configuration is available. The **mmuserauth service create** command can be used to set up all authentication-related settings. For more information, see the **mmuserauth** command in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## SMB support overview

The SMB support for IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.1 and later allows clients to access the GPFS file system using SMB clients with their inherent SMB semantics.

The following features are provided:

- **Clustered SMB support**

SMB clients can connect to any of the protocol nodes and get access to the shares defined. A clustered registry makes sure that all nodes see the same configuration data, that is, for the client it does not matter to which of the CES nodes the connections are established. Moreover, the state of opened files (share modes, open modes, access masks, locks, etc.) is also shared among the CES nodes so that data integrity is maintained. On failures, clients can reconnect to another cluster node as the IP addresses of failing nodes are transferred to another healthy cluster node. The supported protocol levels are SMB2 and the base functionality of SMB3 (dialect negotiation, secure negotiation, encryption of data on the wire).
- **Export Management command**

With the **mm smb** command IBM Spectrum Scale provides a comprehensive entry point to manage all SMB related configuration tasks like creating, changing, and deleting SMB shares and administering the global configuration. The **mm smb** command follows the notions of supported options, that is, a limited set of SMB related options that have proven useful. Moreover, the Microsoft Management Console can be used to administer SMB shares.
- **SMB monitoring**

The monitoring framework will detect issues with the SMB services and will trigger failover in case of an unrecoverable error. Moreover, the **mm health** and **mm ces** command provide a quick access to current and past system states and aid to diagnose issues with the SMB services on the CES nodes. Issues detected and causing failover are, for example, GPFS daemon failures, node failures, or SMB service failures.
- **Integrated install**

The SMB services are installed by the integrated installer together with the CES framework and the other protocols NFS and Object.
- **SMB Performance metrics**

The SMB services provide two sets of performance metrics that are collected by the performance monitor framework. Thus not just the current metrics can be retrieved but also historic data is available (at some lower granularity). The two sets of metrics are firstly global SMB metrics (like number of connects and disconnects) and secondly metrics for each SMB request (number, time, throughput). The **mmperfmon query** tool provides access to all SMB metrics via predefined queries. Moreover, metrics for the clustered file meta-data base CTDB are collected and exposed via the **mmperfmon query** command.
- **Cross-protocol integration with NFS**

IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.1 and later allows concurrent access to the same file data via SMB, NFS and native POSIX access (limitations apply). IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2 and later releases include unified file and object access using which you can access data using object as well as file interfaces. For more information, see “Unified file and object access overview” on page 34.
- **Authentication and ID Mapping**

The SMB services can be configured to authenticate against the most popular authentication services MS Active Directory and LDAP. Mapping MS security identifiers (SIDs) to the POSIX user and group ids on the file server can either be done automatically using the automatic or an external ID mapping service like RFC 2307. If none of the offered authentication and mapping schemes matches the environmental requirements the option to establish a user-defined configuration is available. The **mmuserauth service create** command can be used to set up all authentication related settings.

  - Limited SMB protocol compatibility with SSSD. SSSD is the recommended choice by RedHat to connect servers to AD, but to provide full SMB authentication we require winbind to work.

## Object storage support overview

IBM Spectrum Scale object storage combines the benefits of IBM Spectrum Scale with the most widely used open source object store, OpenStack Swift.

Data centers are currently struggling to efficiently and cost-effectively store and manage vast amounts of data. The increasing number of application domains, such as analytics, online transaction processing (OLTP), and high-performance computing (HPC), have created silos of storage within data centers. With each new application, a new storage system can be required, forcing system administrators to become experts in numerous storage management tools.

In addition, the set of applications that includes mobile and web-based applications, archiving, backup, and cloud storage has recently created yet another type of storage system for the system administrator to manage: object storage. Objects cannot be updated after they are created (although they can be replaced, versioned, or removed), and in many cases the objects are accessible in an eventually consistent manner. These types of semantics are well suited for images, videos, text documents, virtual machine (VM) images, and other similar files.

IBM Spectrum Scale object storage combines the benefits of IBM Spectrum Scale with the most widely used open source object store today, OpenStack Swift. In IBM Spectrum Scale object storage, data is managed as objects and it can be accessed over the network by using RESTful HTTP-based APIs. This object storage system uses a distributed architecture with no central point of control, providing greater scalability and redundancy. IBM Spectrum Scale object storage organizes data in the following hierarchy:

### 1. Account

An account is used to group or isolate resources. Each object user is part of an account. Object users are assigned to a project (account) in keystone and can access only the objects that reside within the account. Each user is assigned to a project with a role that defines with the user rights and privileges to perform a specific set of operations on the resources of the account to which it belongs. Users can be part of multiple accounts but it is mandatory that a user must be associated with at least one account. You must create at least one account before adding users. Account contains a list of containers in the object storage. You can also define quota at the account level.

**Note:** There is a one-to-one mapping between accounts in the object protocol and the keystone projects.

### 2. Container

Containers contain objects. Each container maintains a list of objects and provides a namespace for the objects. You can create any number of containers within an account.

### 3. Object

Objects store data. You can create, modify, and delete objects. Accounts have containers, and containers store objects. Each object is accessed through a unique URL. The URLs in the API contain the storage account, container name, and object name. You can define quota both at the account and container levels.

IBM Spectrum Scale object storage also offers the following features.

## Storage policies for object storage

Storage policies enable segmenting of the object storage within a single cluster for various use cases.

Currently, OpenStack Swift supports storage policies that allow you to define the replication settings and location of objects in a cluster. For more information about storage policies, see OpenStack Documentation for Storage Policies. IBM Spectrum Scale enhances storage policies to add the following functionality for object storage:

- The file-access object capability (unified file and object access)
- Compression

- Encryption

You can use the **mmobj policy create** command to create a storage policy with the desired functionality from the available options. After a storage policy is created, you can specify that storage policy while creating new containers to associate that storage policy with those containers.

A filesset is associated with the new storage policy. The name of the filesset can be provided optionally as an argument of the **mmobj policy create** command. For information on mapping of storage policy and filesset, see *Mapping of storage policies to filessets* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

For information on creating, listing, and changing storage policies, see *Administering storage policies for object storage* and *mmobj command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide* and *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## Unified file and object access overview

Unified file and object access allows use cases where you can access data using object as well as file interfaces.

Some of the key unified file and object access use cases are as follows:

- Object stores are suitable for storing large amounts of data because they are highly scalable and they are an economical storage solution. To analyze large amounts of data, advanced analytics systems are used. However, porting the data from an object store to a distributed file system that the analytics system requires is complex and time intensive. For these scenarios, there is a need to access the object data using file interface so that analytics systems can use it.
- Accessing object using file interfaces and accessing file using object interfaces helps legacy applications designed for file to start integrating into the object world after data migration.
- It allows storage cloud data which is in form of objects to be accessed using files from applications designed to process files.
- It allows files exported using NFS or SMB, or files available on POSIX, to be accessible as objects using http to the end clients. This enables easy availability of file data on mobile devices such as smart phones or tablets which are more suited to REST based interfaces.
- Multi protocol access for file and object in the same namespace allows supporting and hosting **data oceans** of different types with multiple access options.  
For information about **data oceans**, see “Protocols support overview: Integration of protocol access methods with GPFS” on page 28.
- There is a rich set of placement policies for files (using **mmapplypolicy**) available with IBM Spectrum Scale. With unified file and object access, those placement policies can be leveraged for object data.

Unified file and object access allows users to access the same data as an object and as a file. Data can be stored and retrieved through IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage or as files from POSIX, NFS, and SMB interfaces. Unified file and object access provides the following capabilities to users:

- Ingest data through the object interface and access this data from the file interface
- Ingest data through the file interface and access this data from the object interface
- Ingest and access same data through object and file interfaces concurrently
- Manage authentication and authorization in unified file and object access

For more information, see *Unified file and object access* in *IBM Spectrum Scale* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

One of the key advantages of unified file and object access is the placement and naming of objects when stored on the file system. For more information, see *File path in unified file and object access* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

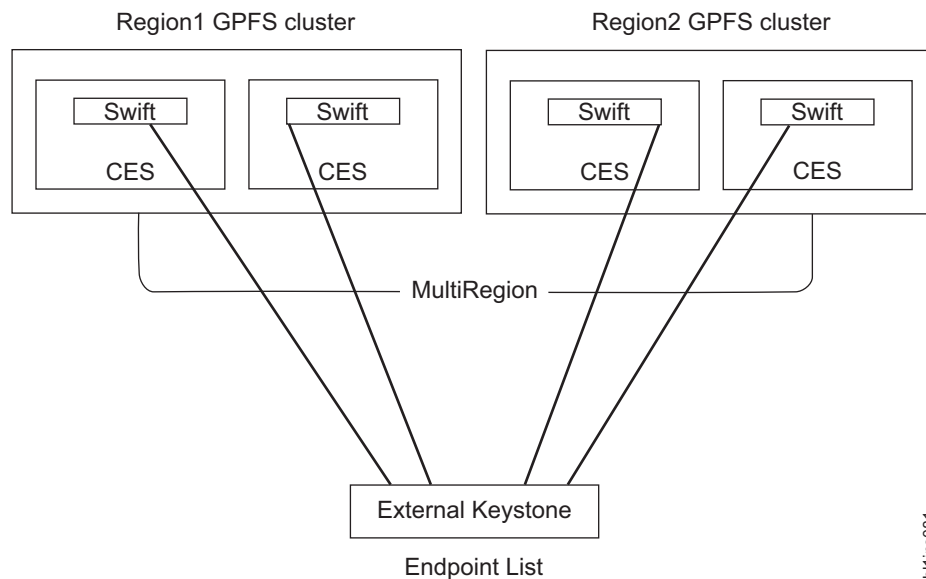


## Overview of multi-region object deployment

Object multi-region deployment can be used to distribute the object load over several sites to reduce latency for local requests. It can also be used to provide an active-active disaster recovery configuration.

The main purpose of the object protocol is to enable the upload and download of object data. When clients have a fast connection to the cluster, the network delay is minimal. However, when client access to object data is over a WAN or a high-latency network, the network can introduce an unacceptable delay and affect quality-of-service metrics. To improve that response time, you can create a replica of the data in a cluster closer to the clients using the active-active multi-region replication support in OpenStack Swift. Multi-region can also be used to distribute the object load over several clusters to reduce contention in the file system.

With multi-region support in Swift, the replication servers asynchronously copy data between remote clusters to keep them in sync. When the client uploads or downloads objects, the proxy server it connects to initially uses the devices in the same region as the proxy. If the proxy cannot find the data it needs in its own region, it then uses the other regions. In this way, the clients generally get fast access for the data in the close cluster and only be affected by the high-latency penalty when accessing data which has not yet been replicated.



Multi-region object deployment involves creating up to 3 independent CES clusters. Each CES cluster is a single region. The Swift environment and ring files are configured to map each cluster to an associated region index. The configuration is then synced manually between the clusters to enable the active-active replication.

Enabling multi-region support converts the underlying primary Swift account, container, and object rings to include all defined regions. By default, all data is stored in all regions. To store data in just a subset of the regions, storage policies can be used to create object rings which just store the objects in a subset of the regions. For more information on creating custom storage policies, see *mmobj* command in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

Only the first cluster can switch to multi-cluster after installation. Subsequent clusters need to be installed as multi-cluster environments due to the need for region numbers and storage policy indices to be globally consistent across clusters.

For information on planning a multi-region object deployment, see “Planning for multi-region object deployment” on page 225.

For information on enabling multi-region object deployment, see “Enabling multi-region object deployment initially” on page 345.

For information on adding a new region to a multi-region object deployment environment, see *Adding a region in a multi-region object deployment* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## S3 API

IBM Spectrum Scale object storage supports the S3 API, in addition to Swift API, for accessing object data.

IBM Spectrum Scale uses Swift3 Middleware for OpenStack Swift, allowing access to IBM Spectrum Scale using the Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3) API. IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage includes S3 API as an optional feature.

S3 API can be either enabled during protocol deployment, initial object configuration, or later on.

- For information on enabling S3 API during protocol deployment using the **-s3** option of the **spectrumscale config object** command, see “Deploying protocols” on page 308.
- For information on enabling S3 API during initial object configuration using the **--enable-s3** option of the **mmobj swift base** command, see *Configuring and enabling the Object protocol service* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
- For information on enabling S3 API if it is not enabled as part of the object base configuration, see *Changing the object base configuration to enable S3 API* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

Accessing the object storage through swift requests is not affected by enabling the S3 API. When the S3 API is enabled, the object service also recognizes S3 API requests sent to the TCP port used by the object service (8080).

For more information on S3 API, see the S3 API documentation at Amazon S3 REST API Introduction.

For limitations of the S3 API support with IBM Spectrum Scale, see *Managing OpenStack access control lists using S3 API* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Object capabilities

Object capabilities describe the object protocol features that are configured in the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

The following capabilities are supported:

- file-access (Unified file and object access)
- multi-region (Multi-region object deployment)
- S3 (Amazon S3 API)

If unified file and object access has already been configured, changing the file-access capability can be used to enable or disable the related services. Use the command **mmobj file-access** to change it.

To change multi-region and s3 capabilities, use the **mmobj multiregion** and the **mmobj s3** commands respectively.

You can create a storage policy with unified file and object access only when file-access (unified file and object access) capability is enabled.

The **ibmobjectizer** and the **openstack-swift-object-sof** services are started only if the **file-access** capability is enabled. Disabling the **file-access** capability stops these services.

For information about enabling, disabling, and listing object capabilities, see *Managing object capabilities* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Secure communication between the proxy server and other backend servers

Use this feature to establish secure communication between the proxy server and the backend object storage servers.

By default object-server, object-server-sof, container-server, and account-server do not have authentication for the requests that they are serving. Processes, including the proxy-server connecting to these servers over their listening ports, can send requests which can result into updating the database and altering the object data on disk. Additional security between these servers can be enabled. Requesting process signs a request with a secret key kept in swift.conf. This key is verified by the serving object, container, or account server. To enable this feature, set:

```
mmobj config change --ccrfile swift.conf --section node_communication --property secure --value true
```

The signing middleware is added to proxy-server and the validating middleware is added to object-server, object-server-sof, container-server, and account-server. If the secret key is not present in swift.conf, it is randomly chosen and set to key secure\_communication\_secret under node\_communication section. In a multi-region environment, this key must be reset and kept common in all the clusters.

To revert to the original configuration, set:

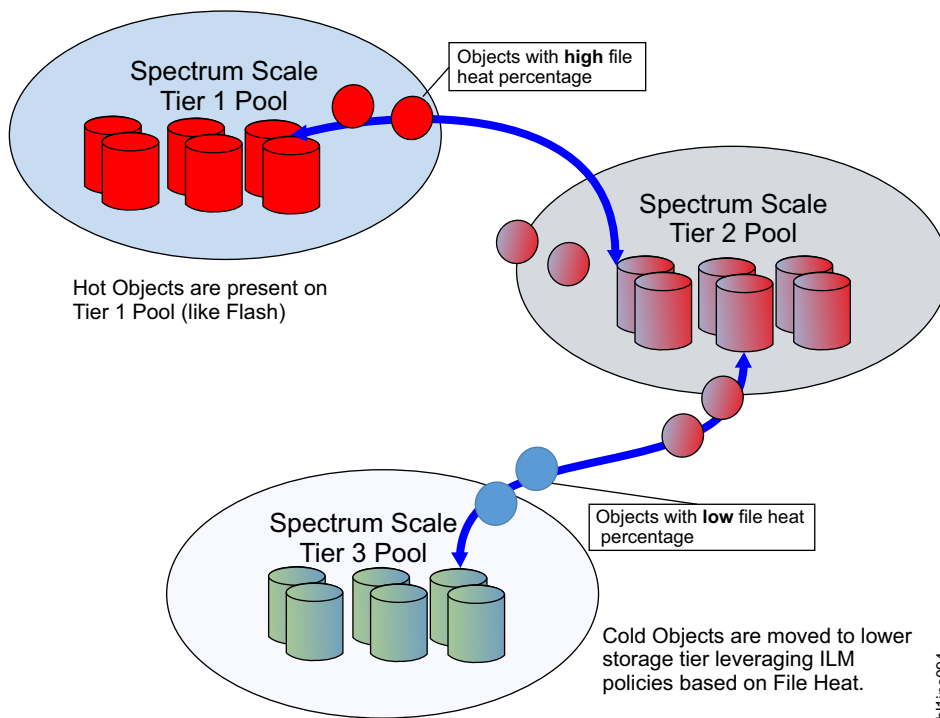
```
mmobj config change --ccrfile swift.conf --section node_communication --property secure --value false
```

**Note:** Disable SSH access on the protocol nodes on the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster for the users having the same UID and GID as the local swift user.

## Object heatmap data tiering

Object heatmap data tiering policies can be applied to data that is frequently accessed.

With the object heatmap data tiering policies, frequently accessed objects are stored in higher-performing storage pools such as the SSD-based pool. The policy also stores objects that are not accessed frequently in slower disk-based storage pools. Data that is not required for regular access anymore is moved from slower disk-based storage pools to tapes.



## The object heatmap policy

The object heatmap policy can be applied to object data files in the filesystem.

The policy manages the placement of objects in the gold, silver, and system pools and specifies the maximum threshold so that the capacity in the storage tiers is not over-utilized.

## Enabling heatmap tracking

Enable heatmap tracking on the IBM Spectrum Scale file system by running the following command:

```
mmchconfig fileheatperiodminutes=1440,fileheatlosspercent=10
mmchconfig: Command successfully completed
mmchconfig: Propagating the cluster configuration data to all
affected nodes. This is an asynchronous process.
```

## Cluster Export Services overview

Cluster Export Services (CES) provides highly available file and object services to a GPFS cluster by using Network File System (NFS), Object, or Server Message Block (SMB) protocols. The CES BLOCK service provides iSCSI protocol support.

IBM Spectrum Scale includes Cluster Export Services (CES) infrastructure to support the integration of the NFS, SMB, and object servers.

- The NFS Server supports NFS v3 and the mandatory features in NFS v4.0.
- The SMB server support SMB 2, SMB 2.1, and the mandatory features of SMB 3.0.
- The object server supports the Pike release of OpenStack Swift along with Keystone v3.

The CES infrastructure is responsible for:

- Managing the setup for high-availability clustering that is used by the protocols.
- Monitoring the health of these protocols on the protocol nodes and raising events or alerts during failures.

- Managing the addresses that are used for accessing these protocols by including failover and failback of these addresses because of protocol node failures.

## High availability

With GPFS, you can configure a subset of nodes in the cluster to provide a highly available solution for exporting GPFS file systems by using the Network File System (NFS), Server Message Block (SMB), Object, and iSCSI protocols. The participating nodes are designated as Cluster Export Services (CES) nodes or protocol nodes. The set of CES nodes is frequently referred to as the *CES cluster*.

A set of IP addresses, the *CES address pool*, is defined and distributed among the CES nodes. As nodes enter and leave the GPFS cluster, the addresses in the pool can be redistributed among the CES nodes to provide high availability. GPFS nodes that are not CES nodes leaving or entering the GPFS cluster do not redistribute the IP addresses. Clients that use these protocols can use these addresses to access the cluster. However, applications using CES IP addresses are not impacted, .

## Monitoring

CES monitors the state of the protocol services. Monitoring ensures that the CES addresses are assigned to the appropriate node and that the processes that implement the services in the CES cluster are running correctly. Upon failure detection, CES marks the node as temporarily unable to participate in the CES cluster and reassigns the IP addresses to another node.

## Protocol support

CES supports the following export protocols: NFS, SMB, object, and iSCSI (block). Each protocol can be enabled or disabled in the cluster. If a protocol is enabled in the CES cluster, all CES nodes serve that protocol.

The following are examples of enabling and disabling protocol services by using the **mmces** command:

**mmces service enable nfs**

Enables the NFS protocol in the CES cluster.

**mmces service disable obj**

Disables the Object protocol in the CES cluster.

## Commands

To set or configure CES options, the following commands are used:

**mmblock**

Manages the BLOCK configuration operations.

**mmces**

Manages the CES address pool and other CES cluster configuration options.

**mmnfs**

Manages NFS exports and sets the NFS configuration attributes.

**mmobj**

Manages the Object configuration operations.

**mmsmb**

Manages SMB exports and sets the SMB configuration attributes.

**mmuserauth**

Configures the authentication methods that are used by the protocols.

For more information, see *mmblock command*, *mmces command*, *mmnfs command*, *mmobj command*, *mmsmb command*, and *mmuserauth command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## Restrictions

For an up-to-date list of supported operating systems, specific distributions, and other dependencies for CES, refer to the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

A CES cluster can contain a maximum of 32 CES nodes and they must all be of the same architecture. If the SMB protocol is enabled, the CES cluster is limited to a total of 16 CES nodes.

Each CES node must have network adapters capable of supporting all IP addresses in the CES address pool. The primary address of these adapters must not be used as a CES address.

## CES iSCSI support

The CES BLOCK service provides iSCSI protocol support.

You can export a file resident in a GPFS file system as a virtual iSCSI volume to an iSCSI initiator by using the iSCSI protocol. The iSCSI protocol in IBM Spectrum Scale is referred to as the CES BLOCK service. iSCSI support in IBM Spectrum Scale is intended for remotely booting nodes (non-performance-critical), and is not intended for high-bandwidth block device workloads. Before using the iSCSI protocol, confirm that this matches your use case, or contact [scale@us.ibm.com](mailto:scale@us.ibm.com) with any question regarding the supported use cases.

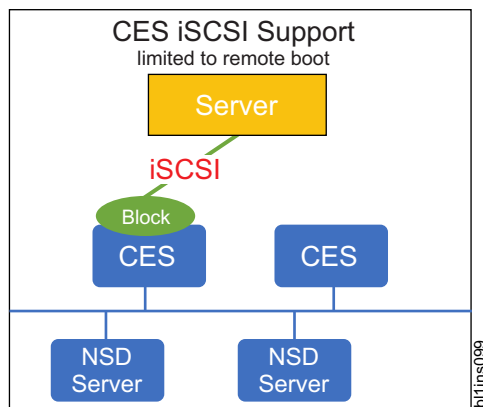


Figure 5. CES BLOCK iSCSI support

## Clustered BLOCK service

iSCSI initiators can connect to any protocol node and access the virtual iSCSI volume. A clustered registry ensures that all nodes have the same configuration data. If a CES IP failover is triggered, an iSCSI initiator reconnects transparently to another CES node.

## BLOCK service management command

The **mmblock** command provides a comprehensive entry point to manage iSCSI targets and volumes. The block service configuration is controlled by the SCST configuration files. The master version of these files is stored in the CCR, and copies exist in `/etc/scst.conf` on each protocol node. Do not modify the `/etc/scst.conf` file directly because it is overwritten by the information stored in the CCR.

---

## Active File Management

The following topics introduce you to Active File Management (AFM)

### Introduction to Active File Management (AFM)

Active File Management (AFM) enables sharing of data across clusters, even if the networks are unreliable or have high latency.

The following figure is a sample of an AFM relationship.

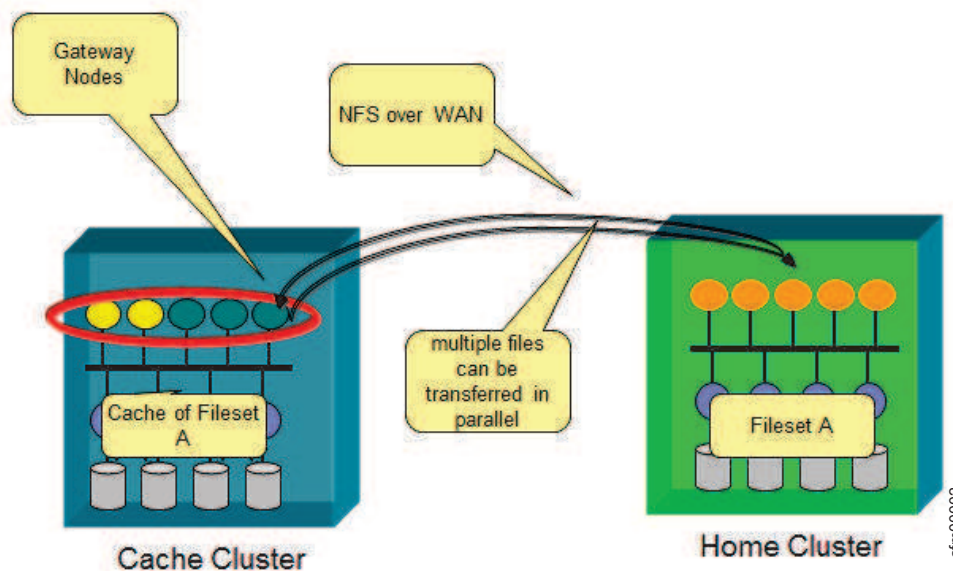


Figure 6. Sample of an AFM relationship

AFM allows you to create associations between IBM Spectrum Scale clusters or between IBM Spectrum Scale clusters and NFS data source. With AFM, you can implement a single name space view across sites around the world making your global name space truly global.

Using AFM, you can build a common name space across locations and automate the flow of file data. You can duplicate data for disaster recovery purposes without suffering from WAN latencies.

AFM can be enabled on GPFS-independent filesets only. A dependent fileset cannot be linked under an AFM fileset.

Individual files in the AFM filesets can be compressed. Compressing files saves disk space. For more information, see *File compression* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

Snapshot data migration is also supported. For more information, see *ILM for snapshots* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

Name space maintenance with AFM occurs asynchronously so that applications can continue operating without being constrained by network bandwidth.

**Note:** AFM does not offer any feature to check consistency of files across source and destination. However you can use any third-party utility to check consistency, after files are replicated.

## Overview and concepts

The following topics provide an overview of AFM and describe the concepts.

### Cache and Home

An AFM fileset can be enabled on a GPFS independent fileset. Each fileset has a distinct set of AFM attributes. IBM Spectrum Scale cluster that contains AFM filesets is called a cache cluster. A cache fileset has a relationship with a data source which is called the home.

AFM constantly maintains an active relationship between the cache and the home. Changes are managed per fileset results in modular, scalable architecture capable of supporting billions of files and peta bytes of data. Each AFM-enabled fileset is associated with a single home path.

AFM uses a NFS or NSD protocol to communicate between home and cache. A Home is an NFS v3 export or a remote filesystem mounted from the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster. For filesets in AFM RO mode, the target path at home NFS export can be Read-Only or Read-Write export. For filesets in AFM RW mode, NFS export must be Read-Write.

Architecturally, AFM works with any NFS home export. However if the home has ACLs, it supports extended attributes and sparse files. You must run **mmafmconfig enable** command on the home cluster to enable this support.

#### Note:

1. If you do not run **mmafmconfig enable** and configure AFM relationship, ACLs and extended attributes are not supported. Sparse file information is not maintained. The following error message AFM: AFM is not enabled for fileset cachefs in filesystem gpfs. Some features will not be supported, see documentation for enabling AFM and unsupported features. appears in mmfs.log.
2. After you establish a relationship between home and cache, do not alter any data in any of the filesets. If you alter, run failover or full resynchronization again and re-establish the relationship.

Any cluster can be a home cluster, a cache cluster, or both. In typical setup, a home is in an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster and a cache is defined in another IBM Spectrum Scale cluster. Multiple AFM-enabled filesets can be defined in one cache cluster, each cache having a relationship with targets with a home, or different cluster.

In IW,RO, and LU modes, multiple caches might point to the same home. But in SW mode, only one-to-one relationship between cache and home is supported. AFM can also be configured as a subscription service, where home is the data feed and all caches can subscribe to this data feed.

Within a single cache cluster, application nodes experience POSIX semantics. File locking across cache and home is not supported.

While performing operations on AFM filesets, ensure that the operations are supported on home over the chosen protocol because the operations done from cache are replayed on the remote as normal filesystem operations. While using NSD protocol with UID remapping, operations such as chown (change ownership ) are not supported.

### Caching modes:

There are four caching modes in AFM: Read-Only (RO), Single-Writer (SW), Local-Update (LU) and Independent-Writer (IW).

In a Read-Only mode, files in the cache fileset cannot be modified.

In a Single-Writer mode, cache pushes all changes to home but never checks home for any updates.



Independent-Writer mode allows both reads and writes, it pushes changes to home and checks home for file updates.

Local-Update is read only but files can be changed in the cache fileset, though the changes are never pushed to home and any changed file no longer checks home for updated versions.

## Communication between cache and home

AFM uses the NFSv3 or NSD protocol for communication between clusters.

Communication for caching between clusters is performed by one or more nodes on the cache cluster designated as gateway nodes by using **mmchnode**. The target path on the home server must be NFS-exported on one or more nodes in the home cluster, or the home filesystem must be mounted on the cache cluster using the NSD protocol. For filesets in AFM RO mode, the target path at home NFS export can be Read-Only or Read-Write export. The exported path or the home-mounted path of the home cluster is used in the cache cluster as the target when creating the cache fileset.

You can export paths with kerberos-enabled security levels from home to cache. At cache, configure kerberos clients at gateway nodes and run **mmchconfig afmEnableNFSsec=yes -i**. Gateway nodes can mount kerberos-enabled home exports with security levels like sys, krb5, krb5i, krb5p after **afmEnableNFSsec** is set to yes at cluster level.

AFM maintains a relationship between cache and home by monitoring home availability and reconnects accordingly.

**Note:** If a home fileset is removed or deleted, you must remove the export path first and re-start NFS at home.

## The backend protocol - NFS versus NSD

The NSD protocol is a stateful protocol. The NFSv3 protocol is a stateless protocol which is very resilient to low bandwidth and lossy networks.

The current recommended transport protocol for AFM data transfers is NFS, due to the tolerance of NFS to unstable network connections. It is recommended that you first try using NFS, and shift to the NSD protocol only if NFS does not meet the desired performance requirements even with multiple primary gateways and use of parallel data transfers. The implications of using the NSD protocol between the cache and home cluster are:

1. Network availability fluctuations and instability can affect the NSD protocol connection to the home on the cache cluster primary gateways. This can lead to frequent data access interruptions from the home cluster, and can even cause the connection to the home cluster to stop responding. In these cases, it might be necessary to restart the GPFS daemon on the primary gateway, and possibly even restart the primary gateway server.
2. IBM Spectrum Scale instability issues on the home cluster can affect the cache cluster. The instability issues can also cause the AFM fileset in the cache cluster to stop responding, and might also require a restart of the IBM Spectrum Scale service on both the home and cache clusters.

For more information on setting up primary gateway nodes that communicate with multiple NFS servers at home, see “Parallel data transfers” on page 53.

The following table summarizes the differences between NSD and NFS protocols on various parameters –

Table 4. Comparison between NSD and NFS protocols

	NSD	NFS
Ease of use	Customers are familiar with its use in multi-cluster environments. Configuration does not require NFS knowledge or tuning, but requires NSD tuning.	Configuration requires NFS knowledge and performance tuning for both NFS and TCP over WAN.
Performance	By default, uses all primary gateway nodes for parallel data transfers. Large file data transfer performance is better than NFS from a single primary gateway node as it can use the inherent parallelism of striping to multiple NSDs.	Parallel data transfers can be achieved by creating mapping between primary gateway nodes and NFS servers at home. In summary, while both NFS and NSD can do similar forms of parallelism, generally NSD achieves higher performance.
Security	Encryption is built in, which can be turned on optionally.	Supports kerberos-enabled exported paths from home to cache. <b>afmEnableNFSSec</b> must be set to yes at cache.
Firewall	Special ports might not be required.	Must be configured for the traffic to pass through.
Stability	Performs well if the network is stable and has low latency.	More resilient to failures within the network such as packet drops which readily happen over WAN and it is more resilient, protecting the cache cluster from being affected by home cluster issues.

### Considerations when using the NSD protocol for AFM data transfers

The NSD protocol is more sensitive to packet drops and network latency than NFS. If the network does not respond, or if the packets are dropped, the NSD mount on cache cluster stops responding, causing the cache cluster also to stop responding. More causes of issues when using the NSD protocol are:

1. Deadlock in the home cluster - This might cause the NSD mounts on the cache cluster to stop responding for some time. Due to a non-responsive NSD mount, AFM fileset at cache using these NSD mounts as target might be in the 'unmounted' state. After the home cluster is responsive, the home cluster tries queued operations again.
2. Cluster reconfiguration or higher resource consumption at the home cluster - This might cause a temporary loss of communication between home and cache cluster. If the home cluster does not respond within AFM wait timeout intervals, AFM filesets at cache using these NSD mounts as target might be in the 'unmounted' state. After the home cluster is responsive, the home cluster tries queued operations again.
3. When a new primary gateway node joins the cluster, the old primary gateway node transfers the fileset to new primary gateway node. If the remote filesystem is not mounted on the new primary gateway node, the fileset remains in an 'unmounted' state. After the remote file system is mounted at gateway node, the fileset automatically moves to Active state.
4. Remote File System cannot be unmounted unless replication is stopped, or primary gateway node is restarted. AFM puts a hold on remote mount, not allowing the file system to be unmounted.
5. Creating an AFM association, using GPFS protocol, to the same local file system is not supported.

**Note:** If the NSD mount on the gateway node is unresponsive, AFM does not synchronize data with home or secondary. The filesystem might be unmounted at the gateway node. A message AFM: Remote filesystem *remoteefs* is panicked due to unresponsive messages on fileset *<fileset\_name>*, re-mount

the filesystem after it becomes responsive. `mmcommon preunmount` invoked. File system: `fs1`  
Reason: `SGPanic` is written to `mmfs.log`. After the home or secondary is responsive, you must restore the NSD mount on the gateway node.

## Primary gateway and `afmHashVersion`

Each cache fileset in a cluster is served by one of the nodes designated as a gateway in the cluster. The gateway node that is mapped to a fileset is called the primary gateway of the fileset. The primary gateway acts as the owner of the fileset and communicates with the home cluster.

All other nodes in the cluster, including other gateways, become the application nodes of the fileset. Therefore any node in the cache cluster can function as a gateway node and an application node for different filesets based on configuration of the node.

Application nodes communicate with the primary gateway for a fileset via internal network requests. The gateway function is highly available and can be scaled-out. When a gateway node fails, all cache filesets owned by this gateway node are moved to another gateway node that runs AFM recovery and takes over as the primary gateway of the filesets. When the old primary gateway returns after node failure, the original primary gateway resumes managing its filesets and AFM transfers the queues for all the filesets from the current primary gateway to the old primary gateway.

The primary gateway can be configured to take help from other gateway nodes for parallel data movement of large files to and from home, if the home is an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster for increasing performance during data transfer.

The gateway node designation is supported only on the Linux operating system. The Windows or AIX nodes cannot be designated as gateway. It is recommended not to assign the role of Gateway and CES/Protocol to the same node.

Recommended configuration of a primary gateway node: Generally, a primary gateway node can have 128 GB of memory and each primary gateway node can have 10 filesets. You can use the `mmchconfig` command to set the parameters as follows - **`Pagepool=2G, afmHardMemThreshold=40G, afmNumFlushThreads=8, afmDI0=2, maxFilestoCache=10000`**. For more information on `pagepool`, see *Parameters for performance tuning and optimization* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

**Note:** The recommended configuration is based on observations in an controlled test environment running moderate/reasonable workload. For your use case, the values might be different.

See “Parallel data transfers” on page 53 to set up gateway nodes talking to multiple NFS servers at home.

### **`afmHashVersion`**

In a cluster with multiple gateway nodes and AFM cache filesets, AFM uses a hashing algorithm to elect the primary gateway for each of the filesets, **`afmHashVersion=2`** is set by default. An improved hashing algorithm is set by default on an IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1 cluster. On an upgraded cluster, the old hashing algorithm (**`afmHashVersion=2`**) is effective by default.

To use the improved algorithm after an upgrade to 5.0, use `mmchconfig afmHashVersion=4` to set **`afmHashVersion`** value as 4. If you have a large number of filesets, and the filesets are not evenly distributed across gateway nodes, you can set **`afmHashVersion`** to 4 for improved load balancing.

**Note:** Do not set **`afmHashVersion=4`** if there are heavy data transfer operations from the gateway node to filesets.

Hashing version ‘2’ is based on static fileset ID mapping, whereas new hashing version ‘4’ is improvement over version ‘2’. This hashing version is dynamic, ensuring balanced mapping of AFM filesets and gateway nodes.

You can also assign gateway node for an AFM fileset, that gets preference over internal hashing algorithm. If the specified gateway node is not available, then AFM internally assigns a gateway node from the available list to the fileset. For this, you must set **afmHashVersion** to 5. You can then use the **mmchfileset** or **mmcrfileset** to assign a gateway node.

**Note:** You need to restart IBM Spectrum Scale for the new algorithm to take effect.

## Global namespace

You can combine the home and cache entities to create a global namespace.

Any client node can use the same path to connect to the data within any of the IBM Spectrum Scale clusters that are part of the namespace.

In such a global namespace, the following AFM features can improve application performance at a remote site:

1. When a file is being read into a cache, the data can be read after it begins to arrive in the cache.
2. Multiple cache filesets can share a single file system. Data can be transferred between sites in parallel.

AFM also performs on networks that are unreliable, or have high latency. The following example is that of a global namespace, implemented using AFM, with three different sites. An IBM Spectrum Scale client node from any site sees all of the data from all of the sites. Each site has a single file system. Each site is the home for two of the subdirectories and cache filesets pointing to the data originating at the other sites. Every node in all three clusters has direct access to the global namespace.

The following figure illustrates global namespace implemented using AFM.

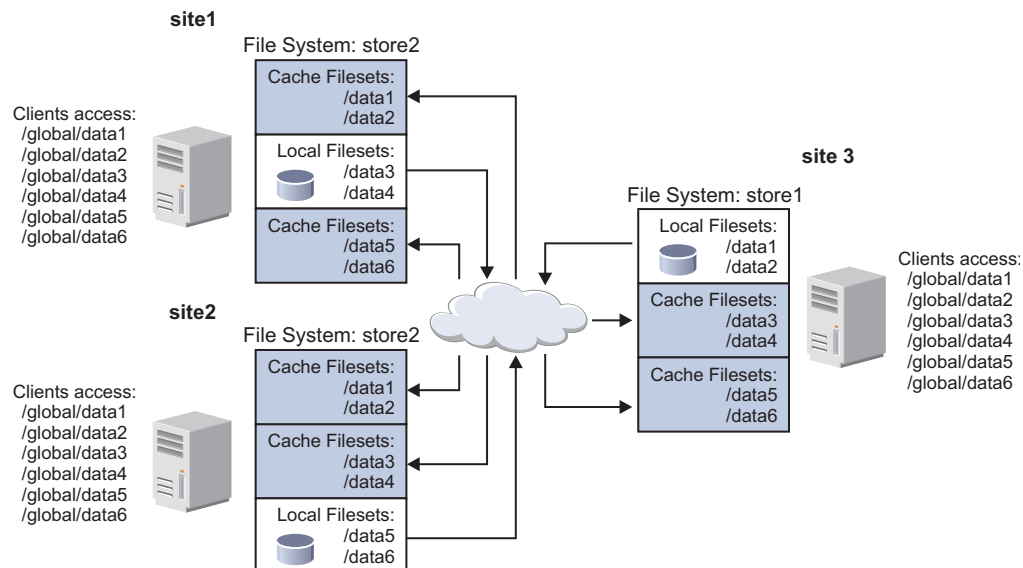


Figure 7. Global namespace implemented using AFM

## Revalidation

As users traverse the directory tree of an AFM cache fileset, files and directory metadata information from the home cluster is checked and updated as needed on the cache cluster. This process is called AFM revalidation.

Revalidation performance is dependent upon network latency and bandwidth available between the cache and home. Revalidations are done per node, and not per fileset. If a file or directory is revalidated

from one node on the cache cluster, the same fileset goes through another revalidation operation when accessed from another node on the same cache cluster. You can modify the refresh intervals using the **mmchfileset** command as shown:

```
# mmchfileset fs1 sw1 -p afmFileOpenRefreshInterval=160
```

In the above example, the **File Open Refresh Interval** is set to 160 for the filesets in file system *fs1*.

Revalidation intervals can be adjusted to best support the workload and network latency. Setting a parameter using **mmchconfig** command sets the default for all filesets. Parameters set using **mmchfileset** only affect a particular fileset and override the global defaults. You can enable, modify, or disable any of the intervals based on the application needs, though it is recommended to use default values for most cases.

If file or directory refresh intervals are disabled for a fileset, the refresh intervals can be enabled using the **mmchfileset** command. Enabling requires the fileset to be unlinked, and then linked again.

For more information on **mmchfileset**, see the *mmchfileset command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

It is recommended not to set the revalidation intervals to 0, as a revalidation request is continuously sent to home, thus resulting in performance degradation. You must set the revalidation interval to as large as possible, depending on how frequently home gets updated, and at what interval the cache needs the updated data.

For more information on revalidation intervals, see the *mmcrfileset command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

The revalidation intervals are defined by the following configuration parameters. These are tunable at cluster and fileset level and can be changed using the **mmchconfig** and **mmchfileset** commands respectively:

1. **afmFileLookupRefreshInterval**: The frequency of revalidation triggered by a lookup operation on a file such as *ls* or *stat*, from the cache
2. **afmDirLookupRefreshInterval**: The frequency of revalidation triggered by a lookup operation on a directory such as *ls* or *stat*, in the cache.
3. **afmFileOpenRefreshInterval**: The frequency of revalidations triggered by read or write operations on a file in the cache. Open requests on that file are served from the cache fileset until the **afmFileOpenRefreshInterval** expires, after which the open requests are sent to home.
4. **afmDirOpenRefreshInterval**: The frequency of revalidations triggered by read or update operations on a directory from the cache. Open requests on files or sub-directories on that directory are served from the cache fileset until the **afmDirOpenRefreshInterval** expires, after which the open requests are sent to home.
5. **afmRevalOpWaitTimeout**: The time for which AFM waits for completion of revalidation to get response from the home cluster. **afmRevalOpWaitTimeout** can be set only for a cluster and not for an individual fileset.

RO, LU and IW filesets revalidate regularly with home. SW mode populates metadata only once during first access and does not revalidate with home thereafter. To revalidate, AFM sends a message to the home cluster to find out whether the metadata of that file or directory has been modified since the last time it was revalidated. If so, the latest file metadata or data information, depending on the type of request, at home is reflected on the cache.

**Revalidation in Asynchronous mode:** Synchronization with home prior to revalidation delays response to the applications querying data. To overcome this, you can perform cache data refresh operation in asynchronous mode. You must set **afmRefreshAsync** to 'yes'.

- | For information about **afmRefreshAsync**, see *mmchconfig command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference* and *Configuration parameters for AFM* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Cached and uncached files

A `readdir` operation on a directory populates the metadata of the directory in the cache, but it does not populate contents of each file within the directory. A read operation on file generates a request to home to make contents available in cache. The file contents do not need to be in cache to start reading it.

AFM allows data to be pre-populated before actual read operation using the **mmafmctl prefetch** command. For more information on pre-populating data, see “Prefetch” on page 55.

A file whose contents are completely available in the cache is called a cached file. A file whose contents are not yet present in the cache is called an uncached file. An uncached file cannot be evicted, re-synced with home, or failed over to a new home. See the sections on Asynchronous operations and delay, for AFM eviction and syncing to home.

Files that have all blocks read, or the entire file contents fetched, are marked as cached. AFM does whole-file caching by default. By default, reading more than three blocks of a file drives AFM to cache the full file in the background for performance. Sometimes the whole file might not need to be cached. For example, some applications read only a few bytes of a file to detect the file mime type. In such cases, you can configure partial file read behavior on cache fileset. For more information on partial file caching, see “Partial file caching” on page 55.

## Synchronous or asynchronous operations

AFM operations are serviced either synchronously or asynchronously. Reads and revalidations are synchronous operations and update operations from the cache are asynchronous.

Synchronous operations require an application request to be blocked until the operation completes at the home cluster. File data is available while AFM queues are processed asynchronously in the background.

If synchronous operations depend on the results of one or more updates or asynchronous operations, AFM prioritizes the dependent asynchronous operations prior to the execution of the synchronous operations. For example, synchronous operations like file lookup cause dependent asynchronous operations to be flushed, overriding asynchronous delay (**afmAsyncDelay**).

AFM deploys a filtering algorithm for most optimal flushing performance by analyzing the queued requests. For example, if a write and delete are in queue on the same file, the write request is dropped from the queue and the delete is executed at home. Similarly, when **mkdir** and **rmdir** of the same directory name are in queue, both requests are dropped.

AFM sends data from cache to home as root. If home has fileset quotas at home, it should be set such that it can accommodate all writes from cache.

## Asynchronous delay

All update operations from the writable cache filesets are on the primary gateway. Queues in the primary gateway are pushed to home asynchronously based on the **afmAsyncDelay** interval.

This interval can be modified using the **mmchfileset** command. You can force a flush of all the pending updates without waiting for Async Delay using the **mmafmctl** command with the `flushPending` option. The `flushPending` option can be issued at the fileset or filesystem level, or with a file that contains the list of files to be flushed.

For more information, see **mmafmctl** command in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## Operations with AFM modes

Following are the operations with AFM modes - Read only (RO), Single writer (SW), Local updates (LU), and Independent writer (IW).

### 1. Read only (RO)

The following figure illustrates the Read Only mode.

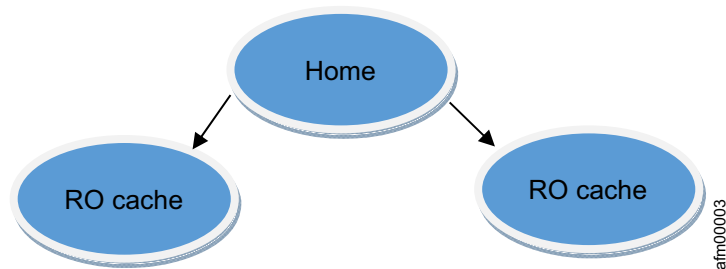


Figure 8. Read Only mode

In this mode, data in the cache is read-only. Creating or modifying files in the cache fileset is not allowed. If a file is renamed at the home for an RO fileset, the file is recreated in cache and is assigned a new inode number in the cache. If the file is in use by an application while it is recreated (deleted and recreated with the same name) at home, it gets recreated in cache.

### 2. Single writer (SW)

The following figure illustrates the Single writer mode.

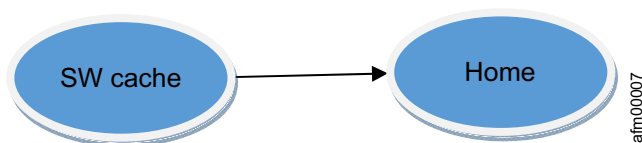


Figure 9. Single writer mode

In this mode, only the cache fileset does all the writing and the cache does not check home for file or directory updates. The administrator needs to guarantee no writes are done in the home cluster. AFM does not enforce this check.

A SW home can have some pre-existing data. An SW cache can cache and update this data. Update of an uncached file from SW home caches the file. However, the truncate or append operations on an uncached file does not fetch the contents of the file into the cache, but queues the truncate or append operation to the home.

### 3. Local updates (LU)

Local update is similar to read-only mode although you can create and modify files in the cache fileset. Updates in the cache are considered local to the cache and get decoupled from the corresponding file at home. Local updates are never pushed back to home. Once a file is modified, it is no longer compared to the version at home during revalidation to verify that it is up to date. Changes of this file on home do not have an impact on the cached copy of the file and vice versa.

**Behaviors with local files:** In AFM, LU mode files have one of the following states:

- **Uncached:** Files on the home for which metadata but no data has been copied into the cache are shown in the cache as uncached. At this point, the file is not resident on cache, but only on the home. Changes on the home are reflected in the cache.
- **Cached:** If an uncached file is read in the cache or pre-fetched, the file's state changes to Cached. In the Cached state, all changes to the file on home are reflected in the cache. The file is resident on the cache.

- Local: File data or metadata modified at cache becomes local to the cache. At this point the cached files relationship to the file in home is broken. Changes on home are not reflected in the cache anymore and file changes are not copied to home.

Operations in the cache that trigger the transitions between these states are shown below:

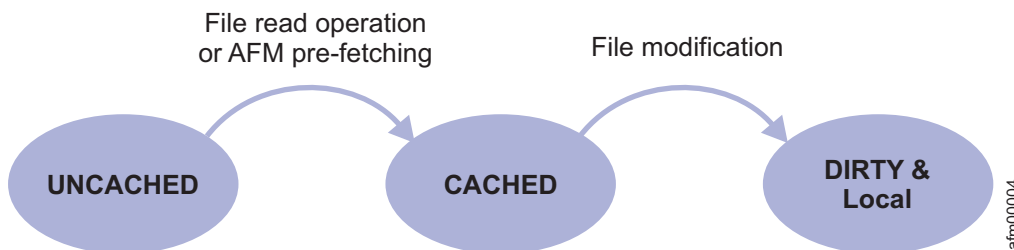


Figure 10. Behaviors with local files

The following tables summarize AFM LU mode behavior with local files:

File operation at home	Uncached file	Cached file	Local file
New Create	Reflects	Reflects	Reflects
Change data or attributes/Rename/Delete	Reflects	Reflects	Does not reflect

File operation at home	Uncached file	Cached file	Local file
File lookup revalidation	Pulls the metadata	Pulls the latest metadata	Does not pull the latest metadata
Read	Pulls the data	Pulls the latest data	Shows data in the local file – does not pull the latest data from the home
Prefetch	Prefetches the data	Prefetches the latest data	Does not prefetch the latest data from home
Change data	Pulls the data into cache and updates the changes	Pulls the latest to cache and updates the changes	Updates the local copy of the file and does not pull the latest data from the home before the update
Change attributes/metadata except delete EA	Updates the file and marks file as local	Updates the file and marks file as local	Updates the file – does not pull the latest metadata from the home before the update

#### Directories in a local-update cache:

Directories can become local in the LU mode with the following directory operations from the cache:

- Deleting files or sub-directories in the cache directory
- Creating new files or sub-directories in the cache directory
- Renaming files or sub-directories in the cache directory

The following file operations on cache do not cause directories on the cache to become local:

- update the uncached or cached file
- add attributes to the file
- migrate the cached or local files to tape
- recall of the cached or local files from tape



A local directory in a LU cache can contain local, cached and uncached files and directories. A local directory is not revalidated with home. Therefore, operations on the directory at home do not show up on the cache.

The following tables summarize AFM LU mode behavior with local directories:

Operation at home	Cache behavior - Normal directory	Cache behavior - Local directory
Create a new file or sub-directory	Reflects in cache after next directory lookup	Does not show in cache after next directory lookup. Contents can be read or prefetched if the filename is known in the cache. After read or prefetch, the new file or directory shows up in the cache for future file lookup
Update data or attributes of an existing file or sub-directory	Reflects in cache after next file lookup	Reflects in cache after next file lookup
Rename an existing file or sub-directory	Reflects in cache after next file lookup	Does not show in cache after next directory lookup. On reading the file, contents from renamed file fetched into the cache into the old filename, old filename always prevails in the cache. New filename can arrive at the cache with prefetch, in which case both names will co-exist and point to the same inode at home.
Delete an existing file or sub-directory	Reflects in the cache after next directory lookup	Deleted upon the next file lookup

Directory operation from cache	Cache behavior - Normal directory	Cache behavior - Local directory
Directory revalidation	Pulls the latest metadata	Does not pull the latest metadata
Read a non-local file in the directory	Pulls the latest data	Pulls the latest data
Prefetch a non-local file	Prefetches the latest data	Prefetches the latest data
Create a new file/directory	Updates and marks the directory local	Updates the local directory
Change data of a non-local file	Pulls the data into the cache, updates the file and marks file as local	Pulls the data into the cache, updates the file and marks the file as local
Change metadata of a non-local file except delete of EA	Updates the file and marks the file as local	Updates the file and marks the file as local

Appending to, truncating, or writing to an uncached file in LU mode fetches the entire file to the cache before making the change locally.

If you expect revalidation, change the LU fileset root directory with caution as this could cause the fileset to be marked as local, and context with the home is lost. For example, running **chmod** or **chown** of the LU fileset root directory causes all subdirectories from fileset root to be out of synchronization with the home.

#### 4. Independent writer (IW)

The following figure illustrates the Independent writer mode.

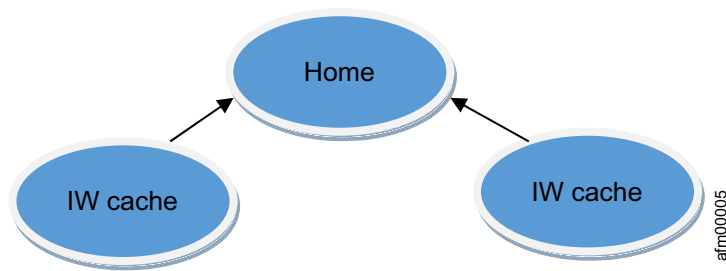


Figure 11. Independent writer mode

This mode allows multiple cache filesets to point to the same home. There is no synchronous locking between clusters while updating home. Each cache reads from home and makes updates to the home independently of each other, based on the revalidation intervals and Async delay.

This mode is used to access different files from each IW cache site, such as, the unique users at each site updating files in their home directory. While this mode allows multiple cache clusters to modify the same set of files, this should be only done by advanced users. This is because there is no locking or ordering between updates. Updates are propagated to the home in an asynchronous manner and can be delayed due to network disconnections. Therefore, conflicting updates from multiple cache sites can cause the data at the home site to be undetermined.

Writing in-place on a pre-existing un-cached file at the home pulls the complete contents of the file into cache. However, truncate and append operations on an uncached file do not fetch the contents of the file into cache, but queues the truncate and append operations to home.

When a large number of IW cache filesets point to the same NFS home, the number of NFS threads at home can be tuned for better efficiency. Increasing the revalidation intervals for the IW cache filesets might reduce the frequency of periodic refreshes from home and improve cache performance.

**Note:** Do not create hard links at home or in the cache when IW is used, as IW fallback does not preserve hard links.

The following file attributes are maintained locally in cache : Control attributes, direct I/O, replication factors, fileset quotas, storage pool flags, special file types such as FIFO, socket, block, character device. Hard links can be created at cache. Hard links at home are displayed as individual files in cache.

### Filesets to the same home target

The following are the possibilities of filesets pointing to home as the target:

- One or more RO filesets can point to the same target.
- One or more LU filesets can point to the same target.
- RO and LU filesets can point to the same target.
- SW, RO/LU filesets can point to the same target.
- IW, RO, and LU filesets can point to the same target.
- More than one SW fileset must not point to the same target. More than one SW fileset can technically point to the same target but only can be a writer. The other should behave like a reader fileset.
- One or more IW filesets can point to the same target.
- SW and IW filesets must not point to the same target.

### Conversion of mode

An AFM cache can be converted to another mode in some conditions, to meet all types of requirements of data management by unlinking the fileset and using `mmchfileset -p afmmode` command.

Limitations while converting the mode are as follows:

- A SW or IW fileset with pending requests in the queue cannot be converted.

- LU mode filesets cannot be converted to any other mode.
- Before converting from IW to SW mode, ensure that all the remaining IWs are converted to either RO or LU to avoid the risk of home conflicts caused by writes from other IWs.
- You cannot change the mode or disable AFM when the fileset is linked.

## Internal AFM Directories

AFM uses `.afm`, `.ptrash`, and `.pconflicts` as the internal directories.

AFM uses the following internal directories. Do not alter or remove any of these directories.

1. `.afm` directory: Present in both cache and home.  
The **`mmafmconfig enable`** command creates this directory in the home cluster. The **`mmafmconfig disable`** command removes the directory from home. The `.afm` directory is created in the cache during fileset create time, and is valid throughout the lifetime of the cache fileset.
2. `.ptrash` directory: Present in the cache.
3. `.pconflicts` directory: Present in the cache.

In an SW or IW mode fileset when there is a delete conflict with a file, the conflict is resolved by removing the file from the cache and moving it to `.ptrash`. A conflict occurs when a file is removed at home but still exists in cache because there are outstanding changes in the cached version. A file with outstanding changes in the cache not yet copied to home is called dirty. Files moved from `.ptrash` or `.pconflicts` (using the **`mv`** command) are treated as local files to the cache fileset and are not queued to home. However, if they are copied (for example, **`cp`** command ) to the cache, they are queued to home as new files.

## Active File Management (AFM) features

The following sections list features of Active File Management (AFM).

### Force flushing contents before Async Delay

Requests in the queue of a writable cache (SW/IW) can be flushed to home before they get flushed automatically after Async Delay using the **`mmafmctl flushPending`** command. Use

```
mmafmctl Device flushPending [-j FilesetName [--list-file ListFile]] [-s LocalWorkDirectory]
```

For more information, see the **`mmafmctl`** command in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

### Parallel data transfers

Parallel data transfer improves the AFM data transfer performance.

To help the primary gateway exchange large files with the home cluster, a cache cluster can be configured to leverage all the gateways defined in the cluster. When using NFS for AFM data transfers multiple NFS servers are required at the home cluster. All NFS servers on the home cluster must export the home path using the same parameters.

In a cache cluster, using NFS for AFM data transfer, each gateway node can be mapped to a specific NFS server at home. A map replaces the NFS server name in the **`AFMTarget`** parameter. Creating an export server map can be used to define more than one NFS server and map those NFS servers to specific AFM gateways. A map can be changed without modifying the **`afmTarget`** parameter for a fileset, and needs fileset relink or filesystem remount for the map change to take effect. Use the **`mmafmconfig`** command in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference* to define, display, delete, and update mappings.

To define multiple NFS servers for an **`AFMTarget`** parameter and use parallel data transfers:

1. Define a mapping.

2. Use the mapping as the **AFMTarget** parameter for one or more filesets.
3. Update parallel read and write thresholds, in chunk size, as required.

The following example shows a mapping for NFS target, assuming four cache gateway nodes hs22n18, hs22n19, hs22n20, and hs22n21, mapped to two home NFS servers js22n01 and js22n02 (192.168.200.11 and 192.168.200.12) and then creating SW filesets using this mapping.

Define the mapping:

```
# mmafmconfig add mapping1 --export-map js22n01/hs22n18,js22n02/hs22n19
mmafmconfig: Command successfully completed
mmafmconfig: Propagating the cluster configuration data to all affected nodes. This is an asynchronous process.
```

The syntax followed here is -

```
mmafmconfig {add | update} MapName --export-map ExportServerMap
```

```
# mmafmconfig add mapping2 --export-map js22n02/hs22n20,js22n01/hs22n21
mmafmconfig: Command successfully completed
mmafmconfig: Propagating the cluster configuration data to all affected nodes. This is an asynchronous process.
```

```
# mmafmconfig show
Map name:          mapping1
Export server map:  192.168.200.12/hs22n19.gpfs.net,192.168.200.11/hs22n18.gpfs.net

Map name:          mapping2
Export server map:  192.168.200.11/hs22n20.gpfs.net,192.168.200.12/hs22n21.gpfs.net
```

#Create filesets by using these mappings:

```
mmcrfileset gpfs1 sw1 --inode-space new -p afmMode=sw,afmTarget=nfs://mapping1/gpfs/gpfs2/swhome
mmcrfileset gpfs1 ro1 --inode-space new -p afmMode=ro,afmTarget=nfs://mapping2/gpfs/gpfs2/swhome
```

The syntax followed here is -

```
mmcrfileset <FS> <fset_name> -p afmMode=<AFM Mode>,
      afmTarget=<protocol>://<Mapping>/<remoteFS_Path>/<Target> --inode-space new
```

All gateway nodes other than the primary gateway that is defined in a mapping are called participating gateway nodes. The primary gateway of a cache fileset communicates with each of the participating gateway nodes, depending on their availability. When parallel data transfer is configured, a single data transfer request is split into multiple chunks. Chunks are sent across to the participating gateway nodes in parallel for transfer to, or from home by using the respective NFS servers. Primary gateway processes the replies from all the participating gateway nodes, handles all data transfer failures, and coordinates activities until all data transfer is completed. If any participating gateway node fails, the primary gateway attempts to retry the failed task on the next available gateway and generates an error message in the IBM Spectrum Scale log.

Parallel reads and writes are effective on files with sizes larger than those specified by the parallel threshold. The threshold is defined by using **afmParallelWriteThreshold** and **afmParallelReadThreshold** parameters, and is true for all types of files except reads on sparse files and files with partial file caching enabled, which is served only by the Primary gateway without splitting.

Use the **afmParallelWriteChunkSize** and **afmParallelReadChunkSize** parameters to configure the size of each chunk.

Some more functions are as under -

1. While using native NSD protocol; if a fileset is created without any mapping, all gateway nodes are used for parallel data transfer.

2. While using NFS protocol, if more than one gateway node is mapped to the same NFS server, only one performs a read task. However, a write task is split among all the gateway nodes.
3. One gateway node cannot be mapped to more than one NFS server.
4. Changes in the active mapping take effect after fileset re-link or file system remount.
5. If mapping is not specified or if mapping does not match, data cannot be transferred by using parallel data transfers and normal data transfer function is used.
6. Gateway designation can be removed from a node only if that node is not defined in any mapping.

**Note:** If an AFM home is a mix of architectures (x86 and ppc), parallel data transfer works only for the set of nodes that belong to any one architecture, depending on which architecture serves the data transfer first.

## Partial file caching

With partial file caching, the cache can fetch only the blocks that are read and not the entire file, thereby utilizing network and local disk space more efficiently. This is useful when an application does not need to read the whole file. Partial file caching is enabled on an IBM Spectrum Scale block boundary.

Partial file caching is controlled by the **afmPrefetchThreshold** parameter which can be updated using the **mmchfileset** command. The default value of this parameter is 0, which means complete file caching and all blocks of a file are fetched after any three blocks have been read by the cache and the file is marked as cached. This is useful for sequentially accessed files that are read in their entirety, such as image files, home directories, and development environments.

The valid **afmPrefetchThreshold** values are between 1 and 100. This specifies the file size percentage that must be cached before the rest of the data blocks are automatically fetched into the cache. A large value is suitable for a partially-accessed file.

An **afmPrefetchThreshold** value of 100 disables full file prefetching. This value caches only the data blocks that are read by the application. This is useful for large random-access files, that are either too big to fit in the cache or are never expected to be read in their entirety. When all data blocks are available in the cache, the file is marked as cached.

For sparse files, the percentage for prefetching is calculated as the ratio of the size of data blocks allocated in the cache and the total size of data blocks at home. Holes in the home file are not considered in the calculation.

## Writes on partially cached files

If a write is queued on a file that is partially cached, then the file is completely cached first. Only then the write is queued on the file. Appending to a partially cached file does not cache the whole file. In the LU mode alone, the write inset or append on a partially-cached file caches the whole file even if the prefetch threshold is set on the fileset.

**Note:** As Partial file caching is not backward compatible, all nodes must be on GPFS 3.5.0.11 or later.

## Prefetch

Prefetch fetches the file metadata (inode information) and data from home before an application requests the contents.

Prefetch is a feature that allows fetching the contents of a file into the cache before actual reads.

Prefetching files before an application starts can reduce the network delay when an application requests a file. Prefetch can be used to pro-actively manage WAN traffic patterns by moving files over the WAN during a period of low WAN usage.

Prefetch can be used in the following ways:

- Populate metadata
- Populate data
- View prefetch statistics

Use the following command to perform these activities.

```
mmafmctl Device prefetch -j FilesetName [-s LocalWorkDirectory]
      [--retry-failed-file-list|--enable-failed-file-list]
      [{--directory LocalDirectoryPath|--dir-list-file DirListFile [--policy]}[--nosubdirs]]
      {--list-file ListFile | --home-list-file HomeListFile} [--policy] [--home-inode-file PolicyListFile ]
      [--home-fs-path HomeFileSystemPath][--metadata-only][--gateway GatewayNode]
```

For more information on the command, see *mmafmctl* command in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*. If no options are given for prefetch, the statistics of the last prefetch command run on the fileset are displayed.

**--metadata-only** - Prefetches only the metadata and not the actual data. This is useful in migration scenarios. This option requires the list of files whose metadata is to be populated. It has to be combined with a list file option.

**--list-file ListFile** - The specified file is a file containing a list of files that need to be pre-populated, one file per line. All files must have fully qualified path names. If the list of files to be prefetched have filenames with special characters then a policy should be used to generate the listfile. This should be hand-edited to remove all other entries except the filenames. The list of files can be:

1. Files with fully qualified names from cache.
2. Files with fully qualified names from home
3. List of files from home generated using policy. The file must not be edited.

**--enable-failed-file-list** - Turns on generating a list of files which failed during prefetch operation at the gateway node. The list of files is saved as `.afm/.prefetchedfailed.list` under the fileset. Failures that occur during processing are not logged in `.afm/.prefetchedfailed.list`. If you observe any errors during processing (before queuing), you might need to correct the errors and re-run prefetch.

**--policy** - Specifies that the list-file or home-list-file is generated using a GPFS Policy by which sequences like `'\'` or `'\n'` are escaped as `'\\'` and `'\\n'`. If this option is specified, input file list is treated as already escaped. The sequences are unescaped first before queuing for prefetch operation.

**Note:** This option can be used only if you are specifying list-file or home-list-file.

**--directory LocalDirectoryPath** - Specifies path to the local directory from which you want to prefetch files. A list of all files in this directory and all its sub-directories is generated, and queued for prefetch. You can either specify **--directory** or **--dir-list-file** with **mmafmctl prefetch**. **--policy** can only be use with **--dir-list-file** and not with **--directory**. An example of the command - **#mmafmctl fs1 prefetch -j fileset1 --dir-list-file /tmp/file1 --policy**

```
| --dir-list-file DirListFile - This parameter enables prefetching individual directories under AFM
| fileset. Input file specifies the unique path to a directory that you want to prefetch. AFM generates a list
| of files under the specified directory and sub-directories and queues it to the gateway Node. The input
| file can also be a policy-generated file for which you need to specify --policy.
```

```
| --nosubdirs - This option restricts the recursive behavior of --directory and --dir-list-file and
| prefetches only till the specified level of directory. If you specify this parameter, sub-directories under the
| directory are not prefetched. This is an optional parameter and can only be used with --directory and
| --dir-list-file. Following are the examples of this command - #mmafmctl fs1 prefetch -j fileset1
| --directory /gpfs/fs1/fileset1/dir1 --nosubdirs
```

| Another example - **#mmafmctl fs1 prefetch -j fileset1 --dir-list-file /tmp/file1 --policy**  
| **--nosubdirs**

| **--gateway Gateway** - This is the Gateway node to be used for prefetch operation other than the Gateway node which is assigned to the AFM fileset. You can direct the specified prefetch operation to be run by a specified gateway node. This helps utilization of idle/preferred gateway node for a given prefetch task. This also enable running multiple prefetch operations belonging to the same fileset. This is an optional parameter for **mmafmctl prefetch**.

| An example of the command - **#mmafmctl fs1 prefetch -j fileset1 --directory /gpfs/fs1/fileset1/ dir1 --gateway NewGateway1**.

| If you run prefetch without providing any options, statistics of the last prefetch command run are displayed. An example of the command - **#mmafmctl fs1 prefetch -j fileset1**.

| To display specific Gateway Node statistics, you must specify **--gateway**. An example of the command - **#mmafmctl fs1 prefetch -j fileset1 --gateway Gateway1**

**--retry-failed-file-list** - Allows re-trying prefetch of files that failed in the last prefetch operation. The list of files to re-try is obtained from **.afm/.prefetchedfailed.list** under the fileset.

**Note:** To use this option, you must enable generating a list of failed files. Add **--enable-failed-file-list** to the command first.

**--home-list-file HomeListFile** - The specified file is a file containing a list of files from home that need to be pre-populated, one file per line. All files must have fully qualified path names. If the list of files to be prefetched have filenames with special characters then a policy should be used to generate the listfile. A policy generated file should be hand-edited to remove all other entries except the filenames. As of version 4.2.1, this option is deprecated. The **-list-file** option can handle this.

**--home-inode-file PolicyListFile** - The specified file is a file containing the list of files from home that need to be pre-populated in the cache and this file is generated using policy. This should not be hand-edited. This option is deprecated. The **-list-file** option can handle this.

**--home-fs-path HomeFileSystemPath** - Specifies the full path to the fileset at the home cluster and can be used in conjunction with **-list-file**. You must use this option, when in the NSD protocol the mount point on the gateway nodes of the afmTarget filesets does not match the mount point on the Home cluster. For example, the home filesystem is mounted on the home cluster at **/gpfs/homefs1**. The home filesystem is mounted on the cache using NSD protocol at **/gpfs/remotefs1**.

For example, **mmafmctl gpfs1 prefetch -j cache1 -list-file /tmp/list.allfiles --home-fs-path /gpfs/remotefs1**.

Prefetch is an asynchronous process and the fileset can be used while prefetch is in progress. Prefetch completion can be monitored by using the **afmPrepopEnd** callback event or looking at **mmafmctl Device prefetch** command with no options.

Prefetch pulls the complete file contents from home (unless the **--metadata-only** flag is used), so the file is designated as cached when it is completely prefetched. Prefetch of partially cached files caches the complete file.

Prefetch can be run in parallel on multiple filesets, although only one prefetch job can run on a fileset.

If a file is in the process of getting prefetched, it is not evicted.

If parallel data transfer is configured, all gateways participate in the prefetch process.

If the filesystem unmounts during prefetch on the gateway, prefetch needs to be issued again.

Prefetch can be triggered on inactive filesets.

Directories are also prefetched to the cache if specified in the prefetch file. If you specify a directory in the prefetch file and if that directory is empty, the empty directory is prefetched to cache. If the directory contains files or sub-directories, you must specify the names of the files or sub-directories which you want to prefetch. If you do not specify names of individual files or sub-directories inside a directory, that directory is prefetched without its contents.

If you run the prefetch command with data or metadata options, statistics like queued files, total files, failed files, total data (in Bytes) is displayed as in the following example of command and system output

```
#mmafmctl <FileSystem> prefetch -j <fileset> --enable-failed-file-list --list-file
/tmp/file-list
mmafmctl: Performing prefetching of fileset: <fileset>
Queued (Total) Failed TotalData (approx in Bytes)
0 (56324) 0 0
5 (56324) 2 1353559
56322 (56324) 2 14119335
```

## Prefetch Recovery:

**Note:** This feature is disabled from IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.2. If your cluster is running on an earlier version, prefetch recovery is possible.

If the primary gateway of a cache is changed while prefetch is running, prefetch is stopped. The next access to the fileset automatically re-triggers the interrupted prefetch on the new primary gateway. The list file used when prefetch was initiated must exist in a path that is accessible to all gateway nodes. Prefetch recovery on a single-writer fileset is triggered by a read on some file in the fileset. Prefetch recovery on a read-only, independent-writer and local-update fileset is triggered by a lookup or readir on the fileset. Prefetch recovery occurs on the new primary gateway and continues where it left off. It looks at which files did not complete prefetch and it rebuilds the prefetch queue. Examples of messages in the mmfs.log are as below:

```
Wed Oct 1 13:59:22.780 2014: [I] AFM: Prefetch recovery started for the file system gpfs1 fileset iw1.
mmafmctl: Performing prefetching of fileset: iw1
Wed Oct 1 13:59:23 EDT 2014: mmafmctl: [I] Performing prefetching of fileset: iw1
Wed Oct 1 14:00:59.986 2014: [I] AFM: Starting 'queue' operation for fileset 'iw1' in filesystem '/dev/gpfs1'.
Wed Oct 1 14:00:59.987 2014: [I] Command: tspace /dev/gpfs1 1 iw1 0 257 42949 67295 0 0 1393371
Wed Oct 1 14:01:17.912 2014: [I] Command: successful tspace /dev/gpfs1 1 iw1 0 257 4294967295 0 0 1393371
Wed Oct 1 14:01:17.946 2014: [I] AFM: Prefetch recovery completed for the filesystem gpfs1 fileset iw1. error 0
```

### 1. Metadata population using prefetch:

```
# mmafmctl fs1 getstate -j ro
```

```
Fileset Name Fileset Target Cache State Gateway Node Queue Length Queue numExec
-----
ro nfs://c26c3apv1/gpfs/homefs1/dir3 Active c26c2apv2 0 7
List Policy:
RULE EXTERNAL LIST 'List' RULE 'List' LIST 'List' WHERE PATH_NAME LIKE%'
Run the policy at home:mmappolicy /gpfs/homefs1/dir3 -P px -f px.res -L 1 -N mount -I defer
Policy creates a file which should be manually edited to retain only the file names. Thereafter
this file is used at the cache to populate metadata.
```

```
# mmafmctl fs1 prefetch -j ro --metadata-only --list-file=px.res.list.List
```

```
mmafmctl: Performing prefetching of fileset: ro
Queued (Total) Failed TotalData
(approx in Bytes)
0 (2) 0 0
100 (116) 5 1368093971
```



prefetch successfully queued at the gateway

Prefetch end can be monitored by using this event:

Thu May 21 06:49:34.748 2015: [I] Calling User Exit Script prepop: event afmPrepopEnd,  
Async command prepop.sh.

The statistics of the last prefetch command can be viewed by running the following command:

```
mmafmctl fs1 prefetch -j ro
```

Fileset Name Async Read (Pending) Async Read (Failed) Async Read (Already Cached)

Async Read (Total) Async Read (Data in Bytes)

```
-----
ro          0          1          0          7          0
```

## 2. Prefetch of data by giving list of files from home: # **cat /listfile1**

```
/gpfs/homefs1/dir3/file1
```

```
/gpfs/homefs1/dir3/dir1/file1
```

```
# mmafmctl fs1 prefetch -j ro --list-file=/listfile1
```

mmafmctl: Performing prefetching of fileset: ro

Queued (Total) Failed TotalData

(approx in Bytes)

```
0      (2)    0      0
2      (2)    0      1368093971
```

```
# mmafmctl fs1 prefetch -j ro
```

Fileset Name Async Read (Pending) Async Read (Failed) Async Read (Already Cached) Async

Read (Total) Async Read (Data in Bytes)

```
-----
ro          0          0          0          2      122880
```

## 3. Prefetch of data using list file that is generated using policy at home:

Inode file is created using the above policy at home, and must be used as such without hand-editing.

List Policy:

```
RULE EXTERNAL LIST 'List' RULE 'List' LIST 'List' WHERE PATH_NAME LIKE '%'
```

For files with special characters, path names must be encoded with ESCAPE %.

```
RULE EXTERNAL LIST 'List' ESCAPE '%' RULE 'List' LIST 'List' WHERE PATH_NAME LIKE '%'
```

Run the policy at home: # **mmapplypolicy /gpfs/homefs1/dir3 -P px -f px.res -L 1 -N mount -I defer**

```
# cat /lfile2
```

```
113289 65538 0 -- /gpfs/homefs1/dir3/file2
```

```
113292 65538 0 -- /gpfs/homefs1/dir3/dir1/file2
```

```
# mmafmctl fs1 prefetch -j ro --list-file=/lfile2
```

mmafmctl: Performing prefetching of fileset: ro

```
# mmafmctl fs1 prefetch -j ro --list-file=/lfile2
```

mmafmctl: Performing prefetching of fileset: ro

Queued (Total) Failed TotalData

(approx in Bytes)

```
0      (2)    0      0
2      (2)    0      1368093971
```

## 4. Prefetch using --home-fs-path option for a target with NSD protocol:

```
# mmafmctl fs1 getstate -j ro2
```

Fileset Name	Fileset	Target	Cache State	Gateway Node	Queue Length	Queue numExec
ro2	gpfs:///gpfs/remotefs1/dir3		Active		c26c4apv1	0 7

```
# cat /lfile2
113289 65538 0 -- /gpfs/homefs1/dir3/file2
113292 65538 0 -- /gpfs/homefs1/dir3/dir1/file2

# mmafmctl fs1 prefetch -j ro2 --list-file=/lfile2 --home-fs-path=/gpfs/homefs1/dir3
mmafmctl: Performing prefetching of fileset: ro2

Queued (Total) Failed TotalData
      (2)      0      (approx in Bytes)
0          (2)      0      0
2          (2)      0     113292

# mmafmctl fs1 prefetch -j ro2
Fileset Name Async Read (Pending) Async Read (Failed) Async Read (Already Cached) Async
Read (Total) Async Read (Data in Bytes)
-----
ro2          0          0          0          2          122880
```

## Peer snapshot -psnap

The peer snapshot function provides a snapshot at home and cache separately, ensuring application consistency on both sides (cache and home).

When you take a peer snapshot, it creates a snapshot in the cache fileset then queues a snapshot to be executed at the home. When all of the queued requests outstanding at the time the snap was performed in cache have been flushed to the home fileset so that the home data is consistent with cache, a snapshot of the corresponding home fileset is performed. The result is a pair of peer snapshots, one at the cache and one at the home. Both refer to the same copy.

Peer snapshots are created using the **mmpsnp** command on the cache. To create a peer snapshot, the cache fileset must be in the active state. The last successful snapshot is saved and can be viewed by running the **mm1ssnapshot** command at home or cache. Multiple outstanding peer snapshots can be queued on the gateway. Use the **mmpsnp** command to ensure that both the cache and home snapshots are removed. The **mmpsnp** command works only if the home cluster has run the **mmafmconfig enable ExportPath** command. The **mmpsnp** command can be used only in an SW cache. It cannot be used for RO, IW, or LU caches.

**Note:** Do not use the **mmdelsnapshot** command to delete peer snapshots.

If the cache fileset is disconnected from the home fileset when the cache snapshot is created, the cache records that the peer snapshot on the home fileset has not been created. When connection is restored, it attempts to create the snapshot.

Peer snapshots are not allowed on a SW cache that uses the NSD protocol for communicating with home.

1. To create a fileset level snapshot in cache of a single-writer fileset called sw in file system fs1, run the following command:

```
mmmpsnp fs1 create -j sw
```

The system displays the following output:

```
Writing dirty data to disk.
Quiescing all file system operations.
Writing dirty data to disk again.
Snapshot psnap-13882361812785649740-C0A80E85:4F44B305-59-12-03-01-02-27-28 created with id 8.
Snapshot psnap-13882361812785649740-C0A80E85:4F44B305-59-12-03-01-02-27-28 created at the satellite.
Core snapshot has been queued.
```

2. To view the snapshot, run the following command:

```
mmfssnapshot fs1 -j sw
```

The system displays the following output:

```
Snapshots in file system fs1:
Directory SnapId Status Created Fileset
psnap-13882361812785649740-C0A80E85:4F44B305-59-12-03-01-02-27-28 8 Valid Thu Oct 27 02:27:29 2016 sw
```

3. To view the snapshot at home, run the following command at home.:

```
mmfssnapshot fs1
```

The system displays the following output:

```
Snapshots in file system fs1:
Directory SnapId Status Created Fileset
psnap-13882361812785649740-C0A80E85:4F44B305-59-12-03-01-02-27-28 8 Valid Thu Oct 27 02:23:16 2016
```

## Gateway node failure and recovery

When the Primary gateway of a fileset fails, another gateway node takes over the ownership of the fileset.

Gateway node failures are not catastrophic and do not result in the loss of data or the loss of the ability of AFM to communicate with the home cluster with updates and revalidations.

AFM internally stores all the information necessary to replay the updates made in the cache at the home cluster. When a gateway node fails the in-memory queue is lost. The queue is rebuilt in memory by the node taking over for the failed gateway. The process of rebuilding the queue is called Recovery. As an administrator, ensure that you create sufficient disk space in `/var/mmfs/afm` for a smooth recovery. Approximately, one million files require 250 MB disk space in `/var/mmfs/afm`.

During recovery, outstanding cache updates are placed on the in-memory queue and the gateway starts processing the queue. AFM collects the pending operations by running a policy scan in the fileset. AFM uses the policy infrastructure in IBM Spectrum Scale to engage all the nodes mounting the file system. Pending requests are queued in a special queue called the priority queue which is different from the normal queue where normal requests get queued. After the priority queue is flushed to home, the cache and home become synchronized and recovery is said to be completed and the cache returns to an Active state. In some cases, the files or directories deleted at cache might not be deleted at home. Hence, these undeleted files or directories remain at home. However, the recovery operations remain unaffected.

The beginning and end of the AFM recovery process can be monitored by using the **afmRecoveryStart** and **afmRecoveryEnd** callback events.

Recovery is only used for single-writer and the independent-writer mode filesets. It is triggered when the cache fileset attempts to move to Active state, for example when the fileset is accessed for the first time after the failure.

Recovery can run in parallel on multiple filesets, although only one instance can run on a fileset at a time. The time taken to synchronize the contents of cache with home after the recovery of a gateway node depends on the number of files in the fileset and the number of outstanding changes since the last failure.

In multiple AFM cache environment, recovery is triggered after a failure. You can configure **afmMaxParallelRecoveries** to specify the number of filesets in the cluster on all filesystems. The recovery process is run on the number of filesets you specify for **afmMaxParallelRecoveries**. The number of filesets specified in **afmMaxParallelRecoveries** are accessed for recovery. After recoveries are complete on these filesets, the next set of filesets are accessed for recovery. By default, **afmMaxParallelRecoveries** is set to 0, and the recovery process is run on all filesets. Specifying **afmMaxParallelRecoveries** restricts the number of recoveries, thus conserving hardware resources. For more information, see *Configuration parameters for AFM in IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

Peer snapshots created in cache and queued to home might get lost due to gateway node failure. These peer snapshots cannot be recovered through AFM recovery. For details, see “Peer snapshot -psnap” on page 60.

If there are no updates to any AFM-enabled fileset, the failure of a gateway node is harmless and application nodes do not experience delays. During recovery, application requests to all AFM filesets are momentarily blocked.

The following example indicates changes in the AFM fileset state during recovery:

```
node2:/gpfs/cache/fileset_SW # mmafmctl fs1 getstate
Fileset Name Fileset Target Cache State Gateway Node Queue Length Queue numExec
-----
fileset_SW nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset001 FlushOnly node2 0 0

node2:/gpfs/cache/fileset_SW # mmafmctl fs1 getstate
Fileset Name Fileset Target Cache State Gateway Node Queue Length Queue numExec
-----
fileset_SW nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset001 Recovery node2 0 0

node2:/gpfs/cache/fileset_SW # mmafmctl fs1 getstate
Fileset Name Fileset Target Cache State Gateway Node Queue Length Queue numExec
-----
fileset_SW nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset001 Active node2 0 3
```

For more information, see *mmafmctl* command in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

An example of the messages in *mmfs.log* is as follows:

```
Thu Oct 27 15:28:15 CEST 2016: [N] AFM: Starting recovery for fileset 'fileset_SW' in fs 'fs1'
Thu Oct 27 15:28:15 CEST 2016: mmcommon afmrecovery invoked: device=fs1 filesetId=1....
Thu Oct 27 15:28:16 CEST 2016: [N] AFM: mmafmlocal /usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mmapplypolicy....
Thu Oct 27 15:28:31.325 2016: [I] AFM: Detecting operations to be recovered...
Thu Oct 27 15:28:31.328 2016: [I] AFM: Found 2 update operations...
Thu Oct 27 15:28:31.331 2016: [I] AFM: Starting 'queue' operation for fileset 'fileset_SW' in filesystem 'fs1'.
Thu Oct 27 15:28:31.332 2016: [I] Command: tpspcache fs1 1 fileset_SW 0 3 1346604503 38 0 43
Thu Oct 27 15:28:31.375 2016: [I] Command: successful tpspcache fs1 1 fileset_SW 0 3 1346604503 38 0 43
Thu Oct 27 15:28:31 CEST 2016: [I] AFM: Finished queuing recovery operations for /gpfs/cache/fileset_SW
```

## Failures during recovery

Filesets can be in recovery state and may not complete recovery due to some conditions. The fileset might go to **Dropped** or **NeedsResync** state, implying that recovery has failed.

The *mmfs.log* might contain the following lines: AFM: File system fs1 fileset adrSanity-160216-120202-KNFS-TC11-DRP encountered an error synchronizing with the remote cluster. Cannot synchronize with the remote cluster until AFM recovery is executed. remote error 28.

After the recovery fails, the next recovery is triggered after 120 seconds or when some operation is performed on the SW or IW fileset. After a successful recovery, modifications at the cache are synchronized with the home and the fileset state is 'Active'.

The following checks are needed from the administrator to ensure that the next recovery is successful:

1. Check the inode or block quota on cache and at home.
2. Ensure home is accessible. Remount home filesystem and restart NFS at home.
3. Ensure memory is not reached. If memory is reached, increase **afmHardMemThreshold**.
4. Check network connectivity with home.
5. If recovery keeps failing as eviction is triggered due to exceeding block quotas, increase block quotas or disable eviction to get recovery working.

## Cache eviction

Cache eviction is a feature where file data blocks in the cache are released when fileset usage exceeds the fileset soft quota, and space is created for new files.

The process of releasing blocks is called eviction. However, file data is not evicted if the file data is dirty. A file whose outstanding changes are not flushed to home is a dirty file.

You can use automatic cache eviction or define your own policy to decide which file data is evicted. To automatically enable cache eviction, define a fileset soft quota on the cache fileset. Eviction starts when fileset usage reaches the soft quota limit. A time lag might result when an eviction is triggered and the data is evicted. Tuning the soft and hard quota limits minimizes application delays that are caused by the data being cached at a faster rate than it is being evicted.

Cache eviction based on inode quotas is not supported. Cached data from partially fetched files are not evicted from cache. When files are evicted from cache, all data blocks of those files are cleared. The files are then uncached. When a read operation is performed on the files the next time, the files fetch data from home.

Cache eviction is enabled by default on all AFM nodes and is controlled by the **afmEnableAutoEviction** parameter, and fileset block quota. Cache eviction can also be manually triggered by using the **mmafmctl evict** command. When a file is evicted, file data is removed from the cache, but the inode stays in the cache. Using eviction, you can build environments, where all objects from home are available but running in limited amount of space.

For example, a cache could be created in flash storage. File eviction opens a powerful method of providing small but high speed and low latency cache filesets to clusters.

Manual eviction can be done by using the **mmafmctl evict** command as under:

```
mmafmctl Device evict -j FileName
      [--safe-limit SafeLimit] [--order {LRU | SIZE}]
      [--log-file LogFile] [--filter Attribute=Value ...]
      [--list-file ListFile] [--file FilePath]
```

For more information, see **mmafmctl** command in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

This option is applicable for RO/SW/IW/LU filesets. This command can be run manually or run in a script with a custom policy to implement a custom eviction policy. Options can be combined.

**--safe-limit SafeLimit** - This is a mandatory parameter for the manual evict option, for order and filter attributes. It specifies target quota limit which is used as the low water mark for eviction in bytes – the value must be less than the soft limit. This parameter can be used alone or can be combined with one of the following parameters (order or filter attributes). Specify the parameter in bytes.

**--order LRU | SIZE** - The order in which files are to be chosen for eviction: LRU - Least recently used files are to be evicted first. SIZE - Larger-sized files are to be evicted first.

**--log-file Log File** - The file where the eviction log is to be stored. By default no logs are generated.

**--filter Attribute=Value** - The attributes that you can use to control the way data is evicted from the cache. Valid attributes are: FILENAME=File Name - The name of a file to be evicted from the cache. This option uses an SQL-type search query. If the same file name exists in more than one directory, the cache will evict all the files with that name. The complete path to the file must not be given here.

MINFILESIZE=Size - The minimum size of a file to evict from the cache. This value is compared to the number of blocks allocated to a file (KB\_ALLOCATED), which might differ slightly from the file size.

MAXFILESIZE=Size - The maximum size of a file to evict from the cache. This value is compared to the number of blocks allocated to a file (KB\_ALLOCATED), which might differ slightly from the file size.

Possible combinations of options could be:

- Only Safe limit
- Safe limit + LRU
- Safe limit + SIZE
- Safe limit + FILENAME
- Safe limit + MINFILESIZE
- Safe limit + MAXFILESIZE
- Safe limit + LRU + FILENAME
- Safe limit + LRU + MINFILESIZE
- Safe limit + LRU + MAXFILESIZE
- Safe limit + SIZE + FILENAME
- Safe limit + SIZE + MINFILESIZE
- Safe limit + SIZE + MAXFILESIZE

**--list-file ListFile** - The specified file is a file containing a list of files to be evicted, one file per line. All files must have fully qualified path names. Filesystem quotas need not be specified. If the list of files to be evicted have filenames with special characters then a policy should be used to generate the listfile. This policy output should be hand-edited to remove all other entries except the filenames and can be passed to the evict command.

**--file FilePath** - The fully qualified name of the file to be evicted. Filesystem quotas need not be specified.

**enforceFilesetQuotaOnRoot** - Enable to evict files created by root. By default, files created by root are not evicted.

#### 1. Evicting using filter option -

```
node1:/gpfs/cache/fileset_IW # mmlsfs fs1 -Q
flag value description
```

```
-----
Q user;group;fileset Quotas accounting enabled
none Quotas enforced
none Default quotas enabled
```

```
node1:/gpfs/cache/fileset_IW # mmquotaon -v fs1
mmquotaon on fs1
```

```
node1:/gpfs/cache/fileset_IW # mmlsfs fs1 -Q
flag value description
```

```
-----
Q user;group;fileset Quotas accounting enabled
user;group;fileset Quotas enforced
none Default quotas enabled
```

```
node1:/gpfs/cache/fileset_IW # mmlsquota -j fileset_IW fs1
Block Limits | File Limits
Filesystem type KB quota limit in_doubt grace | files quota limit in_doubt grace Remarks
fs1 FILESET 96 102400 2097152 0 none | 20 0 0 0 none
```

```
node1:/gpfs/cache/fileset_IW # mmafmctl fs1 evict -j fileset_IW --filter FILENAME='%work%'
mmafmctl: Run mmcheckquota command before running mmafmctl with evict option
mmafmctl: Command failed. Examine previous error messages to determine cause.
```

```
node1:/gpfs/cache/fileset_IW # mmcheckquota fs1
```

```

fs1: Start quota check2 % complete on Thu Oct 27 09:19:41 2016
[...]
95 % complete on Thu Oct 27 09:20:03 2016
100 % complete on Thu Oct 27 09:20:03 2016
Finished scanning the inodes for fs1.
Merging results from scan.

```

```
node1:/gpfs/cache/fileset_IW # mmafmlocal ls workfile1
```

```
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 104857600 Oct 27 08:30 workfile1
```

```
node1:/gpfs/cache/fileset_IW # mmafmctl fs1 evict -j fileset_IW --filter FILENAME='%work%'
```

```
node1:/gpfs/cache/fileset_IW # mmafmlocal ls workfile1
```

```
mmafmlocal: Command failed. Examine previous error messages to determine cause.
```

## 2. Manual evict using the **--list-file** option -

```
[root@c21f2n08 ~]# ls -lshi /gpfs/fs1/evictCache
```

```
total 6.0M
```

```
27858308 1.0M -rw-r--r--. 1 root root 1.0M Feb 5 02:07 file1M
```

```
27858307 2.0M -rw-r--r--. 1 root root 2.0M Feb 5 02:07 file2M
```

```
27858306 3.0M -rw-r--r--. 1 root root 3.0M Feb 5 02:07 file3M
```

```
[root@c21f2n08 ~]# echo "RULE EXTERNAL LIST 'HomePREPDAEMON' RULE 'ListLargeFiles' LIST
```

```
'HomePREPDAEMON' WHERE PATH_NAME LIKE '%" > /tmp/evictionPolicy.pol
```

```
[root@c21f2n08 ~]# mmapplypolicy /gpfs/fs1/evictCache -I defer -P /tmp/evictionPolicy.pol -f
/tmp/evictionList
```

```
#Edited list of files to be evicted
```

```
[root@c21f2n08 ~]# cat /tmp/evictionList.list.HomePREPDAEMON
```

```
27858306 605742886 0 --/gpfs/fs1/evictCache/file3M
```

```
[root@c21f2n08 ~]# mmafmctl fs1 evict -j evictCache --list-file /tmp/
evictionList.list.HomePREPDAEMON
```

```
[root@c21f2n08 ~]# ls -lshi /gpfs/fs1/evictCache total 3.0M
```

```
27858308 1.0M -rw-r--r--. 1 root root 1.0M Feb 5 02:07 file1M
```

```
27858307 2.0M -rw-r--r--. 1 root root 2.0M Feb 5 02:07 file2M
```

```
27858306 0 -rw-r--r--. 1 root root 3.0M Feb 5 02:07 file3M
```

## 3. Manual evict using the **--file** option -

```
[root@c21f2n08 ~]# ls -lshi /gpfs/fs1/evictCache
```

```
total 3.0M
```

```
27858308 1.0M -rw-r--r--. 1 root root 1.0M Feb 5 02:07 file1M
```

```
27858307 2.0M -rw-r--r--. 1 root root 2.0M Feb 5 02:07 file2M
```

```
27858306 0 -rw-r--r--. 1 root root 3.0M Feb 5 02:07 file3M
```

```
[root@c21f2n08 ~]# mmafmctl fs1 evict -j evictCache --file /gpfs/fs1/evictCache/file1M
```

```
[root@c21f2n08 ~]# ls -lshi /gpfs/fs1/evictCache/file1M
```

```
total 0
```

```
27858308 0 -rw-r--r--. 1 root root 1.0M Feb 5 02:07 file1M
```

## Operation with disconnected home

With a cache and home cluster separated by a WAN (wide area network), it might result in intermittent outages and possibly long-term disruptions.

If the primary gateway determines that the home cannot be accessed, the primary gateway waits until the interval time specified in the **afmDisconnectTimeout** parameter passes, and then changes the cache state to disconnected. This feature is available on all AFM filesets.

In a disconnected state, cached files are served to applications from the cache. Application requests for uncached data return an I/O error. All update operations from the cache complete, and return successfully to the application. These requests remain queued at the gateway until they can be flushed to home.

In a disconnected state, the home cannot be accessed for revalidation. Therefore, the latest updates from home are not available in the cache. Writes, which require revalidation with home might appear temporarily stuck if it is done after the Home fails, and before the cache moves to disconnected state. With revalidation stuck waiting on the unavailable home, the request times out as per the value set in the **afmDisconnectTimeout** parameter.

In the case of cache filesets based on the NSD protocol, when the home file system is not mounted on the gateway, the cache cluster puts the cache filesets into unmounted state. These cache filesets never enter the disconnected state.

If the remote cluster is unresponsive at the home cluster due to a deadlock, operations that require remote mount access, such as revalidation or reading uncached contents, stop responding until the remote mount becomes available again. This is true for AFM filesets that use the NSD protocol to connect to the home cluster. You can continue accessing cached contents without disruption by temporarily disabling all of the revalidation intervals until the remote mount is accessible again.

If a cache fileset is disconnected for an extended period, the number of file system updates might exceed the buffering capacity of the gateway nodes. In this situation, operations continue in the cache. When the connection to home is restored, AFM runs recovery and synchronizes its local updates to the home cluster.

AFM automatically detects when home is available and moves the cache into the Active state. The callback events **afmHomeDisconnected** and **afmHomeConnected** can be used to monitor when a cache changes state.

Filesets using a mapping target go into disconnected state if the NFS server of the Primary Gateway is unreachable, even when the NFS servers of all participating gateways are reachable.

Prefetch tasks that fail due to home disconnection, continue when home is available again.

The following example shows the number of read/write operations that were executed while the home was in the disconnected mode.

```
node1:/gpfs/cache/fileset_IW # mmafmctl fs1 getstate
Fileset Name Fileset Target Cache State Gateway Node Queue Length Queue numExec
-----
fileset_IW nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset002new Disconnected node2 0 102

node1:/gpfs/cache/fileset_IW # ls -la
total 128
drwx----- 65535 root root 32768 Oct 13 16:50 .afm
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 8 Oct 22 17:02 newfile2
drwx----- 65535 root root 32768 Oct 22 05:23 .pconflicts
drwx----- 65535 root root 32768 Oct 22 17:02 .ptrash
dr-xr-xr-x 2 root root 32768 Oct 13 16:20 .snapshots

node1:/gpfs/cache/fileset_IW # for i in 1 2 3 4 5 ; do date > file$i ; done

node1:/gpfs/cache/fileset_IW # mmafmctl fs1 getstate
Fileset Name Fileset Target Cache State Gateway Node Queue Length Queue numExec
-----
fileset_IW nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset002new Disconnected node2 27 102
```



# turn on NFS at home

**node1:/gpfs/cache/fileset\_IW # mmadmctl fs1 getstate**

Fileset Name	Fileset	Target	Cache State	Gateway Node	Queue Length	Queue	numExec
fileset_IW	nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset002new	Dirty	node2	27	102		

**node1:/gpfs/cache/fileset\_IW # mmadmctl fs1 getstate**

Fileset Name	Fileset	Target	Cache State	Gateway Node	Queue Length	Queue	numExec
fileset_IW	nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset002new	Dirty	node2	27	102		

**node1:/gpfs/cache/fileset\_IW # date > file10**

**node1:/gpfs/cache/fileset\_IW # mmadmctl fs1 getstate**

Fileset Name	Fileset	Target	Cache State	Gateway Node	Queue Length	Queue	numExec
fileset_IW	nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset002new	Active	node2	0	134		

## Expiring a disconnected RO cache

Read-only filesets can be configured to expire cached data after the gateway nodes are in a disconnected state for a specified amount of time.

This feature provides control over how long a network outage between the cache and home can be tolerated before the data in the cache is considered stale. This prevents access to old data, where old is defined by the amount of time that the WAN cache is out of synchronization with the data at the home site. Cached data is only available until the time period set in the **afmExpirationTimeout** parameter expires, at which point the cached data is considered 'expired' and cannot be read until a reconnect occurs.

This feature is not available in other AFM modes.

RO cache filesets created using the NSD protocol do not automatically go to the expired state, even if the expiration time-out is set for them. They continue to remain in the unmounted state for as long as the home file system is unavailable. The administrator can manually expire the data in an RO cache before the expiration timeout is reached, using the **mmadmctl expire** command only if the expiration time-out is configured for the fileset. An RO cache created using NSD protocol can also be manually expired. Use the following command - **mmadmctl Device {resync | expire | unexpire} -j FilesetName**. For more information, see **mmadmctl** command in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

### 1. Expiring a RO fileset -

```
# mmadmctl fs1 expire -j rol
```

```
# mmadmctl fs1 getstate -j rol
```

Fileset Name	Fileset	Target	Cache State	Gateway Node	Queue Length	Queue	numExec
rol	gpfs:///gpfs/remotefs1/dir1	Expired	c26c4apv1	0	4		

### 2. Unexpiring a RO fileset -

```
# mmadmctl fs1 unexpire -j rol
```

```
#mmadmctl fs1 getstate -j rol
```

Fileset Name	Fileset	Target	Cache State	Gateway Node	Queue Length	Queue	numExec
rol	gpfs:///gpfs/remotefs1/dir1	Active	c26c4apv1	0	4		

The **afmFilesetExpired** callback event is triggered when a fileset moves into expired state. The **afmFilesetUnexpired** callback event is triggered when a fileset moves out of the expired state.

## Viewing snapshots at home

All snapshots at home for RO and LU filesets can be viewed in the cache by setting the **afmShowHomeSnapshot** parameter to yes. This variable is not applicable for SW and IW filesets.

The home and cache can have different snapshot directories for clarity. If the **afmShowHomeSnapshot** parameter is changed after fileset creation, the change is reflected in the cache only after IBM Spectrum Scale is restarted, or the file system is remounted. However, if the value of **afmShowHomeSnapshot** parameter is changed from yes to no during the lifetime of a fileset, it continues to show the home snapshots even after a restart, or file system remount.

For RO and LU filesets using NFS, when a lookup is performed from the parent directory of .snapshot directory, the changes at home are not reflected in the cache, as NFS cannot detect the changes in .snapshot. The **mtime/ctime** parameter of this directory is not modified at home despite snapshots creates or deletes at home. This is not true for RO and LU filesets using GPFS backend as the latest snapshot directory gets reflected in cache.

## Changing home of AFM cache

AFM filesets continue to function in the event of home failures.

AFM filesets serve the cache applications with cached data. If the home is permanently lost, you can create a new home. An existing SW/IW AFM cache can make the following changes to the home. This is not supported on RO/LU filesets.

1. Replace the home with a completely new empty home where the new target is created using NFS/NSD mapping:

The administrator must run the **mmafmctl failover** command without **-target-only** option to point to the new home. The new home is expected to be empty. To ensure that extended attributes are synchronized, run the **mmafmconfig** command on the new home before running the failover command. If the new target is a mapping, failover does not split data transfers and queues them as normal requests without parallel data transfer.

2. Replace any of the following on an existing home:

- a. Replace the communication protocol (NSD, NFS): The administrator must run the **mmafmctl failover** command without the **-target-only** option, using the new target protocol.

**Note:** Only the protocol changes. The home path does not change.

- b. Enable or disable parallel data transfer by shifting between NFS and a mapping: The administrator must run the **mmafmctl failover** command without the **-target-only** option, using the new target protocol or mapping.

**Note:** Only the protocol changes. The home path does not change.

- c. Replace either the IP address or the NFS server using the same communication protocol and home path: The administrator must run the **mmafmctl failover** command with the **-target-only** option. The IP/NFS server must be on the same home cluster and must be of the same architecture as the old NFS server.

**Note:** Only the IP or NFS server changes.

During failover ensure that the cache filesystem is mounted on all gateway nodes, and the new home filesystem is mounted on all the nodes in the home cluster.

**Note:** Failover does not use parallel data transfers.

When creating a new home, all cached data and metadata available in the cache are queued in the priority queue to the new home during the failover process. The failover process is not synchronous and

completes in the background. The **afmManualResyncComplete** callback event is triggered when failover is complete. Resync does not split data transfers even if parallel data transfer is configured, and the target is a mapping.

If the failover is interrupted due to a gateway node failure or quorum loss, failover is restarted automatically when the cache fileset attempts to go to Active state.

When there are multiple IW caches, the administrator must choose a primary IW cache and fail this over to a new empty home. All of the other IW cache filesets to the old home must be deleted and recreated. If another IW cache is failed over to the same home after failing over another IW cache, all the data in that cache overwrites existing objects at home. For this reason, failover to a non-empty home is discouraged.

When the failover function is likely to be used due to the failure of the old home, the admin must be cautious and disable automatic eviction. This is to ensure that eviction does not free the cached data on the cache. The evicted data cannot be recovered if the old home is lost.

Each AFM fileset is independently managed and has a one-to-one relationship with a target, thus allowing different protocol backends to coexist on separate filesets in the same file system. However, AFM does not validate the target for correctness when a fileset is created. The user must specify a valid target. Do not use a target that belongs to the same file system as the AFM fileset. For more information, see **mmafmctl** command in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

The following example shows changing the target for an SW fileset. Consider a SW fileset `fileset_SW` of file system `fs1` that uses home target `nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset001`. A failover is performed to a new target `nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset002new`.

```
# mmlsfileset fs1 fileset_SW --afm
The system displays output similar to -
Filesets in file system 'fs1':
Name Status Path afmTarget
fileset_SW Linked /gpfs/cache/fileset_SW nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset001
#mmafmctl fs1 getstate -j fileset_SW
The system displays output similar to -
Fileset Name Fileset Target Cache State Gateway Node Queue Length Queue numExec
-----
fileset_SW nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset001 Active GatewayNode1 0 6
# mmafmctl fs1 failover -j fileset_SW --new-target nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset002new
The system displays output similar to -
mmafmctl:Performing failover to nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset002new
Fileset fileset_SW changed.
mmafmctl: Failover in progress. This may take while...
Check fileset state or register for callback to know the completion status.
# mmafmctl fs1 getstate -j fileset_SW
The system displays output similar to -
Fileset Name Fileset Target Cache State Gateway Node Queue Length Queue numExec
-----
fileset_SW nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset002new NeedsResync GatewayNode1 6 0
# mmafmctl fs1 getstate -j fileset_SW
The system displays output similar to -
Fileset Name Fileset Target Cache State Gateway Node Queue Length Queue numExec
-----
fileset_SW nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset002new Recovery GatewayNode1 6 0
# mmafmctl fs1 getstate -j fileset_SW
The system displays output similar to -
Fileset Name Fileset Target Cache State Gateway Node Queue Length Queue numExec
```

```
-----  
fileset_SW nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset002new Active GatewayNode1 0 6 0
```

**Note:** After failover, the fileset changes to states such as NeedsResync or Recovery. Depending on the size or the elapsed time, the fileset remains in these transition states before turning into the Active state. The failover process is complete after the fileset is in Active state.

```
# mmfslfileset fs1 --afm
```

The system displays output similar to -

Filesets in file system 'fs1':

Name Status Path afmTarget

root Linked /gpfs/cache --

fileset\_SW Linked /gpfs/cache/fileset\_SW nfs://node4/gpfs/fshome/fset002new

**Out-band Failover** - You can choose to copy all cached data offline from the AFM cache to the new home with any tool that preserves modification time (**mtime**) with nanoseconds granularity. An example of such a tool is - rsync version 3.1.0 or later with protocol version 31. After the data is copied, you can run **mmafmctl failover** to compare **mtime** and **filesize** at home, and avoid queuing unnecessary data to home.

## Resync on SW filesets

A conflict situation might arise due to an inadvertent write on a SW home. AFM runs a resynchronization automatically.

Writing data on a SW home is not allowed under normal circumstances. However, AFM does not enforce this condition. If there is an inadvertent write or corruption at a SW home due to some error situation, it results in a conflict scenario for the single-writer fileset.

**Note:** Resync does not use parallel data transfers. Even if parallel data transfer is configured and the target is a mapping, the data transfers are not split.

If AFM detects inconsistencies during flushing, the fileset goes into NeedsResync state. When this occurs AFM runs a resynchronization automatically during the next request to the primary gateway, and the inconsistencies are resolved.

If resync is not triggered automatically, the inconsistencies must be manually resolved by running the resync command . When running a resync the fileset must be in the Active or the NeedsResync state. Resync is not allowed on IW filesets as multiple cache filesets can update the same set of data. Use the following command - **mmafmctl Device {resync | expire | unexpire} -j FilesetName**. For more information, see *mmafmctl* command in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

```
# mmafmctl fs1 resync -j sw1
```

```
mmafmctl: Performing resync of fileset: sw1
```

```
# mmafmctl fs1 getstate -j sw1
```

Fileset	Name	Fileset	Target	Cache	State	Gateway	Node	Queue	Length	Queue	numExec
sw1	nfs://c26c3apv2/gpfs/homefs1/newdir1	Dirty				c26c2apv1	4067	10844			

During a resync all cached data and metadata are queued in the priority queue. The resync process is asynchronous and completes in the background. The callback event `afmManualResyncComplete` is triggered when the resync completes. Once the priority queue is completely flushed, the fileset state changes to Active.

Evicted files are not synchronized to home.

A resync of partially cached files pushes only the cached data blocks to the new home. Uncached blocks are filled with null bytes.

**Important:** Do not use on a SW fileset, except when it is required to correct the home under such conflict scenarios.

**Out-band Resync** - You can choose to copy all cached data offline from the AFM cache to the new home with any tool that preserves modification time (**mtime**) with nanoseconds granularity. An example of such a tool is - rsync version 3.1.0 or later with protocol version 31. After the data is copied, you can run **mmafmctl failover** to compare **mtime** and **filesize** at home, and avoid queuing unnecessary data to home.

Resync does not delete new files or directories that are created at home. Similarly, rename of files/directories at home are not deleted by resync

## Using IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management (HSM)

IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management (HSM) can be used on the AFM filesets or on the home.

The following figure illustrates HSM connected to home.

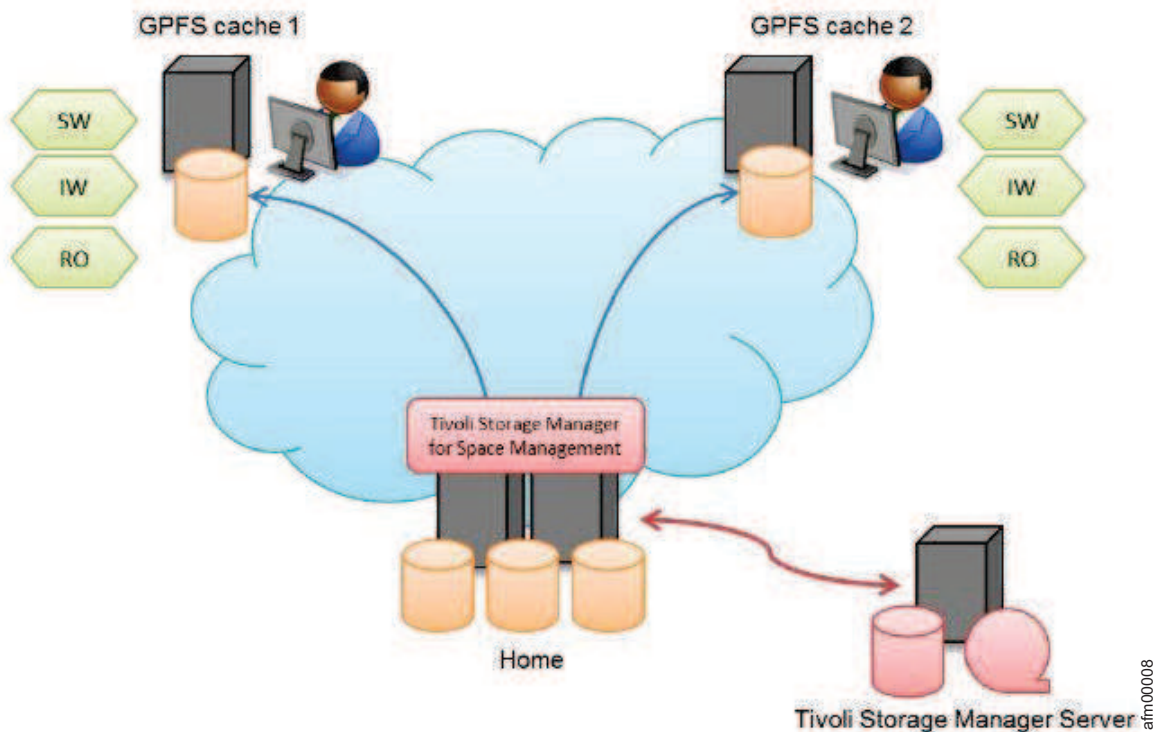


Figure 12. Sample setup of HSM connected to home

A new file created at home becomes candidate for migration to the IBM Spectrum Protect server. When a migrated file at home is read from cache, the file is recalled at home and served to the cache. If the cache does a write on a migrated file at home, the file is recalled at home and written to when the AFM queue is flushed. If multiple migrated files are written at the same time, the home issues recalls for all files at the same time. It is recommended that you exclude frequently changing files from HSM migration process to avoid recalls.

The following figure illustrates HSM connected to both home and cache.

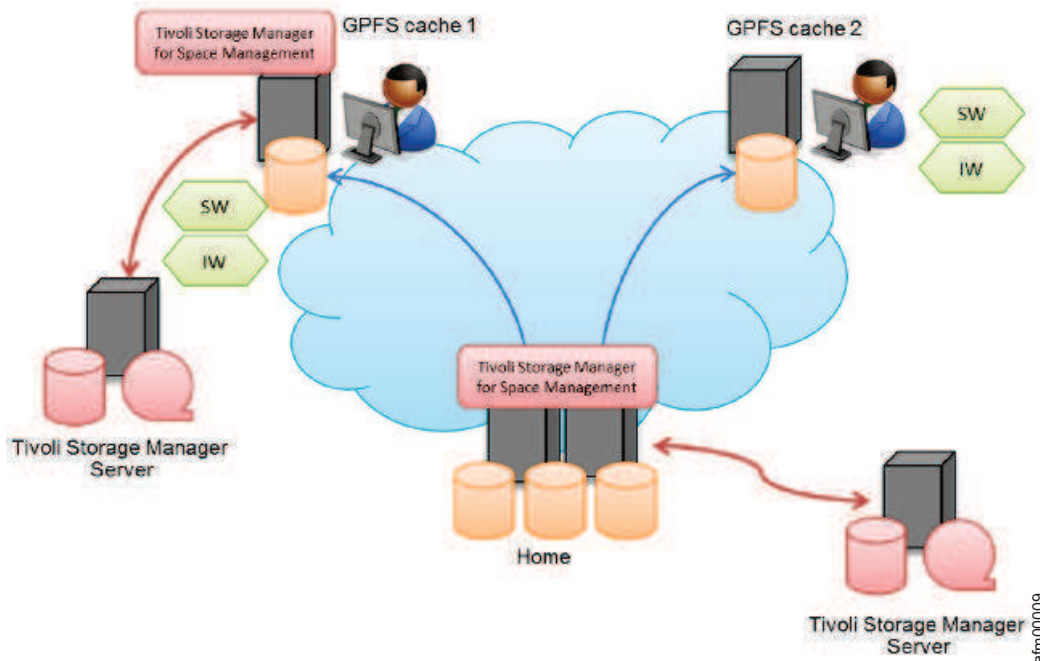


Figure 13. HSM connected to both home and cache

When using HSM on an AFM fileset, the flag **AFMSKIPUNCACHEDFILES** must be set in the `dsm.sys` configuration file (IBM Spectrum Protect-related) to yes. For example - **AFMSKIPUNCACHEDFILES** yes. This parameter should be used for read-write cache filesets. It prevents the migration of dirty and uncached files. If this flag is not set, it might result in long waiters or unexpected cache states and unexpected errors in terms of the HSM migration processing. In the LU mode when this parameter is set and a file is made local because of updating data, migration of the file to tape might be prevented. For migration in the LU mode, do not unset this parameter. Migrated files cannot be evicted. File operations such as read, write, truncate, append or rename on migrated files recalls the files into the cache. When multiple migrated files are modified at the same time all recalls are submitted at the same time, IBM recommends that you exclude frequently changing files or frequently read files from HSM migration process on both cache and home to avoid recalls.

It is recommended the following guidelines while using IBM Spectrum Scale AFM and IBM Spectrum Protect:

- Prevent cache eviction in combination with IBM Spectrum Protect on the same fileset. Both techniques have the same goal to reduce the space required in the fileset. The combination of both techniques unnecessarily increases the complexity of the environment.
- IBM Spectrum Scale snapshots and IBM Spectrum Protect have a limited compatibility. The deletion of a stub file that is reflected in a snapshot (the snapshot was generated before or after the file was migrated) causes the recall of the file data. The file data is stored in the snapshot so that it can be accessed later. Therefore, do not use snapshots for an AFM fileset (in home or cache) and in the file system hosting the AFM fileset, if you are using HSM.
- When using IBM Spectrum Protect on home or cache be aware that access (read or write) to multiple migrated files at the same time causes bulk recalls. Access to multiple files can be caused by users such as when they copy an entire directory or by AFM when changed files are replicated to home where the previous versions are migrated. You can avoid these issues by using the optimized tape recall process, which requires a list of files to be recalled before processing.

When running IBM Spectrum Scale AFM and IBM Spectrum Protect backup operations, prevent cache eviction in combination with IBM Spectrum Protect backup on the same fileset, if possible. Evicted

(uncached) files will be skipped from backup processing. This might lead to errors in terms of the versioning of files on the IBM Spectrum Protect server.

For detailed description about the setup and configuration of HSM for AFM, see *Configuring IBM Spectrum Scale Active File Management*.

## Performing a planned maintenance by using the IW cache

You can perform a planned maintenance by using IW cache.

Let us assume that we have IW cache on Side A that is hosting applications. IW cache points to a home in Side B. Complete the following steps for a planned maintenance of Side A:

1. Stop all applications in IW cache (Side A).
2. Flush the pending queue on IW cache (Side A) to home (Side B) by using **mmafmctl Device flushPending -j FileSetName**.
3. Unlink IW cache (Side A).
4. Start applications at home (Side B).
5. Relink the cache after maintenance window.
6. Stop the applications at home (Side B).
7. Start the applications at cache (Side A).
8. Schedule the background prefetch if required (Side A).

The following figure illustrates IW cache (Side A) to home (Side B).

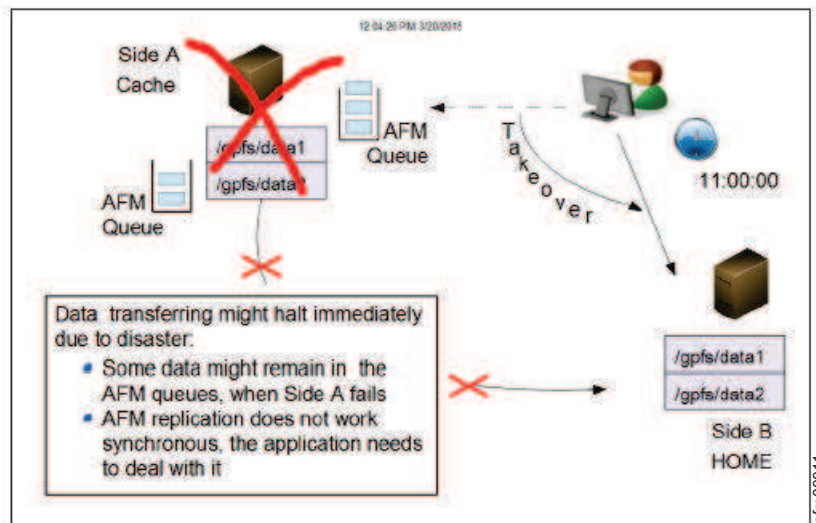


Figure 14. IW cache (Side A) to home (Side B)

## Handling IW cache disaster

You can perform a planned or unplanned maintenance by using IW cache

### Performing an unplanned maintenance using IW cache:

You can perform an unplanned maintenance by using IW cache.

For an unplanned outage, some changes might not be synchronized with the home. IW can handle requests lost from the cache due to a disaster, while allowing application updates at home to the same data.



The cache became unavailable because of the disaster at the IW cache. Therefore IW cache is down with pending updates (Side A). Steps to follow in an unplanned outage are:

1. Start applications at home (Side B). Record the time.
2. When the IW cache site (Side A) is ready to take over again, stop applications at the home site (Side B).

The following figure illustrates IW cache site (Side A) to home site (Side B).

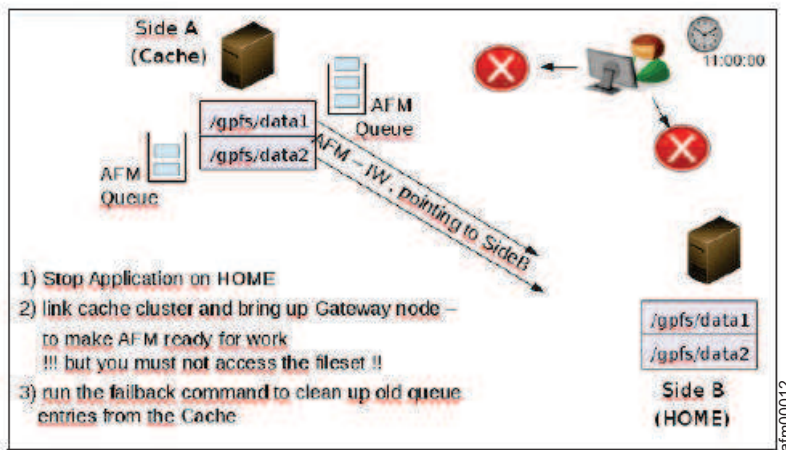


Figure 15. IW cache site (Side A) and home site (Side B)

3. Link the cache site back (Side A) and ensure that the gateways are up. Do not access the fileset directories.

If the cache directories are accessed, recovery is triggered. Old content from cache which were pending get synchronized with the home at the end of recovery, over-writing latest application changes at home. Perform the following steps so that the latest data is preserved and old or stale data is discarded. The data staleness is determined based on file mtime and failover time. The failover time is the time when applications were moved to the home, given as input to **failback** command.

4. Run the following command from the cache site to synchronize the latest data, specifying the time when the home site became functional and including the complete time zone, in case home and cache are in different time zones:

```
mmapfctl FileSystem failback -j Fileset --start --failover-time 'TimeIncludingTimezone'
```

The failback command resolves conflicts between pending updates in cache at the time of failover with the data changes at home. When the synchronization is in progress, the fileset state is **FailbackInProgress**. The fileset is read-only when the failback is in progress.

After failback completes, the fileset state is **FailbackCompleted**. The failback process resolves conflicts in the following way:

- a. Dirty data that was not synchronized is identified.
- b. If the changed files or directories were not modified at the home when the applications were connected to the home, the cache pushes the change to the home to avoid any data loss.
- c. If the files or directories are recently modified at the home, the cache discards the earlier updates from the cache. The next lookup on the cache brings the latest metadata from the home.

If the conflicted dirty data is a directory, it is moved to **.ptrash**. If the conflicted dirty data is a file, it is moved to **.pconflict**. The administrator must clean **.pconflict** directory regularly. If IW is converted to the other modes, **.ptrash** and **.pconflict** directories remain.

5. After achieving the **FailbackCompleted** state, run the following command to move the fileset from the Read-Only to the Active, where it is ready for use. If the command is not run successfully, run the command again.

```
mmapfctl FileSystem failback -j Fileset --stop
```



## Note:

If failback is not complete or if the fileset moves to NeedFailback, run the failback command again.

The cache site is ready for use. All applications can start functioning from the cache site. New files created at home are reflected in the cache on the next access, based on the revalidation interval. Failback does not pull in data of uncached files from home, which needs to be done explicitly by the administrator using **mmafmctl prefetch**. If failback might be used, the ctime of RENAME operations in the home file system must be updated. This is enabled using **setCtimeOnFileRename** at home:

```
mmchconfig setCtimeOnFileRename=yes -i
```

**Note:** Failback does not work if revalidation is disabled in the IW cache site.

## Disabling AFM

An AFM fileset can be disabled and converted to a GPFS-independent fileset. However, GPFS-independent fileset cannot be converted to an AFM fileset.

To dissociate home and cache relationship of an AFM fileset, you can convert the AFM fileset to an independent fileset using **mmchfileset -p afmTarget=disable**. Thereafter, the fileset is a GPFS or IBM Spectrum Scale-independent fileset and requests are not queued to home. An example is the case of NFS migration, where AFM fileset must be disabled after migration.

You must disable AFM filesets while the filesets are linked. In some cases, disabling of AFM fileset might fail with an error message.

Complete the following steps to disable an AFM fileset -

1. If the fileset is unlinked, run **mmmlinkfileset gpfs0 FilesetName -J gpfs0/FilesetName** to link the fileset.
2. Run **mmchfileset gpfs0 FilesetName -p afmTarget=disable**.

The following warning message displays - Warning! Once disabled, AFM cannot be re-enabled on this fileset. Do you wish to continue? (yes/no)

Enter yes.

The following warning message displays - Warning! Fileset should be verified for uncached files and orphans. If already verified, then skip this step. Do you wish to verify same? (yes/no)

Enter yes.

- If error conditions are not found, the following message displays  
File system gpfs0 is mounted on *n* nodes or fileset *FilesetName* is not unlinked.  
Unlink the fileset and run **mmchfileset gpfs0 FilesetName -p afmTarget=disable** again. Enter no to the warning message about verification of the fileset. The AFM fileset is disabled.
- In case of error conditions, disabling AFM fileset fails. See the following table for the error conditions with the corresponding messages.

Table 5. Conditions in which disabling AFM fileset fails, with corresponding messages

Condition	Error message
Incomplete directories present	mmchfileset: 6027-2307 [E] Uncached files present, run prefetch first.
Uncached files present	Uncached files present, run prefetch first using policy output: /var/mmfs/tmp/cmdTmpDir.mmchfileset.18149/list-file.mmchfileset.18149

Table 5. Conditions in which disabling AFM fileset fails, with corresponding messages (continued)

Condition	Error message
Orphans present	Orphans are present, run prefetch first using policy output: <code>/var/mmfs/tmp/cmdTmpDir.mmchfileset.18149/list-file.mmchfileset.18149</code>

You must run prefetch as suggested in the message to fix the error condition.

3. If uncached files or orphans are present, run prefetch using the following command - **mmafmctl gpfs0 prefetch -j FilesetName --list-file /var/mmfs/tmp/cmdTmpDir.mmchfileset.18149/list-file.mmchfileset.18149**
4. If incomplete directories are present, generate a list file to prefetch the uncached files first. Use this generated list file containing uncached file entries to run the command - **mmafmctl gpfs0 prefetch -j FilesetName --list-file list file path**. Here, *list file path* is the generated list file.
5. Ensure that all data in the AFM fileset is prefetched.
6. Run step 2 on page 75 again and complete disabling AFM fileset.

## Using AFM with encryption

AFM supports file encryption. Encryption can be applied to AFM-managed filesets.

AFM home sites and cache sites can be enabled with encryption, independent of each other. The data is encrypted while at rest (on disk) and is decrypted on the way to the reader/application hosted on home and caches; however, AFM communication between home and cache is not encrypted.

With the data that is flowing between home and cache filesets not being encrypted by the adoption of file encryption, communication between the clusters needs to be encrypted explicitly (if the privacy of the data over the network is a concern), by ensuring that a cipher list is configured. To ensure that the data is transmitted in the encrypted form, a cipher other than AUTHONLY must be adopted. AES128-GCM-SHA256 is one of the recommended ciphers. Run the **mmauth show** command to view the cipher lists used to communicate within the local and with the remote clusters. To ensure that all file content on disk and on the network is encrypted, configure file encryption at home and on the caches. Also configure a cipher list on all the clusters, ensuring that ciphers are configured within and across clusters. Even though file encryption results in the data being transmitted in the encrypted form between NSD clients and servers (both directions), neither file metadata nor RPC headers are encrypted. Only the use of encrypted communications (cipher list) ensures that the entire message content gets encrypted.

## Using mmbackup

When **mmbackup** is run on a file system that has AFM filesets, only the cached data from the filesets is backed up.

The **mmbackup** does not back up the uncached data from the AFM filesets.

In a file system that is HSM managed, a backup operation in either the cache or home fileset will skip over migrated offline files that were not yet backed up. The backup of a file that is evicted from a cache causes the file to be read again from home to cache. To avoid reading the file again when eviction on the cache site is enabled, ensure that the backup occurs before the eviction.

## Stop and start replication on a fileset

During planned downtime, replication activity of AFM cache to home can be stopped. After downtime, replication can be started again.

Whenever downtime is required for any planned activity, an administrator can stop replication activity of fileset from cache to home. Any change/modification performed at cache on a specific fileset is not sent to the gateway node after stopping the fileset. The state of the fileset is marked as 'Stopped'. After

planned activity is performed and downtime is complete, an administrator can perform 'start' on the fileset to send changes/modifications to the fileset from the cache cluster to the gateway node. The gateway node in turn sends these changes to home.

To stop replication of an AFM fileset, run

```
#mmafmctl <fs> stop -j <fileset>.
```

You can check the fileset state. Run

```
#mmafmctl fs1 getstate -j afmFileset.
```

The system displays output similar to -

```
Fileset Name Fileset Target Cache State Gateway Node Queue Length Queue numExec
```

```
-----
```

```
afmFileset nfs://p7fbn09/gpfs/fs0/swfileset3 Stopped
```

The fileset state here is 'Stopped'

To start replication on a specific fileset, run

```
#mmafmctl <fs> start -j <fileset>.
```

If you run `#mmafmctl <fs> stop -j <fileset>` or `#mmafmctl <fs> flushpending -j <fileset>` on a fileset that is in a 'Stopped' state, an error message displays Operation not permitted. Similarly, if you run `#mmafmctl <fs> start -j <fileset>` on a fileset that is not in a 'Stopped' state, an error message displays Operation not permitted

## AFM Limitations

AFM limitations include:

- If you change an AFM SW/IW home export from Kernel NFS or CNFS to the new IBM Spectrum Scale CES in 4.1.1 or later, AFM will not recognize the home. The best way to manage this situation is to run the `mmafmctl failover` command. See the IBM Spectrum Scale documentation for more details.
- AFM RO/LU home export cannot be changed from Kernel NFS or CNFS to new Spectrum Scale CES in 4.1.1. or later.
- Customers who have enabled DMAPI/HSM at the AFM home cluster should be running at RHEL 6.3, or later, or SLES 11 SP2, or later, on the cache cluster. There has been a bug identified in earlier levels of RHEL which requires that the exported path at home be excluded from DMAPI/HSM. See <http://www-01.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=ssg1S1004310> .
- Code upgrade limitations:
  - If there are AFM filesets using the Kernel NFS backend to communicate with a GPFS home that is running V4.1 or earlier, upgrading home to IBM Spectrum Scale V4.1.1 or later will cause the AFM filesets to disable synchronization to home with a message as follows:
 

```
GPFS: 6027-3218 Change in home export detected. Synchronization with home
is suspended until the problem is resolved
```

**Note:** This only affects AFM filesets that were originally created with a GPFS home running V4.1 or earlier. This does not affect AFM filesets that were created with a home running IBM Spectrum Scale V4.1.1 or later. This issue is fixed in 4.1.1.4 and 4.2.0.1 available at Fix Central (IBM Fix central).
- AFM filesets do not support the gpfs API - `gpfs_prealloc`.
- Due to a known issue with AFM SMB integration, the cache cluster might experience re-queued messages on gateway nodes. As a result, SMB clients might experience a performance impact on data transfers.

## AFM and AFM DR Limitations

The common limitations for both AFM and AFM DR functions include:

- The OS/architecture support matrix is given below:

Table 6. Availability and OS/architecture supported

Arch/OS	Fileset	Supported	Not Supported
Linux for Power Systems and x86	AFM SW/IW/RO/LU AFM primary/secondary	Gateway Application Filesystem Manager	
Linux on Z	AFM SW/IW/RO/LU AFM primary/secondary	Gateway Application Filesystem Manager	
AIX	AFM SW/IW/RO/LU AFM primary/secondary	Application Filesystem Manager	AIX node as a gateway for AFM/AFM DR fileset and NFS server at home or secondary.

- 3rd party data storage/servers at home/secondary:
  - Unsupported for AFM DR secondary.
  - Untested for all AFM modes. The IBM Spectrum Scale support team will help customers who are using other file systems at home to solve problems directly related to GPFS or IBM Spectrum Scale, but will not be responsible for solving problems deemed to be issues with the other file systems.
- AIX NFS servers at home/secondary:
  - Unsupported for AFM DR secondary.
  - Tested and supported for all AFM modes, but running **mmafmconfig** on the home cluster is not supported, which means, EA's, ACLs, sparseness of files, and psnap will not be supported.
- The **mmclone** command is not supported on AFM cache and AFM DR primary filesets. Clones created at home for AFM filesets are treated as separate files in the cache.
- Quality of Service is not tested on AFM and AFM Async DR filesets.
- AFM and AFM DR is not tested with IPv6 on gateway nodes.
- AFM and AFM DR filesets on Linux on Z is not supported with HSM.
- AFM and AFM DR filesets on Linux on Z is not supported with the NSD protocol for communication.
- Connecting AFM DR fileset to IBM Spectrum Archive is not supported.
- Linking of a dependent or an independent fileset is not allowed inside the inode space of any AFM or AFM DR fileset (in other words, linking them under the junction path within the fileset is not allowed).
- AFM and Async DR is not supported on clusters that have Windows nodes.
- Cascading relationships with AFM caches and AFM primary filesets are not tested.
- Fileset snapshot restore is not supported for AFM and AFM DR filesets.
- AFM and AFM DR is not supported when SELinux is enabled.
- Files in an AFM or AFM DR fileset which are shared by using SMB, an error message E\_ACCESS might appear if SMB holds locks on the files. When the locks are released by SMB, AFM replicates again and processes the files from the AFM or AFM DR fileset.
- **dm\_write\_invis()** is not supported on AFM and AFM DR filesets.
- **dm\_read\_invis()** is not supported on AFM and AFM DR filesets, if a file is not cached.
- File Audit logging feature is not supported on AFM or AFM DR filesets.
- Immutability and appendonly features are not supported on AFM and AFM DR filesets.
- AFM and AFM DR filesets do not replicate security, system, or trusted extended attributes.
- **--iam-mode** is not supported on AFM and AFM DR filesets.
- AFM and AFM DR do not support DM Punch Hole method (GPFS API '**dm\_punch\_hole**')

## AFM-based Asynchronous Disaster Recovery (AFM DR)

The following topics introduce you to AFM-based Asynchronous Disaster Recovery (AFM DR).

The following figure illustrates the AFM disaster recovery process.

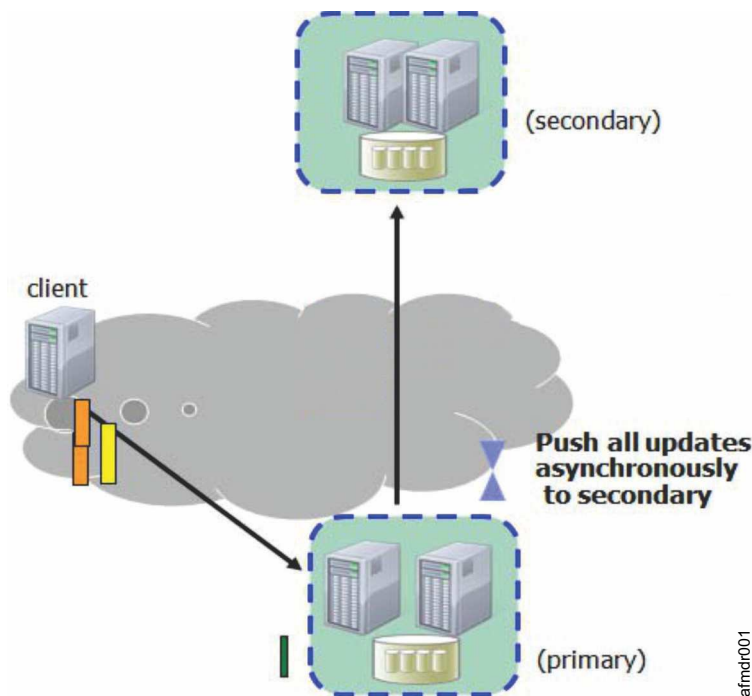


Figure 16. Asynchronous disaster recovery

## Introduction

AFM-based asynchronous disaster recovery (AFM DR) is a fileset-level replication disaster-recovery capability.

**Important:** Our initial feedback from the field suggests that success of a disaster recovery solution depends on administration discipline, including careful design, configuration and testing. Considering this, IBM has decided to disable the Active File Management-based Asynchronous Disaster Recovery feature (AFM DR) by default and require that customers deploying the AFM DR feature first review their deployments with IBM Spectrum Scale development. You should contact IBM Spectrum Scale Support at [scale@us.ibm.com](mailto:scale@us.ibm.com) to have your use case reviewed. IBM helps to optimize your tuning parameters and enable the feature. Please include this message while contacting IBM Support.

For more information, see Flash (Alert): IBM Spectrum Scale (GPFS) V4.2 and V4.1.1 AFM Async DR requirement for planning.

The Disaster recovery solution includes:

- providing business stability during a disaster
- restoring business stability after the disaster has been repaired
- enduring multiple disasters
- minimizing data loss in the event of a disaster

AFM-based asynchronous disaster recovery is an AFM-based fileset-level replication disaster-recovery capability that augments the overall business recovery solution. This capability is a one-to-one active-passive model and is represented by two sites: primary and secondary.

The primary site is a read-write fileset where the applications are currently running and have read-write access to the data. The secondary site is read-only. All the data from the primary site is asynchronously synchronized with the secondary site. The primary and secondary sites can be independently created in storage and network configuration. After the sites are created, you can establish a relationship between the two filesets. The primary site is available for the applications even in the event of communication failures or secondary failures. When the connection with the secondary site is restored, the primary site detects the restored connection and asynchronously updates the secondary site.

The following data is replicated from the primary site to the secondary site:

- File-user data
- Metadata including the user-extended attributes except the inode number and atime
- Hard links
- Renames

The following file system and fileset-related attributes from the primary site are not replicated to the secondary:

- User, group, and fileset quotas
- Replication factors
- Dependent filesets

AFM DR can be enabled on GPFS-independent filesets only.

**Note:** A dependent fileset cannot be linked under an AFM DR fileset. An independent fileset with dependent filesets cannot be converted into an AFM DR fileset.

A consistent view of the data in the primary fileset can be propagated to the secondary fileset by using fileset-based snapshots (psnaps). Recovery Point Objective (RPO) defines the frequency of these snapshots and can send alerts through events when it is unable to achieve the set RPO. RPO is disabled by default. The minimum time you can set as RPO is 720 minutes. AFM-based Asynchronous DR can reconfigure the old primary site or establish a new primary site and synchronize it with the current primary site.

Individual files in the AFM DR filesets can be compressed. Compressing files saves disk space. For more information, see *File compression* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

Snapshot data migration is also supported. For more information, see *ILM for snapshots* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

In the event of a disaster at the primary site, the secondary site can be failed over to become the primary site. When required, the filesets of the secondary site can be restored to the state of the last consistent RPO snapshot. Applications can be moved or failed over to the acting primary site. This helps to ensure stability with minimal downtime and minimal data loss. This makes it possible for applications to eventually be failed back to the primary site as soon as the (new) primary is on the same level as the acting primary.

**Note:** AFM DR does not offer any feature to check consistency of files across primary and secondary. However, you can use any third-party utility to check consistency after files are replicated.

## **Configuring site for continuous replication along with AFM DR**

You can simultaneously configure a site for continuous replication of IBM Spectrum Scale data along with AFM DR site. With IBM Spectrum Scale continuous replication, you can achieve a near disaster recovery and a far disaster recovery with AFM DR site.

## Recovery time objective (RTO)

Recovery time objective (RTO) is the time taken to convert secondary fileset into active primary fileset and move applications to that site, when a disaster occurs at the primary site.

Whenever a disaster occurs at the primary site, the secondary site becomes the acting primary by running the **mmafmctl failoverToSecondary** command. **--norestore** is set by default. The secondary fileset is converted to acting primary but avoids restoration of data from the last RPO snapshot and maintains the existing data. As an administrator, you can run the **mmafmctl failoverToSecondary** command with **--restore** option to clean the existing data at the secondary fileset and restore all data from the last RPO snapshot.

RTO can be estimated if the administrator knows the volume of data generated in an RPO interval. The volume of data that must be restored from the last snapshot depends on the number of files that have changed in an RPO interval as a snapshot restore requires a complete scan of the snapshot to determine which files have changed. Fail over time is one of the components that an administrator should use to calculate the RTO for the application.

## Modes and concepts

AFM DR uses the same underlying infrastructure as AFM. AFM DR is characterized by two modes; the fileset in the primary cluster uses the primary mode, and the fileset in the secondary cluster uses the secondary mode.

AFM DR is supported over both NFS v3 and GPFS protocol. The primary fileset is owned by the Primary gateway, which communicates with the NFS server on the secondary side. The primary-secondary relationship is strictly one-to-one.

AFM revalidation does not apply to primary filesets. All files are always cached, because primary is the only writer and secondary is in the read-only mode. After the applications failover to secondary and are failed back to primary, all updated directories and files with contents on the secondary site are pulled to the primary site by the failback process. The asynchronous delay is applicable to primary filesets and can be configured.

You can convert the SW/IW relationship to a DR relationship. However, you cannot convert a DR relationship to a SW/IW relation.

## AFM-based Asynchronous Disaster Recovery features

The following sections describe the AFM-DR features.

The following AFM features are offered on AFM DR filesets:

- Force flushing contents before Async Delay
- Parallel data transfers
- Peer snapshot - psnap
- Gateway node failure and recovery
- Operation with disconnected secondary
- Using IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management (HSM)
- Disabling AFM DR
- Using AFM DR with encryption
- Stop and start replication on a fileset

You can use **mmbackup** command to back up all files from primary, as all files are in a cached state on the primary fileset. Similar to AFM filesets, IBM Spectrum Protect (HSM) can be connected to primary or secondary, or both sides. When HSM is connected to the primary side, set **AFMSKIPUNCACHEDFILES** yes in

dsm.sys file. AFM features such as revalidation, eviction, prefetch, partial file caching, expiration, resynchronization, failover, and showing home snapshots are not offered on AFM DR filesets.

## RPO snapshots

Recovery point objective (RPO) snapshots are peer snapshots that are taken at the same time on the primary and the secondary sides. RPO is disabled by default, and the minimum value you can set is 720 minutes and increment in multiples of 5 minutes. You can update **afmRPO** parameter while creating the primary to change the interval, or after creating the fileset by using the **mmchfileset -p** command with the **afmRPO** parameter.

An example of the command -

```
mmchfileset <FileSystemName> <filesetname> -p afmRPO=<time_in_minutes>
```

The appropriate RPO intervals for each application setup are determined by the following factors:

- The rate of data change
- The fileset parameters such as **afmAsyncDelay** and **afmNumFlushThreads**
- The network bandwidth between the two sites

Each RPO interval triggers a snapshot at fileset level on both the primary and the secondary sides, that results in the file system being quiesced. Quiescing the file system is a data-transfer intensive action. Therefore, as a performance optimization, if multiple caches have similar RPOs, their snapshots are batched together so that the file system is quiesced only once. As further optimization, RPO snapshots are only taken for primary filesets whose data or metadata is modified since the last RPO period.

**afmAsyncDelay** specifies the minimum time that the primary site must wait before flushing the pending data that needs to be transferred to the secondary site. An RPO request in queue flushes the queue before creating a snapshot on the secondary site. The general guidelines for **afmAsyncDelay** is to set the asynchronous delay less than the RPO interval.

**afmRPOMiss** event occurs when RPO is missed because of a network delay or failure to create the RPO snapshot on the secondary site. If RPOs are missed, AFM waits for the expiration of the next RPO and during next RPO, a message is logged in `mmfs.log` and a new RPO snapshot is created. Failed RPOs are queued on the gateway again, and are run again at the secondary site until they succeed. At any point in time, two RPO snapshots that are not **psnap0** are retained on both sides. If RPOs are not played at the secondary due to some reason and primary does not get acknowledgment for the create from the secondary, the RPO is also deleted from primary. To improve the performance of more than one fileset taking RPOs at the same time, the RPO snapshots are batched together. In this process, the RPOs of few filesets might get slightly adjusted to make use of the batching facility.

Normal RPO deletions from the primary site are performed and queued when the new RPO snapshots are received. While there is every attempt to ensure that the delete operations are successful on the secondary site, there can be some extra snapshots as some delete operations might not be successful. In such cases, you must manually delete the extra snapshots on the secondary site by using **mmdeletesnapshot -p**. Apart from automatic RPO snapshots, you can create user snapshots by running **mmpsnap create** with `- rpo`. These are intermediate snapshots between scheduled RPOs and are not deleted during the RPO snapshot delete process.

When the primary site fails, you can roll back the last consistent snapshot present on the secondary site while converting it to the current primary site. However, it is recommended to convert the secondary as-is into the acting primary, because in most cases the data in the secondary is always greater than or equal to the last RPO snapshot. When applications are moved to the current primary fileset after the failover operation, RPO snapshots are not taken because no secondary is associated with the current primary. Therefore, RPO is not applicable to the current primary site. The gateway node mapped to serve a fileset is called the primary gateway of the fileset. The primary gateway acts as the owner of the fileset. If the primary gateway fails, another gateway node takes over the fileset as primary gateway. The



recovery is triggered on the new primary gateway while taking over the fileset. If the next RPO snapshot is due at the time when recovery gets triggered, a new RPO snapshot is taken and used for recovery. Whenever RPO snapshots are used for recovery, the normal cleanup process of the older RPO snapshots does not take place. Therefore, some extra RPO snapshots are temporarily displayed on the primary and secondary sites and are cleaned up on subsequent RPO intervals. No regular RPO snapshots are taken on a fileset that is running recovery until the recovery process is complete.

All user-created and system-created RPO snapshots except the **psnap0** belonging to an active primary-secondary must be deleted before the primary-secondary is deleted. You can change the RPO interval by running **mmchfileset**. The time for the next RPO snapshot (**Tnext**) is calculated by adding the RPO interval that you set (**Irpo**) to the time at which the previous snapshot occurred (**Tprev**): **Tnext = Tprev + Irpo**. If no file in the RPO snapshot changes during the interval, AFM does not take the snapshot, and the time for the next RPO snapshot is calculated as **Tnext = Tnext + Irpo**.

**Note:** The RPO interval is not added to the time at which you set the RPO interval, but to the time of the last RPO snapshot. For example, the previous snapshot was at 9:00 AM and the RPO interval is 720 minutes. If you change the RPO interval to 780 minutes during the 12 hours from 9:00 AM, the next RPO snapshot occurs after 780 minutes from 9:00 AM.

The RPO management deletes the oldest snapshot when it creates a new one but it never deletes the **psnap0**. The **mmpsnap** command can be run to delete **psnap0**. By deleting **psnap0**, storage utilization improves because data blocks used by **psnap0** are not held down. These data blocks can be significant over a period of time. Also, deletion of **psnap0** can improve the performance of subsequent creation and deletion of RPO snapshots. However, you must delete **psnap0** only when other RPO snapshots are present in the primary and secondary filesets to handle disaster recovery. If **psnap0** is deleted without any other RPO snapshots, data is lost. Also, **psnap0** can be deleted from secondary in cases like failing over to the secondary, and a new primary being set up.

#### How to decide if you need RPO:

##### Failover

RPO should be enabled if you need to go back in time after a failover by restoring the data on the secondary from the last RPO snapshot. But this is NOT recommended, as the data in the secondary is always greater than or equal to last RPO snapshot. Hence in most cases, RPO is not needed for failover.

##### Failback

If the primary comes back after a temporary failure, you would only need to copy the data that has changed in the secondary to the primary. For this, RPO function needs to be enabled. However, the RPO can be a large value, such as 24 hours. This value will dictate how much data is copied back to primary from the secondary during a failback. The higher the value, the larger the amount of data copied.

**Factors for deciding the RPO interval:** RPO interval dictates how often snapshots are created on the primary and secondary. The entire filesystem must be quiesced before taking a snapshot, even if the snapshot is for a single fileset in a massive filesystem.

#### CAUTION:

**Setting RPO intervals on primary fileset has significant implications on the performance of the file system.**

- Classify your filesets based on how critical the data is - the more critical the data the lower the async delay.
- To calculate this approximately, review the frequency/pattern of data generation at the primary and considering the number of GW nodes, network latency and other parameters, predict the time taken for this data to get synchronized with the secondary. The RPO must be set to this time.
- Do not set many filesets to the same RPO interval.

## Role reversal

In case of primary site failure, applications can move to secondary site after promoting to a primary site role. After the failed site is back, it takes over the role of a secondary site.

If the primary site fails, the secondary site can be converted into an acting primary. The secondary site can continue to act as a primary site till the primary site is back. In the traditional 'Failback to primary' method after the primary site is back, workloads are transferred from the secondary site to the primary site. This method is recommended when the rate of change at the primary is not high, and workloads can be easily transferred between two sites.

In the role reversal method, the secondary site permanently turns into a primary site. After the primary site is back it is designated as the secondary site. The role reversal method is recommended when the rate of change at the primary is higher, and the filesets are huge. If you adopt the role reversal method, ensure that you remove extra files and old snapshots from the new secondary.

Broad steps to convert a secondary site into a primary site are as follows:

1. Ensure that the primary and secondary sites are in synchronization.
2. Failover to secondary site by using either **--restore**/**--norestore** after a disaster at the primary site.
3. Ensure that applications are running on acting primary(old secondary) site.
4. Prepare the old primary site for conversion into secondary after it is back.
5. Identify all dirty files from the old primary which were not synchronized with secondary at the time of failover.
6. Remove these files.
7. Prepare old primary site:
  - a. Unlink the fileset by running the following command: `# mmunlinkfileset <fs> <fileset> -f`
  - b. Disable the role of fileset at primary by running the following command: `# mmchfileset <fs> <fileset> -p afmTarget=disable`
  - c. Link back the fileset by running the following command: `# mmlinkfileset <fs> <fileset> -J <path_to_fs>/<fileset>`
8. Obtain *primaryID* of the fileset at acting primary by running the following command: `# mmafmctl <fs> getPrimaryId -j <fileset>`
9. Remove extra files at the old primary site.
10. Convert old primary fileset to secondary fileset by running the following command at the old primary: `# mmafmctl <fs> convertToSecondary -j <fileset> --primaryid <PrimaryID>`
11. Prepare to export this secondary fileset path for use by the acting primary fileset.
12. Run `changeSecondary` at acting primary to build the relationship: `#mmafmctl <fs> changeSecondary -j <fileset> --new-target <oldPrimary>:<filesetpath> --inband`
13. From the old primary, remove old snapshots as the old snapshots contain older data.

Acting Primary(Old Secondary) is now the primary site and the old primary is the secondary site. The roles of Primary and Secondary are interchanged and relationship is restored.

**Note:** Role reversal method is used in case of large filesets, and a high rate of change at primary.

## Failover to the secondary site

When the primary site stops functioning, all applications must move to the secondary site to ensure continuity. Run the following command on the secondary to convert the secondary site into acting primary site: `mmafmctl <FileSystemName> failoverToSecondary -j <FilesetName> [--norestore |--restore ]`.

You can restore the latest snapshot data on the secondary site during the failover process, or keep the existing data. The `--norestore` option is the default value, which keeps the existing data. After failover, the secondary site becomes acting primary and is ready to host applications.

The customer must ensure that the NFS export used for the secondary site is not removed so that after failback to the primary, the original primary site can communicate with the secondary site, which is the current primary. Also, the RPO snapshots existing on the current primary must not be deleted because the RPO snapshots are used during the failback process when the original primary site starts functioning again.

RPO snapshots are temporarily disabled on the active primary site. The new data is not replicated to any other site until a new primary is set up, or the original primary is reinstalled, and the current primary is converted back to the secondary site.

## Failing back to the old primary site

This topic lists the steps to bring back the old primary site.

Complete the following steps to bring back the old primary site when it is repaired and it is back online after the disaster:

1. Run the following command on the old primary: **`mmafmctl Device failbackToPrimary -j FilesetName { --start | --stop }[--force]`**. This command configures the old primary while the applications continue to run on the current primary site: The `--start` option restores the primary to the contents from the last RPO on the primary before the disaster. With the `--start` option, the primary is in the read-only mode. This mode avoids accidental corruption until the failback process is completed. After the old primary site starts functioning again, all RPOs present before the disaster can be accessed. If a common RPO snapshot `psnap0` is not present, the old primary site can be converted to a normal GPFS fileset, and the steps described in failing back to new primary section must be followed to set up the primary site.  
If `--start` run on the fileset is unsuccessful, next `--start failbackToPrimary` might not be allowed. You can use the `--force` to start failback again.  
While the primary is coming back, as an administrator ensure that I/O does not occur on the primary fileset before the start of the failback `--start` process.
2. Run the following command on the old primary: **`mmafmctl Device { applyUpdates | getPrimaryId } -j FilesetName`**. This command applies differences created by applications on the old primary site as the current primary site has taken over the applications. All the differences can be brought over in a single or multiple iterations. For minimizing the application downtime, this command can be run repeatedly to synchronize the contents of the original primary site with the current primary site. When the contents on both the sites are as close as possible or have minimal differences, applications must take a downtime and this command must be run one last time. `applyUpdates` might fail with an error during instances when the acting primary is overloaded. In such cases the command needs to be run again.
3. On the old primary, complete the failback process by running **`mmafmctl`** with **`failbackToPrimary --stop`** option. With this command, the fileset is in the read-write mode. The primary site is ready for starting the applications. If `--stop` option of the failback does not complete due to errors and it does not allow for failback to be stopped, it can be forced to stop with the `--force` option.
4. Convert the current primary site back to secondary, and set the primary ID. Run the following command on the acting primary (secondary) - **`mmchfileset device fileset -p afmMode=secondary -p afmprimaryid=primaryid`** Unlink the acting primary site, change it to secondary, and link the secondary site. NFS can be restarted on the secondary site, to ensure that the secondary export is accessible to the primary site. The primary and secondary sites are connected back as before the primary disaster and all data from the primary is played on the secondary site. Regular RPO also resumes on the primary site.

## Failing back to the new primary site

This topic lists the steps to configure a new primary.

You can configure a new primary if the old primary site has stopped functioning. Complete the following steps:

1. Create a new GPFS fileset on the new primary site. This fileset is configured as the new primary. Create the latest snapshot from the acting primary by running **mmafmctl** command with **replacePrimary** option. A new **psnap0** with all the latest contents is created on the current primary server. This snapshot is used in the subsequent steps in this task.
2. Copy the contents from the snapshot to the new primary site by using **scp** or other means outside of AFM.
3. The snapshot created in the above step, is an argument to **--secondary-snapname** option. Run the following command to convert the fileset on the primary site:

```
mmafmctl Device convertToPrimary -j FilesetName  
[--afmtarget Target { --inband | --secondary-snapname SnapshotName}]  
[ --check-metadata | --nocheck-metadata ] [--rpo RPO] [-s LocalWorkDirectory]
```

The primary id is generated and a **psnap0** with the same name is created on the primary site. After this, run all the steps in failing back to old primary.

## Changing the secondary site

This topic lists the steps to follow when the secondary site stops functioning.

Complete the following steps if the secondary site stops functioning:

1. Create a new GPFS independent fileset on the new secondary site.
2. Copy the data on the primary site to the new GPFS fileset by using **ftp** or **scp**. This is known as outband trucking.
3. Run the following command to establish a new secondary site for the primary site:

```
mmafmctlDevice changeSecondary-j FilesetName  
--new-target NewAfmTarget [ --target-only | --inband ]  
[-s LocalWorkDirectory]
```

The **--inband** option is used depending on the method that is being used to truck data. **--target-only** can be used if you want to change the mount path or the IP address in the target path. The new NFS server must be in the same home cluster and must be of the same architecture as the existing NFS server in the target path. **--target-only** must not be used if the home is completely changed, or if you want to change the protocol while using the same home cluster. While using the same secondary path, if you want to change only the target protocol from GPFS to NFS and vice-versa, you can use **mmafmctl changeSecondary** command.

4. Convert the GPFS fileset on the new secondary site to a secondary and set the primary id by running **mmchfileset** or **mmafmctl** with **convertToSecondary** option.

Ensure that the NFS export on the secondary site is accessible on all the gateway nodes on the primary cluster if NFS is used for defining AFM target on the primary site. If the GPFS protocol is used for the target, the secondary file system must be mounted on all gateway nodes on the primary site.

After the primary and secondary sites are linked, the **psnap0** queued from the primary fileset is played on the secondary fileset. The new secondary site is now linked to this primary site. Ensure that the primary filesystem is mounted on all gateway nodes and new secondary filesystem is mounted on all the nodes in the secondary cluster.

## Using the primary fileset to make changes to the secondary fileset:

1. Replace the secondary with a completely new empty secondary where the new target is using NFS/NSD/mapping. The administrator must run the **mmafmctl changeSecondary** command without **--target-only** option to point to the new secondary. The new secondary is expected to be empty. If the new target is a mapping, **changeSecondary** does not split I/Os and queues them as normal requests without parallel data transfer.
2. Replace any of the following on an existing secondary:
  - Replace the communication protocol (NSD/NFS):

The administrator must run the **mmafmctl changeSecondary** command without **--target-only** option, using the new target protocol.

**Note:** Only the protocol changes and not the secondary path.

- Enable or disable parallel data transfer PIO by shifting between NFS/NSD and a mapping:  
The administrator must run the **mmafmctl changeSecondary** command without **--target-only** option, using the new target protocol or mapping.

**Note:** Only the protocol changes and not the secondary path.

- Replace only the IP address or NFS server using the same communication protocol and secondary path:  
The administrator must run the **mmafmctl changeSecondary** command with the **-target-only** option.

**Note:** Only the IP or NFS server changes. The IP/NFS server must be on the same secondary cluster and must be of the same architecture as the old NFS server.

## AFM DR Limitations

AFM DR Limitations include:

- Our initial feedback from the field suggests that success of a disaster recovery solution depends on administration discipline, including careful design, configuration and testing. Considering this, IBM has decided to disable the Active File Management- based Asynchronous Disaster Recovery feature (AFM DR) by default and require that customers deploying the AFM DR feature first review their deployments with IBM Spectrum Scale development. You should contact Spectrum Scale Support at [scale@us.ibm.com](mailto:scale@us.ibm.com) to have your use case reviewed. IBM will help optimize your tuning parameters and enable the feature. Please include this message while contacting IBM Support.

**Note:** This limitation does not apply to base AFM support. This applies only to Async DR available with the IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition V4.1.1 and later.

Have this information available when requesting a development led feasibility assessment for Async DR related proposals.

- Detailed use case description including any application description for applications running in DR filesets.
- Network latency and bandwidth between sites.
- Scale of the solution including the number of filesets, number of files, type of files (small or large), any special file usage (clones or encryption).
- RPO time.
- Rate of change of data that needs to be transferred between two RPOs from Async DR primary site to secondary.
- Number of Async DR filesets.
- Any plans to use snapshots in Async DR filesets.
- If you change an AFM DR Secondary export from Kernel NFS or CNFS to the new IBM Spectrum Scale CES in 4.1.1 or later, AFM does not recognize the secondary. The best way to manage this situation is to run the **mmafmctl changeSecondary** command. See the IBM Spectrum Scale documentation for more details.
- DR administration using the **mmafmctl** command is not supported when run from the AIX OS.
- AFM ADR (primary/secondary filesets) is not supported on an FPO enabled system.
- AFM features such as revalidation, eviction, prefetch, show home snapshots, partial file caching, expire and unexpire, **mmafmctl resync** and failover, and IW failback are not applicable for AFM DR filesets.
- Administrative operations such as fileset conversion to primary, failover, and failback can be run at the same time on multiple filesets. However, it is not recommended because commands might fail with a

"busy" error in cases where the system runs out of the resources that are required to perform multiple operations at the same time. If this happens, re-run the failed commands after the conflicting command completes.

## AFM and AFM DR Limitations

The common limitations for both AFM and AFM DR functions include:

- The OS/architecture support matrix is given below:

*Table 7. Availability and OS/architecture supported*

Arch/OS	Fileset	Supported	Not Supported
Linux for Power Systems and x86	AFM SW/IW/RO/LU AFM primary/secondary	Gateway Application Filesystem Manager	
Linux on Z	AFM SW/IW/RO/LU AFM primary/secondary	Gateway Application Filesystem Manager	
AIX	AFM SW/IW/RO/LU AFM primary/secondary	Application Filesystem Manager	AIX node as a gateway for AFM/AFM DR fileset and NFS server at home or secondary.

- 3rd party data storage/servers at home/secondary:
  - Unsupported for AFM DR secondary.
  - Untested for all AFM modes. The IBM Spectrum Scale support team will help customers who are using other file systems at home to solve problems directly related to GPFS or IBM Spectrum Scale, but will not be responsible for solving problems deemed to be issues with the other file systems.
- AIX NFS servers at home/secondary:
  - Unsupported for AFM DR secondary.
  - Tested and supported for all AFM modes, but running **mmafmconfig** on the home cluster is not supported, which means, EA's, ACLs, sparseness of files, and psnap will not be supported.
- The **mmclone** command is not supported on AFM cache and AFM DR primary filesets. Clones created at home for AFM filesets are treated as separate files in the cache.
- Quality of Service is not tested on AFM and AFM Async DR filesets.
- AFM and AFM DR is not tested with IPv6 on gateway nodes.
- AFM and AFM DR filesets on Linux on Z is not supported with HSM.
- AFM and AFM DR filesets on Linux on Z is not supported with the NSD protocol for communication.
- Connecting AFM DR fileset to IBM Spectrum Archive is not supported.
- Linking of a dependent or an independent fileset is not allowed inside the inode space of any AFM or AFM DR fileset (in other words, linking them under the junction path within the fileset is not allowed).
- AFM and Async DR is not supported on clusters that have Windows nodes.
- Cascading relationships with AFM caches and AFM primary filesets are not tested.
- Fileset snapshot restore is not supported for AFM and AFM DR filesets.
- AFM and AFM DR is not supported when SELinux is enabled.
- Files in an AFM or AFM DR fileset which are shared by using SMB, an error message E\_ACCESS might appear if SMB holds locks on the files. When the locks are released by SMB, AFM replicates again and processes the files from the AFM or AFM DR fileset.
- **dm\_write\_invis()** is not supported on AFM and AFM DR filesets.
- **dm\_read\_invis()** is not supported on AFM and AFM DR filesets, if a file is not cached.
- File Audit logging feature is not supported on AFM or AFM DR filesets.

- Immutability and appendonly features are not supported on AFM and AFM DR filesets.
- AFM and AFM DR filesets do not replicate security, system, or trusted extended attributes.
- --iam-mode is not supported on AFM and AFM DR filesets.
- | • AFM and AFM DR do not support DM Punch Hole method (GPFS API '`dm_punch_hole`')

## AFM DR deployment considerations and best practices

This document describes the characteristics of AFM DR including advantages and limitations, its deployment method, and best practices.

AFM DR is a file-level asynchronous disaster recovery solution. Replication of data to a secondary cluster is asynchronous, which means that the data created on the primary cluster is copied to the secondary cluster with delay. The amount of delay is determined by the network bandwidth between the sites and some IBM Spectrum Scale tuning parameters.

| AFM DR copies only the data blocks that have changed on the primary cluster to the secondary cluster, which makes it a very efficient replication mechanism.

| Since data replication is asynchronous using AFM DR to recover data after a primary cluster failure might cause some data loss. The amount of data lost depends on the amount of data that is in the primary queue when a failure occurs. Therefore, AFM DR is not the right disaster recovery solution if your application cannot tolerate possible data loss. If this loss is not acceptable, customers should implement a synchronous disaster recovery mechanism.

### Characteristics of AFM DR

The following sections give a brief description of the various characteristics of AFM DR.

#### Independent filesets in AFM DR:

The primary and secondary fileset clusters are independent filesets.

##### Features

- The disaster protection of data happens at an independent fileset level.
- A single file system can contain multiple AFM DR relationships, one per fileset.

##### Advantages

- Fileset-level replication allows a high level of granularity and flexibility to protect data.
- An RPO can be specified for each fileset, which allows you to set it based on the criticality of the data.
- AsyncDelay can be set on a fileset level allowing you to control rate of replication.

##### Limitations

- Can only be defined on an independent fileset.
- A single AFM DR relationship cannot be created at the file system level.

#### One-on-one relationships in AFM DR:

AFM DR creates a one-to-one relationship between the primary and the secondary filesets.

##### Advantages

- RPO intervals can be defined per AFM DR relationship.
- AsyncDelay can be specified per AFM DR relationship.
- Quotas can be specified for the primary and secondary filesets.

## Limitations

You can only create two copies of the data.

## Active-passive relationships in AFM DR:

AFM DR creates an active-passive relationship between the primary and the secondary clusters.

## Features

- Only the primary can write to the secondary fileset. The secondary is read-only for all other users.
- You can take a snapshot of the secondary fileset and use the secondary as a source to create backups or additional copies.

## Advantages

The secondary fileset is protected, so no other program or application other than the primary can write to the secondary.

## Limitations

- All operations are allowed on the primary fileset, but only snapshot operations are allowed on the secondary fileset.
- The secondary can be converted into the primary even when the primary is writing to the secondary. There is no protection against an administrator doing a failover operation on the secondary, even if the DR relationship is healthy.
- The administrator must ensure that the primary cannot accidentally write to secondary after a failover.

## NFSv3 versus NSD exports in AFM DR:

The primary accesses the secondary fileset using either NFSv3 or NSD protocol.

## Features of NFSv3

NFSv3 is a stateless protocol, which is resilient on low-bandwidth and high-latency networks.

## Advantages of NFSv3

It is recommended to use NFSv3 because NFSv3 is more tolerant when deployed on an unstable or high-latency network.

**Note:** It is recommended to use the NSD protocol only if the NFS protocol does not meet the expected performance requirements.

## Limitations of NFSv3

For parallel I/O to work using NFSv3, create a map between the gateway nodes in the primary to the NFS servers in the secondary. For more information on parallel I/O configuration, see *Parallel I/O configuration parameters for AFM-based DR* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Features of NDS

The NSD protocol is sensitive to packet drops and network latency.

## Advantages of NSD

NSD provides high performance to LAN-based installations.



## Limitations of NSD

If the secondary cluster is inaccessible, the NSD mount hangs, which in turn might cause the application to hang on the primary cluster.

## Trucking features in AFM DR:

AFM DR trucking feature can be used to synchronize data between the primary and secondary filesets when the DR relationship is established for the first time.

### Features

- AFM DR requires that the data between the primary and secondary be the same before establishing a DR relationship using the peer-to-peer snapshot (PSNAP) mechanism. Once the data on the primary and secondary are the same, the peer-to-peer snapshot mechanism creates a special snapshot called PSNAP0. The PSNAP0 is created on both the primary and the secondary fileset.
- Two trucking methods are supported by AFM DR:
  - Inband trucking: AFM DR copies the data from the primary to the secondary using the DR transport protocol (NFSv3 or NSD). After the copy is complete, the primary and secondary have the exact same data and PSNAP0 is created.
  - Outband trucking: It is the user's responsibility to copy all the data from the primary and secondary using any mechanism they choose. - for example, rsync with **mtime** preserved. After all the data is copied, the user can use the AFM DR commands to establish the DR relationship that creates the PSNAP0.

**Note:** Both methods use the **--inband** option of **mmafmctl** command while setting up relationship between the primary and secondary sites.

For more information on the two trucking methods, see *Converting GPFS fileset to AFM DR* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*. See the following use cases for recommendation on when to use inband versus outband trucking.

*AFM DR trucking use cases:*

### Create the primary and secondary filesets from scratch

The primary and secondary clusters are empty and AFM DR establishes the relationship by creating PSNAP0 that is empty.

**Trucking method recommendation:** Use the inband trucking method for this scenario as there is no data to copy and create PSNAP0.

### Create a primary and secondary fileset from scratch, where primary has data and secondary does not have data

In this case, either the inband or the outband mechanism can be used to copy the data to the secondary cluster.

#### • Inband:

Using the inband method the existing data in the primary is copied by AFM DR to the secondary. To copy this data a work queue is created on the gateway that contains all of the files that need to be copied and file system operations that need to be performed on the secondary. Then the gateway processes this queue as quickly as possible copying data to the secondary. When all of the work outstanding when the command was executed is flushed to the secondary, a PSNAP0 is created. This marks the end of the trucking process.

It is recommended to start applications on the primary after the trucking process is complete. However, if applications are started while the trucking process is in progress, the gateway node queues the data

generated by the application and the requests from the trucking process at the same time. If this results in too many requests, it might fill up the gateway node queue buffer, resulting in queue memory overflow. In such a case the queue gets dropped and the gateway node goes into recovery mode. This can result in a cycle where the primary cluster will always lag behind the secondary cluster. The potential solutions are:

- Add bandwidth to handle the initial synchronization workload. This may involve tuning - for example, increasing the number of flush threads to increase the gateway throughput, additional hardware or network bandwidth.
  - Keep the application from writing to the primary until the trucking process is complete and PSNAP0 is created.
  - Increase the gateway node memory allocation to prevent memory overflows.
- Outband:

In this case a complete copy of the data exists before the primary-secondary relationship is created. The data can be copied to the secondary using any method including a restore from a backup or an rsync process. Once an identical copy of the data exists at the secondary AFM DR can establish the DR relationship. The primary and secondary need to be identical when the relationship is established, so during this time the data must not change in the primary. After the PSNAP0 is created, applications can start using the AFM DR filesets.

**Note:** Both methods use the `--inband` option of `mmafmctl` command while setting up relationship between the primary and secondary sites. For data that is already copied to the secondary site, `mtime` of files at the primary and secondary site is checked. If `mtime` values of both files match, data is not copied again and existing data on the secondary site is used. If `mtime` values of both files do not match, existing data on the secondary site is discarded and data from the primary site is written to the secondary site.

### The primary fileset is empty and the secondary fileset has data

**Trucking method recommendation:** In such a situation, the recommended mechanism is outband trucking where the administrator copies the data from the secondary to the primary and then uses the AFM DR conversion mechanism to establish the DR relationship.

### Data exists on the 'to-be' primary and the secondary filesets

Ensure that the data is identical on the primary and secondary before the AFM DR conversion is performed.

**Trucking method recommendation:** This can be done only using outband trucking. AFM DR checks if the data is the same when the relationship is established.

### Failover and Failback:

#### Failover

After a failure of the primary, applications can fail over to the secondary fileset. Performing a failover operation on the secondary fileset converts it to the primary and makes it writable. AFM DR failover has two modes: “As is” and “Revert to the latest RPO snapshot on the secondary”:

- As is :  
The “as is” data corresponds to the last byte of data that was copied to the secondary cluster before the primary cluster failed. This is always the latest data available on the secondary cluster. It is the recommended option and also the default behavior.
- Revert to the latest RPO snapshot on the secondary:  
Restoring data from the last RPO snapshot results in data being restored from the past. As a result, this process is not recommended in AFM DR as it might lead to data loss. For example, if the RPO interval was set to 24 hours and if the failover occurred at the 23rd hour, then restoring from the last snapshot

(taken 24 hours ago) can result all the data created in the last 23 hours being lost. This failover option can take extra time as the data from the snapshot must be restored completely before the application can start using the fileset.

## Failback

There are two options in AFM DR to failback to the original primary:

- Failback Option 1: New primary

Create the primary from scratch because all the data in the primary was lost. Creating a primary from scratch requires that all the data be copied to the original primary from the active primary using whichever mechanism the administrator chooses

- Fail back Option 2: Temporary loss of primary

A temporary failure of the primary that results in a failover of the application to the secondary. To re-establish the original primary:

AFM DR uses the last RPO snapshot to calculate exactly what data changed on the secondary since the failover occurred. So for this to work there needs to be a common snapshot between the primary and secondary. The following steps give a simplified illustration of such a scenario:

1. A PSNAP was created between the primary and secondary at 8 A.M. At this time the snapshot in the primary and secondary have the exact same data.
2. At 9 A.M, the primary fails.
3. At 9 A.M the applications failover to secondary.
4. Primary is back up at 10 A.M., that is 2 hours later.
5. Restore the T0 snapshot on the primary.
6. Restore the 8 A.M snapshot on the primary.
7. Copy the changed data calculated in step 6 from the secondary to primary. Now the primary is in sync with secondary.

**Note:** For more information on failback, see *Failback procedures* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

For a temporary primary failure, the PSNAP (peer-to-peer snapshot) mechanism can be used to periodically take synchronized snapshot between the primary and the secondary. The snapshots can be scheduled at fairly large intervals maybe once or twice a day. Only the data created in the secondary since the last PSNAP needs to be copied back to the primary during a failback.

### Note:

The amount of data copied back to the primary depends on the following:

- How long the primary is unavailable.
- The amount of data created since the primary failure.
- How long the failure was from the last snapshot. For example, if the RPO snapshot is captured every 24 hours and the primary fails at the 23rd hour, then changes for the last 23 hours need to be recovered.

## Deployment considerations for AFM DR

See the following considerations to understand if AFM DR fulfills your production requirements for disaster recovery:

## Amount of data created per hour or per day

With data replication the amount of data created in a day determines the network bandwidth and the gateway node design, and dictates whether the replication rates can be supported by AFM DR. You can determine the requirements by looking at:

- Network bandwidth:

The network must have the bandwidth to accommodate a transfer rate equivalent to the rate data is generated. You should consider how you want to handle high traffic events like fail-back where I/O requirements can be greatly increased for a short period of time.

- Gateway nodes(s)

A gateway tracks all the changes and replicated the data from the primary to the secondary. As the number of filesets increase you can increase the number of gateway nodes in the primary cluster to increase throughput. The number of gateway nodes needed depends on:

- The number of primary filesets.
- The rate of data changes generated by each fileset.
- The bandwidth of the gateway hardware and the network connections between clusters.
- The method in which the filesets are distributed across gateway nodes. For example, it is possible that all the heavily loaded filesets are allocated to the same gateway node.

**Note:** There is no manual way of controlling the fileset allocation to a gateway node. Currently, the method in which AFM DR allocates fileset to the gateway node is ad hoc and creates another challenge for the user.

## The number of filesets on the primary cluster

The number of filesets impact the following factors:

- You might need to increase the number of gateway nodes for even distribution of the workload.
- The AFM DR RPO mechanism creates and deletes a snapshot after every RPO interval. As the number of filesets increase, creating the RPO snapshots simultaneously for all the filesets might cause a significant load on the system. The RPO can be disabled if there is no need to failback after a temporary primary failure. Alternatively, setting a large RPO interval can relieve some of this pressure however, once the RPO is enabled then all of the above points need to be considered carefully.

**Note:** A gateway node failure and recovery causes redistribution of the fileset workload, which in turn might cause changes in the performance of the replication characteristics.

## Best Practices for AFM DR Minimizing data loss during primary failure

AFM DR is asynchronous, so there is always a chance data can be lost in the event of a failure. The amount of data lost is affected by:

- The network bandwidth between the primary and secondary.
- The performance of the gateway which depends on Spectrum Scale tuning, the amount of memory and CPU available to gateway node and the number of filesets allocated to each gateway node. If the gateway node is overloaded it can result in replication rate reduction and reduced network bandwidth utilization.
- The ability of the primary and secondary to read and write the data to disk.

The AFM DR replication should be tuned to minimize the data loss in case of primary failure by keeping-up with the data creation rate. Some workloads occur in bursts, in this case you can design for average data transfer rates though keep in mind the time to sync is much greater right after a burst of changes.

**Note:** The AFM DR replication rate is independent of the RPO interval. The RPO interval does not affect the data loss sustained during primary failure.

## Generating notification for failed replication

There is no automated notification mechanism in AFM DR to monitor the replication rates that are falling behind as long as they are within the RPO. However, a script can be written to periodically test the gateway node to see how fast the message queue is being processed. This provides an estimate of the replication rate sustained by the gateway node.

To monitor the RPO you can use the AFMRPOMISS callback event. This event is triggered if the RPO snapshot is not taken at the set interval. The event indicates something is wrong within the system, and can be used as a trigger to start an analysis of what needs to be rectified within the system to bring it back to optimal performance.

## Using tuning parameters to improve performance

There are several AFM DR tuning parameters that can be used to tune performance. For more information on tuning parameters, see *Configuration parameters for AFM-based DR* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## AFM DR use case

This use case describes the AFM-based Asynchronous Disaster Recovery (AFM DR) process when NFS and SMB clients are mounted from the primary IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

## Overview of AFM DR when NFS and SMB clients are mounted from the primary cluster

During scheduled maintenance on the primary cluster or a failure at the primary site cluster, those NFS, and SMB clients that mount exports from the primary cluster experience a brief and temporary outage, when the **mmafmctl failover** commands are executed. After the **mmafmctl failover** commands complete, the NFS and SMB clients can mount from the new acting primary cluster (formerly the secondary cluster).

**Note:** To ensure a successful failover, system administrators at each site need to create identical export definitions on the secondary cluster. It is important to keep the definitions up to date when changes occur on the primary cluster.

After you create initial AFM DR relationships, you can create NFS and SMB exports so that applications can access the IBM Spectrum Scale data via protocols.

## Use case 1: The path to the data is identical on both the primary and secondary clusters

1. On both the primary and the secondary clusters, enter the same path and client (-c) definitions as shown in the following example:

```
mmnfs export add /ibm/gpfs0/export1 -c
9.11.102.0/24(Access_Type=R0,Squash=root_squash;
9.11.136.0/23(Access_Type=R0,Squash=root_squash;
10.18.40.0/22(Access_Type=RW,Squash=root_squash;
10.18.48.0/22(Access_Type=RW,Squash=root_squash;
```

2. On the NFS clients,

- Issue the **showmount -e** command and the IP address of the primary cluster as shown in the following example:

```
showmount -e 10.18.96.100
Export list for 10.18.96.100:
/ibm/gpfs0/export1
9.11.102.0,9.11.136.0,10.18.40.0,10.18.48.0
```

- Issue the **showmount -e** command and the IP address of the secondary cluster as shown in the following example:

```
showmount -e 10.18.50.30
Export list for 10.18.50.30:
/ibm/gpfs0/export1
9.11.102.0,911.136.0,10.18.40.0,10.18.48.0
```

3. On the NFS clients, issue the following command to mount from the primary CES IP addresses as shown in the following example:

```
mount -o hard, sync
10/18.96.100:/ibm/gpfs0/export0 /mnt_pnt
```

4. If a failure occurs on the primary cluster, initiate failover. For details, see *Performing failover for protocols cluster when primary cluster fails* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
5. On the NFS clients, issue the following commands to unmount from the primary CES IP addresses and then mount from the secondary CES IP addresses as shown in the following example:

```
umount -f /mnt_pnt
mount -o hard, sync
10.18.50.30:/ibm/gpfs0/export0 /mnt_pnt
```

## Use case 2: The path to the data is different on the primary and secondary cluster

1. Create the export with the same client (-c) definitions.

- Issue the following command and the IP address of the primary cluster:

```
mmnfs export add /ibm/gpfs0/export1 -c
9.11.102.0/24(Access_Type=RO,Squash=root_squash;
9.11.136.0/23(Access_Type=RO,Squash=root_squash;
10.18.40.0/22(Access_Type=RW,Squash=root_squash;
10.18.48.0/22(Access_Type=RW,Squash=root_squash;
```

- Issue the following command and the IP address of the secondary cluster:

```
mmnfs export add /ibm/gpfs3/export9 -c
9.11.102.0/24(Access_Type=RO,Squash=root_squash;
9.11.136.0/23(Access_Type=RO,Squash=root_squash;
10.18.40.0/22(Access_Type=RW,Squash=root_squash;
10.18.48.0/22(Access_Type=RW,Squash=root_squash;
```

2. On the NFS clients,

- Issue the **showmount -e** command and the IP address of the primary cluster:

```
showmount -e 10.18.96.100
Export list for 10.18.96.100:
/ibm/gpfs0/export1
9.11.102.0,911.136.0,10.18.40.0,10.18.48.0
```

- Issue the **showmount -e** command and the IP address of the secondary cluster:

```
showmount -e 10.18.50.30
Export list for 10.18.50.30:
/ibm/gpfs3/export9
9.11.102.0,911.136.0,10.18.40.0,10.18.48.0
```

3. On the NFS clients, issue the following command to mount from the primary CES IP addresses:

```
mount -o hard, sync
10/18.96.100:/ibm/gpfs0/export0 /mnt_pnt
```

4. If a failure occurs on the primary cluster, initiate failover. For more information, see *Performing failover for protocols cluster when primary cluster fails* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
5. On the NFS clients, issue the following commands to unmount from the primary CES IP addresses and then mount from the secondary CES IP addresses:

```
umount -f /mnt_pnt
mount -o hard, sync
10.18.50.30:/ibm/gpfs3/export9 /mnt_pnt
```

---

## Data protection and disaster recovery in IBM Spectrum Scale

The IBM Spectrum Scale installation should be protected against data loss to ensure continuity of operation after a malfunction.

Data loss can be prevented by protecting the three types of key data:

- Cluster configuration data
- File system configuration data
- File system contents (user data, metadata, configuration)

Cluster configuration data is the administrative data which associates the nodes, addresses, networks, and software installation on each node. The system administrators should save the output of the **mmfsccluster** command to ensure reconstruction of this data is possible if needed.

File system configuration data consists of a wide variety of information involving all the file systems in the cluster. To protect this data, it is essential to use the **mmbackupconfig** command for each file system and save the output files for future use. This configuration data details which disks are associated as NSD components of which file systems, how much storage is in use, the filesets defined, the quotas defined, and other valuable configuration data which describes the file system structure. These do not include the file data in the user files. User file data is the lowest level of information and most frequently changing contents that need protection.

IBM Spectrum Scale has built in data protection processes that allows the users not only to backup and restore valuable data, but also recover data that could be potentially lost or corrupted by their own actions. For example, unintentional deletion or overwriting of a user's file.

## Data backup options in IBM Spectrum Scale

This section describes the various options available in IBM Spectrum Scale to back up data.

### Backing up the data

IBM Spectrum Scale creates a second copy of the data within the system as backup. These secondary copies are usually point-in-time copy of the original data, and can be created on a daily, monthly, or weekly basis. In a situation where the actual data is corrupted, the system uses the backed-up copy to restore data to a previous point in time.

You can use the **mmbackup** command to back up the user data from a GPFS file system or independent fileset to a TSM server or servers. The **mmbackup** command can be used only to back up file systems owned by the local cluster. For more information on how to back up your data, see *Backup your data* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide* and *mmbackup command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

### Fileset and backup

Starting from version 4.1.1, IBM Spectrum Scale supports backup from independent filesets in addition to backup of the whole file system. For more information on fileset backup, see *Filesets and backup* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*. If you are planning to use IBM Spectrum Protect to back up IBM Spectrum Scale file systems, see “Backup considerations for using IBM Spectrum Protect” on page 185

## Data restore options in IBM Spectrum Scale

This section describes the various options available in IBM Spectrum Scale to restore data.

## Restoring data

The system can restore the data if it becomes corrupted due to user errors, hardware failure, and loss or even if the data gets corrupted due to bugs in other application software. For more information on how to restore system data, see *Restoring data and system configuration* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

## Data mirroring in IBM Spectrum Scale

In IBM Spectrum Scale you can copy data from one location to a secondary storage location, thus creating a mirror image of the original. This replication is called data mirroring.

In data mirroring the data is copied in real time, so the information stored in the secondary copy is always an exact replica of the data in the primary copy. Data mirroring is useful in the speedy recovery of critical data after a disaster. Data mirroring can be implemented locally or offsite at a different location. For more information on data mirroring and replication, see *Data mirroring and replication* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Protecting file data using snapshots

A snapshot of an entire file system or of an independent fileset can be created to preserve the contents of the file system or the independent fileset at a single point in time.

A fileset snapshot is a snapshot of the entire inode space. Any snapshot of an independent fileset also includes any dependent filesets contained within that independent fileset. You cannot create a snapshot of a dependent fileset. For more information on creating and maintaining snapshots, see *Creating and maintaining snapshots of file systems* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

Snapshots can be used in environments where multiple recovery points are necessary. Ensure that the file system is mounted before restoring the snapshot. For information about mounting a file system, see *Mounting a file system* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*. For more information on restoring data using snapshots, see *Restoring a file system from a snapshot* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

### Note:

For object protocol, the best method to ensure consistency in the event that data has to be restored from a snapshot, is to configure the `cesSharedRoot` directory to be in the same file system as the object filesets.

## Introduction to Scale Out Backup and Restore (SOBAR)

Scale Out Backup and Restore (SOBAR) is a data protection mechanism used specifically for disaster recovery situations.

SOBAR is used to back up and restore GPFS files that are being managed by IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management (HSM). For more information on SOBAR, see *Scale Out Backup and Restore (SOBAR)* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Introduction to protocols cluster disaster recovery (DR)

Protocols cluster disaster recovery (DR) allows an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster to fail over to another cluster and fail back once the primary cluster is back up. It also backs up and restores the protocol configuration information using the `mmcesdr` command in cases where a secondary cluster is not available.

During failover, the files can be re-created or restored in the new cluster. However, the default is set to re-create, and the restore option can be selected if complete configuration information needs to be restored (such as due to corruption). Once the failover is complete, and the original cluster is active once again, the secondary cluster can be failed back to the old primary, or a new primary. The data can be re-created or restored during the failback as well. Failback is used when there is a new primary cluster,



while restore is used when no existing configurations exist. For more information on disaster recovery and how it can be set up in IBM Spectrum Scale, see *Protocols cluster disaster recovery* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

**Note:** The re-create option for failover keeps existing SMB and NFS exports and customer data within their corresponding filesets. The restore option in failback deletes any SMB and NFS exports (but not data within their corresponding filesets) that were on the secondary system before failover occurred. However, neither re-create nor restore affects object configuration or object data.

## Commands for data protection and recovery in IBM Spectrum Scale

The following section lists the commands used for data protection and recovery in IBM Spectrum Scale.

### **mmbackup**

Used to back up the user data from a GPFS file system or independent fileset to a IBM Spectrum Protect server or servers. For more information on **mmbackup**, see *mmbackup command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

### **mmbackupconfig**

Used to collect basic file system configuration information. The configuration information backed up by this command includes block size, replication factors, storage pool layout, filesets and junction points, quota information, and a number of other file system attributes. This command forms a part of the SOBAR utilities along with the **mmrestoreconfig**, **mmimgbackup** and **mmimgrestore** commands. For more information on **mmbackupconfig**, see *mmbackupconfig command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

### **mmcesdr**

Used to perform initial configuration for protocols disaster recovery on the primary cluster and to generate a configuration file that is used on the secondary cluster. For more information on **mmcesdr**, see *mmcesdr command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

**mmfsck** Used to detect and repair conditions that can cause problems in a file system. The **mmfsck** command operates in two modes: online or offline. The online mode can run while the file system is mounted. It detects and repairs lost blocks (blocks that are allocated but do not belong to any file) and corruptions in the block allocation map. The offline mode can run only when the file system is unmounted, but it can detect and fix problems that the online mode cannot. In general, you do not need to run the command in offline mode unless you are directed to by the IBM Support Center. For more information see the topic *mmfsck command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

### **mmimgbackup**

Used to perform a backup of a single GPFS file system metadata image. This command forms a part of the SOBAR utilities along with the **mmbackupconfig**, **mmrestoreconfig** and **mmimgrestore** commands. Make sure that you run the **mmbackupconfig** command before you run the **mmimgbackup** command. For more information on **mmimgbackup**, see *mmimgbackup command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

### **mmimgrestore**

Used to restore a single GPFS file system metadata image. This command forms a part of the SOBAR utilities along with the **mmbackupconfig**, **mmrestoreconfig** and **mmimgbackup** commands. The **mmrestoreconfig** command must be run before running the **mmimgrestore** command. For more information on **mmimgrestore**, see *mmimgrestore command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

### **mmrestoreconfig**

Used to restore file system configuration information. The **mmrestoreconfig** command allows you to either query or restore, or both query and restore the output file generated by the **mmbackupconfig** command. This command forms a part of the SOBAR utilities along with the

**mmbackupconfig**, **mmimgbackup** and **mmimgrestore** commands. For more information on **mmrestoreconfig**, see *mmrestoreconfig command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

#### **mmrestorefs**

Used to restore user data and attribute files to a file system or an independent fileset by using those of the specified snapshot. For more information on **mmrestorefs**, see *mmrestorefs command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

#### **mmsdrrestore**

Restores the latest GPFS system files on the specified nodes. When the CCR committed directories of all the quorum nodes have corrupted or missing files, the **--ccr-repair** parameter repairs the CCR committed directories of all the quorum nodes. For more information see *mmsdrrestore command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## Introduction to IBM Spectrum Scale GUI

The IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI provides an easy way to configure and manage various features that are available with the IBM Spectrum Scale system.

You can perform the following important tasks through the IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI:

- Monitoring the performance of the system based on various aspects
- Monitoring system health
- Creating and managing file systems
- Creating filesets and snapshots
- Managing Object and NFS and SMB data exports
- Creating administrative users and defining roles for the users
- Creating object users and defining roles for them
- Defining default, user, group, and fileset quotas
- Monitoring the capacity details at various levels such as file system, pools, filesets, users, and user groups
- Monitor and manage various services that are available in the system.
- Configuring call home
- Configuring and monitoring thresholds
- Creating and managing user-defined node classes.

The following table provides an overview of the features associated with each GUI page.

*Table 8. Features associated with IBM Spectrum Scale GUI pages*

GUI Page	Function
<b>Home</b>	Provides an overall summary of the IBM Spectrum Scale system configuration, status of its components, and services that are hosted on it. This page is displayed in the GUI only if the minimum release level of IBM Spectrum Scale is 4.2.2 or later.
<b>Monitoring &gt; Dashboards</b>	Provides a dashboard to display the predefined performance charts and the customized charts that are marked as favorite charts in the Performance page.
<b>Monitoring &gt; Events</b>	Monitor and troubleshoot the issues that are reported in the system.
<b>Monitoring &gt; Tips</b>	Monitor events of type “tips”. The tip events give recommendations to the user to avoid certain issues that might occur in the future.

Table 8. Features associated with IBM Spectrum Scale GUI pages (continued)

GUI Page	Function
<b>Monitoring &gt; Statistics</b>	View performance and capacity data in customizable charts.
<b>Monitoring &gt; Thresholds</b>	Configure various thresholds based on the performance monitoring metrics. You can also monitor the threshold rules and the events that are associated with each rule.
<b>Monitoring &gt; Command Audit Log</b>	Logs the commands and tasks the users and administrators are performing. These logs can also be used to troubleshoot issues that are reported in the system.
<b>Monitoring &gt; Event Notifications</b>	Configure event notifications to notify administrators when events occur in the system.
<b>Nodes</b>	Monitor the performance and health status of the nodes that are configured in the cluster. You can also create and manage user-defined node classes from the Nodes page.
<b>Cluster &gt; Network</b>	Monitor the performance and health status of various types of networks and network adapters.
<b>Cluster &gt; Remote Connections</b>	Request access to the GUI node of the remote cluster to establish communication between the local and remote clusters. You can also use this page to grant access to the remote clusters when an access request is received.
<b>Files &gt; File Systems</b>	Create, view, and manage file systems.
<b>Files &gt; Filesets</b>	Create, view, and manage filesets.
<b>Files &gt; Snapshots</b>	Create snapshots or snapshot rules to automate snapshot creation and retention.
<b>Files &gt; User Capacity</b>	Monitor the capacity details of users and user groups.
<b>Files &gt; Quotas</b>	Create and manage default, user, group, and fileset quotas at the file system level.
<b>Files &gt; Information Lifecycle</b>	Create, manage, and delete policies that manage automated tiered data storage.
<b>Files &gt; Transparent Cloud Tiering</b>	Provides both a summarized and attribute-wise details of the Transparent Cloud Tiering service, which is integrated with the IBM Spectrum Scale system. The Transparent Cloud Tiering page is displayed if the feature is enabled on the cluster.
<b>Files &gt; Active File Management</b>	Helps to monitor the performance, health status, and configuration aspects of AFM, AFM DR, and gateway nodes. You can see this page in the GUI that is part of the AFM cache cluster with at least one AFM-enabled fileset.
<b>Files &gt; File System ACL</b>	Define ACL templates and apply ACLs on files and directories.
<b>Storage &gt; Pools</b>	Helps to monitor the performance, health status, and configuration aspects of all available pools in the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.
<b>Storage &gt; NSDs</b>	Provides an easy way to monitor the performance, health status, and configuration aspects of the all network shared disks (NSD) that are available in the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

Table 8. Features associated with IBM Spectrum Scale GUI pages (continued)

GUI Page	Function
Protocols > NFS Exports	Create and manage NFS exports. Protocols pages are displayed in the GUI only when the protocol feature is enabled on the cluster.
Protocols > SMB Shares	Create and manage SMB shares. Protocols pages are displayed in the GUI only when the protocol feature is enabled on the cluster.
Object > Accounts	Create and manage accounts and containers in the object storage. Object pages are displayed in the GUI only when the object feature is enabled on the cluster.
Object > Users	Create object users.
Object > Roles	Define roles for the object users.
Services	Monitor and manage various services that are hosted on the system.
Support > Diagnostic Data	Download diagnostic data to troubleshoot the issues that are reported in the system.
Support > Call Home	Configure call home feature that automatically notifies the IBM Support personnel about the issues reported in the system. You can also manually upload diagnostic data files and associate them with a PMR through the GUI.

**Note:** After installing the system and GUI package, you need to create the first GUI user to log in to the GUI. This user can create other GUI administrative users to perform system management and monitoring tasks. When you launch the GUI for the first time after the installation, the GUI welcome page provides options to create the first GUI user from the command-line prompt by using the following command:

```
/usr/lpp/mmfs/gui/cli/mkuser <user_name> -g SecurityAdmin
```

## Assistance for understanding the features associated with a GUI page

The following three levels of assistance are available for the GUI users:

1. **Hover help:** When you hover the mouse over the tiny question mark that is placed next to the field label, the system displays a brief description of the feature that is associated with that field. Hover help is only available for the important and complex fields.
2. **Context-sensitive help:** Provides a detailed explanation of the features that are associated with the page. The context-sensitive help files are available in the help menu, which is placed in the upper right corner of the GUI page.
3. **Knowledge Center:** This is the third level of information where the users can find entire details of the product. Link to the IBM Spectrum Scale Knowledge Center is also available in the help menu, which is placed in the upper right corner of the GUI page.

### Related concepts:

“Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI” on page 276

The management GUI provides an easy way for the users to configure, manage, and monitor the IBM Spectrum Scale system.

“Manually upgrading the IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI” on page 430

You can upgrade the IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI to the latest version to get the latest features. You can upgrade one GUI node at a time without shutting down IBM Spectrum Scale on other nodes to ensure high availability.

---

## IBM Spectrum Scale management API

With the IBM Spectrum Scale management API, you can develop scripts to automate labor-intensive cluster management tasks. These APIs provide a useful way to integrate and use the IBM Spectrum Scale system.

The IBM Spectrum Scale management API is a REST-style interface for managing IBM Spectrum Scale cluster resources. It runs on HTTPS and uses JSON syntax to frame data inside HTTP requests and responses. For more information, see “Functional overview” on page 104.

Based on the architecture and syntax, the following two different versions are available for IBM Spectrum Scale management API:

### IBM Spectrum Scale management API Version 1

Introduced in the IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.2 release. Implementation was based on Python and the deployment limited only to the manager nodes that runs on RHEL7.

### IBM Spectrum Scale management API Version 2

Introduced in the 4.2.3 release. The implementation is based on GUI stack. GUI server is managing and processing the API requests and commands. The following figure illustrates the architecture of API Version 2:

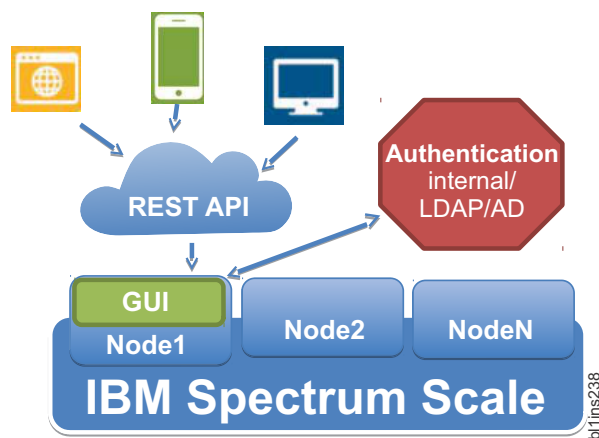


Figure 17. IBM Spectrum Scale management API Version 2 architecture

The Version 2 has the following features:

- Reuses the GUI deployment's backend infrastructure, which makes introduction of new API commands easier.
- Uses the same role-based access feature that is available to authenticate and authorize the GUI users. No additional configuration required for the API users.
- Makes deployment easier as the GUI installation takes care of the basic deployment.
- Fixes scalability issues and introduces new features such as filter and field parameters and it supports paging.
- Highly scalable and can support large clusters with thousands of nodes.
- The APIs are driven by the same WebSphere® server and object cache that is used by the IBM Spectrum Scale GUI.

**Important:** Both version 1 and version 2 are supported in IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.x release. However, new API commands and features are added only in the version 2 architecture. Those who are using the APIs in the version 1 architecture are recommended to switch to version 2 to avail the advanced features and flexibility.

## Installing and configuring IBM Spectrum Scale management API

For information about how to configure the IBM Spectrum Scale system to start using the APIs, see Chapter 8, “Installing and configuring IBM Spectrum Scale management API,” on page 371.

## IBM Spectrum Scale management API command reference

For information about the API commands, see the topic *IBM Spectrum Scale management API commands* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference* guide.

You can also access the documentation corresponding to each API command from the GUI itself. The API documentation is available in the GUI at: <https://<IP address or host name of API server>:<port>/ibm/api/explorer/>. For example: <https://scalegui.ibm.com:443/ibm/api/explorer>.

## Using the IBM Spectrum Scale management API

The following topics describe the API features in detail.

## Functional overview

The IBM Spectrum Scale management API is a REST-style API that provides interoperability between a client and server over a network. These APIs allow authenticated users to perform day-to-day storage management tasks.

The following list provides the salient features of the REST-style APIs:

- Resource-based
- Stateless
- Client-server
- Cacheable
- Layered system

REST is a resource-based service system in which requests are made to the resource's Universal resources identifier (URI). This invokes a response from the resource in the JSON format. An IBM Spectrum Scale management API *resource* is a collection of all the objects of the same type in a cluster, such as all the filesets. A *resource element* is an instance of a resource, such as a particular fileset named fileset1. In a REST API request, a resource or a resource followed by a resource element appears as the last term in the request, except for any trailing HTTPS parameters. The following example request ends with a resource, filesets, and therefore it indicates this as an operation that affects all the filesets that are part of a file system named gpfs0:

<https://198.51.100.1:443/scalemgmt/v2/filesystems/gpfs0/filesets>

Corresponding URL in the IBM Spectrum Scale management API version 1 is given in the following example:

<https://198.51.100.1:8191/scalemgmt/v1/filesets?filesystemName=fs1>

In contrast, the following example ends with a resource followed by a resource element filesets/fileset1, and therefore indicates an operation that affects this particular fileset, such as creating or deleting the fileset:

<https://198.51.100.1:443/scalemgmt/v2/filesystems/gpfs0/filesets/fileset1>

Corresponding URL in the IBM Spectrum Scale management API version 1 is given in the following example:

```
https://198.51.100.1:8191/scalemgmt/v1/filesets/fileset1?filesystemName=fs1
```

The kind of operations that can be performed on the resources or a resource element are directed by the HTTP methods such as GET, POST, PUT, DELETE, and in some cases by parameters in the HTTPS request. The following list provides the meanings of the basic HTTP methods used in the requests:

- GET: Reads a specific resource or a collection of resources and provides the details as the response.
- PUT: Updates a specific resource or a collection of resources.
- DELETE: Removes or deletes a specific resource.
- POST: Creates a new resource.

## API requests

API requests include a URL and in some cases HTTP parameters or JSON data.

### URL for an API request

The URL for an API request has the following format:

```
https://IP address or host name:port/scalemgmt/v2/resource_type/[resource_element]
```

where

*IP address or host name:port*

Specifies the IP address or host name and the port of the IBM Spectrum Scale management API server, which is IBM Spectrum Scale GUI server.

*/scalemgmt/v2*

Specifies the path of the API server. This path is not configurable; it must be */scalemgmt/v2*.

*resource\_type*

Specifies a resource type. The supported resource types are as follows:

**ces/addresses**

**ces/services**

**cluster**

**config**

**filesets**

**filesystems**

**info**

**jobs**

**nfs/export**

**nodes**

**nodes/health**

**nodeclasses**

**quotas**

**smb/shares**

**snapshots**

**perfmon**

**/filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets/{filesetName}/psnaps**

**thresholds**

### *resource\_element*

Specifies the name of a particular resource, such as the name of a file system, a fileset, a node, or a snapshot. Optional.

As described earlier, an API request that ends with a resource type indicates a request that affects all the instances of that resource in the cluster. For example, the following HTTP request, sent with a GET method, returns information about all the nodes in the cluster:

In contrast, an API request that ends with a resource type followed by a resource element indicates a request that affects only the specified resource element. For example, the following HTTP request, sent with a GET method, returns information about the specified node, node1:

## Data in API requests

Some types of API requests require one or more input parameters that follow the resource or resource element. For example, sent with a GET method, the following request returns information about all the filesets in the specified file system. :

*Table 9. Getting information about filesets*

Request method	GET
URL	https://198.51.100.1:443/scalemgmt/v2/filesystems/gpfs0/filesets/fs1
JSON data	None.

Also, some types of the API requests require input parameters to be included in the body of the HTTP request in JSON format. For example, the following request creates a new snapshot in a file system. The JSON data specifies the name of the file system and the name of the new fileset:

*Table 10. Creating a snapshot*

Request method	POST
URL	https://198.51.100.1:443/scalemgmt/v2/filesystems/gpfs0/snapshots
JSON data	{ "snapshotName": "snap1" }

## Request headers

The following headers are required for requests:

'content-type: application/json' 'accept: application/json'

## Fields parameter

The field parameter can be used to specify the fields of the returned object by adding the query parameter "?fields" to a GET URL. For example, ?fields=field1,field2,parentField1.field1.

You can use certain keywords to get the desired results in the response. The following list provides the basic keywords that can be used with the fields parameter:

- **'none:'** Returns only the fields that are required to uniquely identify an object. For example, filesystemName and filesetName for a fileset.  
Use this keyword for queries that return more than one object. This means that only the keys that are needed to retrieve the full object are returned.
- **'all:'** Returns all fields. Use this in queries to a single object.

Apart from with these keywords, you can also use the following options to customize the response by using the fields parameter:



- Use the field name "." to query fields that are wrapped in a parent object.

For example, use ?fields=config.iamMode to query for "iamMode" in the following object:

```
"config" : {
  "iamMode" : "off"
}
```

- Use parent name to query for all fields of a parent. For example, ?fields=config,afm includes all fields of the parent objects "config" and "afm"
- Multiple fields can be separated using ",". For example, ?fields=config.iamMode,status.id

## Examples

This section lists out the examples of using various keywords in the fields parameter.

1. curl -k -u admin:admin001 -X GET --header 'accept:application/json' 'https://198.51.100.1:443/scalemgmt/v2/filesystems/gpfs0/filesets?fields=:all:' . This GET call returns the following response:

```
{
  "status": {
    "code": "200",
    "message": "...",
  },
  "paging": {
    "next": "https://localhost:443/scalemgmt/v2/filesystems/gpfs0/filesets?lastId=1001"
  },
  "filesets": [
    {
      "config": {
        "filesetName": "myFset1",
        "filesystemName": "gpfs0",
        "path": "/mnt/gpfs0/myFset1",
        "inodeSpace": "0",
        "maxNumInodes": "4096",
        "permissionChangeMode": "chmodAndSetAcl",
        "comment": "Comment1",
        "iamMode": "off",
        "oid": "158",
        "id": "5",
        "status": "Linked",
        "parentId": "1",
        "created": "2016-12-13 13.59.15",
        "isInodeSpaceOwner": "1",
        "inodeSpaceMask": "0",
        "snapId": "0",
        "rootInode": "131075"
      },
      "afm": {
        "afmTarget": "nfs://10.0.100.11/gpfs/afmHomeFs/afmHomeFileset2",
        "afmAsyncDelay": "0",
        "afmDirLookupRefreshInterval": "60",
        "afmDirOpenRefreshInterval": "60",
        "afmEnableAutoEviction": "false",
        "afmExpirationTimeout": "100",
        "afmFileLookupRefreshInterval": "30",
        "afmMode": "read-only",
        "afmNumFlushThreads": "4",
        "afmParallelReadChunkSize": "134217728",
        "afmParallelReadThreshold": "1024",
        "afmParallelWriteChunkSize": "0",
        "afmParallelWriteThreshold": "0",
        "afmPrefetchThreshold": "0",
        "afmPrimaryID": "string",
        "afmRPO": "0",
        "afmShowHomeSnapshots": "false"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

```

    }
  }
]
}

```

2. **GET /filesystems/gpfs0/filesets** : The default keyword :none: is used in the GET request and this call returns only the key fields as shown in the following example:

```

{
  "filesets": [
    {
      "config": {
        "filesetName": "(fs1)",
        "filesystemName": "gpfs0"
      },
      "links": {
        "self": "https://198.51.100.1:8191/scalemgmt/v2/filesystems/gpfs0/filesets/fs1"
      }
    },
    {
      "config": {
        "filesetName": "afmFset1",
        "filesystemName": "gpfs0"
      },
      "links": {
        "self": "https://198.51.100.1:8191/scalemgmt/v2/filesystems/gpfs0/filesets/afmFset1"
      }
    }
  ]
  "status": {
    "code": 0,
    "message": ""
  }
}

```

3. **GET /filesystems/gpfs0/filesets?fields=state.rootInode,state.id**: Uses the field name "." to query fields that are wrapped in a parent object. This GET call return the following response:

```

{
  "filesets": [
    {
      "config": {
        "filesetName": "(fs1)",
        "filesystemName": "gpfs0"
      },
      "links": {
        "self": "https://198.51.100.1:8191/scalemgmt/v2/filesystems/gpfs0/filesets/fs1"
      },
      "state": {
        "id": 1,
        "rootInode": "latest",
      }
    },
    {
      "config": {
        "filesetName": "afmFset1",
        "filesystemName": "gpfs0"
      },
      "links": {
        "self": "https://198.51.100.1:8191/scalemgmt/v2/filesystems/gpfs0/filesets/afmFset1"
      },
      "state": {
        "id": 2,
        "rootInode": 50692
      }
    }
  ]
  "status": {

```

```

    "code": 0,
    "message": ""
  }
}

```

## Filter parameter

Use the filter parameter to filter the retrieved objects. For example, all filesets with ID < 2 can be retrieved by using `?filter=status.id<2`. The fields used in the filter parameter are always added to the result set and therefore they do not have to be specified using the field parameter. Filters can be concatenated using `","`.

The following list provides the supported operators for different field types:

- **String:** "=", "!=" using a regular expression as the value is supported. Example: `?filter=config.filesetName=' 'fs.*' '`
- **Numeric:** "=", "!=", "<", ">" Example: `?filter=status.id<2`
- **Boolean:** "=", "!=" using "true" or "false" as the value. Example: `?filter=config.isIndependent=false`

The following examples shows how to use filter parameter in a request:

```

curl -k -u admin:admin001 -X GET -H content-type:application/json
'https://198.51.100.1:443/scalemgmt/v2/filesystems/gpfs0/filesets?filter=status.rootInode>3'
{
  "filesets" : [ {
    "config" : {
      "filesetName" : "fs1",
      "filesystemName" : "gpfs0"
    },
    "status" : {
      "rootInode" : 10752
    }
  } ],
  "status" : {
    "code" : 0,
    "message" : "List of filesets for filesystem"
  }
}

```

Retrieve all file systems with encryption="yes":

```

curl -H content-type:application/json -K -u admin:admin001 -X GET
'https://198.51.100.1:443/scalemgmt/v2/filesystems?filter=encryption=yes'
(
  "filesystems" : [ (
    "encryption" : "yes"
    "filesystemName" : "objfs"
  ) ],
  "status" : {
    "code" : 200,
    "message" : "List of all file systems"
  }
}

```

## API responses

API responses provide a response code from the IBM Spectrum Scale management API server and a return code and optional return message from IBM Spectrum Scale.

### Return codes and messages

A return code and an optional return message from IBM Spectrum Scale are stored in JSON format in a status structure at the end of any returned data. A return code of 0 indicates that IBM Spectrum Scale processed the request successfully:

```

"status": {
  "message": "",
  "code": 200
},

```

A response code from the IBM Spectrum Scale management API server describes the result of the API request. The following table lists the response codes:

*Table 11. Response codes*

Description	Code	Client retry	Return code
Success	20x	None	200: Success (GET or PUT) 201: New resource created (POST) 202: Request accepted (long running command) 204: No content (DELETE)
Client error	4xx	No, the command will continue to fail.	400: Invalid request (format error in request data) 401: Unauthorized request (wrong credentials) 403: Resource not accessible 404: Resource not found (wrong URL) 405: Method not supported for this resource
Server error	5xx	Yes, in most cases	500: Internal server error, retry (system problem) 503: Service not available (the server is busy with other requests or is down)

## Data in REST API responses

IBM Spectrum Scale management API responses always include some data in JSON format. The status structure with a return code and an optional return message is always present. See the status structure at the end of the following JSON example. Also, GET methods return the requested information in JSON format. The following example is from a response to a request to GET information about CES addresses. In JSON, square brackets [ ] indicate an array. The following example contains an array that is named `cesaddresses` that contains two elements, each of which describes one CES address:

```

{
  "cesaddresses": [
    {
      "cesNode": 1,
      "attributes": "",
      "cesAddress": "198.51.100.10",
      "cesGroup": "",
    },
    {
      "cesNode": 2,
      "attributes": "",
      "cesAddress": "198.51.100.14",
      "cesGroup": "",
    }
  ],
  "status": {
    "message": "",
    "code": 200
  }
}

```

## Response headers

The same header types appear in all responses from the REST API server. The content type must be `application/json`. The following set of response headers is typical:

```
{
  HTTP/1.1 200 OK
  X-Frame-Options: SAMEORIGIN
  Content-Type: application/json
  Content-Language: en-US
  Content-Length: 210
  Set-Cookie:
    LtpaToken2=yyYwMkAHcegg0e74hZhsqf5iCU9r2n19QBG09nH7uPm3Mt/vpQfVEHuhwRIWKfq1fi1t8EVn6sZJx7
    +6EpVvUqxqs9PdmIXX28DzU/wwQFxGIMA5a2AuNAFYmZ71FWqYEEhWq5tx0oQMBHQ0L7AbkyR6TUq+F1wzvZnTe1
    cwu0AYmwZr6WrWdLdj8ZMJ22k95s2PmLbmNMsuSEeSbUFmc1nZdYueieRBgL7QgokS90141X2gN8YSwWxxljfzCwsed
    MsdYvhawLhYJNA3Ik0FnFVJpeopLP4EQtcSdMPXzpX+AQHn/0XQdd6iaWfHppt;
    Path=/; HttpOnly
  Set-Cookie: JSESSIONID=0000SRpFCu8e03i3WXhDyJS2qnn:8bf7532d-fb68-4d4b-90fc-4aa4e3deefd5;
    Path=/; Secure; HttpOnly
  Date: Thu, 16 Feb 2017 15:14:52 GMT
  Expires: Thu, 01 Dec 1994 16:00:00 GMT
  Cache-Control: no-cache="set-cookie, set-cookie2"
}
```

## Paging

Paging happens on the response data if more than 1000 objects are returned by the query to avoid server overload. Every response object contains an object called "paging", which contains a link which can then be used to retrieve the next set of objects, if available.

The URL to retrieve the next page can then be found under "paging" → "next" as shown in the following example:

```
curl -k -u admin:admin001 -X GET -H content-type:application/json
"https://198.51.100.1:443/scalemgmt/v2/filesystems/gpfs0/filesets?filter=filesetName='''myFset1.*'''"
{
  "filesets" : [ {
    "config" : {
      "filesetName" : "myFset134",
      "filesystemName" : "gpfs0"
    },
    "status" : {}
  }, {
    "config" : {
      "filesetName" : "myFset133",
      "filesystemName" : "gpfs0"
    },
    "status" : {}
  } ],
  "paging": {
    "next" : "https://198.51.100.1:443/scalemgmt/v2/filesystems/gpfs0/filesets?filter=filesetName='''myFset1.*'''"
  },
  "status" : {
    "code" : 200,
    "message" : "List of filesets for filesystem"
  }
}
```

## List of IBM Spectrum Scale management API commands

The following table lists the currently supported operations for each type of resource and resource element. The first and second columns list the resource type and the operation. The third column lists the resource and resource element terms that appear in the HTTPS request. The braces {} are a notation for indicating a resource element in text and do not appear in the actual HTTPS request. The fourth column lists the HTTP method that is called to do the operation. A footnote indicates a request that requires HTTP parameters.

Table 12. Operations supported for resources and resource elements in API version 2

Resource type	Operation	Resource/{element}	Method
CES addresses	Get information about CES addresses.	/ces/addresses	GET
	Get information about a CES address.	/ces/addresses/{cesAddress}	GET
CES services	Get information about CES services.	ces/services	GET
	Get information about a CES service.	/ces/services/{service}	GET
Cluster	Get information about the current cluster.	/cluster	GET
CLI audit log	Gets details of the CLI commands that are issued on the cluster.	/cliauditlog	GET
Config	Get the current configuration attributes.	/config	GET
File systems	Get information about file systems in the cluster.	/filesystems	GET
	Get information about a file system.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}	GET
ACLs	Get access control list of a file or directory in a file system.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/acl/{path}	GET
	Get access control list for a file or directory in a file system.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/acl/{path}	PUT
File audit logging	Enables file audit logging for a file system	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/audit/enable	PUT
	Disables file audit logging for a file system.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/audit/disable	PUT
Disks	Get details about disks that are part of a file system.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/disks	GET
	Get details about a disk that is part of a file system.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/disks/{diskName}	GET
Filesets	Get information about filesets in a file system.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets	GET
	Get information about a fileset.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets/{filesetName}	GET
	Create a fileset.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets	POST
	Modify a fileset.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets/{filesetName}	PUT
	Delete a fileset.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets/{filesetName}	DELETE
	Link an existing fileset.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets/{filesetName}/link	POST
	Unlink a fileset	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets/{filesetName}/link	DELETE
Quotas	Get information about quota defined at the fileset level.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets/{filesetName}/quotas	GET
	Set quota limits at the fileset level.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets/{filesetName}/quotas	POST
	Get information about quota defined at the file system level.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/quotas	GET
	Set quota limits at the fileset level.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/quotas	POST

Table 12. Operations supported for resources and resource elements in API version 2 (continued)

Resource type	Operation	Resource/{element}	Method
Owner	Get details of the owner of the file or directory in a file system.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/owner/{path}	GET
	Set owner of the file or directory in a file system.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/owner/{path}	PUT
Policies	Lists the policies that are applied on the file system.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/policies	GET
	Sets a policy for a file system.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/policies	PUT
Information	Get information about the IBM Spectrum Scale management API.	/info	GET
Jobs	Get details about asynchronous jobs.	/jobs	GET
	Get details about an asynchronous job.	/jobs/{jobID}	GET
	Cancel a specific asynchronous job.	/jobs/{jobId}	DELETE
NFS exports	Get information about NFS exports configured in the system.	/nfs/exports	GET
	Get information about an NFS export configured in the system.	/nfs/exports/{exportPath}	GET
	Create an NFS export.	/nfs/exports	POST
	Modify an existing NFS export.	/nfs/exports/{exportPath}	PUT
	Delete an NFS export.	/nfs/exports/{exportPath}	DELETE
Nodes	Get information about nodes in the cluster.	/nodes	GET
	Get information about a node.	/nodes/{nodeName}	GET
	Add one or more nodes in the cluster.	/nodes	POST
	Delete one or more nodes from the cluster.	/nodes/{name}	DELETE
Node health	Get details about system health events that are reported on a node.	/nodes/{name}/health/events	GET
	Get details about system health states of the events that are reported in a node.	/nodes/{name}/health/states	GET
Node class	Get details of the node classes.	/nodeclasses	GET
	Create a node class.	/nodeclasses	POST
	Delete a specific node class.	/nodeclasses/{nodeclassName}	DELETE
	Get details of a specific node class.	/nodeclasses/{nodeclassName}	GET
	Make changed to a specific node class.	/nodeclasses/{nodeclassName}	PUT
Services	Gets the details of the services configured on a node.	/nodes/{name}/services	GET
	Gets the details of a specific service configured on a node.	/nodes/{name}/services/{serviceName}	GET
	Starts or stops a service on a node or node class.	/nodes/{name}/services/{serviceName}	PUT
NSDs	Gets information about NSDs that are part of the system.	/nsds	GET
	Gets information about an NSD.	/nsds/{nsdName}	GET

Table 12. Operations supported for resources and resource elements in API version 2 (continued)

Resource type	Operation	Resource/{element}	Method
Snapshots	Get information about fileset snapshots.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets/{filesetName}/snapshots	GET
	Get information about a fileset snapshot.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets/{filesetName}/snapshots/{snapshotName}	GET
	Get information about file system snapshots.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/snapshots	GET
	Get information about a file system snapshot.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/snapshots/{snapshotName}	GET
	Create a fileset snapshot.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets/{filesetName}/snapshots	POST
	Create a file system snapshot.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/snapshots	POST
	Delete a fileset snapshot.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets/{filesetName}/snapshots	DELETE
	Delete a file system snapshot.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/snapshots	DELETE
AFM peer snapshots	Create a peer snapshot	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets/{filesetName}/psnaps	POST
	Delete a peer snapshot	/filesystems/{filesystemName}/filesets/{filesetName}/psnaps/{snapshotName}	DELETE
SMB shares	Get information about SMB shares.	smb/shares	GET
	Get information about an SMB share.	/smb/shares/{shareName}	GET
	Create an SMB share.	/smb/shares/{shareName}	POST
	Modify an existing SMB share.	/smb/shares/{shareName}	PUT
	Delete an SMB share.	/smb/shares/{shareName}	DELETE
Performance monitoring	Get performance data.	/perfmon/data	GET
	Gets the sensor configuration.	/perfmon/sensor	GET
	Gets details about a specific sensor configuration.	/perfmon/sensor/{sensorName}	GET
	Modifies the sensor configuration.	/perfmon/sensor/{sensorName}	PUT
Thresholds	Get list of threshold rules.	/thresholds	GET
	Create a threshold rule.	/thresholds	POST
	Delete an existing threshold rule.	/thresholds/{name}	DELETE
	Get details of a threshold rule	thresholds/{name}	GET
For more information about the commands, see <i>REST API commands</i> in the <i>IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference</i> guide.			

Table 13. Operations supported for resources and resource elements in API version 1

Resource type	Operation	Resource/{element}	Method
CES addresses	Get information about CES addresses.	/cesaddresses	GET
	Get information about a CES address.	/cesaddresses/{cesAddress}	GET



Table 13. Operations supported for resources and resource elements in API version 1 (continued)

Resource type	Operation	Resource/{element}	Method
CES services	Get information about CES services.	/cesservices	GET
	Get information about a CES service.	/cesservices/{service}	GET
Cluster	Get information about the current cluster.	/cluster	GET
Config	Get the current configuration attributes.	/config	GET
Filesets	Get information about filesets in the cluster.	/filesets <sup>1</sup>	GET
	Get information about a fileset.	/filesets/{filesetName} <sup>1</sup>	GET
	Create a fileset.	/filesets	POST
	Modify a fileset.	/filesets/{filesetName}	PUT
	Delete a fileset.	/filesets/{filesetName} <sup>1</sup>	DELETE
File systems	Get information about file systems in the cluster.	/filesystems	GET
	Get information about a file system.	/filesystems/{filesystemName}	GET
REST API	Get information about the REST API server.	/info	GET
Nodes	Get information about nodes in the cluster.	/nodes	GET
	Get information about a node.	/nodes/{nodeName}	GET
Quotas	Get information about quotas.	/quotas <sup>1</sup>	GET
	Create or set a quota.	/quotas	POST
Snapshots	Get information about snapshots.	/snapshots <sup>1</sup>	GET
	Get information about a snapshot.	/snapshots/{snapshotName} <sup>1</sup>	GET
	Create a snapshot.	/snapshots	POST
	Delete a snapshot.	/snapshots/{snapshotName} <sup>1</sup>	DELETE

<sup>1</sup>This operation requires parameters in the HTTP request. For more information, see the description of the command under the topic *REST API commands* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference* guide.

The following table lists the HTTP methods that are currently supported for each resource type. A check mark ✓ indicates that a method is supported:

Table 14. HTTP methods supported for each type of resource in API version 2

Object	DELETE	GET	POST	PUT
ces/addresses		✓		
ces/services		✓		
cliauditlog		✓		
cluster		✓		
config		✓		
disks		✓		
filesets	✓	✓	✓	✓
filesystems		✓		
audit				✓
policies		✓		✓
info		✓		
jobs	✓	✓		

Table 14. HTTP methods supported for each type of resource in API version 2 (continued)

Object	DELETE	GET	POST	PUT
nfs/exports	✓	✓	✓	✓
nodes	✓	✓	✓	
nodes/health		✓		
nodes/services		✓		✓
node class	✓	✓	✓	✓
nsds		✓		
quotas		✓	✓	
snapshots	✓	✓	✓	
peer snapshots	✓		✓	
smb/shares	✓	✓	✓	✓
performance monitoring		✓		✓
thresholds	✓	✓	✓	

Table 15. HTTP methods supported for each type of resource in API version 1

Object	DELETE	GET	POST	PUT
cesaddresses		✓		
cesservices		✓		
cluster		✓		
config		✓		
filesets	✓	✓	✓	✓
filesystems		✓		
info		✓		
nodes		✓		
quotas		✓	✓	
snapshots	✓	✓	✓	

## Introduction to Cloud services

This topic provides a brief introduction to the Cloud services available in IBM Spectrum Scale.

Cloud services have the following two components:

- Transparent cloud tiering
- Cloud data sharing

Transparent cloud tiering is a feature of IBM Spectrum Scale that provides a native cloud storage tier. It allows data center administrators to free up IBM Spectrum Scale storage capacity, by moving out cooler data to the cloud storage, reducing capital and operational expenditures. Tiering can also be used to archive an extra copy of your data using pre-migration, a function that copies data rather than moving it. The Transparent cloud tiering feature leverages the existing ILM policy query language semantics available in IBM Spectrum Scale, and administrators can define policies to tier data to cloud storage. On an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster with multiple storage tiers configured, this external cloud storage can be used as the cooler storage tier to store infrequently accessed data from a cool storage pool. *For performance reasons, it is recommended not to move any active or hot data to this external storage pool, as it drives excessive*

data traffic on the Transparent cloud tiering which in turn can cause delays, leading to problems like application timeouts. Copying hot data to the cloud by using the pre-migration function is acceptable as long as the file is not likely to be updated or deleted soon.

Cloud data sharing is an IBM Spectrum Scale Cloud services that allows a way to set up sharing between IBM Spectrum Scale and various types of object storage, including IBM Cloud™ Object Storage. Furthermore, for export of data to object storage the service can be invoked from an ILM policy to allow for periodic sharing of data based on when the policy is run. For import, you can specify a list of files that you can use to move object storage (by using your IBM Cloud data sharing service) into the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

This is useful when data needs to be distributed across multiple domains or when large amounts of data needs to be transferred.

You can associate your Cloud services file systems and file sets with a Cloud services node group. Up to four node groups are supported in a cluster to allow for scaling (of the solution). For each file system or file set, you can associate up to two cloud storage tiers. For example, you could define an IBM Cloud Object Storage service locally to act as your cool tier. You could use IBM's Public Cloud Object Storage (on IBM Cloud) for your cold tier. The diagram below is an example of a Cloud services configuration that is on a cluster.

Figure 18 illustrates these features.

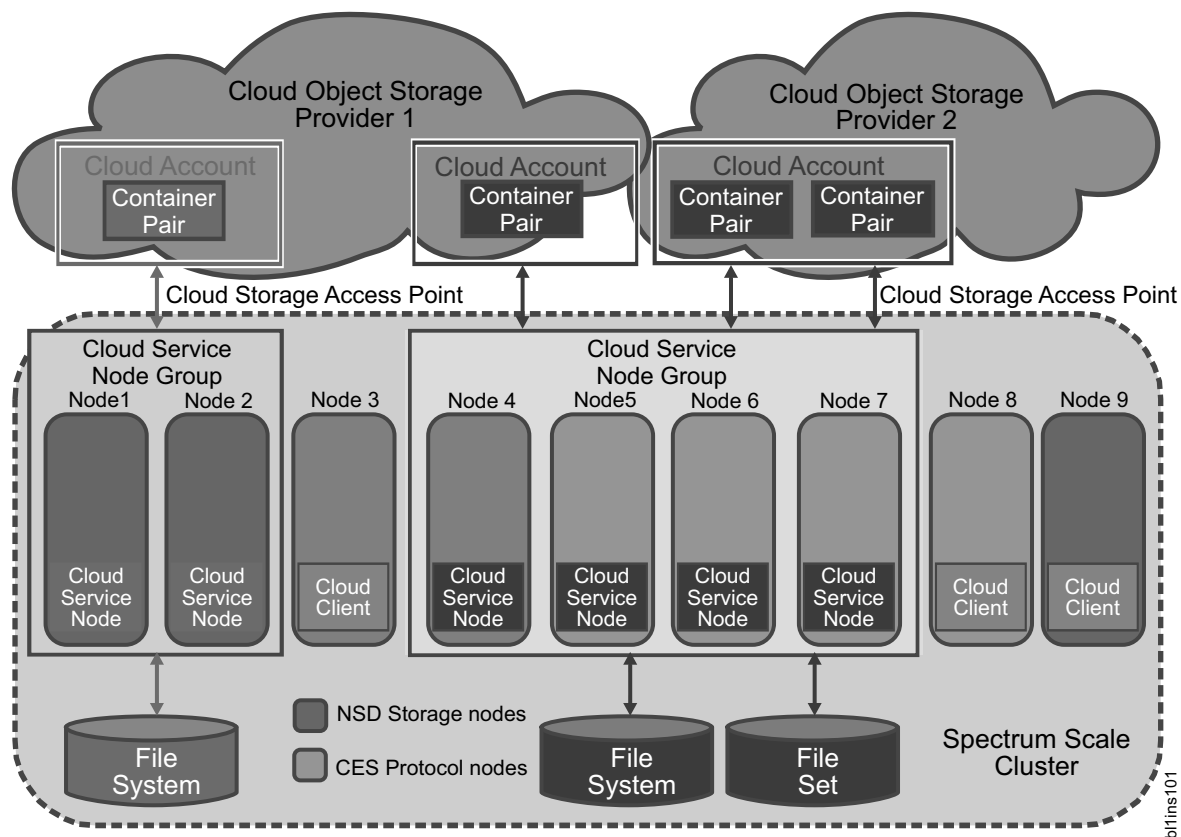


Figure 18. Transparent cloud tiering and Cloud data sharing features

**Note:**

- For performance reasons, the median file size to be migrated to the cloud tier must be greater than 1 MB. Migration is supported for file size less than one MB, but performance is slower because of the overhead that is associated with small files.
- For Transparent cloud tiering, data on the cloud object storage is opaque and cannot be accessed directly by applications. All I/O operations must happen through your IBM Spectrum Scale system.
- Transparent cloud tiering works with IBM Spectrum Scale on multi-site stretch clusters to allow continued access to cloud storage data even if failure of an entire site.
- For applications that require tiering of data that scales beyond 100 million files per file system, you can create extra containers on cloud storage to hold your files. For applications that require more I/O bandwidth than a single maximum node group (4 nodes) is capable of, you can create extra node groups.

**Note:** You must create a new container when the existing container has approximately 100,000,000 files.

### Unsupported use cases

Transparent cloud tiering does not support the following use cases:

- Using Transparent cloud tiering to migrate/recall hot (active) data
- Using Transparent cloud tiering as a backup mechanism
- Using Transparent cloud tiering to restore data in disaster recovery scenarios.

**Note:** IBM Spectrum Protect cloud-container storage pools can be used to back up data to cloud storage providers.

**Note:** To enable Cloud services nodes, you must first enable the Transparent cloud tiering feature. This feature provides a new level of storage tiering capability to IBM Spectrum Scale customers. Contact your IBM Client Technical Specialist (or send an email to <mailto:scale@us.ibm.com>) to review your use case of the Transparent cloud tiering feature and to obtain the instructions to enable the feature in your environment.

## How Transparent cloud tiering works

This topic describes how you can use the Transparent cloud tiering (which tiers files to object storage) feature works in the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

Transparent cloud tiering is a IBM Spectrum Scale feature that allows the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster to tier files to object storage. The Transparent cloud tiering service stores a file as two objects out in the cloud in two separate containers. These containers are also called vaults or buckets depending on which cloud storage vendor you use. One object holds the file's data and the other object holds the file's metadata. The metadata contains items such as ACLs, extended attributes, and other information that allows Transparent cloud tiering to do a full restore of the file from the cloud tier.

When a file is migrated to the cloud, the metadata of the file is retained in the IBM Spectrum Scale file system. The only reason for copying the metadata to the cloud is to manage scenarios where a file is destroyed on the cluster for some reason (such as accidental deletion) and the file needs to be restored from the cloud.

For the usual case, only the file's data is recalled from the cloud. You can tier the files by migrating the data to the cloud. This means that the data is no longer on the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster and is stored only on the cloud. Such files are considered to be in the non-resident state. Alternatively, you can pre-migrate the data to the object storage so that the data is retained in the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster, but is also copied out to object storage so that the data is on both tiers. Such files are considered to be in the co-resident state.

Transparent cloud tiering stores information about files that are migrated to the cloud tier in a database called *cloud directory*. A separate database or cloud directory is kept for every Transparent cloud tiering

container pair (the pair of containers that hold the file data and metadata). This database contains a list and versions of all files that are migrated to the cloud. The metadata contains items such as ACLs, extended attributes, and other information that allows Transparent cloud tiering to do a full restore of the file from the cloud tier in the future.

Because some applications access the front end of the file frequently, there is an option by specifying "thumbnail-size" to choose how much of the front end of a file is to be kept in the file system when a file is migrated out to the object storage. Some applications such as Windows Explorer and Linux GNOME only access a very small amount of data on the front end as a part of directory services and other applications such as media streamers might want to cache hundreds of megabytes. By specifying the size it is possible to efficiently accommodate both such applications.

Transparent cloud tiering has maintenance activities that remove data from the cloud for files that are deleted or reversioned. Backup and reconciliation services are performed to deal with disaster recovery and other unusual error clean-up cases. You can change the times and frequencies of these activities.

Additionally, if a file is migrated and only the metadata is changed later, a subsequent migration copies only the metadata to the cloud. This metadata references the original data object.

**Note:** Transparent cloud tiering data is migrated to the cloud in a way that is not designed for direct use in the cloud. If data must be consumed in the cloud, you must consider the Cloud data sharing service.

Data migration and configuration activities happen through the defined Cloud services nodes. You can allow transparent recalls to be handled directly (and thus more efficiently and with better performance) by client nodes by setting up this option when installing the client.

## How Cloud data sharing works

This topic describes how the Cloud data sharing feature works in the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

Cloud data sharing allows you to import data from object storage into your IBM Spectrum Scale file system using the **import** command. You can also export data to the cloud for use in the cloud by using the **export** command. Optionally, there is a manifest that can be built that allows those sharing to very quickly ascertain what files are being shared.

Cloud data sharing is different from Transparent cloud tiering because it is meant as a means of sharing and distributing data, whereas with Transparent cloud tiering the data that is migrated to object storage is concealed so it can be consumed only by recalling the data back into the IBM Spectrum Scale system.

**Note:** There is no implicit consistency link that is established by the export or import of a file. The import or export is just a transfer of a file. Once the transfer is complete, if the original file is changed at one place it has no bearing on its copies. And if a copy of a file is changed or deleted it has no bearing on the original.

### How exporting file system data to cloud storage works

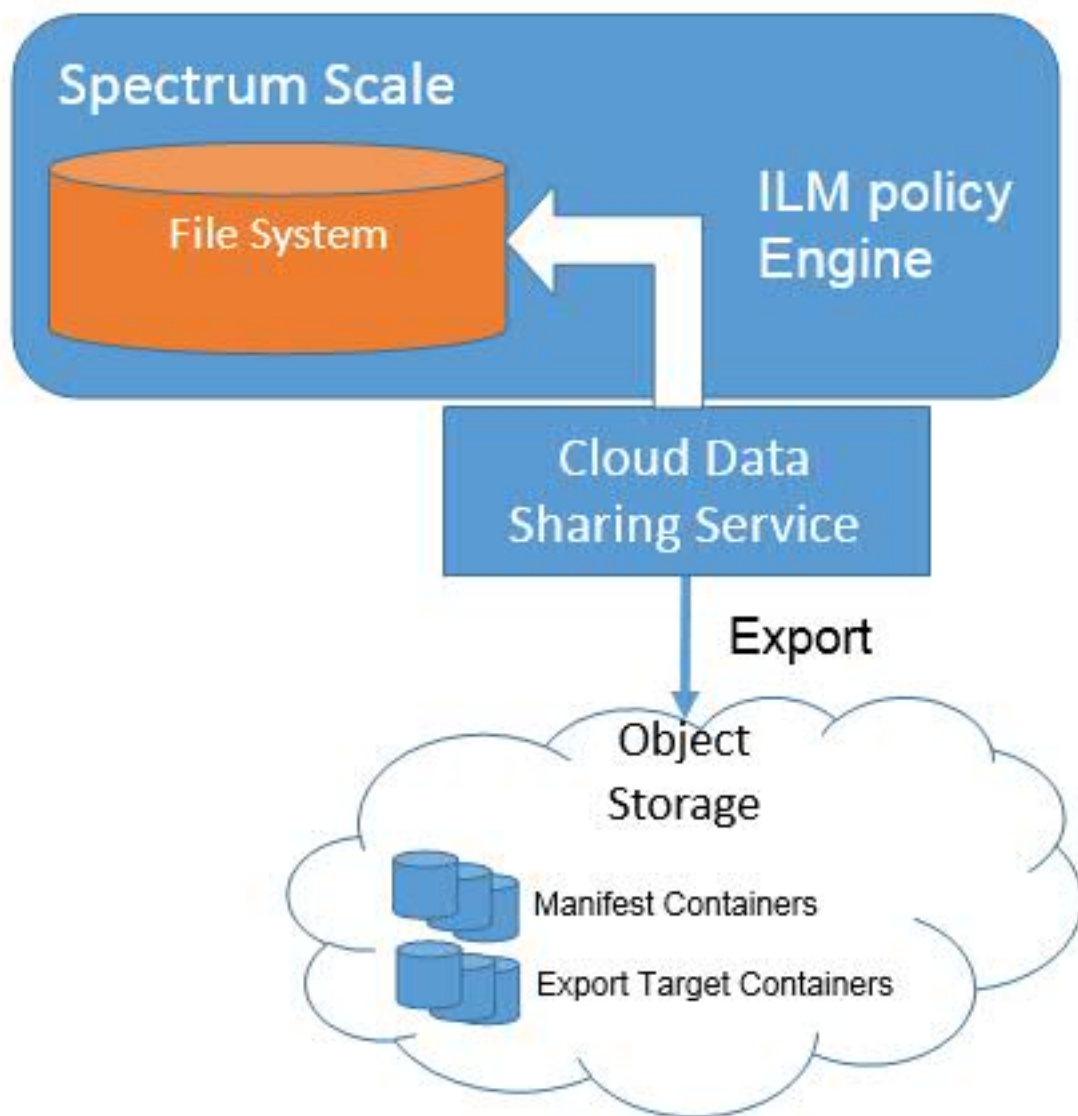


Figure 19. Exporting file system data to a cloud storage tier

You can use the Cloud data sharing service to export data to the cloud. Data can be exported manually, but typically it is done leveraging the ILM Policy Manager that comes with IBM Spectrum Scale. When data transfer requests are generated, they are distributed evenly between all nodes in the Cloud services node group providing the Cloud data sharing service.

Also, optionally as a part of the export request, a list of what was sent is also put in a manifest file that can be used to track what was exported. Export is very flexible because for each command the target container can be specified. Any container accessible by the given cloud account can be used. For each **export** command, you can also specify the target manifest file. The manifest file is not automatically stored in the cloud storage but rather remains stored within the Cloud data sharing service. The manifest is exported on demand to the desired target location.

#### How importing object storage data into the Spectrum Scale file system works

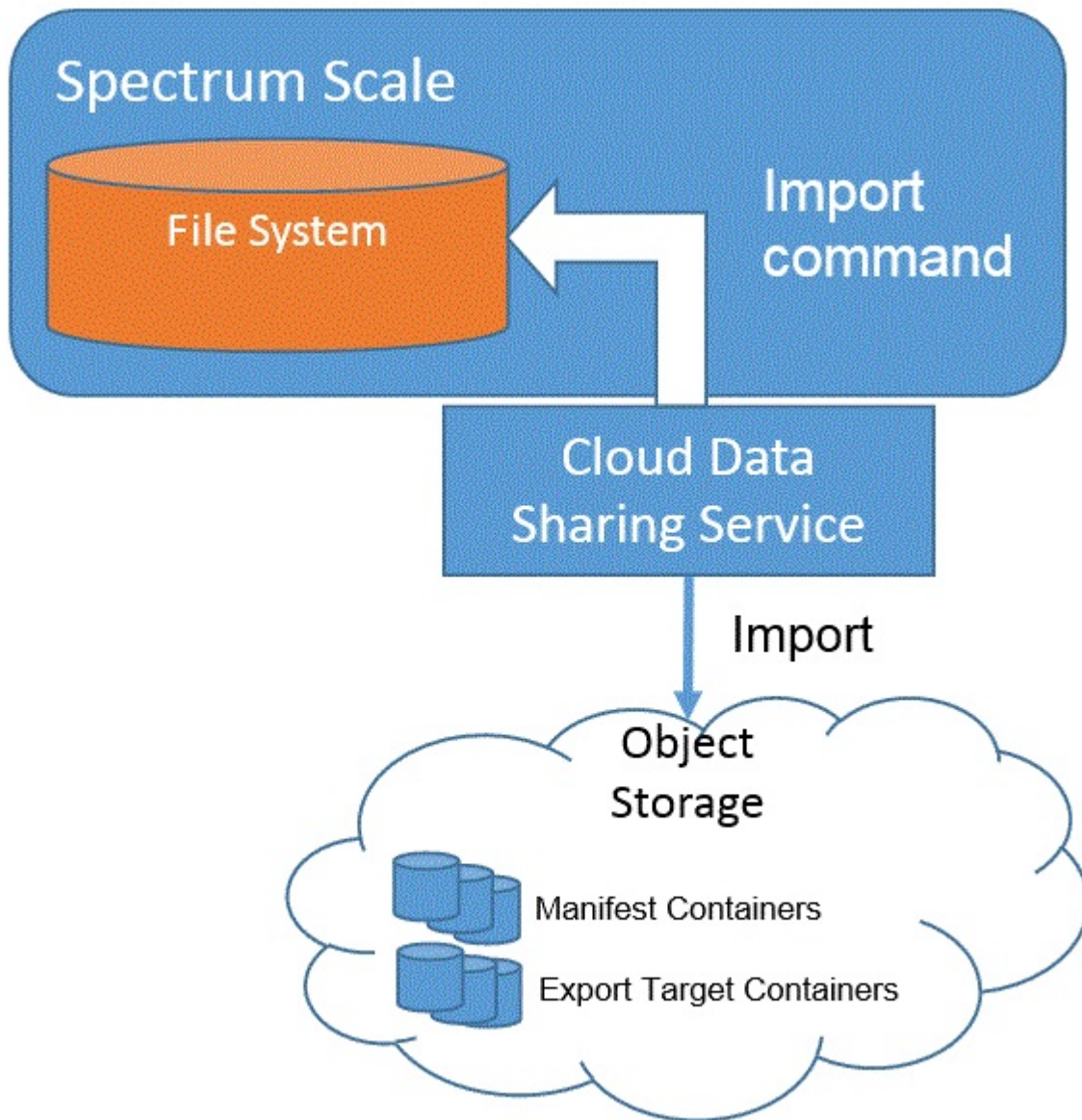


Figure 20. Importing object storage data into the file system

You can import data directly by providing a list of objects to be imported in the command itself or by providing a pointer to a manifest that contains the list of objects to be imported. The files are imported and placed in a target directory in the file system. Since the files are not yet present in the file system, there is no way to use the policy engine to initially import the files. You can also import the stub of the file and then use the policy engine to look at the file stub information that you use to import the desired data subset. You can delete the stubs that you are not interested in.

**Note:** The import of the stub only works if the data on the object storage that is being imported was originally created using the IBM Spectrum Scale export service so that the stub has the appropriate format. (Native object storage stubs are not mapped or normalized as of yet).

#### How to be aware of and exploit what data is shared

A manifest might be kept which lists information on objects that are in cloud storage available for sharing. When the Cloud data sharing service exports files to the object storage, it can be directed to add

entries on what it exported to a manifest. Other applications that generate cloud data can also generate a manifest. The location of where the manifest is stored and when it is exported to be looked at is the decision of the application – it is not automatic. A typical time to export the manifest to object storage is in the same cron job as the policy invocation immediately following the policy execution completion so that it represents all the files that are exported by that policy run.

The `mmcloudmanifest` manifest utility program is available that can read a manifest and provide a comma-separated value (CSV) output stream of all the files in the manifest, or a subset of those files as provided by some simple filtering. This manifest utility is written in Python and can run separately from the cloud data sharing service most anywhere python can run. The utility is also built into cloud data sharing and can be used to get input for import operations.

Currently, there is no built-in way to do asynchronous notification or to have a database that tracks all updates at a scale larger than is reasonable with manifest files, but it is possible to add notification in the script where the export policy is invoked. Also, manifests can be readily consumed by a database (for example the Elastic Search, Logstash, Kibana ELK Stack) since the data structure is very simple. On larger deployments, such an approach with asynchronous notification that is built into the scripts (and uses a database) is worth consideration.

### **How a native cloud storage application can prepare a set of objects for sharing**

There is a simple way for native cloud storage applications or other generators of cloud object data to generate a manifest. The manifest utility can build the manifest from a list of objects that it is passed.

## **How Write Once Read Many (WORM) storage works**

This topic describes how you can use Write Once Read Many (WORM) solutions to take advantage of functions that are offered by IBM Spectrum Scale, Transparent cloud tiering, and IBM Cloud Object Storage.

WORM (Write Once-Read Many) storage solutions leverage IBM Spectrum Scale immutability, Transparent cloud tiering, and IBM Cloud Object Storage locked vaults. Essentially, you can create the immutable file sets on the IBM Spectrum Scale file system, and you can set files as immutable either through IBM Spectrum Scale commands or through POSIX interface. You can also set a retention period on the immutable files.

A locked vault on the IBM Cloud Object Storage cannot be deleted by the IBM Cloud Object Storage administrator, and its Access Control Lists (ACLs) cannot be changed. Additionally, you cannot rename it or enable the proxy settings. RSA private key and private certificate are used to create and access the locked vaults. Transparent cloud tiering is configured with the RSA private key and private certificate to create locked vaults. Once configured, you can use configured private keys and certificates to use REST APIs against the Accesser nodes.

You can perform migrate and recall operation on immutable files. Since the immutable files cannot be deleted, the data on the IBM Cloud Object Storage locked vaults is only deleted according to locked vault deletion policy, which provides a WORM solution for compliance archival.

The following diagram provides an overview of the feature:



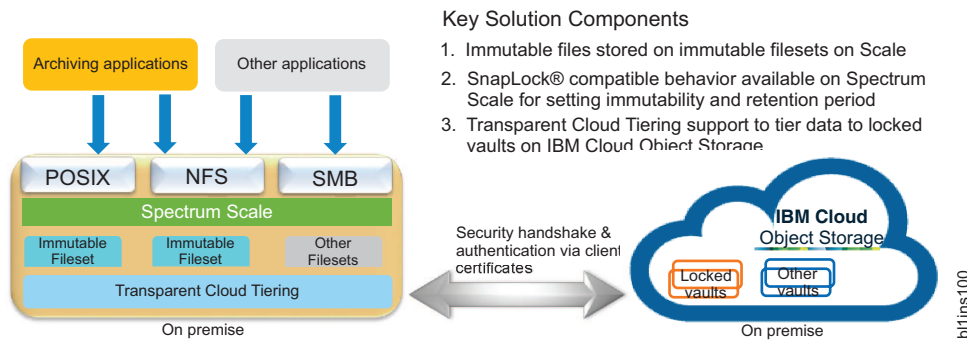


Figure 21. WORM storage overview

## Supported cloud providers

This topic describes the cloud providers that the IBM Spectrum Scale supports.

The Cloud services use the following cloud providers:

- IBM Cloud Object Storage (version 3.7.3.2, 3.8.2.19, 3.9, and 3.13.4.40)
- IBM Cloud Object Storage on IBM SoftLayer® and IBM Bluemix®.
- OpenStack Swift with Swift version 2.13 and below
- Amazon Web Services S3
- Swift3 on OpenStack Swift version 2.13, 1.1 and above

- | **Note:** OpenStack Swift is supported only with Keystone version 2 only. You need to install Apache  
 | libcloud 1.3.0 for mmcloudmanifest to function. Run `pip install apache-libcloud==1.3.0` to install  
 | libcloud version 1.3.0.
- | • Microsoft Azure object storage service

- | **Note:** Cloud services move data to a cool tier as a block 'blob' only. Moving data to other tiers and  
 | other blob types is not supported.

## Interoperability of Transparent cloud tiering with other IBM Spectrum Scale features

This topic describes the interoperability of Transparent cloud tiering with other IBM Spectrum Scale features.

### IBM Spectrum Archive (LTFS) and HSM

Running IBM Spectrum Archive and Transparent cloud tiering on the same file system is not supported.

However, both HSM and Transparent cloud tiering can co-exist on the same systems if they are configured with different file systems.

It is advised not to enable the Data Management API (DMAPI) on the file system that is managed by the Transparent cloud tiering.

**AFM** Running Transparent cloud tiering service on AFM Gateway nodes is not supported.

Data from AFM or AFM DR filesets cannot be accessed by Transparent cloud tiering.

Using Transparent cloud tiering on AFM home is not supported.

### Multi-clusters

Multi-cluster support is limited to remotely mounted clients.

### File Placement Optimizer (FPO)

Transparent cloud tiering is supported on FPO cluster. Recalled files might not have optimal placement.

### IBM Spectrum Scale Object

Transparent cloud tiering can be configured on Object file sets.

### Snapshots

Transparent cloud tiering should not be used to migrate/recall snapshots. Space that is contained in snapshots is not freed if a file is migrated to cloud object storage. Data tiered to the cloud is not designed for proper behavior relative to a snapshot. It is not recommended to take a snapshot on a file set or filesystem that contains data tiered by Transparent cloud tiering service.

### Sparse files

Transparent cloud tiering can be used to migrate/recall sparse files. However, sparseness is not maintained and on recall, full blocks are allocated.

### Encryption

Transparent cloud tiering can be used with Scale file system level encryption feature (available in the Advanced and Data Management Editions). However, all the data that is migrated to the cloud object storage is migrated with the key that is configured for Transparent cloud tiering. Essentially, when data is read from file system, the files get decrypted, and encrypted again at user space by Transparent cloud tiering and pushed into the cloud storage.

### Compression

Transparent cloud tiering can be used along with Scale file system level compression capability. Essentially, when data is read from the file system, the files are uncompressed, Transparent cloud tiering push uncompressed, but by default encrypted, files onto the cloud storage.

### CES (protocol services)

Transparent cloud tiering can co-exist with active or inactive NFS, SMB, or Object services on the CES nodes.

### Spectrum Protect (TSM)

For the file systems that are managed by an HSM system, ensure that hot data is backed up to TSM by using the **mmbackup** command, and as the data gets cooler, migrate them to the cloud storage tier. This ensures that the **mmbackup** command has already backed up the cooler files that are migrated to the cloud.

### Elastic Storage Server (ESS)

Transparent cloud tiering cannot be deployed directly on ESS nodes. However, it can be deployed on X86 protocol nodes that can be attached to ESS. On a Power® Linux cluster, a few X86 protocol nodes can be added and Transparent cloud tiering can be configured on those nodes. Remotely mounted client support is also helpful when running with ESS configurations since multi-cluster configurations with ESS are very common.

### Mixed-node cluster configuration

Transparent cloud tiering service runs on x86 and Power LE Linux nodes. Transparent cloud tiering does not run on Windows, IBM Z, or Power BE Linux nodes. No mixed-node cluster support with Windows or IBM Z. Both x86 Linux and Power Linux nodes can initiate migrations/recalls of data, and these nodes can initiate a transparent recall on file access.

Transparent cloud tiering is supported for use only in IBM Spectrum Scale clusters and on any associated remotely mounted clients, with Intel x86 Linux and Power LE Linux nodes. Use of Windows, PowerPC® Big Endian, Linux on Z or AIX nodes that access file systems, where Transparent cloud tiering is used (either within the cluster or via a remotely mounted client), is untested and unsupported. Inclusion of such nodes is allowed only if there is no possibility that they will ever access Transparent cloud tiering; for example, such nodes are tested and supported for PowerPC Big Endian nodes in Elastic Storage Server (ESS) BE & LE servers, where no user applications are supported on Elastic Storage Server (ESS).

**SELinux**

Supported

**SOBAR**

SOBAR backup and restore support is available.

**IPV6 Support**

Not supported

**IBM Spectrum Scale Stretch Clusters**

This service can be used in conjunction with stretch clusters. Cloud services node classes can be set up all on one site or, most usually, can be split across sites to allow for continued access to cloud data even through failure of an entire site.

**installation toolkit**

Not supported.

**Linux on Power8 Little Endian**

Supported.

**Note:** For information on known limitations, see the *Known Limitations for Transparent cloud tiering* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## **Interoperability of Cloud data sharing with other IBM Spectrum Scale features**

This topic describes the interoperability of Cloud data sharing with other IBM Spectrum Scale features.

**IBM Spectrum Archive (LTFS) and HSM**

- Running IBM Spectrum Archive and Cloud data sharing on the same file system is not supported.
- However, both HSM and Cloud data sharing can co-exist on the same systems if they are configured with different file systems.
- It is advised not to enable the Data Management API (DMAPI) on the file system that is managed by the Cloud data sharing.

**AFM**

- Data from AFM or AFM DR filesets might be accessed by Cloud data sharing.
- Using Cloud data sharing on AFM home is supported.

**Multi-clusters**

Running Cloud data sharing on multiple clusters to the same or different cloud accounts is supported.

**File Placement Optimizer (FPO)**

Cloud data sharing is supported on FPO cluster. Transferred files might not have an optimal placement.

**IBM Spectrum Scale Object**

- Cloud data sharing works only with Unified File Object based IBM Spectrum Scale object storage at this time.
- Running Cloud data sharing in the same file system with another data set is supported.

**Snapshots**

Cloud data sharing can be used with the snapshot function to export snapshot files to the cloud since it is simply doing the file replication.

**Sparse files**

Cloud data sharing can be used to import or export sparse files. However, sparseness is not maintained and on re-import, full blocks are allocated.

### **Encryption**

Cloud data sharing can be used with the IBM Spectrum Scale file system level encryption feature (available in the Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition). However, all the data that is exported to the cloud object storage is unencrypted or if cloud data sharing encryption is enabled it is exported with the encryption key configured for Cloud services. Essentially, when data is read from file system, the files get decrypted, and may be encrypted again at user space by Cloud data sharing and pushed into the cloud storage.

### **Compression**

Cloud data sharing can be used along with IBM Spectrum Scale file system level compression capability. Essentially, when data is read from the file system, the files will get uncompressed, Cloud data sharing will push uncompressed file onto the cloud storage.

### **CES (protocol services)**

Cloud data sharing can co-exist with active or inactive NFS, SMB, or Object services on the CES nodes.

### **Spectrum Scale stretched cluster**

Spectrum Scale stretched cluster and Cloud data sharing on the same file system is supported.

### **Spectrum Protect (TSM)**

IBM Spectrum Scale file systems backed up using Spectrum Protect may leverage Cloud data sharing.

### **Elastic Storage Server (ESS)**

Cloud data sharing cannot be deployed directly on ESS nodes. However, it can be deployed on x86 Protocol (CES) nodes that can be attached to ESS that effectively allows sharing of ESS data.

### **Mixed-node cluster configuration**

- Cloud data sharing service runs only on x86 and Power Linux nodes. Cloud data sharing is not supported to be deployed on Power Linux, Windows, or IBM Z. However, it can co-exist in a Linux cluster that contains both x86 and Power nodes, as long as the Power nodes are not running the Cloud services.
- No mixed-node cluster support with Windows or IBM Z. Only x86 Linux nodes can initiate migrations/recalls of data and only x86 Linux nodes can initiate a transparent recall on file access.

### **SELinux**

Supported

### **SOBAR**

Running SOBAR and Cloud data sharing on the same file system is supported.

### **IPV6 Support**

Not supported

### **Linux on Power8 Little Endian**

Supported

### **installation toolkit**

Not supported.

**Note:** For information on known limitations, see the *Known Limitations for Cloud services* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

---

## Introduction to file audit logging

File audit logging captures file operations on a file system and logs them to a retention enabled fileset.

Each file operation is generated as a local event on the node that serves the file operation. These events are published to a distributed multinode message queue from which they are consumed to be written into the fileset. These events are called lightweight events. Lightweight events occur at the file system level and are protocol agnostic, which means that they capture all access to a monitored file system from protocol exports to even root access that occurs directly on nodes. For more information, see “Producers in file audit logging.” The most common file operations such as open, close, destroy (delete), rename, unlink, create, remove directory, extended attribute change, ACL change, and GPFS attribute change are the events that are captured. Events are created in a highly parsable, JSON formatted string as they are written to the designated fileset. For each file system enabled for file audit logging, a fileset is designated where the audit logs will go. This fileset keeps the logs currently being written to in append only mode and, as it rotates to a new log file, compresses the old log file and makes it immutable for the retention period. Configurable options for file audit logging filesets include the device where they are mounted, their name, and the retention period in days. A separate file audit logging fileset can store the audit log for each file system or they can be shared among multiple file systems that are being audited. File audit logging is integrated into the system health infrastructure, so alerts are generated for elements of the message queue and the processes that consume the events and create the audit logs.

**Note:** IBM Spectrum Scale file audit logging is the preferred method for logging file system activities.

For more information about file audit logging, see *Monitoring file audit logging in IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Producers in file audit logging

Producers create lightweight events and publish them to a list of message queue servers/brokers.

Lightweight events are generated when file operations are served locally on a node in the data path. These lightweight events are generated as node local events that are then published in the multinode message queue. Producers publish file access events to the message queue. They reside in the GPFS daemon and are activated and configured by IBM Spectrum Scale policy code. Once the events are generated, they are published to a specific topic in the message queue that has a 1:1 correspondence to the file system for which the event is generated.

## The message queue in file audit logging

The message queue collects and stores events that are published by the producers running on nodes in an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

Messages are added to the queue as part of registered topics. In the case of file audit logging, a unique topic is created for each file system that is being audited. The topic provides a way to track messages that are being added by producers for a specific file system and later read via a consumer group. A file audit logging topic is composed of four items:

`SpectrumScale_<Audit_Device_Minor_Number>_<Cluster_ID>_<Gen_Number>_FSYS_<Audit_Device>_audit`

- **SpectrumScale:** Denotes that this topic is created for internal IBM Spectrum Scale use.
- **Audit\_Device\_Minor\_Number:** A minor number represents the file system device. This number is used because it will not change even if the device name of the file system changes.
- **Cluster\_ID:** The cluster ID represents the cluster where file audit logging is configured and enabled on one or more file system devices.
- **Gen\_Number:** A generation number allows file audit logging to be disabled and later re-enabled on the same file system even if the message queue server containing one of the replicas of the data associated with the topic is unavailable.

- **FSYS:** Denotes that a file system is being audited and not a fileset or path.
- **Audit\_Device:** The device name of the file system that will be audited with file audit logging.
- **audit:** Audit notifies the user that the topic is being used for file audit logging.

Other message queue components consist of the message queue servers, ZooKeepers, and the actual message queue data.

A message queue server provides an interface for producers to write messages to the queue and for consumers to read messages from the queue. When enabling file audit logging for a file system device, the default is to set the list of message queue servers to be the protocol nodes in the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster. If protocol nodes do not exist or if the user wishes to specify their own list of nodes that will comprise the message queue servers, the **-N** option of the **mmmsgqueue** command can be used. This option is not available when utilizing the Install Toolkit.

ZooKeeper nodes are paired with Linux quorum nodes in the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster. ZooKeepers provide configuration and consensus services for the message queue. To allow the message queue system to be enabled (and therefore to enable file audit logging), there must be a minimum of three Linux quorum nodes within the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

Data in the message queue is retained on local storage on each of the message queue server nodes. The replication factor is three by default, which means that there are three copies of each message. The messages in the queue are retained in log files stored on disk. When enabling file audit logging for the file system device, the local space available on all of the message queue server nodes is queried to ensure that at least the minimum required amount of free space is available. The local disk space that is required per file system being audited with file audit logging is a minimum of 20 GB (with a recommended 40 GB) of local disk space on all nodes acting as broker nodes in the message queue. The **--degraded** flag is a new flag that can be specified when enabling file audit logging on a file system. The **--degraded** flag reduces performance, but it also reduces the minimum amount of local disk space required to 10 GB (with the recommended 20 GB) of local disk space per file system that is being audited with file audit logging on all nodes acting as broker nodes in the message queue. The **--degraded** flag should only be used if reduced performance is acceptable or local disk space on broker nodes is limited.

## Consumers in file audit logging

Consumers subscribe to a given topic on the message queue, read messages, and write them to a designated fileset within a specified file system.

A new node class is created for consumers (similar to the new node classes for the message queue servers/brokers and ZooKeepers). The consumer node class consists of the same nodes that are used by the message queue servers/brokers. For every file system that is being audited, a separate consumer runs on each node within the consumer node class. All consumers associated with the same file system cluster together to form a consumer group. If one fails, then the remaining consumers can perform the work of the failed consumer until it is available again.

For more information, see *Stopping consumers in file audit logging*, *Starting consumers in file audit logging*, and *Monitoring the consumer status* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## The file audit logging fileset

The audited events are logged in an independent file audit logging fileset.

The user can also supply a previously created fileset as long as it is already in IAM mode non-compliant. This is a requirement so that audit logs are not altered accidentally. By having the file audit logging fileset be IAM mode non-compliant, a retention period can be set on all of the files within the fileset. However, unlike in a compliant IAM mode fileset, the root user can change the expiration date of the individual files if space needs to be cleaned up in the fileset before the retention period expires.

File audit logging records for a given file system are arranged in the following manner:

<FS\_Mount\_Point>/<Fileset\_Name>/Topic/Year/Month/Day

- **FS\_Mount\_Point:** The default mount point of the device is designated to hold the file audit logging destination fileset. By default, this is the same as the file system that is being audited. The fileset can reside on the same file system that is being audited or a different one. The user can make that choice using the **mmaudit** command.
- **Fileset\_Name:** The fileset name indicates the file audit logging destination fileset. If no other fileset name is given, then the default is **.audit\_log**.
- **Topic:** The topic that is associated with the file system that is being audited. It consists of the following structure:  
<Device\_Minor Number>\_<Cluster\_ID>\_<Generation\_Number>\_audit

For more information about this structure, see “The message queue in file audit logging” on page 127.

- **Year/Month/Day:** Details when the individual file that is being written was first created.

**Note:** The **mmbackupconfig** command does not save the file audit logging enabled state of a file system. However, the IAM noncompliant mode of the file audit logging fileset is saved. Therefore, when restoring configuration information using the **mmrestoreconfig** command, file audit logging will have to be re-enabled on the file system using the **mmaudit** command. You will need to specify **--log-fileset** and possibly **--log-fileset-device**.

## File audit logging records

Files that hold the JSON formatted event records.

Files in the file audit logging fileset are named in the following format:

auditLogFile\_<Consumer\_Node\_Name>\_YYYY-MM-DD\_HH:MM:SS

When a file audit logging file is created, it is put in append only mode and an expiration date is set for it. The expiration date corresponds to the number of days after the current date given in the retention option of the **mmaudit** command. The default retention period is 365 days, which means that a given file audit logging file is set to expire one year from when it is created. In addition, when the file audit logging file is rotated and compressed, the previous file's expiration date is also reset to account for the retention period before the new file audit logging file is created. Therefore, the previous file also expires one year from when it was rotated.

When auditing events are read by the consumers in the message queue, they are appended to the files in the file audit logging fileset. After approximately 5,000,000 entries have been made in a file, it is made immutable, GPFS native compression is enabled on it, and a new file with the current date and time is created for the next batch of audit logs. Therefore, new files are created at a rate that corresponds to the file system activity of the device that is being audited.

**Important:** Since files in the file audit logging fileset are created in the directory based on their creation date, there might be audit records for several days within the same file if there is not much file system activity.

Furthermore, since the events are written to these files in batches, the file audit logging event information might be placed in a previous day's or next day's directory. In order to improve usability, there are soft links created in the audit fileset topic subdirectory that link each consumer's current audit record file. These links are named in the following format: auditLogFile.latest\_<Consumer\_Node\_Name>.

For more information, see “JSON attributes in file audit logging” on page 130.

## File audit logging events' descriptions

Use this information to learn more about which I/O operations result in the ten events for file audit logging.

Table 16. File audit logging events

Event name	Description	Examples
ACLCHANGE	A file's or directory's ACL permissions were modified.	mmputacl, chown, chgrp, chmod
CLOSE	A file was closed.	close(), cp, touch, echo, policy MIGRATE rule
CREATE	A file or directory was created.	open(creat flag), vi, ln, dd, mkdir
DESTROY	A file was deleted.	remove(), rm, unlink
GPFSATTRCHANGE	A file's or directory's IBM Spectrum Scale attributes were changed.	mmchattr -i -e --indefinite-retention
OPEN	A file or directory was opened for reading, writing, or creation.	open(), mmlsattr, cat, cksum, ls, policy LIST rule
RENAME	A file or directory was renamed.	rename(), mv
RMDIR	A directory was removed.	rmdir(), rm, rmdir
UNLINK	A file or directory was unlinked from its parent directory.	unlink(), rm hardlink/softlink
XATTRCHANGE	A file's or directory's extended attributes were changed.	mmchattr --set-attr --delete-attr

**Note:** Removing the last link to a file or directory will result in UNLINK and DESTROY events. In other words, when a file or directory that has no soft or hard links is deleted, UNLINK and DESTROY events are generated.

For more information, see *JSON reporting issues in file audit logging in IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

## JSON attributes in file audit logging

Use this information to learn more about the JSON attributes that are associated with the ten events in file audit logging.

### LWE\_JSON

The version of the record.

**path** The path name of the file that is involved in the event.

### oldPath

The previous path name of the file during the **RENAME** event. For all other events, it is not displayed.

### clusterName

The name of the cluster where the event took place.

### nodeName

The name of the node where the event took place.

### nfsClientIp

The IP address of the remote client that is involved in the event.

### fsName

The name of the file system that is involved in the event.



**event**

This is one of the following events: **OPEN**, **CREATE**, **CLOSE**, **RENAME**, **XATTRCHANGE**, **ACLCHANGE**, **UNLINK**, **DESTROY**, **RMDIR**, or **GPFSATTRCHANGE**.

**inode** The inode number of the file that is involved in the event.

**linkCount**

The Unix link count of the file that is involved in the event.

**openFlags**

The open flags that are specified during the event, as defined in `fcntl.h` ( `O_RDONLY`, `O_WRONLY`, `O_RDWR`, `O_CREAT`, ... )

For example:

"openFlags": "32962" = `0x80C2` = `0100302` translates to ( `O_RDWR` | `O_CREAT` | `O_EXCL` | `O_LARGEFILE` )

**poolName**

The pool name where the file resides.

**fileSize**

The current size of the file in bytes.

**ownerUserId**

The owner id of the file that is involved in the event.

**ownerGroupId**

The group id of the file that is involved in the event.

**atime** The time in UTC format of the last access of the file that is involved in the event.

**ctime** The time in UTC format of the last status change of the file that is involved in the event.

**mtime** The time in UTC format of the last modification to the file that is involved in the event.

**eventTime**

The time in UTC format of the event.

**clientUserId**

The user id of the process that is involved in the event.

**clientGroupId**

The group id of the process that is involved in the event.

**processId**

The process id that is involved in the event.

**permissions**

The permissions on the file that is involved in the event.

**acls** The access control lists that are involved in the event.

**xattrs** The extended attributes that are involved in the event.

**subEvent**

The type of IBM Spectrum Scale attribute change. Only applies to the immutability and `appendOnly` flags.

The following table describes the JSON attributes that are provided for the ten events in file audit logging.

Table 17. JSON attributes in file audit logging

Attribute	OPEN	CREATE	CLOSE	RENAME	XATTR CHANGE		UNLINK	DESTROY	RMDIR	
LWE_JSON	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

Table 17. JSON attributes in file audit logging (continued)

Attribute	OPEN	CREATE	CLOSE	RENAME	XATTR CHANGE		UNLINK	DESTROY	RMDIR	
path	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X <sup>1</sup>	X	X
oldPath				X						
clusterName	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
nodeName	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
nfsClientIp	X <sup>2</sup>									
fsName	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
event	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
inode	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
linkCount	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
openFlags	X	0	X	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
poolName	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
fileSize	0	0	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
ownerUserId	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	0
ownerGroupId	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	0
atime	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
ctime	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
mtime	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
eventTime	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
clientUserId	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	0
clientGroupId	X	X	X	X	X	X	X		X	0
processId	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	NA	X	NA
permissions	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
acls	Null	Null	Null	Null	Null	X	Null	Null	Null	Null
xattrs	Null	Null	Null	Null	X <sup>3</sup>	Null	Null	Null	Null	Null
subEvent	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	NONE	APPENDONLY IMMUTABILITY

For information about some of the issues that might occur with the events and when they might occur, see *JSON reporting issues in file audit logging* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

**Note:**

1. The **path** attribute is sometimes available for the **DESTROY** event, but it is not guaranteed.
2. The **nfsClientIp** attribute is provided for NFS clients using Ganesha. The value is NULL for kernel NFS versions and SMB.
3. The **xattrs** attribute only shows the **xattr** that was changed.
4. The best effort is made to provide the **path** attribute for files accessed via NFS, but it is not guaranteed.

## Remotely mounted file systems in file audit logging

Beginning in IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.2, events are recorded for file systems that are remotely mounted when file audit logging is enabled on the **owningCluster**.

Events are only recorded on nodes that meet the file audit logging prerequisites. For more information, see “Requirements and limitations for file audit logging” on page 379. File audit logging commands do not work on file systems that are not owned by the local cluster. File audit logging can be enabled for both local and remotely mounted file systems at the same time with audit records that are stored by the **owningCluster** of the file system. To determine if a file system is under audit from an **accessingCluster**, issue the **mm1sfs FS --file-audit-log** command.

| **Note:** You must run the following command to upgrade the policies to accommodate remotely mounted  
| file systems if any file systems have file audit logging enabled prior to the file system being upgraded to  
| at least level 5.0.2 (and the owning and accessing clusters being upgraded to at least level 5.0.2):  
| `mmaudit all upgradePolicies`

---

## Introduction to watch folder

Watch folder is an IBM Spectrum Scale feature that allows you to monitor folders, filesets, and inode spaces for file accesses.

By monitoring file accesses, the user is able to act in response to file access events. For example, an administrator can set up a watch on an independent fileset and have every file **CLOSE** event within the fileset be logged into an output file. The log file can then be parsed periodically and a migration policy can be set to move the files that were closed to another data pool.

Watch folder is designed to emulate Linux inotify, but it has the following significant advantages:

- It is designed for IBM Spectrum Scale, which is a distributed file system. This means that a watch that is set up on any of the IBM Spectrum Scale nodes receives file access event notifications even if the watched folder, fileset, or inode space is accessed from **another node**.
- You can watch subfolders with inode spaces and filesets by only watching the root of those constructs. In contrast, if you needed to watch subfolders using Linux inotify, you would have to install one watch on each of the subfolders.

**Note:** For more information, see *Watch folder API* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

The following events are supported:

*Table 18. File access events that are supported by watch folder*

File access event	Notes
IN_ACCESS	A file was accessed (read or executed).
IN_ATTRIB	Metadata was changed (for example, <b>chmod</b> , <b>chown</b> , <b>setxattr</b> etc.).
IN_CLOSE_WRITE	A file that was opened for writing was closed.
IN_CLOSE_NOWRITE	A file or folder that was not opened for writing was closed.
IN_CREATE	A file or folder was created in a watched folder.
IN_DELETE	A file or folder was deleted from a watched folder.
IN_DELETE_SELF	A watched file or folder was deleted.
IN_MODIFY	A file was modified (for example, write or truncate).
IN_MOVE_SELF	A folder that was being watched was moved.
IN_MOVED_FROM	A file within the watched folder was renamed.
IN_MOVED_TO	A file was moved or renamed to this folder.
IN_OPEN	A file or folder was opened.

---

## Introduction to clustered watch

| In IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.3, watch folder has a clustered watch capability.

With a clustered watch, it is possible to watch file operations across clusters using a centralized tool that has scalability and resiliency built-in. An entire file system, fileset, or inode space can be watched. You can specify all or a subset of events that are listed in Table 18 on page 133. Similar to file audit logging, clustered watch captures file system activities at the IBM Spectrum Scale file system level, generates event notifications for those activities, and streams the notifications to topics within the message queue. Unlike file audit logging, the event notifications are then consumed by a conduit and sent to an external sink that you can manage.

## Producers in clustered watch

Producers generate file access event notifications and publish the notifications to a list of message queue servers (brokers).

Producers reside in the IBM Spectrum Scale daemon. For a file system with an enabled clustered watch, a producer exists in the daemon on each node that mounts the file system. The producer generates events for a clustered watch if the producer is on the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster that owns the file system and the clusters with the file system remotely mounted (and both clusters meet minimum IBM Spectrum Scale level versions). The producer code requires two packages to be installed. For more information, see “Manually installing watch folder” on page 385.

## The message queue in clustered watch

The message queue collects the file access event notifications published by the producer.

The message queue is partitioned into topics. There is one topic for each watch. The topic is created transparently when you enable a clustered watch using the **mmwatch** command. A clustered watch topic name is composed as follows:

`SpectrumScale_WF_C_<Cluster_ID>_<Watch_Type>_<Watch_ID>_CLW_<Device>`

- **SpectrumScale\_WF\_C**: Denotes that the topic is associated with an IBM Spectrum Scale clustered watch folder (or clustered watch).
- **Cluster\_ID**: The cluster ID represents the cluster that owns the file system that is specified in a given clustered watch definition.
- **Watch\_Type**: Denotes the type of clustered watch, which can be any of the following options:
  - **FSYS**: Indicates a file system level clustered watch.
  - **FSET**: Indicates a fileset level clustered watch (input fileset is dependent).
  - **INODE**: Indicates an inode space level clustered watch (input fileset is independent).
- **Watch\_ID**: An alphanumeric ID that must be unique across all clustered watches that are contained within a given file system. If a watch ID is not provided when enabling a clustered watch, the watch ID is created that consists of the following:  
`CLW<#seconds since epoch>`
- **Device**: This is the IBM Spectrum Scale file system device name associated with the clustered watch.

When a watch is enabled, a producer is created for that watch in the daemon on each node that mounts the file system that is being watched. The producer publishes file access event notifications to the message queue topic that was created for that watch. When a watch is enabled, multiple conduits are also created. These conduits run in user space, one conduit per watch on each of the nodes that houses a Kafka broker. The conduit subscribes to the message queue topic that was created for that watch. It reads the file access notifications off of the message queue watch topic and publishes them to an external Kafka sink.

The producers, conduits, and the message queue are the primary components of the clustered watch. Each of them is monitored by the message queue services monitor. For more information, see “Conduits in clustered watch” on page 135 and “The message queue services monitor and clustered watch” on page 136.

| The message queue stores messages that are published to it on the local disks on the message queue server (broker) nodes. Therefore, when enabling a clustered watch, a check is performed that all of the message queue servers have enough local disk space to contain the messages for the new topic. The default required amount of local disk space per clustered watch per message queue server node is 20 GB, but the recommended amount is 40 GB. This amount provides the best performance and space utilization balance in most cases. If local disk space is at a premium on the message queue servers, the **--degraded** option can be specified when enabling a clustered watch to reduce the number of parallel processes writing to the local disk. This also reduces the required minimum amount of local disk space per clustered watch to 10 GB and the recommended amount to 20 GB. The degraded option should only be utilized when a decreased amount of performance is acceptable.

## | **Conduits in clustered watch**

| The conduits in a clustered watch subscribe to the IBM Spectrum Scale topic that is associated with the watch and publish the messages to an external Kafka sink that is specified when enabling the clustered watch.

| The conduits can use any of the allowed authentication methods that can be specified when enabling a clustered watch. For more information, see “Interaction between clustered watch and the external Kafka sink” on page 136. The status of the conduits is monitored by the message queue services monitor. For more information, see “The message queue services monitor and clustered watch” on page 136. At any time, the conduit status of any clustered watch can be queried using the **mmwatch Device status** command. For more information, see the **mmwatch** command in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

| There are several states that each conduit can be in. These states depend on the status of its connectivity with the IBM Spectrum Scale message queue, the external Kafka sink, and the message queue services monitor.

| Even though the **mmwatch Device status** command shows a single status for a clustered watch, each component in the conduit has its own status, but it is the combined status of the sub-components of the consumer conduit that is given as the overall status of the clustered watch.

| The following states are possible:

- | • **HEALTHY**: The conduit has successfully written its state to the message queue services monitor and currently is not experiencing any errors in its consumer or producer sub-components.
- | • **CHECKING**: The conduit has started, but it has not yet written its state to the message queue services monitor. This state might transition to **HEALTHY**.
- | • **ERROR**: A permanent error has been encountered (such as the sink Kafka queue being unavailable) and the conduit will be shut down imminently.
- | • **DOWN**: The conduit has shut down.
- | • **DEGRADED**: Several errors have been encountered in a sub-component of the conduit, but there are not enough errors to put it in the **ERROR** state. This state might transition back to **HEALTHY**.
- | • **UNKNOWN**: The command is unable to contact the message queue services monitor to obtain the status.

| When a conduit goes into the **DOWN** state, this triggers a cluster-wide check of all conduits for the associated clustered watch. If a majority of the conduits are in an error, down, or generally unhealthy state, an automatic shut down and disable of the clustered watch occurs. This action is done to halt consumption of IBM Spectrum Scale file system events, publishing to the external sink, and to alert the customer through administration of the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

## | **The message queue services monitor and clustered watch**

| With the introduction of clustered watch, a new component has been added to the message queue infrastructure in IBM Spectrum Scale: the message queue services monitor.

| Starting in IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.3, when the message queue is enabled, a topic is created that sub-components can write state and other information to. The topic is named:  
| `SpectrumScale_MsgQueue_Services_Monitor`

| After the topic is created, a message queue server (broker) node is chosen to run the message queue services monitor. If the message queue services monitor cannot be started successfully during message queue enablement, the message queue enablement is not blocked. If an upgrade has occurred and the message queue was enabled prior to upgrade, the first clustered watch that is enabled first attempts to enable and start the message queue services monitor, and will fail its own enablement if it cannot enable the message queue services monitor successfully.

| Because the message queue services monitor utilizes its own topic, it requires local disk space on all message queue server (broker) nodes in order to function properly. When the message queue services monitor is enabled, it performs a check on all message queue server (broker) nodes to verify that there is a minimum of 5 GB (recommended 10 GB) of local disk space available. If this much space is not available, it fails.

| The message queue services monitor must have its topic available for writing in order for any clustered watch to be enabled. The consumer conduits must be able to register with the message queue services monitor before they can be considered to be in the HEALTHY state. If the consumer conduits cannot write to a given topic, there is most likely a general problem with the message queue and other interactions with message queue components are likely to fail.

| The tight coupling between clustered watch and the message queue services monitor also provides an automated way to disable a clustered watch if the consumer conduits are not able to send data from the message queue topic to the external Kafka sink. If any consumer conduit goes into the ERROR state, that means a permanent error has been encountered on that consumer conduit and it will be disabled for the remainder of the life of the clustered watch. If 50% or more of the consumer conduits are in a bad state (for example the DOWN, ERROR or continuously CHECKING states), the entire clustered watch is automatically disabled to avoid silent errors where the user might not know that watch events are not being sent to the external Kafka sink. If the clustered watch is automatically disabled, a message is written to the primary IBM Spectrum Scale log file in addition to any system health notifications that are sent.

## | **Interaction between clustered watch and the external Kafka sink**

| In IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.3, clustered watch supports sending watch events to an external Kafka sink.

| In order to send watch events to an external Kafka sink, a minimum of two attributes must be present when enabling a clustered watch:

- | • A list of accessible broker addresses with ports to access the external Kafka queue.
- | • The topic name on the external Kafka queue where the clustered watch will publish events.

| In addition to the two required attributes, authentication or authorization can also be specified. If authentication or authorization is not given when enabling a clustered watch, it is assumed that it is not needed. The following types of authentication or authorization are supported:

- | • **NONE**: This is the default. It can also be specified by excluding any type of authentication configuration.
- | • **PLAIN**: Utilize Kafka plain text authentication. You have to supply a username and password with the authentication information for the producer portion of the consumer conduit to write to the external Kafka sink.

- **SCRAM512:** Utilize the Kafka implementation of SCRAM512 authentication. You have to supply a username and password with the authentication information for the producer portion of the consumer conduit to write to the external Kafka sink.
- **CERT:** Utilize certificate-based authentication and encryption of data in flight between the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster hosting the clustered watch and the external Kafka sink. You have to provide an additional three (optional fourth) parameters when specifying this type of authentication for the producer portion of the consumer conduit to write to the external Kafka sink:
  - **CA\_CERT\_LOCATION:** Full path (including the actual file) to the location of the ca-cert file. This field is required.
  - **CLIENT\_PEM\_CERT\_LOCATION:** Full path (including the actual file) to the location of the client certificate (.pem format) file. This field is required.
  - **CLIENT\_KEY\_FILE\_LOCATION:** Full path to the location of the client key (client.key) file. This field is required.
  - **CLIENT\_KEY\_FILE\_PASSWORD:** Key file password. This field is optional.

For more information about specifying these parameters, see the **mmwatch** command in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

**Note:** In order for the consumer conduits to write to the external Kafka queue, the firewall ports must be open between the source IBM Spectrum Scale cluster and the external Kafka queue.

## JSON attributes in clustered watch

Use this information to learn more about the JSON attributes that are associated with the 12 events that can be specified when enabling a clustered watch and the other events that might be received due to other file system activity.

### WF\_JSON

The version of the record.

**wd** The watch descriptor.

**cookie** A unique integer that connects related events. It allows the resulting pair of **IN\_MOVED\_FROM** and **IN\_MOVED\_TO** events to be connected.

**event** The event type. One of the following events:

{IN\_ACCESS, IN\_ATTRIB, IN\_CLOSE\_NOWRITE, IN\_CLOSE\_WRITE, IN\_CREATE, IN\_DELETE, IN\_DELETE\_SELF, IN\_MODIFY, IN\_MOVED\_FROM, IN\_MOVED\_TO, IN\_MOVE\_SELF, IN\_OPEN}

**path** The path name of the file that is involved in the event.

### clusterName

The name of the cluster where the event took place.

### nodeName

The name of the node where the event took place.

### nfsClientIp

The IP address of the client involved in the event.

### fsName

The name of the file system that is involved in the event.

**inode** The inode number of the file that is involved in the event.

### filesetID

The fileset ID of the file.

### linkCount

The link count of the file.

| **openFlags**  
 |       The open flags that are specified during the event (**O\_RDONLY**, **O\_WRONLY**, **O\_RDWR**, **O\_CREAT**, etc.) as defined in `fcntl.h`.

| **poolName**  
 |       The pool name where the file resides.

| **fileSize**  
 |       The current size of the file in bytes.

| **ownerUserId**  
 |       The owner ID of the file that is involved in the event.

| **ownerGroupId**  
 |       The group ID of the file that is involved in the event.

| **atime**   The time in UTC format of the last access of the file that is involved in the event.

| **ctime**   The time in UTC format of the last inode or metadata change of the file that is involved in the event.

| **mtime**   The time in UTC format of the last time that the file was modified.

| **eventTime**  
 |       The time in UTC format of the event.

| **clientUserId**  
 |       The user ID of the process that is involved in the event.

| **clientGroupId**  
 |       The group ID of the process that is involved in the event.

| **processId**  
 |       The process ID that is involved in the event.

| **permissions**  
 |       The permissions on the file that is involved in the event.

| **acls**     The access control lists that are involved in the event (only in case of an acl change event).

| **xattrs**   The extended attributes that are involved in the event (only in case of an Xattr change event).

| **subEvent**  
 |       None.

| You can start a watch with any of the following events:

- | • **IN\_OPEN** - 0x20
- | • **IN\_ACCESS** - 0x01
- | • **IN\_MODIFY** - 0x02
- | • **IN\_ATTRIB** - 0x04
- | • **IN\_CLOSE\_WRITE** - 0x8
- | • **IN\_CLOSE\_NOWRITE** - 0x10
- | • **IN\_CREATE** - 0x100
- | • **IN\_DELETE** - 0x200
- | • **IN\_MOVED\_FROM** - 0x40
- | • **IN\_MOVED\_TO** - 0x80
- | • **IN\_DELETE\_SELF** - 0x400
- | • **IN\_MOVE\_SELF** - 0x800

| You might see these events during some of the previously mentioned watch types:



- | • IN\_IGNORED - 0x8000
- | • IN\_UNMOUNT - 0x2000
- | • IN\_OPEN IN\_ISDIR - 0x40000020
- | • IN\_ATTRIB IN\_ISDIR - 0x40000004
- | • IN\_CLOSE IN\_ISDIR - 0x40000010
- | • IN\_CREATE IN\_ISDIR - 0x40000100
- | • IN\_DELETE IN\_ISDIR - 0x40000200
- | • IN\_MOVE\_SELF IN\_ISDIR - 0x40000800
- | • IN\_MOVED\_FROM - 0x40000040
- | • IN\_MOVED\_TO - 0x40000080
- | • IN\_DELETE\_SELF - 0x40000400

---

## IBM Spectrum Scale in an OpenStack cloud deployment

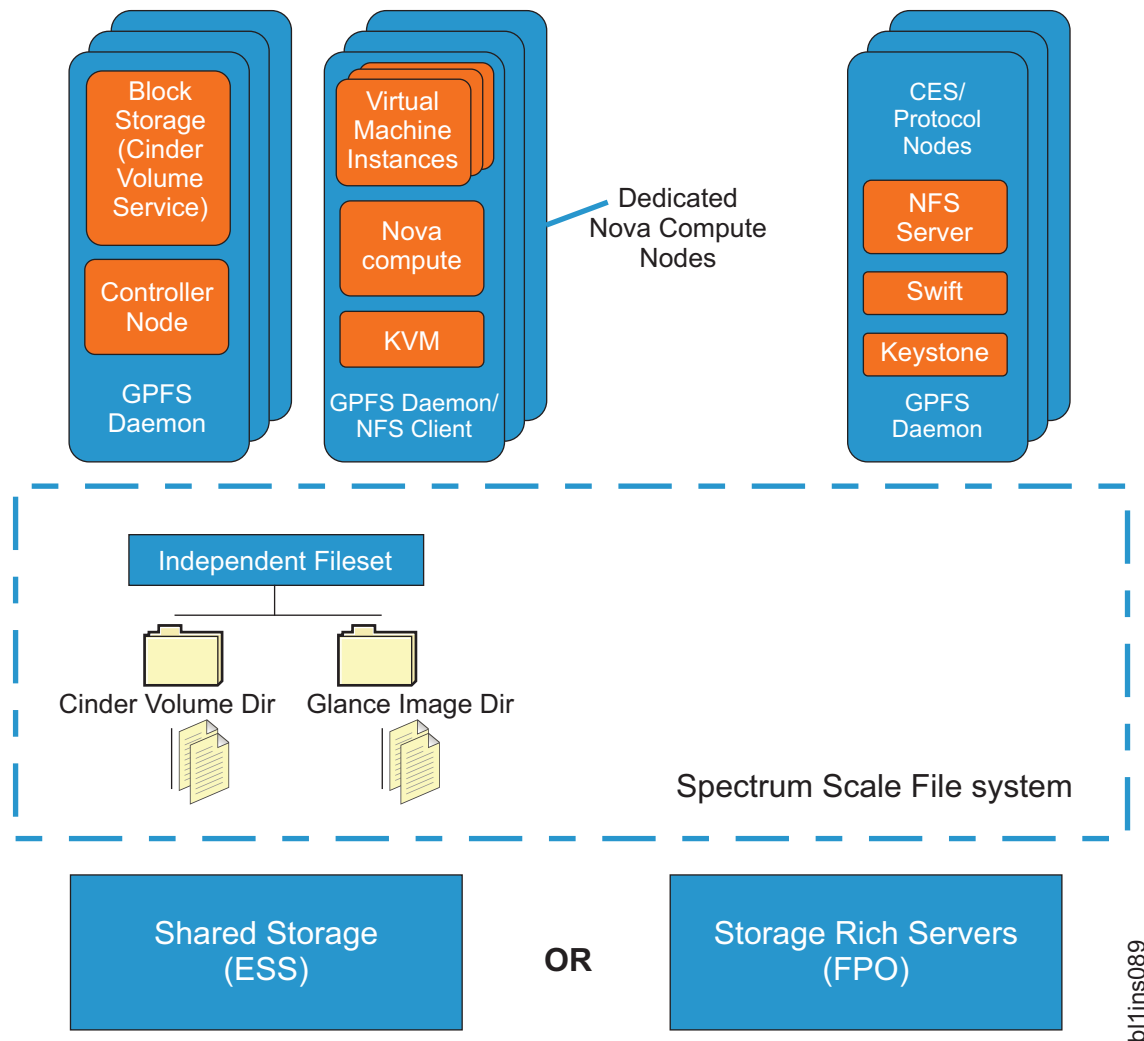
OpenStack is a cloud operating system that controls large pools of compute, storage, and networking resources throughout a datacenter. Using IBM Spectrum Scale in an OpenStack cloud environment offers many benefits, including the enterprise features of IBM Spectrum Scale and consolidated storage options.

### An introduction to OpenStack

OpenStack is an open source software platform that is widely used as the base to build cloud infrastructure as a service solution. OpenStack is typically deployed on commodity hardware and is used to virtualize various parts of the infrastructure (compute, storage, and network) to ease the sharing of the infrastructure across applications, use cases and workloads.

### Using IBM Spectrum Scale in an OpenStack cloud deployment

Deploying OpenStack over IBM Spectrum Scale offers benefits provided by the many enterprise features in IBM Spectrum Scale as well as the ability to consolidate storage for various OpenStack components and applications running on top of the OpenStack infrastructure under a single storage management plane. One key benefit of IBM Spectrum Scale is that it provides uniform access to data under a single namespace with integrated analytics.



## OpenStack components

- **Cinder:** Provides virtualized block storage for virtual machines. The IBM Spectrum Scale Cinder driver, also known as the GPFS driver, is written to take full advantage of the IBM Spectrum Scale enterprise features.
- **Glance:** Provides the capability to manage virtual machine images. When Glance is configured to use the same IBM Spectrum Scale fileset that stores Cinder volumes, bootable images can be created almost instantly by using the copy-on-write file clone capability.
- **Swift:** Provides object storage to any user or application that requires access to data through a RESTful API. The Swift object storage configuration has been optimized for the IBM Spectrum Scale environment, providing high availability and simplified management. Swift object storage also supports native the Swift APIs and Amazon S3 APIs for accessing data. Finally, the Swift object storage also supports access to the same data through either object interface or file interface (POSIX, NFS, SMB) without creating a copy.
- **Manila:** Provides a shared file system access to client, virtual, and physical systems. The IBM Spectrum Scale share driver (GPFS driver) is written to take full advantage of the IBM Spectrum Scale enterprise features.
- **Keystone:** Although not a storage component, internal keystone with in-built HA is provided by IBM Spectrum Scale as part of the Object protocol. In deployments that already have keystone support, the Object protocol can be configured to use the external keystone server rather than the internal one.

The following table lists the available features that IBM Spectrum Scale supports for deploying the OpenStack cloud storage:

*Table 19. Features that IBM Spectrum Scale supports for deploying the OpenStack cloud storage*

Feature	Support	Feature	Support
<b>Volume and Image Management (Cinder and Glance)</b>			
Volume Creation and Deletion	Deprecated	Volume Snapshot management	Yes
Volume Creation from Snapshot	Deprecated	Extend volumes	Yes
Copy Image to Volume and Copy Volume to Image	Deprecated	Instantaneous Boot Volume Create From Glance Repo	Yes
Live migration of instances	Deprecated	Backup of volumes	Yes
Data sharing between instances (with file system support)	Deprecated	Quality of service using multi-tier storage (with Flash support)	Yes
Encryption of volumes	Deprecated	Tiering of volumes	Yes
Compression of volumes	Deprecated	Volume Attach and Detach to a VM instance	Yes
<b>Identity Management (Keystone)</b>			
Integrated High Availability across the IBM Spectrum Scale protocol nodes	Yes	Easy configuration, management, and monitoring	Yes
AD and LDAP Support	Yes	External keystone support	Yes
<b>Object store features (Swift)</b>			
Unified file and object support	Yes	In-place analytics with Hadoop compatibility	Yes
High performance and High Availability	Yes	Object compression	Yes
Object encryption	Yes	Multi-region support	Yes
WAN caching with Active File Management (AFM)	Yes	Policy based information life cycle management	Yes
Easy install, configuration, and management	Yes	Integrated monitoring	Yes
Swift and S3 API Support	Yes	Large object support (5 TB)	Yes
Support for OpenStack Swift object store features	Yes		
<b>Manila</b>			
Support for NFS	Deprecated	Support for SMB (CIFS)	No

| **Note:** These features are not supported for OpenStack Rocky:

- | • Manila
- | • Volume and Image Management (Cinder and Glance)

For more information on OpenStack, see the OpenStack Redpaper.

---

## IBM Spectrum Scale product editions

IBM Spectrum Scale offers different editions based on functional levels.

**Note:** All nodes in a cluster must have the same edition installed.

### IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition

Available on AIX, Linux, and Windows. This edition provides base GPFS functions. On AIX and Linux, the available features include Information Lifecycle Management (ILM), Active File Management (AFM), and Clustered NFS (CNFS). CNFS is not available on Linux on Z. On Windows, the available features include limited Information Lifecycle Management (ILM).

On Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x and 8.0, SLES 12, and Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS, the available features include the ability to enable and use the additional protocol functionality integration (NFS, SMB, and object). On Red Hat Enterprise Linux 8.0 and SLES 12, the object protocol functionality is not supported. For information about the features available in respective IBM Spectrum Scale editions, see Table 20 on page 143.

### IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition

This edition provides identical functionality as IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition under capacity-based licensing. For more information, see “Capacity-based licensing” on page 146.

### IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition

Available on AIX and Linux. This edition provides all the features of the Standard Edition and certain additional features. For information about the features available in respective IBM Spectrum Scale editions, see Table 20 on page 143.

### IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition

This edition provides identical functionality as IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition under capacity-based licensing. For more information, see “Capacity-based licensing” on page 146.

### | IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition

| This edition provides identical functionality to IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition  
| plus support for storage rich servers. IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition provides  
| network-dispersed erasure coding, distributing data and metadata across the internal disks of a  
| cluster of servers. This allows IBM Spectrum Scale to use internal disks as reliable storage with  
| low overhead and high performance.

IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition and IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition can be licensed by IBM Spectrum Scale Client license, IBM Spectrum Scale Server license, and IBM Spectrum Scale FPO license. For more information, see “IBM Spectrum Scale license designation” on page 143.

IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition licenses can only be purchased by existing licensees of Standard Edition. IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition licenses can only be purchased by existing licensees of Advanced Edition. All others must purchase Data Access Edition, Data Management Edition, or Erasure Code Edition.

**Attention:** Starting with release 4.2.3, IBM Spectrum Scale Express Edition is no longer available. For information on upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale Express Edition 4.2.2.x or earlier to IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition 4.2.3.x or later, see “Changing Express Edition to Standard Edition” on page 463.

Table 20 on page 143 lists the availability of key features in the IBM Spectrum Scale editions.

Table 20. Features in IBM Spectrum Scale editions

Feature	Data Access	Data Management	Erasure Code Edition
<b>Multi-protocol scalable file service</b> with simultaneous access to a common set of data	✓	✓	✓
<b>Facilitate data access</b> with a global namespace, massively scalable file system, quotas and snapshots, data integrity and availability, and filesets	✓	✓	✓
<b>Simplify management</b> with GUI	✓	✓	✓
<b>Improved efficiency</b> with QoS and compression	✓	✓	✓
<b>Create optimized tiered storage pools</b> based on performance, locality, or cost	✓	✓	✓
<b>Simplify data management</b> with Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) tools that include policy based data placement and migration	✓	✓	✓
<b>Enable worldwide data access</b> using AFM asynchronous replication	✓	✓	✓
<b>Asynchronous multi-site Disaster Recovery</b>		✓	✓
<b>Hybrid cloud (TCT)</b>		✓	✓
<b>Protect data</b> with native software encryption and secure erase, NIST compliant and FIPS certified		✓	✓
<b>File audit logging</b>		✓	✓
<b>Watch folder</b>		✓	✓
<b>Erasure coding</b>	ESS only	ESS only	✓

Consult the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)) for the latest features included in each edition.

## IBM Spectrum Scale license designation

According to the IBM Spectrum Scale Licensing Agreement, each server licensed with IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition in the cluster must be designated as possessing an IBM Spectrum Scale Client license, an IBM Spectrum Scale File Placement Optimizer (FPO) license, or an IBM Spectrum Scale Server license.

There are three basic storage cluster models: storage area network (SAN), network shared disk (NSD), and shared nothing. IBM Spectrum Scale supports all three of them. For SAN and NSD clusters, a number of Server licenses are required in addition to Client licenses. For shared nothing clusters of storage rich servers, FPO licenses are required on each of those servers.

The type of license that is associated with any one server depends on the functional roles that the server has been designated to perform.

**IBM Spectrum Scale Client license**

The IBM Spectrum Scale Client license permits exchange of data between servers that locally mount the same IBM Spectrum Scale file system. No other export of the data is permitted.

**IBM Spectrum Scale Server license**

The IBM Spectrum Scale Server license permits the licensed server to perform management functions such as cluster configuration manager, quorum node, manager node, and Network Shared Disk (NSD) server. In addition, the IBM Spectrum Scale Server license permits the licensed server to share IBM Spectrum Scale data directly through any application, service protocol or method such as Network File System (NFS), Server Message Block (SMB), File Transfer Protocol (FTP), Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP), Object Protocol (OpenStack Swift, Amazon S3 API). Therefore, protocol nodes also require an IBM Spectrum Scale Server license.

**IBM Spectrum Scale FPO license**

The IBM Spectrum Scale FPO license permits the licensed server to perform NSD server functions for sharing IBM Spectrum Scale data with other server that have an IBM Spectrum Scale FPO or an IBM Spectrum Scale Server license.

The full text of the Licensing Agreement is provided with the installation media and can be found at the IBM Software license agreements website ([www.ibm.com/software/sla/sladb.nsf](http://www.ibm.com/software/sla/sladb.nsf)).

Use the guidance in Figure 22 on page 145 to decide which IBM Spectrum Scale license to buy for your requirements.

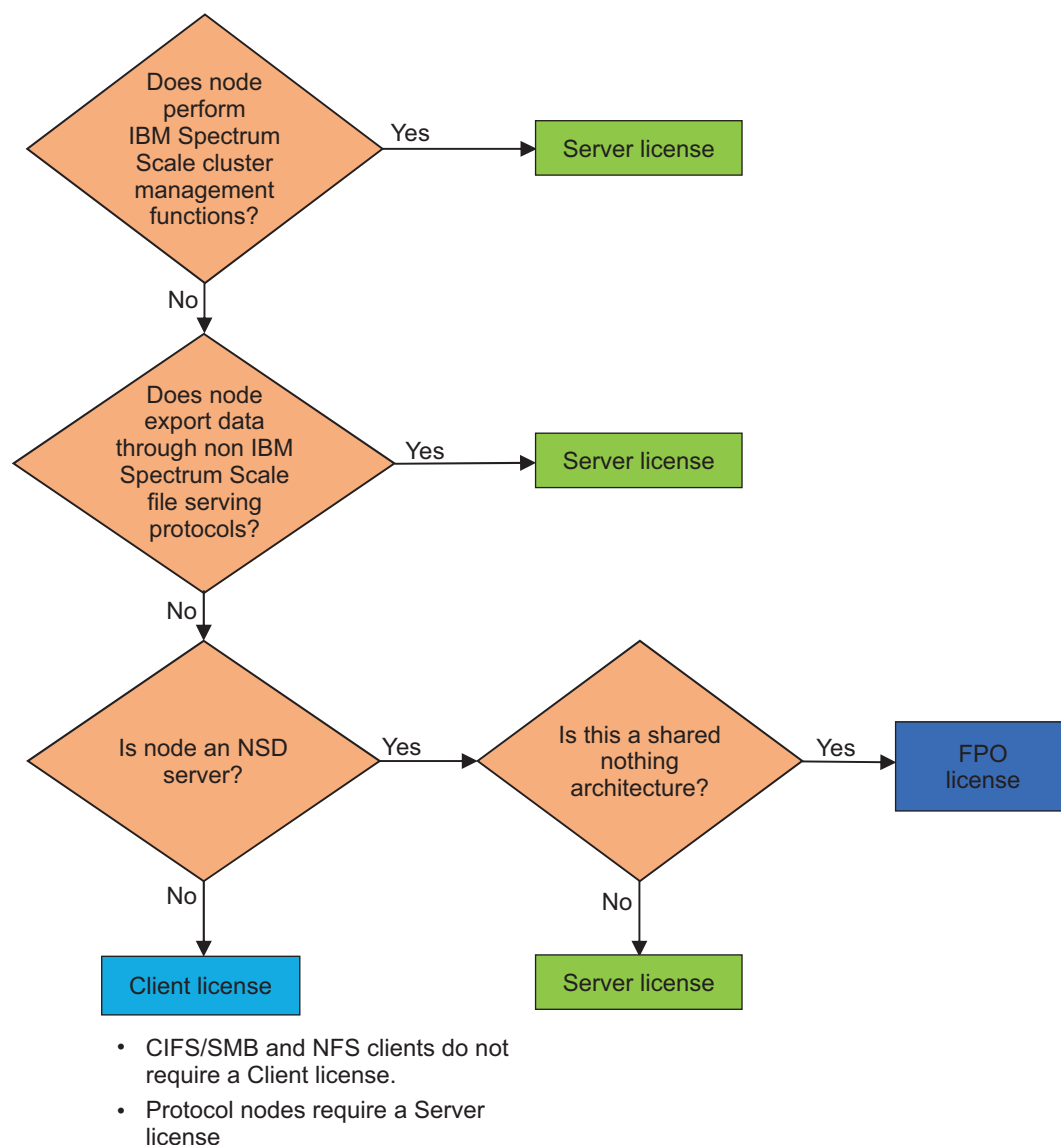


Figure 22. Guidance on which license to buy

These licenses are all valid for use in IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition and IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition. For more information, see “IBM Spectrum Scale product editions” on page 142.

With IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition, IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition, and IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition, you must use capacity-based licensing. For more information, see “Capacity-based licensing” on page 146.

- You can view the number and type of licenses currently in effect for the cluster using the **mmfslslicense** command.
- If needed, you can change the type of license assigned to a node using the **mmchlicense** command.

For more information, see **mmfslslicense command** and **mmchlicense command** in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

The following are IBM Spectrum Scale licensing considerations including considerations for using IBM Spectrum Scale with other offerings.

### **AFM-based Async Disaster Recovery (AFM DR) with multicluster**

When using AFM-based Async Disaster Recovery (AFM DR) in a multicluster environment, both the home and the cache cluster require the IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition.

### **Encryption**

The encryption function available in IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition requires a separate IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager (ISKLM) license.

### **Encryption with multicluster**

When using the IBM Spectrum Scale encryption function in a multicluster environment, each server in an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster requiring access to another cluster's encrypted file system must be licensed with IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition (Client, Server, or FPO as appropriate) or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition.

### **Hadoop access**

The IBM Spectrum Scale Hadoop connector can be used with all license types (Client, Server, FPO) and all Editions (Standard, Advanced, and Data Management). There is no additional license requirement for Hadoop access. A Hadoop node using the connector needs no IBM Spectrum Scale license. The Hadoop node can connect to a node in the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster, which is licensed as Server because it is exporting data, and access the file system directly using the Hadoop connector.

### **IBM Spectrum Scale with IBM Spectrum Protect**

When using IBM Spectrum Scale with IBM Spectrum Protect for backup and restore, each IBM Spectrum Scale node performing data movement requires an IBM Spectrum Protect license.

### **IBM Spectrum Scale with IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management**

When using IBM Spectrum Scale with IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management for migration and recall, each IBM Spectrum Scale node performing data movement requires an IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management license.

### **IBM Spectrum Scale with IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE)**

In addition to an IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) license, a server in the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster which is being used for IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) requires IBM Spectrum Scale to be installed with the correct license (ordered separately). The IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) server requires an IBM Spectrum Scale Server license, if the IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) server is also being used for any of the functions requiring an IBM Spectrum Scale Server license such as NSD server, quorum, management, etc. Otherwise, the IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) server can be licensed with an IBM Spectrum Scale Client license. The IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) server's function of moving data from the file system to a tape drive is not considered as a type of data export that requires an IBM Spectrum Scale Server license.

### **Virtualization licensing**

In an IBM Spectrum Scale environment containing VMs or LPARs, licenses are required for the sockets available to the IBM Spectrum Scale VMs or LPARs on a physical server. The number of licenses required is the number of cores available to IBM Spectrum Scale. For more information, see *Virtualization questions* in IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ on IBM Knowledge Center.

---

## **Capacity-based licensing**

You can use capacity-based licensing to license IBM Spectrum Scale based on the storage capacity being managed in an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.



The storage capacity to be licensed is the capacity in terabytes (TiB) from all NSDs in the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster. The capacity to be licensed is not affected by using functions such as replication or compression or by doing tasks such as creating or deleting files, file systems, or snapshots.

For example, if you have 100 TiB of capacity from all NSDs in the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster and if you have set the replication factor to 2, for 50 TiB of application data, 100 TiB of disk capacity is consumed. In this case, the capacity to be licensed is 100 TiB, not 50 TiB.

The capacity to be licensed changes only when an NSD is added or deleted from the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

You can view the cluster capacity for licensing by using one of the following methods:

- Select the **About** option from the menu that is available in the upper right corner of the IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI.
- Issue the `mmfslslicense --capacity` command.

Capacity-based licensing can be used only with IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition, IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition, and IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition. The Data Access Edition provides identical functionality as the Standard Edition. The Data Management Edition provides identical functionality as the Advanced Edition. The Erasure Code Edition provides identical functionality as the Data Management Edition plus support for storage rich servers.

Capacity-based licensing can also be used to license an Elastic Storage Server (ESS) system. For ESS, the capacity to be licensed is the capacity after applying IBM Spectrum Scale RAID. The exact capacity to be licensed depends on the RAID code selected, 8+2p or 8+3p.

---

## IBM Spectrum Storage Suite

IBM Spectrum Scale is a part of IBM Spectrum Storage Suite.

IBM Spectrum Storage Suite gives you unlimited access to the IBM Software Defined Storage product portfolio with licensing on a flat, cost-per-TB basis to make pricing easy to understand and predictable as capacity grows.

Licenses are calculated on the amount of storage capacity you are managing, not the number of software products you are using.

For more information, see IBM Spectrum Storage Suite website.



---

## Chapter 2. Planning for IBM Spectrum Scale

---

### Planning for GPFS

Although you can modify your GPFS configuration after it has been set, a little consideration before installation and initial setup will reward you with a more efficient and immediately useful file system.

During configuration, GPFS requires you to specify several operational parameters that reflect your hardware resources and operating environment. During file system creation, you can specify parameters that are based on the expected size of the files or you can let the default values take effect.

The installation toolkit is also available to assist with GPFS installation on Linux nodes. For more information, see “Overview of the installation toolkit” on page 283

Planning for GPFS includes:

- “Hardware requirements”
- “Software requirements” on page 150
- “IBM Spectrum Scale product editions” on page 142
- “Recoverability considerations” on page 151
- “GPFS cluster creation considerations” on page 158
- “IBM Spectrum Scale license designation” on page 143
- “Disk considerations” on page 162
- “File system creation considerations” on page 167

### Hardware requirements

You can validate that your hardware meets GPFS requirements by taking the steps outlined in this topic.

1. Consult the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)) for the latest list of:
  - Supported server hardware
  - Tested disk configurations
  - Maximum cluster size
  - Additional hardware requirements for protocols
2. Provide enough disks to contain the file system. Disks can be:
  - SAN-attached to each node in the cluster
  - Attached to one or more NSD servers
  - A mixture of directly-attached disks and disks that are attached to NSD servers

For additional information, see “Network Shared Disk (NSD) creation considerations” on page 164.

3. When doing network-based NSD I/O, GPFS passes a large amount of data between its daemons. For NSD server-to-client traffic, it is suggested that you configure a dedicated high-speed network solely for GPFS communications when the following are true:
  - There are NSD disks configured with servers providing remote disk capability.
  - Multiple GPFS clusters are sharing data using NSD network I/O.

For additional information, see “Disk considerations” on page 162.

GPFS communications require static IP addresses for each GPFS node. IP address takeover operations that transfer the address to another computer are not allowed for the GPFS network. Other IP addresses within the same computer that are not used by GPFS can participate in IP takeover. To provide

availability or additional performance, GPFS can use virtual IP addresses created by aggregating several network adapters using techniques such as EtherChannel or channel bonding.

Cluster Export Services (CES) have dedicated network addresses to support SMB, NFS, Object, and failover or failback operations. File and Object clients use the public IPs to access data on GPFS™ file systems.

For additional information, see *CES network configuration* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Software requirements

GPFS planning includes understanding the latest software requirements.

**Note:** This topic lists the additional software requirements to use specific functions after successful installation. It does not list the dependencies for installing IBM Spectrum Scale packages.

- GPFS is supported on AIX, Linux, and Windows.
- For existing GPFS 3.5 clusters, OpenSSL is required for remote cluster access.
- Kernel development files and compiler utilities are required to build the GPFS portability layer on Linux nodes. The required RPMs or packages for each supported Linux distribution are:
  - **SLES Linux RPMs**
    - kernel-default-devel
    - cpp
    - gcc
    - gcc-c++
    - binutils
  - **Red Hat Linux RPMs**
    - kernel-devel
    - cpp
    - gcc
    - gcc-c++
    - binutils
  - **Ubuntu Linux packages**
    - linux-headers
    - cpp
    - gcc
    - g++
    - binutils
- To use active file management (AFM), the following is required:
  - nfs-utils
- To use CNFS, the following are required:
  - ethtool
  - nfs-utils (on Ubuntu: nfs-common)
  - rpcbind
  - psmisc
  - iputils (on Ubuntu: iputils-arping)
- To use the `mmchconfig numaMemoryInterleave` parameter, the following is required:
  - numactl
- To use the `mmhealth` command on Ubuntu Linux, the following is required:
  - sqlite3
- For the IBM Spectrum Scale monitoring service on AIX and Linux, the following is required:

python 2.7 or later

**Note:** python 2.7.5 or later is recommended on AIX. This package is a part of AIX Toolbox for Linux Applications. However, python 3.0 is not supported for Linux or AIX.

- To use the performance monitoring tool, the following packages are required:
  - boost-regex on Red Hat Enterprise Linux
  - libboost\_regex on SLES
  - libboost-regex-dev on Ubuntu Linux

**Important:** Ensure that these packages are installed on the system before the installation of the performance monitoring tool.

For a list of installation prerequisites including those specific to protocols, see “Installation prerequisites” on page 246.

Consult the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)) for the latest list of:

- AIX environments
- Linux distributions
- Linux kernel versions
- Windows environments

## Recoverability considerations

Good file system planning requires several decisions about recoverability. After you make these decisions, GPFS parameters enable you to create a highly-available file system with rapid recovery from failures.

- At the disk level, consider preparing disks for use with your file system by specifying failure groups that are associated with each disk. With this configuration, information is not vulnerable to a single point of failure. See “Network Shared Disk (NSD) creation considerations” on page 164.
- At the file system level, consider replication through the metadata and data replication parameters. See “File system replication parameters” on page 177.

Additionally, GPFS provides several layers of protection against failures of various types:

1. “Node failure”
2. “Network Shared Disk server and disk failure” on page 155
3. “Reduced recovery time by using Persistent Reserve” on page 157

### Node failure

If a node fails, GPFS prevents the continuation of I/O from the failing node and replays the file system metadata log for the failed node.

GPFS prevents the continuation of I/O from a failing node through a GPFS-specific fencing mechanism called *disk leasing*. When a node has access to file systems, it obtains disk leases that allow it to submit I/O. However, when a node fails, that node cannot obtain or renew a disk lease. When GPFS selects another node to perform recovery for the failing node, it first waits until the disk lease for the failing node expires. This allows for the completion of previously submitted I/O and provides for a consistent file system metadata log. Waiting for the disk lease to expire also avoids data corruption in the subsequent recovery step.

To reduce the amount of time it takes for disk leases to expire, you can use Persistent Reserve (SCSI-3 protocol). If Persistent Reserve (configuration parameter: **usePersistentReserve**) is enabled, GPFS prevents the continuation of I/O from a failing node by fencing the failed node that uses a feature of the disk subsystem called Persistent Reserve. Persistent Reserve allows the failing node to recover faster because

GPFS does not need to wait for the disk lease on the failing node to expire. For additional information, refer to “Reduced recovery time by using Persistent Reserve” on page 157. For further information about recovery from node failure, see *Installation and configuration issues* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

There is a temporary impact to I/O during file system recovery from node failure. Recovery involves rebuilding metadata structures that might be under modification at the time of the failure. If the failing node is acting as the file system manager when it fails, the delay is longer and proportional to the level of activity on the file system at the time of failure. In this case, the failover file system management task happens automatically to a surviving node.

Managing node failures also involves sizing the solution adequately so that remaining nodes in the cluster can support a node down situation such as a planned system maintenance or an unplanned node failure in terms of bandwidth and throughput. For protocols, this includes supporting SMB, NFS, or Object connections that have to fail over to another CES node in the cluster if a node fails.

### **Quorum:**

GPFS uses a cluster mechanism called quorum to maintain data consistency in the event of a node failure.

Quorum operates on the principle of majority rule. This means that a majority of the nodes in the cluster must be successfully communicating before any node can mount and access a file system. This keeps any nodes that are cut off from the cluster (for example, by a network failure) from writing data to the file system.

During node failure situations, quorum needs to be maintained in order for the cluster to remain online. If quorum is not maintained due to node failure, GPFS unmounts local file systems on the remaining nodes and attempts to reestablish quorum, at which point file system recovery occurs. For this reason it is important that the set of quorum nodes be carefully considered (refer to “Selecting quorum nodes” on page 155 for additional information).

GPFS quorum must be maintained within the cluster for GPFS to remain active. If the quorum semantics are broken, GPFS performs recovery in an attempt to achieve quorum again. GPFS can use one of two methods for determining quorum:

- Node quorum
- Node quorum with tiebreaker disks

#### *Node quorum:*

Node quorum is the default quorum algorithm for GPFS.

With node quorum:

- Quorum is defined as one plus half of the *explicitly defined* quorum nodes in the GPFS cluster.
- There are no default quorum nodes; you must specify which nodes have this role.

For example, in Figure 23 on page 153, there are three quorum nodes. In this configuration, GPFS remains active as long as there are two quorum nodes available.

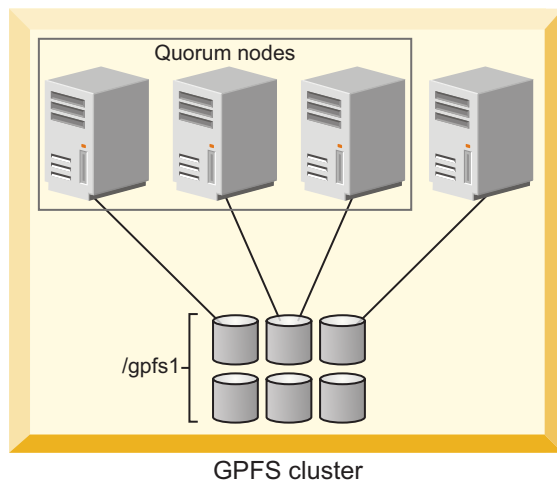


Figure 23. GPFS configuration using node quorum

#### Node quorum with tiebreaker disks:

When running on small GPFS clusters, you might want to have the cluster remain online with only one surviving node.

To achieve this, you need to add a tiebreaker disk to the quorum configuration. Node quorum with tiebreaker disks allows you to run with as little as one quorum node available as long as you have access to a majority of the quorum disks (refer to Figure 24 on page 154). Enabling node quorum with tiebreaker disks starts by designating one or more nodes as quorum nodes. Then one to three disks are defined as tiebreaker disks using the **tiebreakerDisks** parameter on the **mmchconfig** command. You can designate any disk to be a tiebreaker.

When utilizing node quorum with tiebreaker disks, there are specific rules for cluster nodes and for tiebreaker disks.

#### Cluster node rules:

1. There is a maximum of eight quorum nodes.
2. All quorum nodes need to have access to all of the tiebreaker disks.
3. When using the traditional server-based (non-CCR) configuration repository, you should include the primary and secondary cluster configuration servers as quorum nodes.
4. You may have an unlimited number of non-quorum nodes.
5. If a network connection fails, which causes the loss of quorum, and quorum is maintained by tiebreaker disks, the following rationale is used to re-establish quorum. If a group has the cluster manager, it is the “survivor”. The cluster manager can give up its role if it communicates with fewer than the minimum number of quorum nodes as defined by the **minQuorumNodes** configuration parameter. In this case, other groups with the minimum number of quorum nodes (if they exist) can choose a new cluster manager.

#### Changing quorum semantics:

When using the cluster configuration repository (CCR) to store configuration files, the total number of quorum nodes is limited to eight, regardless of quorum semantics, but the use of tiebreaker disks can be enabled or disabled at any time by issuing an **mmchconfig tiebreakerDisks** command. The change will take effect immediately, and it is not necessary to shut down GPFS when making this change.

When using the traditional server-based (non-CCR) configuration repository, it is possible to define more than eight quorum nodes, but only when no tiebreaker disks are defined:

1. To configure more than eight quorum nodes under the server-based (non-CCR) configuration repository, you must disable node quorum with tiebreaker disks and restart the GPFS daemon. To disable node quorum with tiebreaker disks:
  - a. Issue the **mmshutdown -a** command to shut down GPFS on all nodes.
  - b. Change quorum semantics by issuing **mmchconfig tiebreakerdisks=no**.
  - c. Add additional quorum nodes.
  - d. Issue the **mmstartup -a** command to restart GPFS on all nodes.
2. If you remove quorum nodes and the new configuration has less than eight quorum nodes, you can change the configuration to node quorum with tiebreaker disks. To enable quorum with tiebreaker disks:
  - a. Issue the **mmshutdown -a** command to shut down GPFS on all nodes.
  - b. Delete the appropriate quorum nodes or run **mmchnode --nonquorum** to drop them to a client.
  - c. Change quorum semantics by issuing the **mmchconfig tiebreakerdisks="diskList"** command.
    - The *diskList* contains the names of the tiebreaker disks.
    - The list contains the NSD names of the disks, preferably one or three disks, separated by a semicolon (;) and enclosed by quotes.
  - d. Issue the **mmstartup -a** command to restart GPFS on all nodes.

#### Tiebreaker disk rules:

- You can have one, two, or three tiebreaker disks. However, you should use an odd number of tiebreaker disks.
- Among the quorum node groups that appear after an interconnect failure, only those having access to a majority of tiebreaker disks can be candidates to be the survivor group.
- Tiebreaker disks must be connected to all quorum nodes.
- In a CCR-based cluster, when adding tiebreaker disks:
  - GPFS should be up and running, if tiebreaker disks are part of the file system.
  - GPFS can be either running or shut down, if tiebreaker disks are not a part of the file system.

In Figure 24 GPFS remains active with the minimum of a single available quorum node and two available tiebreaker disks.

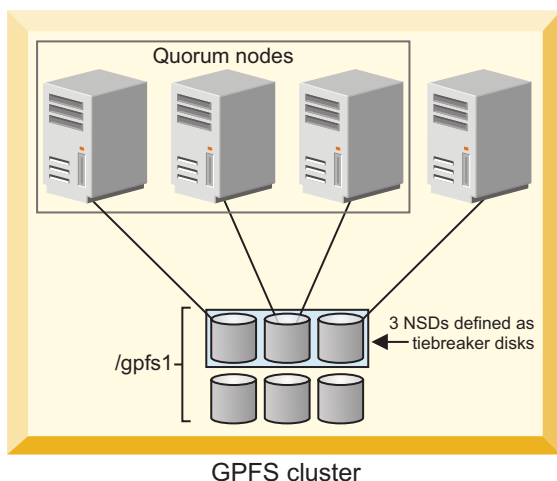


Figure 24. GPFS configuration using node quorum with tiebreaker disks



When a quorum node detects loss of network connectivity, but before GPFS runs the algorithm that decides if the node will remain in the cluster, the **tiebreakerCheck** event is triggered. This event is generated only in configurations that use quorum nodes with tiebreaker disks. It is also triggered on the cluster manager periodically by a challenge-response thread to verify that the node can still continue as cluster manager.

### Selecting quorum nodes:

To configure a system with efficient quorum nodes, follow these rules.

- Select nodes that are likely to remain active
  - If a node is likely to be rebooted or require maintenance, do not select that node as a quorum node.
- Select nodes that have different failure points such as:
  - Nodes that are located in different racks
  - Nodes that are connected to different power panels
- You should select nodes that GPFS administrative and serving functions rely on such as:
  - Primary configuration servers
  - Secondary configuration servers
  - Network Shared Disk (NSD) servers
- Select an odd number of nodes as quorum nodes
  - The suggested maximum is eight quorum nodes.
- Having a large number of quorum nodes might increase the time required for startup and failure recovery.
  - Having more than seven quorum nodes does not guarantee higher availability.
  - All quorum nodes must have access to all of the tiebreaker disks.

### Network Shared Disk server and disk failure

The three most common reasons why data becomes unavailable are disk failure, disk server failure with no redundancy, and failure of a path to the disk.

In the event of a disk failure in which GPFS can no longer read or write to the disk, GPFS will discontinue use of the disk until it returns to an available state. You can guard against loss of data availability from disk failure by:

- Utilizing hardware data protection as provided by a Redundant Array of Independent Disks (RAID) device (see Figure 25)

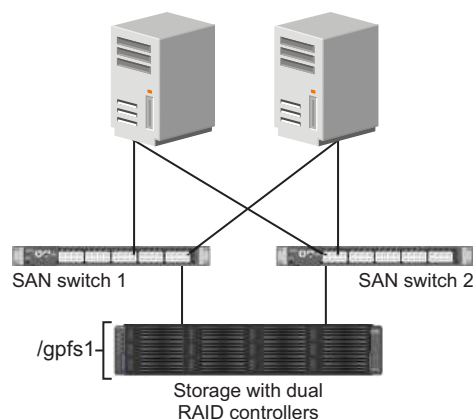


Figure 25. An example of a highly available SAN configuration for a GPFS file system

- Utilizing the GPFS data and metadata replication features (see “Increased data availability” on page 2) along with the designation of failure groups (see “Network Shared Disk (NSD) creation considerations” on page 164 and Figure 26)

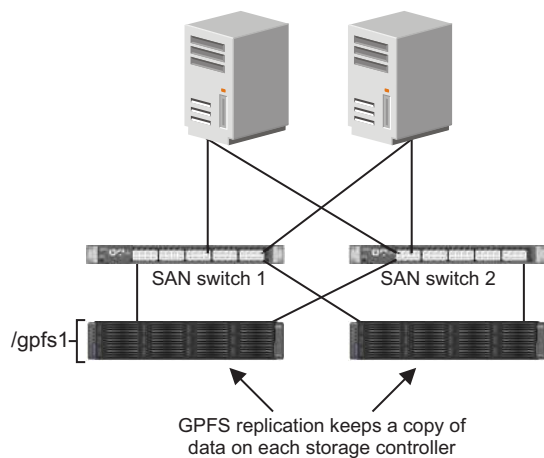


Figure 26. Configuration using GPFS replication for improved availability

It is suggested that you consider RAID as the first level of redundancy for your data and add GPFS replication if you desire additional protection.

In the event of an NSD server failure in which a GPFS client can no longer contact the node that provides remote access to a disk, GPFS discontinues the use of the disk. You can guard against loss of an NSD server availability by using common disk connectivity on multiple NSD server nodes and specifying multiple Network Shared Disk servers for each common disk.

**Note:** In the event that a path to a disk fails, GPFS reports a disk failure and marks the disk **down**. To bring the disk back online, first follow the directions supplied by your storage vendor to determine and repair the failure.

## Guarding against loss of data availability due to path failure

You can guard against loss of data availability from failure of a path to a disk by doing the following:

- Creating multiple NSD servers for each disk

As GPFS determines the available connections to disks in the file system, it is recommended that you always define more than one NSD server for each disk. GPFS allows you to define up to eight NSD servers for each NSD. In a SAN configuration where NSD servers have also been defined, if the physical connection is broken, GPFS dynamically switches to the next available NSD server (as defined on the server list) and continues to provide data. When GPFS discovers that the path has been repaired, it moves back to local disk access. This is the default behavior, which can be changed by designating file system mount options. For example, if you never want a node to use the NSD server path to a disk, even if the local path fails, you can set the **-o useNSDserver** mount option to **never**. You can set the mount option using the **mmchfs**, **mmmout**, **mmremotefs**, and **mount** commands.

**Important:** In Linux on Z, it is mandatory to have multiple paths to one SCSI disk (LUN) to avoid single path of failure. The coalescing of the paths to one disk is done by the kernel (via the device-mapper component). As soon as the paths are coalesced, a new logical, multipathed device is created, which is used for any further (administration) task. (The single paths can no longer be used.)

The multipath device interface name depends on the distribution and is configurable:

**SUSE** `/dev/mapper/Unique_WW_Identifier`

For example: `/dev/mapper/36005076303ffc562000000000000010cc`

### Red Hat

`/dev/mapper/mpath*`

To obtain information about a multipathed device, use the `multipath` tool as shown in the following example:

```
# multipath -ll
```

The system displays output similar to this:

```
36005076303ffc562000000000000010cc dm-0 IBM,2107900
[size=5.0G][features=1 queue_if_no_path][hwhandler=0]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=2][active]
  \_ 1:0:0:0 sdb 8:16 [active][ready]
  \_ 0:0:0:0 sda 8:0 [active][ready]
```

See the question, “What considerations are there when setting up DM-MP multipath service” in the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

- Using an I/O driver that provides multiple paths to the disks for failover purposes  
Failover is a path-management algorithm that improves the reliability and availability of a device because the system automatically detects when one I/O path fails and reroutes I/O through an alternate path.

## Reduced recovery time by using Persistent Reserve

Persistent Reserve (PR) provides a mechanism for reducing recovery times from node failures.

To enable PR and to obtain recovery performance improvements, your cluster requires a specific environment:

- All disks must be PR-capable. For a list of devices supported with PR, see this question in IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).
- On AIX, all disks must be hdisks. Starting with 3.5.0.16, it is also possible to use a logical volume as a **descOnly** disk without disabling the use of Persistent Reserve. For more information, see the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

On Linux, typically all disks must be generic (`/dev/sd*`) or DM-MP (`/dev/dm-*`) disks.

However, for Linux on Z, multipath device names are required for SCSI disks, and the names depend on the distribution and are configurable. For more information, see “Guarding against loss of data availability due to path failure” on page 156.

- If the disks have NSD servers that are defined, all NSD server nodes must be running the same operating system (AIX or Linux).
- If the disks are SAN-attached to all nodes, all nodes in the cluster must be running the same operating system (AIX or Linux).

For quicker recovery times when you use PR, set the **failureDetectionTime** configuration parameter on the **mmchconfig** command. For example, for quick recovery a recommended value would be 10:

```
mmchconfig failureDetectionTime=10
```

You must explicitly enable PR by specifying the **usePersistentReserve** parameter on the **mmchconfig** command. If you set `usePersistentReserve=yes`, GPFS attempts to set up PR on all of the PR capable disks. All subsequent NSDs are created with PR enabled if they are PR capable. However, PR is only supported in the home cluster. Therefore, access to PR-enabled disks from another cluster must be through an NSD server that is in the home cluster and not directly to the disk (for example, through a SAN).

## GPFS cluster creation considerations

A GPFS cluster is created using the **mmcrcluster** command.

On supported Linux distributions, you can use the installation toolkit to create a GPFS cluster. For more information, see “Overview of the installation toolkit” on page 283.

Table 21 details the cluster creation options, how to change the options, and the default values for each option.

*Table 21. GPFS cluster creation options*

Options	Command to change the option	Default value
“Creating an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster” on page 159	<b>mmaddnode</b> <b>mmdelnode</b>	None
Node designation: <b>manager</b> or <b>client</b> . See “Creating an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster” on page 159.	<b>mmchnode</b>	<b>client</b>
Node designation: <b>quorum</b> or <b>nonquorum</b> . See “Creating an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster” on page 159.	<b>mmchnode</b>	<b>nonquorum</b>
“Remote shell command” on page 160	<b>mmchcluster</b>	<b>/usr/bin/ssh</b>
“Remote file copy command” on page 161	<b>mmchcluster</b>	<b>/usr/bin/scp</b>
“Cluster name” on page 161	<b>mmchcluster</b>	The node name of the primary GPFS cluster configuration server.
Cluster configuration information. See “IBM Spectrum Scale cluster configuration information” on page 160.	<b>mmchcluster</b>	The Cluster Configuration Repository (CCR) is enabled.
GPFS administration adapter port name. See “GPFS node adapter interface names”	<b>mmchnode</b>	Same as the GPFS communications adapter port name.
GPFS communications adapter port name. See “GPFS node adapter interface names.”	<b>mmchnode</b>	None
“User ID domain for the cluster” on page 162.	<b>mmchconfig</b>	The name of the GPFS cluster.
“Starting GPFS automatically” on page 162	<b>mmchconfig</b>	<b>no</b>
“Cluster configuration file” on page 162	Not applicable	None

## GPFS node adapter interface names

An adapter interface name refers to the hostname or IP address that GPFS uses to communicate with a node. Specifically, the hostname or IP address identifies the communications adapter over which the GPFS daemons or GPFS administration commands communicate.

The administrator can specify two node adapter interface names for each node in the cluster:

### GPFS node name

Specifies the name of the node adapter interface to be used by the GPFS daemons for internode communication.

### GPFS admin node name

Specifies the name of the node adapter interface to be used by GPFS administration commands when communicating between nodes. If not specified, the GPFS administration commands use the same node adapter interface used by the GPFS daemons.

These names can be specified by means of the node descriptors passed to the **mmaddnode** or **mmcrcluster** command and can later be changed with the **mmchnode** command.

If multiple adapters are available on a node, this information can be communicated to GPFS by means of the **subnets** parameter on the **mmchconfig** command.

## Creating an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster

When you create an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster, you can either create a small cluster of one or more nodes and later add nodes to it or you can create a cluster with all its nodes in one step.

Two methods are available for creating an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster:

- Run the **mmcrcluster** command to create a cluster that contains one or more nodes, and later run the **mmaddnode** command as needed to add nodes to the cluster. This method is more flexible and is appropriate when you want to build a cluster step by step.
- Run the **mmcrcluster** command to create a cluster and at the same time to add a set of nodes to the cluster. This method is quicker when you already know which nodes you want to add to the cluster.

Whichever method you choose, you can later add nodes to the cluster with the **mmaddnode** command or delete nodes with the **mmdelnode** command. For more information, see the topics *mmcrcluster command* and *mmaddnode command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference* guide.

With both commands, you specify node descriptors to identify the nodes that you are adding to the cluster. You can list node descriptors either on the command line or in a separate node descriptor file. A node descriptor has the following format:

*NodeName:NodeDesignations:AdminNodeName*

*NodeName* is a required parameter. *NodeDesignations* and *AdminNodeName* are optional parameters.

### *NodeName*

The host name or IP address of the node for GPFS daemon-to-daemon communication.

The host name or IP address that is used for a node must refer to the communication adapter over which the GPFS daemons communicate. Alias names are not allowed. You can specify an IP address at NSD creation, but it will be converted to a host name that must match the GPFS node name. You can specify a node using any of these forms:

- Short hostname (for example, h135n01)
- Long hostname (for example, h135n01.frf.ibm.com)
- IP address (for example, 7.111.12.102)

**Note:** Host names should always include at least one alpha character, and they should not start with a hyphen (-).

Whichever form you specify, the other two forms must be defined correctly in DNS or the hosts file.

### *NodeDesignations*

An optional, "-" separated list of node roles.

- **manager** | **client** – Indicates whether a node is part of the node pool from which file system managers and token managers can be selected. The default is **client**, which means do not include the node in the pool of manager nodes. For detailed information on the manager node functions, see "The file system manager" on page 10.

In general, it is a good idea to define more than one node as a manager node. How many nodes you designate as manager depends on the workload and the number of GPFS server licenses you have. If you are running large parallel jobs, you may need more manager nodes than in a four-node cluster supporting a Web application. As a guide, in a large system there should be a different file system manager node for each GPFS file system.

- **quorum** | **nonquorum** – This designation specifies whether or not the node should be included in the pool of nodes from which quorum is derived. The default is **nonquorum**. You need to designate at least one node as a quorum node. It is recommended that you designate at least the primary and secondary cluster configuration servers and NSD servers as quorum nodes.  
How many quorum nodes you designate depends upon whether you use node quorum or node quorum with tiebreaker disks. See “Quorum” on page 152.

#### *AdminNodeName*

Specifies an optional field that consists of a node name to be used by the administration commands to communicate between nodes.

If *AdminNodeName* is not specified, the *NodeName* value is used.

Follow these rules when you add nodes to a IBM Spectrum Scale cluster:

- While a node may mount file systems from multiple clusters, the node itself may only reside in a single cluster. Nodes are added to a cluster using the **mmcrcluster** or **mmaddnode** command.
- The nodes must be available when they are added to a cluster. If any of the nodes listed are not available when the command is issued, a message listing those nodes is displayed. You must correct the problem on each node and then issue the **mmaddnode** command to add those nodes.
- Designate at least one but not more than seven nodes as quorum nodes. When not using tiebreaker disks, you can designate more quorum nodes, but it is recommended to use fewer than eight if possible. When using server-based configuration repository, it is recommended that you designate the cluster configuration servers as quorum nodes. How many quorum nodes altogether you will have depends on whether you intend to use the node quorum with tiebreaker algorithm or the regular node based quorum algorithm. For more details, see “Quorum” on page 152.

## IBM Spectrum Scale cluster configuration information

You can use the Cluster Configuration Repository (CCR) to maintain cluster configuration information.

It is a good practice to use the Cluster Configuration Repository (CCR) to maintain the cluster configuration information. By default the **mmcrcluster** command enables the CCR. For more information, see the topics *mmcrcluster command* and *mmchcluster command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference* guide.

| **Attention:** The primary and secondary configuration server functionality that is described in the  
| following paragraphs is deprecated and will be removed in a future release. For more information, see  
| the notes in the topics *mmcrcluster command* and *mmchcluster command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command  
| and Programming Reference* guide.

If you do not use the Cluster Configuration Repository (CCR), you must designate one of the nodes in your IBM Spectrum Scale cluster as the primary cluster configuration server, to maintain configuration information. It is a good practice to also specify a secondary cluster configuration server. If your primary server fails and you do not have a secondary server, the cluster configuration data files are inaccessible, which results in the failure of any IBM Spectrum Scale administration commands that you enter. Note the following information:

- When the GPFS daemon starts up, at least one of the two GPFS cluster configuration servers must be accessible. See “Cluster configuration data files” on page 26.
- If the primary server fails, you can use the **mmchcluster** command with the **-p** option to designate another node as the primary cluster configuration server. Similarly, you can use the **mmchcluster** command with the **-s** option to define a secondary cluster configuration server.

## Remote shell command

GPFS commands need to be able to communicate across all nodes in the cluster. To achieve this, the GPFS commands use the remote shell command that you specify on the **mmcrcluster** command or the **mmchcluster** command.

The default remote shell command is **ssh**. You can designate the use of a different remote shell command by specifying its fully-qualified path name on the **mmcrcluster** command or the **mmchcluster** command. The remote shell command must adhere to the same syntax as **ssh**, but it can implement an alternate authentication mechanism.

Clusters that include both UNIX and Windows nodes must use **ssh** for the remote shell command. For more information, see “Installing and configuring OpenSSH on Windows nodes” on page 365.

Clusters that only include Windows nodes may use the **mmwinrsh** utility that comes with GPFS. The fully-qualified path name is **/usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mmwinrsh**. For more information about configuring Windows GPFS clusters, see **mmwinservctl** command in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

By default, you can issue GPFS administration commands from any node in the cluster. Optionally, you can choose a subset of the nodes that are capable of running administrative commands. In either case, the nodes that you plan to use for administering GPFS must be able to run remote shell commands on any other node in the cluster as user **root** without the use of a password and without producing any extraneous messages. You can also use sudo wrappers for this purpose.

For additional information, see *Requirements for administering a GPFS file system* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Remote file copy command

The GPFS commands must maintain a number of configuration files across all nodes in the cluster. To achieve this, the GPFS commands use the remote file copy command that you specify on the **mmcrcluster** command or the **mmchcluster** command.

The default remote file copy program is **scp**. You can designate the use of a different remote file copy command by specifying its fully-qualified path name on the **mmcrcluster** command or the **mmchcluster** command. The remote file copy command must adhere to the same syntax as **scp**, but it can implement an alternate authentication mechanism.

Clusters that include both UNIX and Windows nodes must use **scp** for the remote copy command. For more information, see “Installing and configuring OpenSSH on Windows nodes” on page 365.

The file copy command **rcp** cannot be used in a cluster that contains Windows Server nodes. However, clusters that include only Windows nodes may use the **mmwinrcp** utility that comes with GPFS. The fully-qualified path name is **/usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mmwinrcp**. For more information about configuring Windows GPFS clusters, see **mmwinservctl** command in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

The nodes that you plan to use for administering GPFS must be able to copy files using the remote file copy command to and from any other node in the cluster without the use of a password and without producing any extraneous messages.

For additional information, see *Requirements for administering a GPFS file system* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Cluster name

Provide a name for the cluster by issuing the **-C** option on the **mmcrcluster** command.

If the user-provided name contains dots, it is assumed to be a fully qualified domain name. Otherwise, to make the cluster name unique in a multiple cluster environment, GPFS appends the domain name of the primary cluster configuration server. If the **-C** option is not specified, the cluster name defaults to the hostname of the primary cluster configuration server. The name of the cluster may be changed at a later time by issuing the **-C** option on the **mmchcluster** command.

The cluster name is applicable when GPFS file systems are mounted by nodes belonging to other GPFS clusters. See the **mmauth** and the **mmremoteccluster** commands.

## User ID domain for the cluster

This option is the user ID domain for a cluster when accessing a file system remotely.

This option is further explained in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide* and the IBM white paper entitled *UID Mapping for GPFS in a Multi-cluster Environment* in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/SSFKN/com.ibm.cluster.gpfs.doc/gpfs\\_uid/uid\\_gpfs.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/SSFKN/com.ibm.cluster.gpfs.doc/gpfs_uid/uid_gpfs.html)).

## Starting GPFS automatically

You can specify whether to start the GPFS daemon automatically on a node when it is started.

Whether or not GPFS automatically starts is determined using the **autoload** parameter of the **mmchconfig** command. The default is *not* to automatically start GPFS on all nodes. You may change this by specifying **autoload=yes** using the **mmchconfig** command. This eliminates the need to start GPFS by issuing the **mmstartup** command when a node is booted.

The autoload parameter can be set the same or differently for each node in the cluster. For example, it may be useful to set **autoload=no** on a node that is undergoing maintenance since operating system upgrades and other software can often require multiple reboots to be completed.

## Cluster configuration file

GPFS provides default configuration values, so a cluster configuration file is not required to create a cluster.

You can provide an optional cluster configuration file at the time of cluster creation. This optional file can be useful if you already know the correct parameter values based on previous testing or if you are restoring a cluster and have a backup copy of configuration values that apply to most systems. Typically, however, this option is not used at cluster creation time, and configuration parameters are modified after the cluster is created (using the **mmchconfig** command).

For more information about the cluster configuration file, see the description of the **mmcrcluster -c ConfigFile** option in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## Disk considerations

Designing a proper storage infrastructure for your IBM Spectrum Scale file systems is key to achieving performance and reliability goals. When deciding what disk configuration to use, consider three key areas: infrastructure, performance, and disk access method.

### Infrastructure

- Ensure that you have sufficient disks to meet the expected I/O load. In IBM Spectrum Scale terminology, a disk may be a physical disk or a RAID device.
- Ensure that you have sufficient connectivity (adapters and buses) between disks and network shared disk servers.
- Determine whether you are within IBM Spectrum Scale limits. Starting with GPFS 3.1, the structural limit on the maximum number of disks in a file system increased from 2048 to 4096; however, IBM Spectrum Scale still enforces the original limit of 2048. Should your environment require support for more than 2048 disks, contact the IBM Support Center to discuss increasing the enforced limit. (However, the number of disks in your system is often constrained by products other than IBM Spectrum Scale.)
- For a list of storage devices tested with IBM Spectrum Scale, see the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).



- For Linux on Z, see the “Storage” topics “DASD device driver” and “SCSI-over-Fibre Channel device driver” in Device Drivers, Features, and Commands ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/api/content/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz\\_r\\_dd.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/api/content/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz_r_dd.html)) in the Linux on Z library overview.

## Disk access method

- Decide how your disks will be connected. Supported types of disk connectivity include the following configurations:
  1. All disks SAN-attached to all nodes in all clusters that access the file system  
In this configuration, every node sees the same disk simultaneously and has a corresponding disk device entry.
  2. Each disk connected to multiple NSD server nodes (up to eight servers), as specified on the server list  
In this configuration, a single node with connectivity to a disk performs data shipping to all other nodes. This node is the first NSD server specified on the NSD server list. You can define additional NSD servers on the server list. Having multiple NSD servers guards against the loss of a single NSD server. When using multiple NSD servers, all NSD servers must have connectivity to the same disks. In this configuration, all nodes that are not NSD servers will receive their data over the local area network from the first NSD server on the server list. If the first NSD server fails, the next available NSD server on the list will control data distribution.
  3. A combination of SAN-attached and an NSD server configuration.

### Configuration consideration:

- If the node has a physical attachment to the disk and that connection fails, the node switches to using a specified NSD server to perform I/O. For this reason, it is recommended that you define NSDs with multiple servers, even if all nodes have physical attachments to the disk.
- Configuring IBM Spectrum Scale disks without an NSD server stops the serving of data when the direct path to the disk is lost. This may be a preferable option for nodes requiring a higher speed data connection provided through a SAN as opposed to a lower speed network NSD server connection. Parallel jobs using MPI often have this characteristic.
- The **-o useNSDserver** file system mount option on the **mmmount**, **mount**, **mmchfs**, and **mmremotefs** commands can be used to specify the disk discovery, and limit or eliminate switching from local access to NSD server access, or the other way around.
- Decide whether you will use storage pools to manage your disks.  
Storage pools allow you to manage your file system's storage in groups. You can partition your storage based on such factors as performance, locality, and reliability. Files are assigned to a storage pool based on defined policies.

Policies provide for the following:

- Placing files in a specific storage pool when the files are created
- Migrating files from one storage pool to another
- File deletion based on file characteristics

For more information, see *Storage pools* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

Disk considerations include:

1. “Network Shared Disk (NSD) creation considerations” on page 164
2. “NSD server considerations” on page 164
3. “File system descriptor quorum” on page 165
4. “Preparing direct access storage devices (DASD) for NSDs” on page 166

## Network Shared Disk (NSD) creation considerations

You must prepare each physical disk you intend to use with GPFS by first defining it as a Network Shared Disk (NSD) using the **mmcrnsd** command.

On Windows, GPFS will only create NSDs from empty disk drives. **mmcrnsd** accepts Windows *Basic* disk or *Unknown/Not Initialized* disks. It always re-initializes these disks so that they become *Basic GPT Disks* with a single *GPFS partition*. NSD data is stored in GPFS partitions. This allows other operating system components to recognize that the disks are used. **mmdeinsd** deletes the partition tables created by **mmcrnsd**.

A new NSD format was introduced with GPFS 4.1. The new format is referred to as NSD v2, and the old format is referred to as NSD v1. The NSD v1 format is compatible with GPFS releases prior to 4.1. The latest GPFS release recognizes both NSD v1 and NSD v2 formatted disks.

The NSD v2 format provides the following benefits:

- On Linux, includes a partition table so that the disk is easily recognized as a GPFS device
- Adjusts data alignment to support disks with a 4 KB physical block size
- Adds backup copies of some key GPFS data structures
- Expands some reserved areas to allow for future growth

Administrators do not need to select one format or the other when managing NSDs. GPFS will always create and use the correct format based on the **minReleaseLevel** for the cluster and the file system version. When **minReleaseLevel** (as reported by **mmfsconfig**) is less than 4.1.0.0, **mmcrnsd** will only create NSD v1 formatted disks. When **minReleaseLevel** is at least 4.1.0.0, **mmcrnsd** will only create NSD v2 formatted disks. In this second case, however, the NSD format may change dynamically when the NSD is added to a file system so that the NSD is compatible with the file system version.

On Linux, NSD v2 formatted disks include a GUID Partition Table (GPT) with a single partition. The GPT allows other operating system utilities to recognize when a disk is owned by GPFS, which helps prevent inadvertent data corruption. After running **mmcrnsd**, Linux utilities like **parted** can show the partition table. When an NSD v2 formatted disk is added to a 3.5 or older file system, its format is changed to NSD v1 and the partition table is converted to an MBR (MS-DOS compatible) type.

**Note:** Leftover persistent reserve (PR) keys can cause problems such as reservation conflicts in multipath, which can in turn cause I/O failure. In such cases, it is necessary to clean up leftover PR keys on a fresh install. For a detailed procedure, see *Clearing a leftover Persistent Reserve reservation in IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

The **mmcrnsd** command expects a stanza file as input. For details, see the following topics in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference* and *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*:

- *Stanza files*
- **mmchdisk** command
- **mmchnsd** command
- **mmcrfs** command
- **mmcrnsd** command

## NSD server considerations

If you plan to use NSD servers to remotely serve disk data to other nodes, as opposed to having disks SAN-attached to all nodes, you should consider the total computing and I/O load on these nodes.

- Will your Network Shared Disk servers be dedicated servers or will you also be using them to run applications? If you will have non-dedicated servers, consider running less time-critical applications on these nodes. If you run time-critical applications on a Network Shared Disk server, servicing disk requests from other nodes might conflict with the demands of these applications.

- The special functions of the file system manager consume extra processing time. If possible, avoid using a Network Shared Disk server as the file system manager. The Network Shared Disk server consumes both memory and processor cycles that could impact the operation of the file system manager. See “The file system manager” on page 10.
- The actual processing capability required for Network Shared Disk service is a function of the application I/O access patterns, the type of node, the type of disk, and the disk connection. You can later run **iostat** on the server to determine how much of a load your access pattern will place on a Network Shared Disk server.
- Providing sufficient disks and adapters on the system to yield the required I/O bandwidth. Dedicated Network Shared Disk servers should have sufficient disks and adapters to drive the I/O load you expect them to handle.
- Knowing approximately how much storage capacity you will need for your data.

You should consider what you want as the default behavior for switching between local access and NSD server access in the event of a failure. To set this configuration, use the **-o useNSDserver** file system mount option of the **mmmount**, **mount**, **mmchfs**, and **mmremotefs** commands to:

- Specify the disk discovery behavior
- Limit or eliminate switching from either:
  - Local access to NSD server access
  - NSD server access to local access

You should consider specifying how long to wait for an NSD server to come online before allowing a file system mount to fail because the server is not available. The **mmchconfig** command has these options:

#### **nsdServerWaitTimeForMount**

When a node is trying to mount a file system whose disks depend on NSD servers, this option specifies the number of seconds to wait for those servers to come up. If a server recovery is taking place, the wait time you are specifying with this option starts after recovery completes.

**Note:** The decision to wait for servers is controlled by the **nsdServerWaitTimeWindowOnMount** option.

#### **nsdServerWaitTimeWindowOnMount**

Specifies a window of time (in seconds) during which a mount can wait for NSD servers as described for the **nsdServerWaitTimeForMount** option. The window begins when quorum is established (at cluster startup or subsequently), or at the last known failure times of the NSD servers required to perform the mount.

#### **Notes:**

1. When a node rejoins a cluster, it resets all the failure times it knew about within that cluster.
2. Because a node that rejoins a cluster resets its failure times within that cluster, the NSD server failure times are also reset.
3. When a node attempts to mount a file system, GPFS checks the cluster formation criteria first. If that check falls outside the window, it will then check for NSD server fail times being in the window.

## **File system descriptor quorum**

A GPFS structure called the *file system descriptor* is initially written to every disk in the file system and is replicated on a subset of the disks as changes to the file system occur, such as the adding or deleting of disks.

Based on the number of failure groups and disks, GPFS creates one to five replicas of the descriptor:

- If there are at least five different failure groups, five replicas are created.
- If there are at least three different disks, three replicas are created.

- If there are only one or two disks, a replica is created on each disk.

Once it decides how many replicas to create, GPFS picks disks to hold the replicas, so that all replicas are in different failure groups, if possible, to reduce the risk of multiple failures. In picking replica locations, the current state of the disks is taken into account. Stopped or suspended disks are avoided. Similarly, when a failed disk is brought back online, GPFS might rebalance the file system descriptors in order to assure reliability across the failure groups. The disks used to hold the file system descriptor replicas can be seen by running the `mmlsdisk fsname -L` command and looking for the string **desc** in the **remarks** column.

GPFS requires that a majority of the replicas on the subset of disks remain available to sustain file system operations:

- If there are at least five different replicas, GPFS can tolerate a loss of two of the five replicas.
- If there are at least three replicas, GPFS can tolerate a loss of one of the three replicas.
- If there are fewer than three replicas, a loss of one replica might make the descriptor inaccessible.

The loss of all disks in a disk failure group might cause a majority of file systems descriptors to become unavailable and inhibit further file system operations. For example, if your file system is backed up by three or more disks that are assigned to two separate disk failure groups, one of the failure groups will be assigned two of the file system descriptor replicas, while the other failure group will be assigned only one replica. If all of the disks in the disk failure group that contains the two replicas were to become unavailable, the file system would also become unavailable. To avoid this particular scenario, you might want to introduce a third disk failure group consisting of a single disk that is designated as a **descOnly** disk. This disk would exist solely to contain a replica of the file system descriptor (that is, it would not contain any file system metadata or data). This disk should be at least 128MB in size.

For more information, see “Network Shared Disk (NSD) creation considerations” on page 164 and *Establishing disaster recovery for your GPFS cluster* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Preparing direct access storage devices (DASD) for NSDs

When preparing direct access storage devices (DASD) for NSDs, see the table “Disk hardware tested with GPFS for Linux on Z” in the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

### Preparing your environment for use of extended count key data (ECKD) devices:

If your GPFS cluster includes Linux on Z instances, do not use virtual reserve/release.

Instead, follow the process described in Sharing DASD without Using Virtual Reserve/Release ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/SSB27U\\_6.3.0/com.ibm.zvm.v630.hcpa5/hcpa5259.htm](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/SSB27U_6.3.0/com.ibm.zvm.v630.hcpa5/hcpa5259.htm)). Data integrity is handled by GPFS itself.

### Preparing an ECKD device for GPFS

To prepare an ECKD device for GPFS, complete these steps on a single node:

1. Ensure that the ECKD device is online. To set it online, issue the following command:

```
chccwdev -e device_bus_id
```

where *device\_bus\_id* identifies the device to be configured. *device\_bus\_id* is a device number with a leading **0.n**, where *n* is the subchannel set ID. For example:

```
chccwdev -e 0.0.3352
```

2. Low-level format the ECKD using one of the following commands.

**Note:** GPFS supports ECKD disks in either compatible disk layout (CDL) format or Linux disk layout (LDL) format. The DASD must be formatted with a block size of 4096.

- To specify CDL format, issue the following command:

```
dasdfmt -d cd1 device
```

There is no need to specify a block size value, as the default value is 4096.

- To specify LDL format, issue the following command:

```
dasdfmt -d ld1 device
```

There is no need to specify a block size value, as the default value is 4096.

In both of these commands, *device* is the node of the device. For example:

```
dasdfmt -d cd1 /dev/dasda
```

3. This step is for *CDL disks only*. It is an *optional* step because partitioning is optional for CDL disks.

If you wish to partition the ECKD and create a single partition that spans the entire device, use the following command:

```
fdasd -a device
```

**Note:** This step is not required for LDL disks because the **dasdfmt -d ld1** command issued in the previous step automatically creates a single Linux partition on the disk.

4. If the ECKD device is shared with other cluster nodes, then it is a good idea to set the ECKD device offline and then back online on each node where the ECKD is shared. This procedure ensures that the updated partition information is spread among all shared nodes.

For more information about all of these commands, see the following:

- “Commands for Linux on Z” topic in Device Drivers, Features, and Commands ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/api/content/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz\\_r\\_dd.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/api/content/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz_r_dd.html)) in the Linux on Z library overview.
- “Getting started with Elastic Storage for Linux on Z based on GPFS technology” white paper, available on the Welcome Page for IBM Spectrum Scale in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/ibmspectrumscale\\_welcome.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/ibmspectrumscale_welcome.html)).

Repeat these steps for each ECKD to be used with GPFS.

After preparing the environment, set the ECKD devices online on the other nodes.

**Note:** After partitioning and formatting an ECKD device, the partition information is not distributed automatically to other cluster nodes. If the ECKD device is shared with different cluster nodes when they are online. It is recommended to set the ECKD device offline and then back online. This procedure will update the partition information for the specific ECKD device on the cluster node.

Always ensure that the ECKD devices are online before starting GPFS. To automatically set ECKD devices online at system start, see the documentation for your Linux distribution.

## File system creation considerations

File system creation involves anticipating usage within the file system and considering your hardware configurations. Before creating a file system, consider how much data will be stored and how great the demand for the files in the system will be.

Each of these factors can help you to determine how much disk resource to devote to the file system, which block size to choose, where to store data and metadata, and how many replicas to maintain. For the latest supported file system size, see the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

Your GPFS file system is created by issuing the **mmcrfs** command. Table 22 on page 168 details the file system creation options specified on the **mmcrfs** command, which options can be changed later with the **mmchfs** command, and what the default values are.

To move an existing file system into a new GPFS cluster, see *Exporting file system definitions between clusters* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

Table 22. File system creation options

Options	mmcrfs	mmchfs	Default value
Device name of the file system. See “Device name of the file system” on page 171.	X	X	none
DiskDesc for each disk in your file system. <b>Note:</b> The use of disk descriptors is discouraged. See “Disks for your file system” on page 171.	X	Issue the <b>mmadddisk</b> or <b>mmdeldisk</b> command to add or delete disks from the file system.	none
<b>-F StanzaFile</b> specifies a file that contains a list of NSD stanzas and pool stanzas. For more information, see <i>Stanza files</i> in <i>IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide</i> .	X	Issue the <b>mmadddisk</b> or <b>mmdeldisk</b> command to add or delete disks as indicated in the stanza file.	none
<b>-A {yes   no   automount}</b> to determine when to mount the file system. See “Deciding how the file system is mounted” on page 172.	X	X	yes
<b>-B BlockSize</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>By default all the data blocks and metadata blocks in a file system are set to the same block size with the same subblock size.</li> <li>Metadata blocks can be set to a different block size with the <b>--metadata-block-size</b> parameter, and this setting can change the size and number of subblocks in data blocks.</li> </ul> See “Block size” on page 172 and <i>mmcrfs</i> command in <i>IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference</i> .	X	The block size, subblock size, and number of subblocks per block of a file system are set when the file system is created and cannot be changed later.	4 MiB
<b>-D {posix   nfs4}</b> semantics for a deny-write open lock See “NFS V4 deny-write open lock” on page 171.	X	X	nfs4
<b>-E {yes   no}</b> to report exact mtime values. See “mtime values” on page 175.	X	X	yes
<b>-i InodeSize</b> to set the size of inodes: <b>512</b> , <b>1024</b> , or <b>4096</b> bytes.	X	This value cannot be changed.	4096

Table 22. File system creation options (continued)

Options	mmcrfs	mmchfs	Default value
<b>-j</b> { <b>cluster</b>   <b>scatter</b> } to determine the block allocation map type. See “Block allocation map” on page 176.	X	NA	See “Block allocation map” on page 176.
<b>-k</b> { <b>posix</b>   <b>nfs4</b>   <b>all</b> } to determine the authorization types supported by the file system. See “File system authorization” on page 176.	X	X	<b>all</b>
<b>-K</b> { <b>no</b>   <b>whenpossible</b>   <b>always</b> } to enforce strict replication. See “Type of replication” on page 176.	X	X	<b>whenpossible</b>
<b>-L</b> <i>LogFileSize</i> to specify the size of the internal log files. See “GPFS recovery logs” on page 15.	X	X	See the topic <i>mmcrfs</i> command in the <i>IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference</i> .
<b>-m</b> <i>DefaultMetadataReplicas</i> See “File system replication parameters” on page 177.	X	X	<b>1</b>
<b>-M</b> <i>MaxMetadataReplicas</i> See “File system replication parameters” on page 177.	X	This value cannot be changed.	<b>2</b>
<b>-n</b> <i>NumNodes</i> that will mount the file system. See “Number of nodes mounting the file system” on page 178.	X	X	<b>32</b>
<b>-o</b> <i>MountOptions</i> to be passed to the <b>mount</b> command. See “Assign mount command options” on page 178.	NA	X	<b>none</b>
<b>-Q</b> { <b>yes</b>   <b>no</b> } to activate quota. See “Enabling quotas” on page 179.	X	X	<b>no</b>
<b>-r</b> <i>DefaultDataReplicas</i> See “File system replication parameters” on page 177.	X	X	<b>1</b>
<b>-R</b> <i>MaxDataReplicas</i> See “File system replication parameters” on page 177.	X	This value cannot be changed.	<b>2</b>
<b>-S</b> { <b>yes</b>   <b>no</b>   <b>relatime</b> } to control how the <b>atime</b> value is updated. See “atime values” on page 175.	X	X	The default value is <b>relatime</b> if <b>minReleaseLevel</b> is 5.0.0 or later when the file system is created. Otherwise the default value is <b>no</b> .

Table 22. File system creation options (continued)

Options	mmcrfs	mmchfs	Default value
<b>-t DriveLetter</b> See “Windows drive letter” on page 178.	X	X	none
<b>-T Mountpoint</b> See “Mountpoint directory” on page 178.	X	X	/gpts/DeviceName
<b>-V {full   compat}</b> to change the file system format to the latest level. See “Changing the file system format to the latest level” on page 180	NA	X	none
<b>-v {yes   no}</b> to verify disk usage. See “Verifying disk usage” on page 180.	X	NA	yes
<b>-W NewDeviceName</b> to assign a new device name to the file system.	NA	X	none
<b>-z {yes   no}</b> to enable DMAPI See “Enabling DMAPI” on page 180.	X	X	no
<b>--filesetdf</b> to specify (when quotas are enforced for a fileset) whether the <b>df</b> command will report numbers based on the quotas for the fileset and not for the total file system.	X	X	--nofilesetdf
<b>--inode-limit MaxNumInodes [:NumInodesToPreallocate]</b> to determine the maximum number of files in the file system. See “Specifying the maximum number of files that can be created” on page 181.	X	X	file system size/1 MiB
<b>--log-replicas LogReplicas</b> to specify the number of recovery log replicas.	X	X	none
<b>--metadata-block-size MetadataBlockSize</b> Specifies a metadata block size that is different from the data block size. This parameter requires a separate pool for metadata. See “Block size” on page 172 and <i>mmcrfs</i> command in <i>IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference</i> .	X	NA	By default the metadata block size is the same as the block size. For more information about block size, see the entry for <b>-B BlockSize</b> earlier in this table.
<b>--mount-priority Priority</b> to control the order in which the individual file systems are mounted at daemon startup or when one of the <b>all</b> keywords is specified on the <b>mmm mount</b> command.	X	X	0
<b>--perfileset-quota</b> to set the scope of user and group quota limit checks to the individual fileset level.	X	X	--noperfileset-quota



Table 22. File system creation options (continued)

Options	mmcrfs	mmchfs	Default value
<b>--rapid-repair</b> to keep track of incomplete replication on an individual file block basis (as opposed to the entire file).	NA	X	none
<b>--version</b> <i>VersionString</i> to enable only the file system features that are compatible with the specified release.  See “Enabling file system features” on page 180.	X	NA	The default value is defined by the current committed function level for the cluster <b>minReleaseLevel</b> , for example 4.2.2.0 or other values, depending on the cluster.
<b>--write-cache-threshold</b> <i>HAWCThreshold</i> Specifies the maximum length in bytes of synchronous write requests that is initially buffered in the highly available write cache before being written back to primary storage.	X	NA	The default value is 0, which means that the option is disabled.
<b>Notes:</b> 1. X – indicates that the option is available on the command. 2. NA (not applicable) – indicates that the option is not available on the command.			

## Device name of the file system

File system names must be unique within a GPFS cluster. However, two different clusters can have two distinct file systems with the same name.

The device name of the file system does not need to be fully qualified. **fs0** is as acceptable as **/dev/fs0**. The name cannot be the same as an existing entry in **/dev**.

**Note:** If your cluster includes Windows nodes, the file system name should be no longer than 31 characters.

## NFS V4 deny-write open lock

You can specify whether a deny-write open lock blocks writes, which is expected and required by NFS V4, Samba, and Windows.

For more information, see *Managing GPFS access control lists* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

**nfs4** Must be specified for file systems supporting NFS V4 and file systems mounted on Windows. This is the default.

**posix** Specified for file systems supporting NFS V3 or ones which are not NFS exported.  
**posix** allows NFS writes even in the presence of a deny-write open lock.

## Disks for your file system

Disks must be defined as network shared disks (NSDs) before they can be added to a GPFS file system.

NSDs are created using the **mmcrnsd** command. Use the **mmfnsd -F** command to display a list of available NSDs. Use the **mmadddisk** to add the NSD after you create it.

See “Disk considerations” on page 162.

## Deciding how the file system is mounted

Specify when the file system is to be mounted:

**yes** When the GPFS daemon starts. This is the default.

**no** Manual mount.

**automount**

When the file system is first accessed.

This can be changed at a later time by using the **-A** option on the **mmchfs** command.

### Considerations:

1. GPFS mount traffic may be lessened by using the automount feature to mount the file system when it is first accessed instead of at GPFS startup. Automatic mounts only produce additional control traffic at the point that the file system is first used by an application or user. Mounts at GPFS startup on the other hand produce additional control traffic at every GPFS startup. Thus startup of hundreds of nodes at once may be better served by using automatic mounts.
2. Automatic mounts will fail if the node does not have the operating system's automount support enabled for the file system.
3. When exporting file systems for NFS mounts, it may be useful to mount the file system when GPFS starts.

## Block size

Choose the file system block size based on the projected workload of the file system and the type of storage that it uses.

- | "General"
- | "Test actual performance with different block sizes" on page 173
- | "Factors that can affect performance" on page 173

## General

- | In a file system, a *block* is the largest contiguous amount of disk space that can be allocated to a file and also the largest amount of data that can be transferred in a single I/O operation. The block size determines the maximum size of a read request or write request that a file system sends to the I/O device driver. Blocks are composed of an integral number of *subblocks*, which are the smallest unit of contiguous disk space that can be allocated to a file. Files larger than one block are stored in some number of full blocks plus any subblocks that might be required after the last block to hold the remaining data. Files smaller than one block size are stored in one or more subblocks.
- | For information about setting block size and subblock size for a file system, see the descriptions of the **-B** *BlockSize* parameter and the **--metadata-block-size** parameter in help topic *mmcrfs command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*. Here are some general facts from those descriptions:
  - The block size, subblock size, and number of subblocks per block of a file system are set when the file system is created and cannot be changed later.
  - All the data blocks in a file system have the same block size and the same subblock size. Data blocks and subblocks in the system storage pool and those in user storage pools have the same sizes. An example of a valid block size and subblock size is a 4 MiB block with an 8 KiB subblock.
  - All the metadata blocks in a file system have the same block size and the same subblock size. The metadata blocks and subblocks are set to the same sizes as data blocks and subblocks, unless the **--metadata-block-size** parameter is specified.
  - If the system storage pool contains only **metadataOnly** NSDs, the metadata block can be set to a different size than the data block size with the **--metadata-block-size** parameter.

**Note:** This setting can result in a change in the data subblock size and in the number of subblocks in a data block, if the block size (-B parameter) is different from the **--metadata-block-size**. For an example, see Scenario 3 in a later bullet in this list.

- The data blocks and metadata blocks must have the same number of subblocks, even when the data block size and the metadata block size are different. See Scenario 3 in the next bullet.
- The number of subblocks per block is derived from the smallest block size of any storage pool in the file system, including the system metadata pool. Consider the following example scenarios:

**Note:** For a table of the valid block sizes and subblock sizes, see Supported block sizes with subblock size in the topic *mmcrfs command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

- Scenario 1: The file system is composed of a single system storage pool with all the NSD usage configured as **dataAndMetadata**. The file system block size is set with the -B parameter to 16MiB. As a result, the block size for both metadata and data blocks is 16 MiB. The metadata and data subblock size is 16 KiB.
- Scenario 2: The file system is composed of multiple storage pools with system storage pool NSD usage configured as **metadataOnly** and user storage pool NSD usage configured as **dataOnly**. The file system block size is set (-B parameter) to 16 MiB. The **--metadata-block-size** is also set to 16 MiB. As a result, the metadata and data block size is 16 MiB. The metadata and data subblock size is 16 KiB.
- Scenario 3: The file system is composed of multiple storage pools with the system storage pool NSD usage configured as **metadataOnly** and the user storage pool NSD usage configured as **dataOnly**. The file system block size is set (-B parameter) to 16 MiB, which has a subblock size of 16 KiB, but the **--metadata-block-size** is set to 1 MiB, which has a subblock size of 8 KiB. The number of subblocks across the pools of a file system needs to be the same and this is calculated based on the storage pool with smallest block size. In this case, the system pool has the smallest block size (1 MiB). The number of subblocks per block in the system storage pool is 128 (1 MiB block size / 8 KiB subblock size = 128 subblocks per block). The other storage pools inherit the 128-subblocks-per-block setting and their subblock size is recalculated based on 128 subblocks per block. In this case the subblock size of the user storage pool is recalculated as 128 KiB (16 MiB / 128 subblocks per block = 128 KiB subblock size).
- The block size cannot exceed the value of the cluster attribute **maxblocksize**, which can be set by the **mmchconfig** command.

Select a file system block size based on the workload and the type of storage. For a list of supported block sizes with their subblock sizes, see the description of the -B *BlockSize* parameter in help topic *mmcrfs command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

**Attention:** For IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.0 and later (file system format level 5.0.0 or greater) the default block size of 4 MiB with an 8 KiB subblock size provides good sequential performance, makes efficient use of disk space, and provides good or similar performance for small files compared to the previous default block size of 256 KiB with 32 subblocks per block. It works well for the widest variety of workloads.

## Test actual performance with different block sizes

The ideal file system block size can be determined by running performance tests with different file system block sizes using actual workloads or representative benchmarks that match the file sizes that you expect to use in production.

## Factors that can affect performance

For more performance information, see the IBM Spectrum Scale white papers in the Techdocs Library ([www.ibm.com/support/techdocs/atsmastr.nsf/Web/WhitePapers](http://www.ibm.com/support/techdocs/atsmastr.nsf/Web/WhitePapers)).

### **RAID stripe size**

The RAID stripe size is the size of the sequential block of data that a disk array writes to or reads from each storage volume (the block device corresponding to an NSD). For better performance, it is a good idea to set the file system block size to the same value as either the RAID stripe size or a multiple of the RAID stripe size. If the block size is not equal to or a multiple of the RAID stripe size, then the file system performance can be severely degraded, especially for write requests, because of the increase in read-modify-write operations that occur in the underlying storage RAID controllers.

**Note:** For IBM Spectrum Scale RAID, the block size must equal the vdisk track size. For more information see the online documentation for IBM Spectrum Scale RAID in IBM Knowledge Center.

### **File system size**

For file systems larger than 100 TiB, it is a good idea to set the block size to at least 256 KiB. (The default block size is 4 MiB in IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.x and later.) Generally larger block sizes provide better performance.

### **Large block size and page pool**

For block sizes larger than the default size of 4 MiB, it is a good idea to increase the page pool size in proportion to the block size. The reason is that the efficiency of internal optimizations that rely on caching file data in the GPFS page pool depends more on the number of blocks that are cached than on the amount data that is cached. A larger block size results in fewer cached blocks.

### **Variation in file size**

For a file system that contain files of many different sizes, the file system delivers better overall performance from selecting a larger block size, 4 MiB or greater, rather than a smaller one. It is true that with a larger block size some space is wasted when a small file is written into a large subblock, because the unused space in the subblock cannot be written to with data from another file unless the block is freed.

However, the amount of waste in the general case is likely to be insignificant overall, because the smaller files occupy a smaller percentage of the storage space in the file system compared to the space occupied by the larger files (files on the order of GiBs).

### **Application I/O patterns**

The effect of block size on file system performance greatly depends on the application I/O pattern:

- A larger block size is often beneficial for large sequential read and write workloads.
- A smaller block size can offer better performance for applications that do small random writes to sparse files or small random writes to large files that are subject to frequent snapshots.

### **Metadata performance**

The choice of block size affects the performance of certain metadata operations, in particular, block allocation performance. The IBM Spectrum Scale block allocation map is stored in blocks, similar to regular files. When the block size is small:

- More blocks are required to store the same amount of data, which results in more work to allocate those blocks
- One block of allocation map data contains less information

### **Metadata-only system pool**

The **--metadata-block-size** option on the **mmcrfs** command allows a different block size to be specified for the system storage pool, provided its usage is set to **metadataOnly**. Valid values are the same as the ones that are listed for the **-B** parameter.

**Note:** Setting the metadata block size to a different value than the data block size can have the effect of changing the data subblock size and the number of subblocks per data block. For more information see Scenario 3 earlier in this help topic.

## atime values

**atime** is a standard file attribute that represents the time when the file was last accessed.

The file attribute **atime** is updated locally in memory, but the value is not visible to other nodes until after the file is closed. To get an accurate value of **atime**, an application must call subroutine **gpfs\_stat** or **gpfs\_fstat**.

You can control how **atime** is updated with the **-S** option of the **mmcrfs** and **mmchfs** commands:

### -S no

The **atime** attribute is updated whenever the file is read. This setting is the default if the minimum release level (**minReleaseLevel**) of the cluster is earlier than 5.0.0 when the file system is created.

### -S yes

The **atime** attribute is not updated. The subroutines **gpfs\_stat** and **gpfs\_fstat** return the time that the file system was last mounted with **-S no**.

**Note:** This setting can cause a problem if you have a file management policy that depends on the **ACCESS\_TIME** attribute. For more information, see the topic *Exceptions to Open Group technical standards* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

### -S relatime

The **atime** attribute is updated whenever the file is read, but only if one of the following conditions is true:

- The current file access time (**atime**) is earlier than the file modification time (**mtime**).
- The current file access time (**atime**) is greater than the **atimeDeferredSeconds** attribute. For more information, see the topic *mmchconfig command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

This setting is the default if the minimum release level (**minReleaseLevel**) of the cluster is 5.0.0 or later when the file system is created.

You can temporarily override the value of the **-S** setting by specifying a mount option specific to IBM Spectrum Scale when you mount the file system. The mount option persists until the file system is unmounted. The following table shows how the mount options correspond to the **-S** settings:

Table 23. Correspondence between **mount** options and the **-S** option in **mmcrfs** and **mmchfs**

-S option of <b>mmcrfs</b> and <b>mmchfs</b> commands.	Equivalent mount option; persists until file system is unmounted.	Effect – see topic text for details.
<b>no</b>	<b>norelatime</b>	Allow <b>atime</b> to be updated.
<b>yes</b>	<b>noatime</b>	Do not allow <b>atime</b> to be updated.
<b>relatime</b>	<b>relatime</b>	Allow <b>atime</b> to be updated if a condition is met.

For more information, see the topic *Mount options specific to IBM Spectrum Scale* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## mtime values

**mtime** is a standard file attribute that represents the time when the file was last modified.

The **-E** parameter controls when the **mtime** is updated. The default is **-E yes**, which results in standard interfaces including the **stat()** and **fstat()** calls reporting exact **mtime** values. Specifying **-E no** results in the **stat()** and **fstat()** calls reporting the **mtime** value available at the completion of the last sync period.

This may result in the calls not always reporting the exact **mtime**. Setting **-E no** can affect backup operations, AFM, and AFM DR functions that rely on the last modified time or the operation of policies using the **MODIFICATION\_TIME** file attribute.

For more information, see *Exceptions to the Open Group technical standards* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Block allocation map

GPFS has two different methods of allocating space in a file system. The **-j** parameter specifies the block allocation map type to use when creating a file system. The block allocation map type cannot be changed once the file system is created.

When allocating blocks for a given file, GPFS first uses a round-robin algorithm to spread the data across all of the disks in the file system. After a disk is selected, the location of the data block on the disk is determined by the block allocation map type.

The two types of allocation methods are **cluster** and **scatter**:

### **cluster**

GPFS attempts to allocate blocks in clusters. Blocks that belong to a given file are kept next to each other within each cluster.

This allocation method provides better disk performance for some disk subsystems in relatively small installations. The benefits of clustered block allocation diminish when the number of nodes in the cluster or the number of disks in a file system increases, or when the file system free space becomes fragmented. The **cluster** allocation method is the default for GPFS clusters with eight or fewer nodes and for file systems with eight or fewer disks.

**scatter** GPFS chooses the location of the blocks randomly.

This allocation method provides more consistent file system performance by averaging out performance variations due to block location (for many disk subsystems, the location of the data relative to the disk edge has a substantial effect on performance). This allocation method is appropriate in most cases and is the default for GPFS clusters with more than eight nodes or file systems with more than eight disks.

This parameter for a given file system is specified at file system creation by using the **-j** option on the **mmcrfs** command, or allowing it to default. This value *cannot* be changed after the file system has been created.

## File system authorization

The type of authorization for the file system is specified on the **-k** option on the **mmcrfs** command or changed at a later time by using the **-k** option on the **mmchfs** command.

- posix** Traditional GPFS access control lists (ACLs) only (NFS V4 and Windows ACLs are not allowed).
- nfs4** Support for NFS V4 and Windows ACLs only. Users are not allowed to assign traditional ACLs to any file system objects.
- all** Allows for the coexistence of POSIX, NFS V4, and Windows ACLs within a file system. This is the default.

If the file system will be used for NFS and Swift protocol exports, **nfs4** is recommended.

If the file system will be used for SMB protocol exports, **nfs4** is required.

## Type of replication

You can control the type of replication that IBM Spectrum Scale uses.

Run the **mmchfs** command with the **-K** option set to the preferred type of replication. The **-K** option can have the following values:

**always**

Indicates that strict replication is enforced.

**whenpossible**

Strict replication is enforced if the disk configuration allows it. If the number of failure groups is insufficient, strict replication is not enforced. This is the default value.

**no**

Strict replication is not enforced. GPFS tries to create the needed number of replicas, but returns an **errno** of EOK if it can allocate at least one replica.

For more information on changing the attributes for replication, see the **mmchfs** command.

## Internal log file

You can specify the internal log file size. Refer to “GPFS recovery logs” on page 15 for additional information.

## File system replication parameters

The metadata (inodes, directories, and indirect blocks) and data replication parameters are set at the file system level and apply to all files. They are initially set for the file system when issuing the **mmcrfs** command.

They can be changed for an existing file system using the **mmchfs** command. When the replication parameters are changed, files created after the change are affected. To apply the new replication values to existing files in a file system, issue the **mmrestripefs** command.

Metadata and data replication are specified independently. Each has a default replication factor of 1 (no replication) and a maximum replication factor with a default of 2. Although replication of metadata is less costly in terms of disk space than replication of file data, excessive replication of metadata also affects GPFS efficiency because all metadata replicas must be written. In general, more replication uses more space.

### Default metadata replicas:

The default number of copies of metadata for all files in the file system may be specified at file system creation by using the **-m** option on the **mmcrfs** command or changed at a later time by using the **-m** option on the **mmchfs** command.

This value must be equal to or less than *MaxMetadataReplicas*, and cannot exceed the number of failure groups with disks that can store metadata. The allowable values are 1, 2, or 3, with a default of 1 (no replication).

### Maximum metadata replicas:

The maximum number of copies of metadata for all files in the file system can be specified at file system creation by using the **-M** option on the **mmcrfs** command.

The default is 2. The allowable values are 1, 2, or 3, but it cannot be less than the value of *DefaultMetadataReplicas*. This value cannot be changed after the file system is created.

### Default data replicas:

The default replication factor for data blocks may be specified at file system creation by using the **-r** option on the **mmcrfs** command or changed at a later time by using the **-r** option on the **mmchfs** command.

This value must be equal to or less than *MaxDataReplicas*, and the value cannot exceed the number of failure groups with disks that can store data. The allowable values are 1, 2, and 3, with a default of 1 (no replication).

If you want to change the data replication factor for the entire file system, the data disk in each storage pool must have a number of failure groups equal to or greater than the replication factor. For example, you will get a failure with error messages if you try to change the replication factor for a file system to 2 but the storage pool has only one failure group.

#### **Maximum data replicas:**

The maximum number of copies of data blocks for a file can be specified at file system creation by using the **-R** option on the **mmcrfs** command. The default is 2.

The allowable values are 1, 2, and 3, but cannot be less than the value of *DefaultDataReplicas*. This value cannot be changed after the file system is created.

#### **Number of nodes mounting the file system**

The estimated number of nodes that will mount the file system may be specified at file system creation by using the **-n** option on the **mmcrfs** command or allowed to default to 32.

When creating a GPFS file system, over-estimate the number of nodes that will mount the file system. This input is used in the creation of GPFS data structures that are essential for achieving the maximum degree of parallelism in file system operations (see “GPFS architecture” on page 9). Although a larger estimate consumes a bit more memory, insufficient allocation of these data structures can limit the ability to process certain parallel requests efficiently, such as the allotment of disk space to a file. If you cannot predict the number of nodes, allow the default value to be applied. Specify a larger number if you expect to add nodes, but avoid wildly overestimating as this can affect buffer operations.

You can change the number of nodes using the **-n** option on the **mmchfs** command. Changing this value affects storage pools created after the value was set; so, for example, if you need to increase this value on a storage pool, you could change the value, create a new storage pool, and migrate the data from one pool to the other.

#### **Windows drive letter**

In a Windows environment, you must associate a drive letter with a file system before it can be mounted. The drive letter can be specified and changed with the **-t** option of the **mmcrfs** and **mmchfs** commands. GPFS does not assign a default drive letter when one is not specified.

The number of available drive letters restricts the number of file systems that can be mounted on Windows.

**Note:** Certain applications give special meaning to drive letters **A:**, **B:**, and **C:**, which could cause problems if they are assigned to a GPFS file system.

#### **Mountpoint directory**

Every GPFS file system has a default mount point associated with it. This mount point can be specified and changed with the **-T** option of the **mmcrfs** and **mmchfs** commands.

If you do not specify a mount point when you create the file system, GPFS will set the default mount point to */gpfs/DeviceName*.

#### **Assign mount command options**

Options may be passed to the file system **mount** command using the **-o** option on the **mmchfs** command.



In particular, you can choose the option to perform quota activation automatically when a file system is mounted.

## Enabling quotas

The GPFS quota system can help you control file system usage.

Quotas can be defined for individual users, groups of users, or filesets. Quotas can be set on the total number of files and the total amount of data space consumed. When setting quota limits for a file system, the system administrator should consider the replication factors of the file system. Quota management takes replication into account when reporting on and determining if quota limits have been exceeded for both block and file usage. In a file system that has either data replication or metadata replication set to a value of two, the values reported on by both the **mmfsquota** and **mmrepquota** commands are double the value reported by the **ls** command.

Whether or not to enable quotas when a file system is mounted may be specified at file system creation by using the **-Q** option on the **mmcrfs** command or changed at a later time by using the **-Q** option on the **mmchfs** command. After the file system has been mounted, quota values are established by issuing the **mmedquota** command and activated by issuing the **mmquotaon** command. The default is to *not* have quotas activated.

GPFS levels are defined at three limits that you can explicitly set using the **mmedquota** and **mmdefedquota** commands:

### Soft limit

Defines levels of disk space and files below which the user, group of users, or fileset can safely operate.

Specified in units of kilobytes (k or K), megabytes (m or M), or gigabytes (g or G). If no suffix is provided, the number is assumed to be in bytes.

### Hard limit

Defines the maximum amount of disk space and number of files the user, group of users, or fileset can accumulate.

Specified in units of kilobytes (k or K), megabytes (m or M), or gigabytes (g or G). If no suffix is provided, the number is assumed to be in bytes.

### Grace period

Allows the user, group of users, or fileset to exceed the soft limit for a specified period of time. The default period is one week. If usage is not reduced to a level below the soft limit during that time, the quota system interprets the soft limit as the hard limit and no further allocation is allowed. The user, group of users, or fileset can reset this condition by reducing usage enough to fall below the soft limit; or the administrator can increase the quota levels using the **mmedquota** or **mmdefedquota**.

For implications of quotas for different protocols, see *Implications of quotas for different protocols* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

### Default quotas:

Applying default quotas provides all new users, groups of users, or filesets with established minimum quota limits. If default quota values are not enabled, new users, new groups, or new filesets have a quota value of zero, which establishes no limit to the amount of space that can be used.

Default quota limits can be set or changed only if the **-Q yes** option is in effect for the file system. To set default quotas at the fileset level, the **--perfileset-quota** option must also be in effect. The **-Q yes** and **--perfileset-quota** options are specified when creating a file system with the **mmcrfs** command or changing file system attributes with the **mmchfs** command. Use the **mmfsfs** command to display the

current settings of these quota options. Default quotas may then be enabled by issuing the **mmdefquotaon** command. Default values are established by issuing the **mmdefquota** command.

## Enabling DMAPI

Whether or not the file system can be monitored and managed by the GPFS Data Management API (DMAPI) may be specified at file system creation by using the **-z** option on the **mmcrfs** command or changed at a later time by using the **-z** option on the **mmchfs** command.

The default is *not* to enable DMAPI for the file system.

For more information about DMAPI for GPFS, see *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## Verifying disk usage

The **-v** option controls whether the **mmcrfs** command checks whether the specified disks can safely be added to the file system.

The default (**-v yes**) is to perform the check and fail the command if any of the disks appear to belong to some other GPFS file system. You should override the default behavior and specify **-v no** only if the **mmcrfs** command rejects the disks and you are certain that *all* of the disks indeed do not belong to an active GPFS file system. An example for an appropriate use of **-v no** is the case where an **mmcrfs** command is interrupted for some reason and you are reissuing the command. Another example would be if you are reusing disks from an old GPFS file system that was not formally destroyed with the **mmdeletfs** command.

**Important:** Using **mmcrfs -v no** on a disk that already belongs to a file system will corrupt that file system.

## Changing the file system format to the latest level

You can change the file system format to the latest format supported by the currently-installed level of GPFS by issuing the **mmchfs** command with the **-V full** option or the **-V compat** option.

The **full** option enables all new functionality that requires different on-disk data structures. This may cause the file system to become permanently incompatible with earlier releases of GPFS. The **compat** option enables only changes that are backward compatible with the previous GPFS release. If all GPFS nodes that are accessing a file system (both local and remote) are running the latest level, then it is safe to use **full** option. Certain features may require you to run the **mmigratefs** command to enable them.

For more information, see *File system format changes between versions of GPFS* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Enabling file system features

By default, new file systems are created with all currently available features enabled.

Since this may prevent clusters that are running earlier GPFS releases from accessing the file system, you can enable only the file system features that are compatible with the specified release by issuing the **mmcrfs** command with the **--version Version** option. For more information, see *mmcrfs command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## Specifying whether the df command will report numbers based on quotas for the fileset

You can specify (when quotas are enforced for a fileset) whether the **df** command will report numbers based on the quotas for the fileset and not for the total file system.

To do so, use the **--filesetdf | --nofilesetdf** option on either the **mmchfs** command or the **mmcrfs** command.

For more information, see *mmchfs command* and *mmcrfs command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## Specifying the maximum number of files that can be created

The maximum number of files that can be created can be specified by using the **--inode-limit** option on the **mmcrfs** command and the **mmchfs** command.

Allowable values, which range from the current number of created inodes (determined by issuing the **mmddf** command with the **-F** option) through the maximum number of files that are supported, are constrained by the formula:

$$\text{maximum number of files} = (\text{total file system space}) / (\text{inode size} + \text{subblock size})$$

You can determine the inode size (**-i**) and subblock size (**-f**) of a file system by running the **mmlsfs** command. The maximum number of files in a file system may be specified at file system creation by using the **--inode-limit** option on the **mmcrfs** command, or it may be increased at a later time by using **--inode-limit** on the **mmchfs** command. This value defaults to the size of the file system at creation divided by 1 MB and cannot exceed the architectural limit. When a file system is created, 4084 inodes are used by default; these inodes are used by GPFS for internal system files.

For more information, see *mmcrfs command* and *mmchfs command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

The **--inode-limit** option applies only to the root fileset. When there are multiple inode spaces, use the **--inode-limit** option of the **mmchfileset** command to alter the inode limits of independent filesets. The **mmchfileset** command can also be used to modify the root inode space. The **--inode-limit** option of the **mmlsfs** command shows the sum of all inode spaces.

Inodes are allocated when they are used. When a file is deleted, the inode is reused, but inodes are never deallocated. When setting the maximum number of inodes in a file system, there is the option to preallocate inodes. However, in most cases there is no need to preallocate inodes because, by default, inodes are allocated in sets as needed. If you do decide to preallocate inodes, be careful not to preallocate more inodes than will be used; otherwise, the allocated inodes will unnecessarily consume metadata space that cannot be reclaimed.

These options limit the maximum number of files that may actively exist within a file system. However, the maximum number of files in the file system may be restricted further by GPFS so the control structures associated with each file do not consume all of the file system space.

### Further considerations when managing inodes:

1. For file systems that are supporting parallel file creates, as the total number of free inodes drops below 5% of the total number of inodes, there is the potential for slowdown in file system access. Take this into consideration when creating or changing your file system. Use the **mmddf** command to display the number of free inodes.
2. Excessively increasing the value for the maximum number of files may cause the allocation of too much disk space for control structures.

## Controlling the order in which file systems are mounted

You can control the order in which the individual file systems are mounted at daemon startup or when using the **mmmount** command with one of the **all** keywords specified for the file system.

For more information, see *mmlsfs command* and *mmmount command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

To do so, use the **--mount-priority** *Priority* option on the **mmcrfs**, the **mmchfs**, or the **mmremotefs** command.

The shared root file system for protocols must be mounted before other file systems that will be used to export protocol data.

## A sample file system creation

To create a file system called **gpfs2** with the following properties:

- The disks for the file system that are listed in the file **/tmp/gpfs2dsk**
- Automatically mount the file system when the GPFS daemon starts (**-A yes**)
- Use a block size of 256 KB (**-B 256K**)
- Expect to mount it on 32 nodes (**-n 32**)
- Set both the default metadata replication and the maximum metadata replication to two (**-m 2 -M 2**)
- Set the default data replication to one and the maximum data replication to two (**-r 1 -R 2**)
- Use a default mount point of **/gpfs2** (**-T /gpfs2**)

Enter:

```
mmcrfs /dev/gpfs2 -F /tmp/gpfs2dsk -A yes -B 256K -n 32 -m 2 -M 2 -r 1 -R 2 -T /gpfs2
```

The system displays information similar to:

The following disks of gpfs2 will be formatted on node k194p03.tes.nnn.com:

hd25n09: size 17796014 KB

hd24n09: size 17796014 KB

hd23n09: size 17796014 KB

Formatting file system ...

Disks up to size 59 GB can be added to storage pool system.

Creating Inode File

56 % complete on Mon Mar 3 15:10:08 2014

100 % complete on Mon Mar 3 15:10:11 2014

Creating Allocation Maps

Clearing Inode Allocation Map

Clearing Block Allocation Map

44 % complete on Mon Mar 3 15:11:32 2014

90 % complete on Mon Mar 3 15:11:37 2014

100 % complete on Mon Mar 3 15:11:38 2014

Completed creation of file system /dev/gpfs2.

mmcrfs: Propagating the cluster configuration data to all affected nodes. This is an asynchronous process.

To confirm the file system configuration, issue the command:

```
mmllsfs gpfs2
```

The system displays information similar to:

flag	value	description
-f	262144	Minimum fragment (subblock) size in bytes
-i	512	Inode size in bytes
-I	32768	Indirect block size in bytes
-m	2	Default number of metadata replicas
-M	2	Maximum number of metadata replicas
-r	1	Default number of data replicas
-R	2	Maximum number of data replicas
-j	scatter	Block allocation type
-D	nfs4	File locking semantics in effect
-k	all	ACL semantics in effect
-n	32	Estimated number of nodes that will mount file system
-B	262144	Block size
-Q	none	Quotas accounting enabled
	none	Quotas enforced
	none	Default quotas enabled
--perfileset-quota	yes	Per-fileset quota enforcement
--filesetdf	yes	Fileset df enabled?
-V	15.01 (4.2.0.0)	File system version

--create-time	Wed Jan 18 17:22:25 2017	File system creation time
-Z	no	Is DMAPI enabled?
-L	262144	Logfile size
-E	yes	Exact mtime mount option
-S	yes	Suppress atime mount option
-K	whenpossible	Strict replica allocation option
--fastea	yes	Fast external attributes enabled?
--encryption	no	Encryption enabled?
--inode-limit	2015232	Maximum number of inodes
--log-replicas	0	Number of log replicas (max 2)
--is4KAaligned	yes	is4KAaligned?
--rapid-repair	yes	rapidRepair enabled?
--write-cache-threshold	65536	HAWC Threshold (max 65536)
-P	system	Disk storage pools in file system
-d	gpfs1001nsd;gpfs1002nsd	Disks in file system
-A	yes	Automatic mount option
-o	none	Additional mount options
-T	/gpfs2	Default mount point
--mount-priority	0	Mount priority

For more information, see *mmcrfs command* and *mmnfs command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## Fileset considerations for creating protocol data exports

You can create exports on the entire file system, on sub-directories of a file system, or on filesets.

A fileset is a file system object that enables you to manage data at a finer granularity than the file system. You can perform administrative operations such as defining quotas, creating snapshots, and defining file placement policies and rules, and specifying inode space values at the fileset level, especially when the fileset is independent.

In IBM Spectrum Scale, you can create exports even without filesets. Depending on your data management strategy, choose either of the following ways to create exports:

### Create exports on the entire file system or on sub-directories of the file system

In this option, the export represents a large space. You can create independent filesets over the directories in this space and have finer control over the export directory paths. Universities and organizations that require a departmental multi-tenancy solution can choose this option.

Review the following example to better understand this option.

As a storage administrator of an organization, you want to create separate storage space for every department and user of the organization:

1. Export the root directory of the file system.

```
mmnfs export add /gpfs/fs0
```

**Note:** You can create a sub-directory in the root directory and export it. For example: `mmnfs export add /gpfs/fs0/home`

For more information, see **mmnfs command** in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

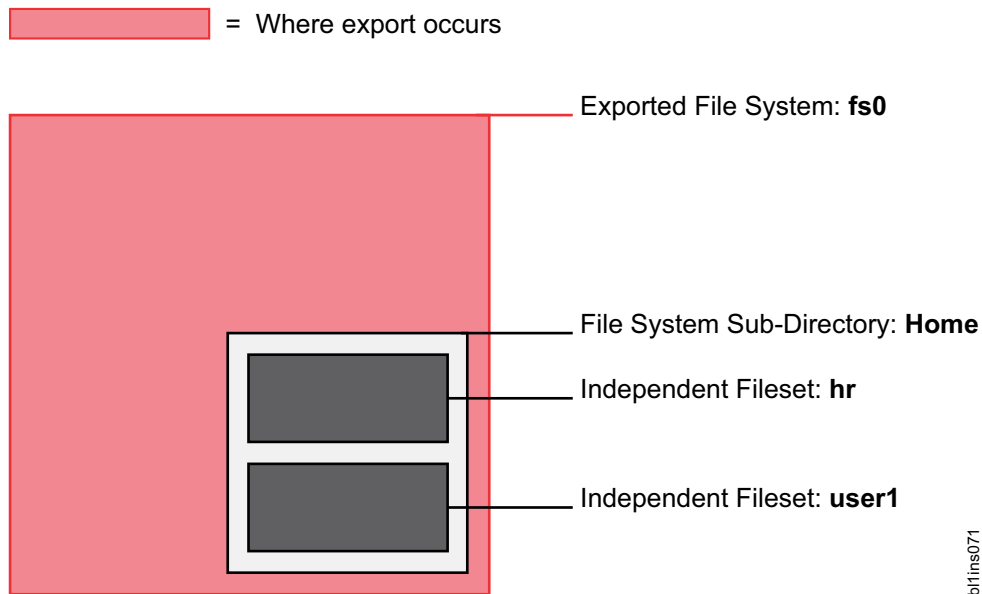
2. Create independent filesets in the root directory, linked to the subdirectory `/gpfs/fs0/home`. In the following example, it is assumed that there is a user `user1` that is a part of the group `group/HR`.

```
mmcrfileset fs0 hr_fileset --inode-space=new
mmlinkfileset fs0 hr_fileset -J /gpfs/fs0/home/hr
mmcrfileset fs0 user1_fileset --inode-space=new
mmlinkfileset fs0 user1_fileset -J /gpfs/fs0/home/user1
```

For more information, see the following commands in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

- **mncrfileset command**
  - **mmlinkfileset command**
3. Similarly, create independent filesets for other departments and users.  
 You can assign quota to each user and department via the independent filesets.  
 The NFS and SMB clients can now mount the export and access their directories.  
 Access to the data in the export directories is controlled via the group and user ACLs. In this case, only the users who are in group HR, which has group ACLs to read/write into the hr directory, can access the directory. The user user1 who is in the group group/HR can perform read/write to the user1 directory and the hr directory.

Create exports on the entire file system or on sub-directories of the file system



### Create exports on independent filesets

In this option, the independent filesets represent discrete projects. One or more exports can be created on each fileset. You can apply the Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) policies over the filesets to automate the placement and management of file data. You can protect the export data by granting access permissions to specific workstations or IP addresses. Also, data in the exports can be preserved by the independent fileset's snapshot policy.

Review the following example to better understand this option.

You are a storage administrator of a private cloud hosting storage system that stores webcam data. You want to ensure that a webcam has access only to its storage directory. Also, you want the data analyzers to access all data so that they can look for activity and generate analytical reports.

1. Create an independent fileset **web\_cam\_data**.

```
mncrfileset fs0 web_cam_data --inode-space=new
mmlinkfileset fs0 web_cam_data -J /gpfs/fs0/web_cam_data
```

Data from all webcams is stored in **/gpfs/fs0/web\_cam\_data**.

2. Create exports for both webcams.


```
mkdir /gpfs/fs0/web_cam_data/camera1
mkdir /gpfs/fs0/web_cam_data/camera2

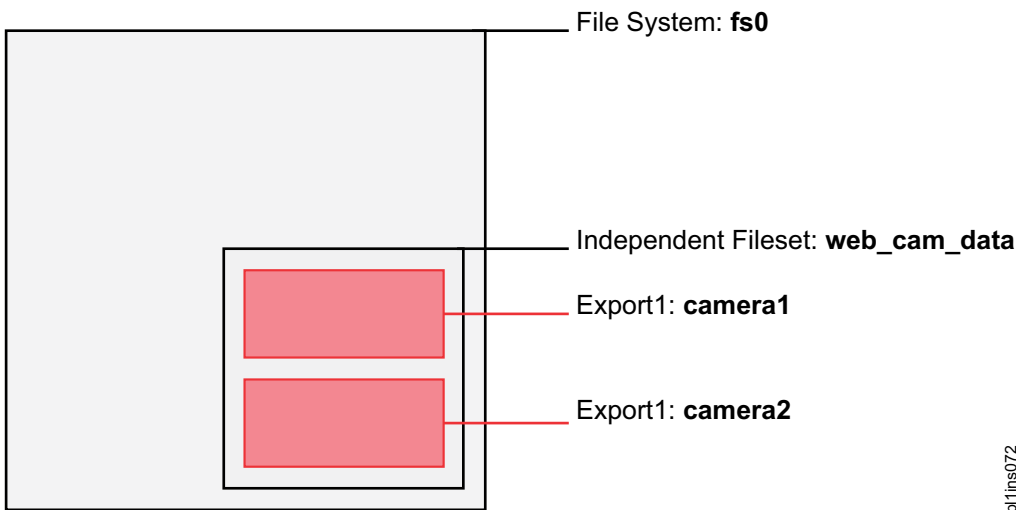
mmnfs export add "/gpfs/fs0/web_cam_data/camera1" \
```

```
-c "198.51.100.2(Access_Type=RW);203.0.113.2(Access_Type=R0);203.0.113.3(Access_Type=R0) "
mmnfs export add "/gpfs/fs0/web_cam_data/camera2" \
-c "198.51.100.3(Access_Type=RW);203.0.113.2(Access_Type=R0);203.0.113.3(Access_Type=R0) "
```

The webcam1 (IP: 198.51.100.2) mounts and records data to the camera1 export and the webcam2 (IP: 198.51.100.3) mounts and records data to the camera2 export. The data analyzers (IP: 203.0.113.2 and 203.0.113.3) are given 'Read Only' type access to both exports. Thus, the data is accessible only from the specified IP addresses.

Create exports on independent filesets

 = Where export occurs



## Backup considerations for using IBM Spectrum Protect

If you are planning to use IBM Spectrum Protect to back up IBM Spectrum Scale file systems, some considerations apply.

### Considerations for provisioning IBM Spectrum Protect servers to handle backup of IBM Spectrum Scale file systems

When backing up IBM Spectrum Scale file systems, the IBM Spectrum Protect server must be configured with adequate resources to handle a much larger load of client data, sessions, and mount points than typically encountered with single-user file systems such as workstations.

For cluster file system backup, a system architect must plan for multiple nodes (storage hosts) sending data in multiple streams, at high data rates to the server. Therefore, the IBM Spectrum Protect server must be equipped with the following:

- High bandwidth network connections to the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster
- Sufficient disk space organized into a IBM Spectrum Protect storage pool to be allocated to backup data from the cluster file system
- Sufficient number of mount points (or infinite for a disk class pool) accorded to the proxy client used for the cluster file system
- Sufficient number of IBM Spectrum Protect sessions permitted to the proxy client used for the cluster file system
- Sufficient number of physical tape drives to offload the backup data once it arrives into the disk pool

## IBM Spectrum Protect data storage model

When using IBM Spectrum Protect for backing up IBM Spectrum Scale file systems, the IBM Spectrum Protect data storage architecture and its implications need to be considered.

In IBM Spectrum Scale, the following kinds of data are stored on disk:

- The file data that is the content stored in a file.
- The file metadata that includes all attributes related to the file. For example:
  - Create, access, and modify times
  - Size of the file, size occupied in file system, and number of blocks used
  - Inode information, owner user id, owning group id, and mode bits
  - POSIX rights or access control lists (ACLs)
  - Flags to indicate whether the file is immutable or mutable, read only, or append only
  - Extended attributes (EAs)

In IBM Spectrum Protect, the same file data and metadata is stored but the method of storing this data differs. The file content is stored in a IBM Spectrum Protect storage pool such as on disk or on tape while some of the metadata is stored in the IBM Spectrum Protect database. The primary reason for storing metadata in the IBM Spectrum Protect database is to provide fast access to information useful for backup requests.

However, not all metadata is stored in the IBM Spectrum Protect database. Access control lists (ACLs) and extended attributes (EAs) are stored with the file content in the storage pool (media depends on storage pool type). This has the following implications:

- When the ACL or EA of a file changes then the next backup job backs up the whole file again. This occurs because the file content, ACL, and EA are stored together in the IBM Spectrum Protect data pool, for example on tape and they need to be updated as one entity.

**Note:** ACLs are inherited in the IBM Spectrum Scale file system. Therefore, an ACL on a top-level directory object can be inherited to all the descendant objects. ACL changes to a top-level directory object are therefore propagated down through the object tree hierarchy, rippling the change through all objects that inherited the original ACL. The number of files to be backed up increases even though nothing else in these files has changed. A surprisingly large backup workload can be induced by a seemingly small change to an ACL to a top level directory object.

When IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management capability is enabled, an ACL change such as this occurs to objects that are currently migrated to offline storage as well. These files will then need to be recalled during the next backup cycle to enable the updated ACL to be stored with the file data once again in their IBM Spectrum Protect backup storage pool.

- Renaming of a file also leads to a backup of the whole file because the IBM Spectrum Protect database is indexed by file object path name.

You can use the following approaches to mitigate the size of a backup workload when widely inherited ACLs are likely to be changed frequently.

- Avoid renaming directories that are close to the file system root.
- Avoid ACL and EA changes in migrated files as much as possible.
- Consider using the `skipacl` or `skipaclupdatecheck` options of the IBM Spectrum Protect client.

**Important:** Be certain to note the implications of using these options by referring to *Clients options reference* in the *Backup-archive Client options and commands* section of the IBM Spectrum Protect documentation set on IBM Knowledge Center.

**Note:** Using the `skipacl` option also omits EAs from the backup data store in the IBM Spectrum Protect backup pool. Using this option can be considered when static ACL structures are used that can



be reestablished through another tool or operation external to the IBM Spectrum Protect restore operation. If you are using this approach, ensure that the ACL is restored either manually or automatically, by inheritance, to avoid an unauthorized user getting access to a file or a directory after it is restored.

## How to identify backup and migration candidates

When using IBM Spectrum Protect for backing up IBM Spectrum Scale file systems, there are several choices for the method used to identify backup and migration candidates.

### Limitations when using IBM Spectrum Protect Backup-Archive client to identify backup candidates

Using IBM Spectrum Protect Backup-Archive client to traverse IBM Spectrum Scale file systems to identify backup candidates does not scale well. For this reason, using the IBM Spectrum Scale **mmapplypolicy** engine is preferable because it is much faster to scan the file system for identifying backup candidates than traversing the file system.

Therefore, for processing backups on larger file systems, use the IBM Spectrum Scale command **mmbackup** instead of using the IBM Spectrum Protect Backup-Archive client commands such as **dsmc expire** or **dsmc selective** or **dsmc incremental** directly. Using the **mmbackup** command also provides the following benefits:

- Backup activities are run in parallel by using multiple IBM Spectrum Scale cluster nodes to send backup data in parallel to the IBM Spectrum Protect server.
- **mmbackup** creates a local shadow of the IBM Spectrum Protect database in the file system and uses it along with the policy engine to identify candidate files for backup. The IBM Spectrum Protect server does not need to be queried for this information saving time when calculating the backup candidate list.
  - **mmbackup** and its use of the policy engine can select candidates faster than the **dsmc** progressive incremental operation that is bounded by walk of the file system using the POSIX directory and file status reading functions.
  - Using **dsmc selective** with lists generated by **mmbackup** is also faster than using **dsmc incremental** even with similar lists generated by **mmbackup**.

**Note:** It is recommended that scheduled backups of an IBM Spectrum Scale file system use **mmbackup** because **mmbackup** does not actively query the IBM Spectrum Protect server to calculate backup candidates. However, events such as file space deletion or file deletion executed on IBM Spectrum Protect server are not recognized until the user triggers a synchronization between the **mmbackup** shadow database and the IBM Spectrum Protect database.

The following table contains a detailed comparison of **mmbackup** and IBM Spectrum Protect Backup-Archive client backup commands:

*Table 24. Comparison of **mmbackup** and IBM Spectrum Protect Backup-Archive client backup commands*

	IBM Spectrum Scale policy-driven backup ( <b>mmbackup</b> )	IBM Spectrum Protect progressive incremental backup ( <b>dsmc incremental</b> )
Detects changes in files and sends a new copy of the file to the server.	Yes	Yes
Detects changes in metadata and updates the file metadata on the server or sends a new copy of the file to the server (for ACL/EA changes).	Yes	Yes

Table 24. Comparison of **mmbackup** and IBM Spectrum Protect Backup-Archive client backup commands (continued)

	IBM Spectrum Scale policy-driven backup ( <b>mmbackup</b> )	IBM Spectrum Protect progressive incremental backup ( <b>dsmc incremental</b> )
Detects directory move, copy, or rename functions, and sends a new copy of the file to the server.	Yes	Yes
Detects local file deletion and expires the file on the server.	Yes	Yes
Detects IBM Spectrum Protect file space deletion or node/policy changes, and sends a new copy of the file to the server.	No*	Yes
Detects file deletion from the IBM Spectrum Protect server and sends a new copy of the file to the server.	No*	Yes
Detects additions of new exclude rules and expires the file on the server.	Yes	Yes
Detects policy changes made to include rules and rebinds the file to the new storage pool.	No**	Yes
Detects copy mode and copy frequency configuration changes.	No*	Yes
Detects migration state changes (IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management) and updates the server object.	Yes	Yes
Detects that a file wasn't processed successfully during a backup operation and attempts again at the next backup.	Yes	Yes
Supports IBM Spectrum Protect Virtual Mount Points to divide a file system into smaller segments to reduce database size and contention.	No	Yes
* The <b>mmbackup</b> command queries the IBM Spectrum Protect server only once at the time of the first backup. Changes that are performed on the IBM Spectrum Protect server by using the IBM Spectrum Protect administrative client cannot be detected by <b>mmbackup</b> processing. You must rebuild the <b>mmbackup</b> shadow database if the IBM Spectrum Protect server file space changes.		
** IBM Spectrum Protect includes rules with associated management class bindings that cannot be detected by <b>mmbackup</b> processing. Therefore, <b>mmbackup</b> processing does not rebind a file if a management class changes include rules.		

If you use IBM Spectrum Protect Backup-Archive client backup commands on file systems that are otherwise handled by using **mmbackup**, the shadow database maintained by **mmbackup** loses its synchronization with the IBM Spectrum Protect inventory. In such cases, you need to resynchronize with the IBM Spectrum Protect server which will inform **mmbackup** of the recent backup activities conducted with the **dsmc** command. Resynchronization might be a very time-consuming activity for large file systems with a high number of backed up items. To avoid these scenarios, use the **mmbackup** command only.

If you have used **dsmc selective** or **dsmc incremental** since starting to use **mmbackup** and need to manually trigger a synchronization between the **mmbackup** maintained shadow database and the IBM Spectrum Protect server:

- Use the **mmbackup --rebuild** if you need to do a synchronization only.
- Use the **mmbackup -q** if you need to do a synchronization followed by a backup of the corresponding file system.

## Using the IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management client to identify migration candidates

Using IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management clients for traversing IBM Spectrum Scale file system to identify migration candidates does not scale well. The IBM Spectrum Protect **automigration** daemons consume space in the file system and also consume CPU resources. They do not have access to the internal structures of the file system in the way that the IBM Spectrum Scale **mmapplypolicy** command does, and so they cannot scale. Use the following steps instead:

1. Set the following environment variable before the installation of the IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management client to prevent the **automigration** daemons from starting during the installation:  

```
export HSMINSTALLMODE=SCOUTFREE
```

It is recommended to place this setting into the profile file of the root user.
2. Add the following option to your IBM Spectrum Protect client configuration file, **dsm.opt**, to prevent the **automigration** daemons from starting after every system reboot:  

```
HSMDISABLEAUTOMIGDAEMONS YES
```
3. Add the following option to your IBM Spectrum Protect client configuration file, **dsm.opt**, to ensure that the object ID is added to the inode, so that the file list based reconciliation (two-way-orphan-check) can be used:  

```
HSMEXTOBJidattr YES
```
4. While the **automigration** daemons are disabled, changes such as removal of migrated files are not automatically propagated to the IBM Spectrum Protect server. For housekeeping purposes, you must run the IBM Spectrum Protect reconciliation either manually or in a scheduled manner. For more information, see *Reconciling by using a GPFS policy* in the IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management documentation on IBM Knowledge Center.

## Comparison of snapshot based backups and backups from live system

Backing up large file systems can take many hours or even days. When using the IBM Spectrum Scale command **mmbackup**, time is needed for the following steps.

- Scanning the system to identify the objects that need to be backed up or expired.
- Expiring all objects removed from the system.
- Backing up all new or changed objects.

If the backup is run on the live file system while it is active, objects selected for the backup job can be backed up at different points in time. This can lead to issues when temporary or transient files that were present during the scan time are removed by the time the backup command tries to send them to the IBM Spectrum Protect server. The attempt to back up a file that is removed fails and the need to back this object up is still recorded in the shadow database.

Instead of backing up from a live file system, an alternative is to use snapshot based backups. Using the snapshot adds additional actions of creating or reusing a snapshot and removing it when the overall backup process completes. However, this approach provides several advantages because a snapshot is a point in time view of the file system that is read-only and it can be used for backing up the file system for as long as is necessary to complete the backup job. The advantages of following this approach are as follows:

- Transient or temporary files are backed up, provided they existed at the time the snapshot was taken.

- Protection against failures to back up due to server-side faults such as the IBM Spectrum Protect server running out of space. For example, if the database or storage pool becomes full or if the IBM Spectrum Protect server crashes, etc. In this case, a retry of the backup is possible for the point in time when the snapshot has been taken with no loss of function or backup.
- Retention of a backup within the system. Snapshots can be kept for a period of time providing an online backup copy of all files. This can protect against accidental deletions or modifications, and can be used to retrieve an earlier version of a file, etc.
- A means to fulfill a data protection policy even if the backup activity to IBM Spectrum Protect exceeds the nominal time window allotted. The snapshot can be kept for several days until backups are complete, and multiple snapshots can be kept until backup completes for each of them.

IBM Spectrum Scale provides the capability to create snapshots for a complete file system, known as global snapshots, and for independent filesets, known as fileset snapshots.

While snapshot based backups provide several advantages, the following considerations apply when using the snapshot capability:

- Snapshots might consume space; usually a snapshot used for backup is removed shortly after the backup operation finishes. Long lived snapshots retain their copy of the data blocks, taken from the file system's pool of free blocks. As they age, the snapshots consume more data blocks owing to the changes made in the read or write view of the file system.
- Snapshot deletion can take time depending on the number of changes that need to be handled while removing the snapshot. In general, the older a snapshot is, the more work it will require to delete it.
- Special consideration for use of IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management:
  - When a migrated file stub that is already part of a snapshot is removed, a recall is initiated to keep the snapshot consistent. This is required because removal of the stub invalidates the offline references to the stored data. The recall is to fill blocks on disk and assign them to the snapshot view. Once the stub is removed from the file system and a reconcile process removes this file from the Space Management pool on the IBM Spectrum Protect server, there are no longer any references to the file data except the snapshot copy.

## File system and fileset backups with IBM Spectrum Protect

Starting with IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.1, **mmbbackup** supports backup from independent filesets in addition to backup of the whole file system. Independent filesets have similar capabilities as a file system in terms of quota management, dependent filesets, snapshots, and having their own inode space.

Fileset **mmbbackup** provides a finer granularity for backup purposes and permits the administrator to:

- Have different backup schedules for different filesets. For example, providing the flexibility that filesets containing more important data to be backed up more often than other filesets.
- Have a fileset dedicated for temporary or transient files or files that do not need to be backed up.
- Use file system backups in conjunction with fileset backup to implement a dual data protection scheme such that file system backup goes to one IBM Spectrum Protect server while fileset backup goes to a different IBM Spectrum Protect server.

Backups of file systems and independent filesets are controlled by using the **mmbbackup** option **--scope**.

In the examples used in this topic, the following environment is assumed:

```
tsm server name      => tsm1,tsm2,...
file system device name => gpfs0 or /dev/gpfs0
file system mountpoint => /gpfs0
```

```
fileset names/junction path
```

```
-----
depfset1,depfset2,... /gpfs0/depfset1,/gpfs0/depfset2 for dependent filesets
indepfset1,indepfset2,... /gpfs0/indepfset1,/ibm/gpfs0/indepfset2 for independent filesets
```

## File system backup

File system backup protects the whole file system. The default value for option `--scope` is `filesystem` and thus it can be omitted.

To back up the `gpfs0` file system in its entirety to the IBM Spectrum Protect server named `tsm1`, use the following command:

```
mmbackup gpfs0 --tsm-servers tsm1
mmbackup gpfs0 --tsm-servers tsm1 --scope filesystem
mmbackup /dev/gpfs0 --tsm-servers tsm1
mmbackup /dev/gpfs0 --tsm-servers tsm1 --scope filesystem
mmbackup /gpfs0 --tsm-servers tsm1
mmbackup /gpfs0 --tsm-servers tsm1 --scope filesystem
```

This example shows the file system backup of `gpfs0` using the short or long device name (first 4 lines) or the mount point as a directory input (last 2 lines).

## Independent fileset backup

Independent fileset backup protects all files that belong to the inode space of a single independent fileset. The backup of an independent fileset might include other dependent filesets and folders, but not nested independent filesets because each independent fileset has its own inode space.

The following information describes the **mmbackup** capability to support independent fileset. The examples with IBM Spectrum Protect show the potential/likely use of this capability.

To back up the independent fileset `indepfset1` of the file system `gpfs0` to IBM Spectrum Protect server named `tsm1`, use the following command:

```
mmbackup /gpfs0/indepfset1 --tsm-servers tsm1 --scope inodespace
```

Fileset backup is an additional option to existing IBM Spectrum Scale backup or data protection options. Therefore, starting with a file system in which the whole file system has already been backed up on a regular basis, administrators can also start protecting data with fileset backup on some or all filesets. Administrators may choose to utilize fileset backup at any time, with no limit. It is not required to back up the whole file system in either one mode or another unless the chosen data protection approach requires it. Also, administrators can choose different IBM Spectrum Protect servers for some or all fileset backups if it is desired to have these on separate servers. For example, a valid configuration may have one IBM Spectrum Protect server that only gets whole file system backups, and a different one for fileset backups.

**Note:** When mixing file system and fileset backup on the same IBM Spectrum Protect server, consider that a target file that is handled by both backup approaches gets backed up twice. Each backup activity consumes one storage version of the file. Thus, the same file version is stored twice on the IBM Spectrum Protect server.

If migrating to use only fileset backup to protect the whole file systems, ensure that all independent filesets are backed up and keep the backup of all filesets current. Remember to include a backup of the root fileset as well by using a command such as:

```
mmbackup /gpfs/gpfs0 --scope inode-space --tsm-servers tsm1
```

To verify the completeness of the data protection using fileset backup only, use the following steps:

1. Identify all independent filesets available in the file system by using the following command:

```
mmllsfileset device -L
```

Identify the independent filesets by the `InodeSpace` column. The value identifies the corresponding inode space or independent fileset while the first occurrence refers to the corresponding fileset name and fileset path.

**Note:** Ensure that a backup is maintained of the fileset called `root` that is created when the file system is created and that can be seen as the first fileset of the file system.

2. For every identified independent fileset, verify that a shadow database exists as follows:
  - a. Check for the file `.mmbackupShadow.<digit>.<TSMserverName>.fileset` in the fileset junction directory.
  - b. If the file exists, determine the time of last backup by looking at the header line of this file. The backup date is stored as last value of this line.

For example:

```
head -n1 /gpfs0/indepfset1/.mmbackupShadow.*.fileset
%mmshadow0%:00_BACKUP_FILES_41:1400:/gpfs0:mmbackup:1:Mon Apr 20 13:48:45 2015
```

Where *Mon Apr 20 13:48:45 2015* in this example is the time of last backup taken for this fileset.

3. If any independent filesets are missing their corresponding `.mmbackupShadow.*` files, or if they exist but are older than the data protection limit for their backup time, then start or schedule a backup of these filesets.

**Note:** This action needs to be done for every file system for which the fileset backup approach is chosen.

**Note:** Backup of a nested independent fileset is not supported. To work around this limitation, unlink the nested fileset and link it at another location in the root fileset prior to beginning to use fileset backup pervasively.

## Considerations for using fileset backup with IBM Spectrum Protect

IBM Spectrum Protect stores backup data indexed by file or directory object path names in its database. However, file system objects are identified for HSM by their object ID extended attributes. In both cases, IBM Spectrum Protect is not aware of the fileset entity. Therefore, the fileset configuration of an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is neither backed up nor can it be restored by IBM Spectrum Protect alone, unless separate action is taken.

IBM Spectrum Scale does provide commands such as `mmbackupconfig` and `mmrestoreconfig` to backup and restore file system configuration data.

Even though backups of independent filesets may be stored on a plurality of IBM Spectrum Protect servers, IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management can only utilize one server per managed file system if `mmbackup` is used on that file system and sends the backup data to that same server. IBM Spectrum Protect HSM multiserver feature is not integrated with the `mmbackup` command.

If space management is enabled for a IBM Spectrum Scale file system, and a plurality of IBM Spectrum Protect servers are utilized for backup, the following limitations apply to the use of IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management:

- The setting of `migrequiresbkup` cannot be utilized since the server for space management might not have access to the database for the server doing backup on a particular object.
- The *inline copy* feature that allows the backup of a migrated object through copying data internally from the HSM pool to the backup pool inside the IBM Spectrum Protect server cannot be utilized since migrated data may reside on a different server than the one performing the backup.

The following special considerations apply when using fileset backup with IBM Spectrum Protect:

- IBM Spectrum Protect Backup-Archive client does not restore fileset configuration information. Therefore, a full file system backup is not sufficient for disaster recovery when the whole file system structure needs to be recovered.
- Nested independent filesets cannot be backed up when using the fileset backups. Resolve the nesting before starting to protect the data with `mmbackup` on each fileset.

- The following operations are discouraged: fileset unlink, fileset junction path change via unlink and link operations, fileset deletion. These operations will incur a heavy load on the IBM Spectrum Protect server at the next backup activity due to the significant alteration of the path name space that result from these operations. If a fileset must be moved in the file system, be prepared for the extra time that might be required to run the next backup.
- If only utilizing fileset backup, be sure to include every fileset, including the root fileset to ensure complete data protection.
- When both file system and fileset backups use the same IBM Spectrum Protect server, new and changed files may be unintentionally backed up twice. This consumes two of the file versions stored in the IBM Spectrum Protect server with the same file data.  
Loss of data protection may occur if a fileset is unlinked or deleted for an extended period of time and the objects formerly contained in that fileset are allowed to expire from the backup sets.
- Do not move, rename, or relink a fileset, unless a new full backup of the fileset is expected to be made immediately after the restructuring occurs. IBM Spectrum Protect server only recognizes objects in backup only as long as they remain in their original path name from the root of the file tree (mount point).

The following special considerations apply when using fileset backup and IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management:

- When using fileset backup to different IBM Spectrum Protect servers, the server setting **migrequiresbkup** must be set to NO to be able to migrate files.
- Automatic server selection for backup by **mmbackup** is not supported and therefore the IBM Spectrum Protect *multiple HSM server* feature is not integrated with **mmbackup** data protection of IBM Spectrum Scale. Using fileset backup to different IBM Spectrum Protect servers in conjunction with the *multiple HSM server* feature requires special handling and configuration because backup and space management rules must match so that files are handled by the same IBM Spectrum Protect server.

## Considerations for backing up file systems that are HSM space managed with IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management

When IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management is used to migrate data to secondary storage pools (for example, tape volumes), this migrated data might need to be recalled to disk if the file becomes a backup candidate due to certain changes a user may apply to it.

Recall will automatically occur synchronously if the user attempts to change the file data. However, no synchronous recall occurs in the following scenarios:

- If a user changes the owner, group, mode, access control list, or extended attributes of the file.
- If the user renames the file or any of the parent directories of the file.

Any of these changes, however does make the file a candidate for the next **mmbackup** invocation. When **mmbackup** supplies the path to a migrated file to IBM Spectrum Protect for backup, synchronous recall will occur. This can lead to a "Recall Storm" in which tape library and IBM Spectrum Protect server resources become overburdened handling many simultaneous recall requests. Disk space is also consumed immediately by recalled data. These are undesirable outcomes and can interfere with the normal processing of the customer's workload.

Since **mmbackup** is able to discern that the data was migrated for such files, it will defer the backup, and instead append a record referring to the file's path name into a special file in the root of the file system, or fileset in the case of fileset-level backup. This list can then be used by the system administrator to schedule recall of the deferred files data to permit the backup to occur on the next invocation of the **mmbackup** command. By deferring the recall to the system administrator, **mmbackup** prevents unexpected, excessive tape library activity which might occur if many such migrated files were nominated for backup due to user actions such as renaming a high level directory or changing owner, group, or modes on many files.

The system administrator must schedule the recall for the migrated objects omitted by **mmbackup** according to the availability of tape and disk resources in the cluster. For information about optimized tape recall, see *Optimized tape recall processing* in the IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management documentation in IBM Knowledge Center.

## Planning for Quality of Service for I/O operations (QoS)

With the Quality of Service for I/O operations (QoS) capability, you can run a GPFS maintenance command without the risk of it dominating file system I/O performance and significantly delaying other tasks.

The GPFS *maintenance commands* are a group of about 20 potentially long-running, I/O-intensive commands that can generate hundreds or thousands of requests for I/O operations per second. This high demand for I/O can greatly slow down normal tasks that are competing for the same I/O resources. With QoS, you can assign an instance of a maintenance command to a QoS class that has a lesser I/O priority. Although the instance of the maintenance command now takes longer to run to completion, normal tasks have greater access to I/O resources and run more quickly. The maintenance commands are listed in the help topic for the *mmchqos* command in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

Note the following requirements and limitations:

- QoS requires the file system to be at V4.2.0.0 or later.
- QoS works with asynchronous I/O, memory-mapped I/O, cached I/O, and buffered I/O. However, with direct I/O, QoS counts the I/O operations per second (IOPS) but does not regulate them.
- When you change allocations, mount the file system, or re-enable QoS, a brief delay due to reconfiguration occurs before QoS starts applying allocations.

To set up QoS, you allocate shares of I/O operations per second (IOPS) to two QoS classes, **maintenance** and **other**. Each storage pool has these two classes. The **maintenance** class is the class in which the GPFS maintenance commands run by default. Typically you assign a smaller share of IOPS to this class so that the commands in it do not overwhelm the file system with I/O requests. The **other** class is the class to which all other processes belong. Typically you assign an unlimited number of IOPS to this class so that normal processes have greater access to I/O resources and finish more quickly.

When a process issues an I/O request, QoS first finds the QoS class to which the process belongs. It then finds whether the class has any I/O operations available for consumption. If so, QoS allows the I/O operation. If not, then QoS queues the request until more I/O operations become available for the class. For a particular storage pool, all instances of maintenance commands that are running concurrently compete for the IOPS that you allocated to the **maintenance** class of that storage pool. Similarly, all processes that belong to the **other** class compete for the IOPS that you allocated to the **other** class of that storage pool. If no processes in the **maintenance** class are running, processes in the **other** class can also compete for the maintenance IOPS.

If you do not configure a storage pool for QoS, then processes compete for I/O operations in that storage pool in the normal way without interference.

By default, for both the **maintenance** class and the **other** class, QoS divides the IOPS allocation equally among the nodes of the cluster that have the file system mounted. For example, you might assign 1000 IOPS to the **maintenance** class of storage pool SP1. If your allocation applies to all the nodes in the cluster (the default setting) and the cluster has five nodes, then the **maintenance** class of each node gets an allocation of 200 IOPS for storage pool SP1. At run time, on each node all processes that belong to the **maintenance** class and that access storage pool SP1 compete for the 200 IOPS.

You can also divide IOPS among a list of nodes, a user-defined node class, or the nodes of a remote cluster that is served by the file system.



To get started with QoS, follow the steps that are outlined in the topic *Setting the Quality of Service for I/O operations (QoS)* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

Use the **mmchqos** command to allocate IOPS to the QoS classes **maintenance** and **other**. You can set up allocations for one pool or several pools in one call to the command. You can designate a single node, several nodes, or all the nodes in the current cluster to participate in the QoS operations. You can also designate the nodes in a remote cluster to participate. To preserve a particular configuration, you can set up a stanza file that the **mmchqos** command reads when it runs.

You can reset or change IOPS allocations at any time without unmounting the file system. You can also disable QoS at any time without losing your IOPS allocations. When you reenables QoS, it resumes applying the allocations.

Remember the following points:

- You can allocate shares of IOPS separately for each storage pool.
- QoS divides each IOPS allocation equally among the specified nodes that mounted the file system.
- Allocations persist across unmounting and remounting the file system.
- QoS stops applying allocations when you unmount the file system and resumes when you remount it.

Use the **mmlsqos** command to display the consumption of IOPS. The command displays data for subperiods within the period that you specify. You can configure the type of information that is displayed. You can display information for specified storage pools or for all storage pools. You can display information for various time periods, from 1 second up to about 15 minutes. You can display I/O performance for each QoS class separately or summed together. You can also display the I/O performance of each node separately or summed across the participating nodes.

## Planning for extended attributes

IBM Spectrum Scale supports extended attributes for files, directories, block devices, pipes, and named sockets in a file system.

Extended file attributes are key-value pairs that can be set programmatically by the file system, by other middleware such as the Data Management API, by the operating system, or by users. The name of an extended attribute consists of a namespace name followed by a dot followed by an attribute name, as in the following extended attribute names:

```
gpfs.Encryption
user.swift.metadata
system.posix_acl_access
```

The public namespaces are *system*, *security*, *trusted*, and *user*. IBM Spectrum Scale has a few private namespaces, which include *gpfs* and *dmapl*.

You can access extended attributes in the public namespaces through operating system commands and functions. Linux has commands such as `setfattr` and `getfattr` and functions such as `setxattr()` and `getxattr()` for accessing extended attributes.

- In Linux, the following facts are relevant:
  - You must have root-level access to work with extended attributes in the *system*, *security*, and *trusted* namespaces.
  - To set an extended attribute for a file or file object (directory, block device, pipe, or named socket) you must have write access to the entity.
- In Windows, the following facts are relevant:
  - You must log on as an administrator to work with extended attributes in the *system*, *security*, and *trusted* namespaces.

- Windows has file permissions for reading and writing extended attributes that are separate from its file permissions for reading or writing file data.
- In AIX, the following facts are relevant:
  - IBM Spectrum Scale does not support AIX commands or functions that access extended attributes.

However, the native operating system commands and functions that are described in the preceding paragraph cannot access the private namespaces of IBM Spectrum Scale:

- To access extended attributes in the private **gpfs** name space, you can make calls with the GPFS programming interfaces.
- To access extended attributes in the private **dmapi** namespace, you can make calls with the IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management API.

For more information, see the topic *gpfs\_stat\_x()* subroutine and *IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management API for GPFS information* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

**Note:** For example, in Linux, the **cp** command with the **--preserve=all** parameter does not copy extended attributes that belong to the private IBM Spectrum Scale namespaces.

You can access the extended attributes in the IBM Spectrum Scale private namespaces only through IBM Spectrum Scale resources, which are described following. These resources can also access the extended attributes in the public namespaces. IBM Spectrum Scale supports these resources on all platforms, Linux, Windows, and AIX:

- The rules for automating file management include a set of functions for accessing, setting, and evaluating extended attributes. For more information, see *Extended attribute functions* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
- The **mmchattr** and **mmlsattr** commands provide parameters to create, set, get, or delete extended attributes. For more information, see *mmchattr command* and *mmlsattr command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference* guide.

**Note:** The **mmchattr** command does not set some DMAPI extended attributes because of their side effects. However, you can set these extended attributes through DMAPI. For more information, see *IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management API for GPFS information* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference* guide.

- The GPFS programming interfaces include a set of subroutines for getting and setting extended attributes. For more information, see *GPFS programming interfaces* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference* guide.

*Fast extended attributes* are extended attributes that are stored in the inode of the file or file object so that they can be read or written quickly. Some features of IBM Spectrum Scale require support for fast extended attributes, such as DMAPI, file encryption, and file heat. To work with fast extended attributes, you use exactly the same methods that you use with regular extended attributes.

The following features in IBM Spectrum Scale also handle extended attributes:

- Limitations:
  - Extended attributes are not encrypted when a file is encrypted.
  - Extended attributes cannot be added, deleted, or modified in an immutable or an appendOnly file. This restriction does not apply to extended attributes in the **dmapi** or **gpfs** namespaces.
- Size:
  - To determine the maximum permitted size of extended attributes, see Q6.11 in IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfscclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfscclustersfaq.html)).

- Fast extended attributes are stored first in the inode of a file, then, if more space is needed, in a maximum of one overflow block. The overflow block is the same size as the current metadata block size. The maximum space in the overflow block for storing extended attributes is the minimum of 64 KB or the metadata block size.
- Administration commands:
  - The **mmafmconfig** command has parameters that enable or disable extended attributes or sparse file support in the AFM cache.
  - The **mmclone** command does not copy extended attributes.
  - See the administration commands in the item "Back up and restore" following.
- Encryption:
  - In encryption, file extension keys (FEKs) are stored in the gpfs.Encryption extended attribute. It is a good idea to create a file system with an inode size of 4 K or larger to accommodate FEKs that are encrypted several times. If you encounter an error message that says that the extended attributes are too large, you must either change the encryption policy so that the file key is wrapped fewer times, reduce the number of keys that are used to wrap a file key, or create a file system that has a larger inode size. For more information, see the following links:
    - *Encryption policies in the IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*
    - *Preparation for encryption in the IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*
    - *Error message 6027-3470 [E] in the IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*
- Back up and restore:
  - Scale Out Backup and Restore (SOBAR) preserves and restores extended attributes. For more information, see *Scale Out Backup and Restore (SOBAR) in the IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
  - The **mmbackup** and **mmrestorefs** commands preserve extended attributes. The **mmrestorefs** command has options to restore encryption attributes and to not restore external attributes. The IBM Spectrum Protect product has a setting in the `dsm.sys` configuration file that omits backing up a file if only an extended attribute is changed (SKIPACLUPDATECHECK). For more information, see *Options in the IBM Spectrum Protect configuration file dsm.opt in the IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
  - The **mmrestorefs** command has options to restore encryption attributes and to not restore external attributes.
- Disaster recovery
  - In outband disaster recovery, if you are transferring files that contain extended attributes, such as object data, you must use a method that transfers extended attributes, such as IBM Spectrum Protect, cross-cluster mount, or AFM. For more information, see *Creating the outband disaster recovery setup in the IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
- Objects
  - In unified file and object access, the identity management modes **local\_mode** and **unified\_mode** have settings for retaining extended attributes. You can set values in the `object-server-sof.conf` configuration file to copy extended attributes, Windows attributes, and ACLs from an existing object. For more information, see the following links:
    - *Identity management modes for unified file and object access in the IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*
    - *Configuring authentication and ID mapping for file access in the IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*
- NFS v4
  - NFS v4 uses extended attributes to store some of its file attributes. For more information, see *Linux ACLs and extended attributes in the IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

Support for extended attributes began in GPFS v2.1. Support for fast extended attributes began in GPFS v3.4. In IBM Spectrum Scale v4.1 and after, fast extended attributes are enabled by default for a file system when the file system is created. For more information, see *File system format changes* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

If you are upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale v3.3 to v3.4 or later, you must explicitly enable fast extended attributes in file systems that were created earlier than v3.4. After you upgrade IBM Spectrum Scale to the new level, enter the following command to enable extended attributes:

```
mmigratefs <Device> --fastea
```

where <Device> is the device ID of the file system. To verify that extended attributes are enabled, issue the following command:

```
mmfsfs <Device> --fastea
```

For more information, see “Completing the upgrade to a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale” on page 464.

## Planning for the Highly Available Write Cache feature (HAWC)

Learn about the Highly Available Write Cache feature (HAWC).

### Components that HAWC interacts with

HAWC interacts with several fundamental components of IBM Spectrum Scale. You might want to review these components before you read about HAWC.

#### System storage pool

The *system storage pool* or *system pool* is a required storage pool that contains information that IBM Spectrum Scale uses to manage a file system. Each file system has only one system storage pool, which is automatically created when the file system is created. The system storage pool contains the following types of information:

- Control information (such as file system control structures, reserved files, directories, symbolic links, special devices)
- The metadata associated with regular files, including indirect blocks and extended attributes
- Regular file data, if the usage=dataAndMetadata option is set in the NSD stanza for a system storage pool NSD
- The file system recovery logs (default location)

#### System.log storage pool

The *system.log* storage pool is an optional dedicated storage pool that contains only the file system recovery logs. If you define this pool, then IBM Spectrum Scale uses it for all the file system recovery logs of the file system. Otherwise, the file system recovery logs are kept in the system storage pool. It is a good practice for the system.log pool to consist of storage media that is as fast as or faster than the storage media of the system storage pool. If the storage is nonvolatile, this pool can be used for the high-availability write cache (HAWC).

#### File system recovery logs

A *file system recovery log* is a write-ahead log or journal of I/O metadata that describes pending write operations for a node of a file system. In IBM Spectrum Scale, it is also sometimes referred to as the recovery log, the GPFS log, or the IBM Spectrum Scale log. IBM Spectrum Scale creates and maintains a separate recovery log for every node that mounts a file system. Recovery logs are stored in the system storage pool by default or in the system.log storage pool if one is defined. The recovery logs can be read by any node that mounts the file system. If a node is unexpectedly shut down while write operations are pending for one of its hard disks, IBM Spectrum Scale can read the recovery log for the failed node and restore the file system to a consistent state. The recovery can occur immediately, without having to wait for the failed node to return.

The recovery logs are also used by HAWC to temporarily store HAWC write data and metadata.

## Page pool

The *page pool* is an area of pinned memory (memory that is never paged to disk) that contains file data and metadata associated with in-progress I/O operations. When IBM Spectrum Scale processes a file write operation, the first step is putting the write data and metadata for the write operation into the page pool. At an appropriate time, another thread writes the data to a hard disk and removes it from the page pool.

## HAWC operation

The high-availability write cache is a disk-caching component that includes caching software and nonvolatile storage. HAWC also uses the file system recovery logs, in which the file system records metadata about its pending write operations. For HAWC purposes, the recovery logs must be located in nonvolatile storage.

When a file write operation arrives at a node, the first part of the processing is the same whether HAWC is active or not. The write data and metadata are copied into an entry in the page pool and the entry is added to a list of similar entries that are waiting for processing. When the entry is processed, the processing depends on whether HAWC is active.

**Note:** If the write operation is nonsynchronous, it returns to its caller after its write data and metadata are copied into the page pool entry. If the write operation is synchronous, it waits for a notification that the file data has been written to disk.

When HAWC is not active, the write data is copied from the page pool entry and written to the file on hard disk. If the write operation is synchronous, the system notifies the write operation that the write is successful and it returns to its caller.

When HAWC is active, the write data can take either of two paths:

- If the write operation is synchronous and the size of the file data is less than or equal to the write data threshold, HAWC copies the file data from the page pool entry into the recovery log, along with any I/O metadata that is required for recovery. The *write data threshold* variable is set by the **mmcrfs** command or the **mmchfs** command. Next HAWC notifies the original write operation that the file data is successfully written to hard disk. In fact, the file data is not written to hard disk yet, although it is preserved in the recovery log as a backup. HAWC then starts a write-behind thread that eventually writes the file data to the hard disk. When the data is safely written, HAWC purges the file data and I/O metadata from the recovery log, because it is no longer needed.
- If the write operation is not synchronous or if the size of the write data is greater than the write cache threshold, then the write data follows the same path that is followed when HAWC is not active. The system copies the write data from the page pool entry and writes it to hard disk. If the original write operation is synchronous, the system notifies it that the file data is safely written to the hard disk.

HAWC improves the performance of small synchronous write operations in two ways. First, it allows synchronous write operations to return the calling application as soon as the write data is written into the recovery log. The calling application does not have to wait for the much lengthier process of writing the data to hard disk. Second, the HAWC caching software can consolidate small sequential writes into one larger write. This consolidation eliminates all but one of the initial disk seeks that is required if the data is written as multiple writes.

The write-cache threshold variable can be adjusted by specifying a value for the **--write-cache-threshold** parameter of the **mmchfs** command. The valid range is 0 - 64 K in multiples of 4 K. You can also set this variable when you create the file system by specifying the same parameter in the **mmcrfs** command. Setting the write cache threshold to zero disables HAWC. You can update the write threshold variable at any time; the file system does not have to be mounted on the node.

## HAWC storage scenarios

You can set up the HAWC storage in either of two configurations or scenarios. In the first scenario, the nonvolatile storage is located in a centralized fast storage device, such as a controller with SSDs:

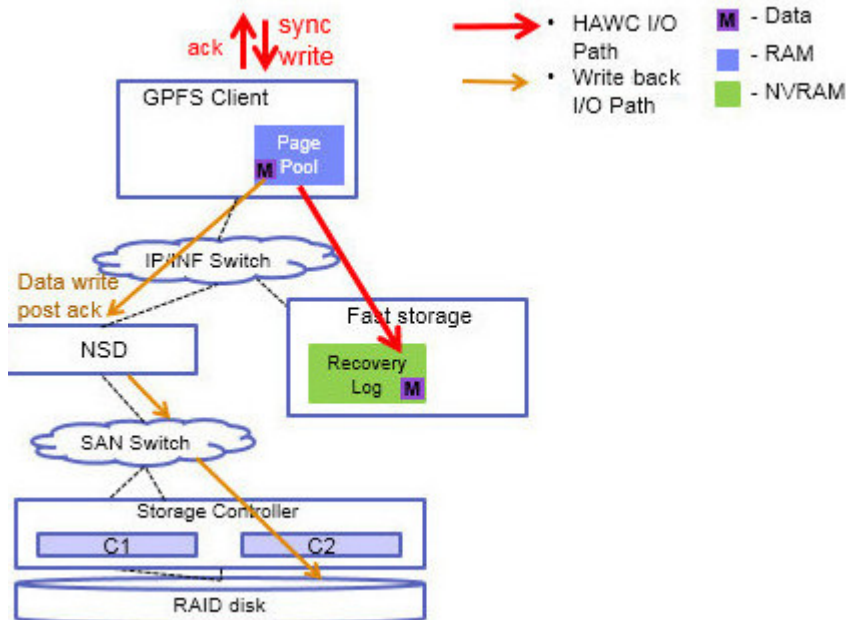


Figure 27. Shared fast storage

In this scenario, when a synchronous write operation arrives at a node, the file data and metadata are copied a page pool entry in the usual way. If the size of the file data is less than the write data threshold, HAWC copies the file data into the recovery log along with any I/O metadata that is required for recovery. Next, HAWC returns an acknowledgment to the write operation that indicates that the file data is successfully written to hard disk. HAWC then starts a write-behind thread that eventually writes the file data to the hard disk. When the data is safely written, HAWC purges the file data and I/O metadata for the write operation from the recovery log.

In the second scenario, the nonvolatile storage consists of multiple storage devices that are distributed across some or all of the nodes in the cluster:

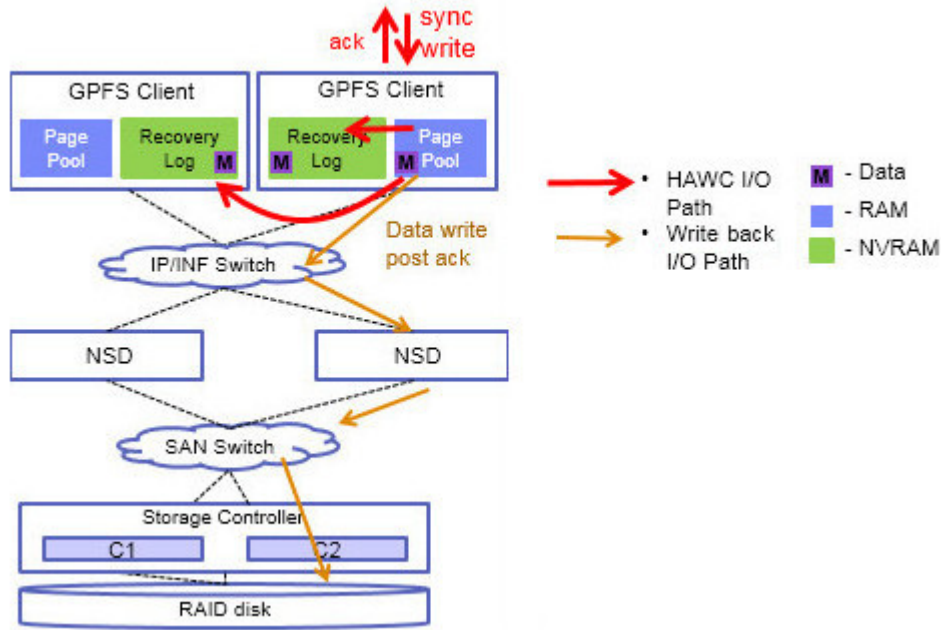


Figure 28. Distributed fast storage

Although the hardware configuration is different in the second scenario, the data flow is similar to the data flow of the first scenario. The synchronous write operation arrives at a node and the write data and I/O metadata are written into a page pool entry. If the size of the write data is smaller than the write storage threshold, HAWC copies the file data and relevant I/O metadata to the recovery log. The data is striped over the various disks that belong to the recovery log storage pool. HAWC returns a successful acknowledgment to the synchronous write operation and starts a write-behind thread that later writes the file data from the page pool entry to a hard disk. When the data is safely written, HAWC purges the file data and I/O metadata from the recovery log.

## HAWC software configuration

After you install the nonvolatile storage devices, complete the following steps to configure IBM Spectrum Scale for HAWC. These steps assume that you are adding HAWC storage to an existing file system:

1. Stop the GPFS daemon on all the nodes of the cluster.
2. Create NSD stanzas for the nonvolatile storage devices. In the stanza, specify one storage pool for all the nonvolatile storage devices, which must be either the system pool or the system.log pool.
3. Run `mmcrnsd` to create the NSDs.
4. Run `mmaddisk` to add the NSDs to the file system and to create the system.log pool if necessary.
5. Start the GPFS daemons on all nodes.
6. Optionally, run the `mmchfs` command with the `-L` parameter to set the size of the recovery logs to a non-default value.
7. Optionally, run the `mmchfs` command with the `--log-replicas` parameter to set the number of replicas of the recovery log to a non-default value. This option is applicable only if the recovery logs are stored in the system.log pool.
8. To activate HAWC, run the `mmchfs` command with the `--write-cache-threshold` parameter set to a nonzero value.

HAWC is now active.

## Planning for systemd

IBM Spectrum Scale supports systemd version 219 and later on Linux operating systems.

IBM Spectrum Scale automatically installs and configures itself as a systemd service in systems that have systemd version 219 or later installed. The service unit files are installed in the `systemd lib` directory, as shown in the following list:

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux and SUSE Linux Enterprise Server:  
`/usr/lib/systemd/system`
- Ubuntu:  
`/lib/systemd/system`

IBM Spectrum Scale includes the following systemd services. For references to IBM Spectrum Scale daemons, see the descriptions that immediately follow this list:

**gpfs** Starts or stops the GPFS daemon (**mmfsd**).

#### **mmccrmonitor**

Starts or stops the **mmccrmonitor** daemon. This service is enabled to start at boot time. It runs all the time. If it is killed by some means other than the systemd **systemctl** command, restart it manually with the **systemctl** command.

#### **mmautoload**

Starts the **mmautoload** daemon after the node is rebooted and also starts the GPFS daemon if autostart is specified. This service also shuts down the GPFS daemon when the operating system shuts down.

The systemd manager invokes this service when the node is shut down or rebooted. This service is enabled to start at boot time after **mmccrmonitor** is started. It cannot be started or stopped with the systemd **systemctl** command.

#### **mmsdrserv**

Starts or stops the **mmsdrserv** daemon. This service is started after the node is rebooted and is stopped after the GPFS daemon is started. It is also stopped as needed by other GPFS systemd services.

#### **mmsysmon**

Starts or stops system health monitoring in a cluster in which the Clustered Configuration Repository (CCR) is enabled. This service is enabled to start when the node is booted and is meant to run continuously until the node is shut down. It also can be started by other services.

**lxtrace** Does trace operations. This service is controlled by the **mmtracectl** command. Do not start or stop this service with the **systemctl** command.

#### **Descriptions of the IBM Spectrum Scale daemons:**

- The GPFS daemon (**mmfsd**) is the main IBM Spectrum Scale daemon that runs on the node.
- The **mmccrmonitor** daemon starts and stops the **mmsdrserv** daemon if **mmfsd** is not running.
- The **mmsdrserv** daemon provides access to configuration data to the rest of the nodes in the cluster when the **mmfsd** daemon is not running.
- The **mmautoload** daemon sets up GPFS resources when the operating system is started.

---

## **Planning for protocols**

Review this CES protocols (NFS, SMB, and object) deployment planning information before deploying protocols.

## **Authentication considerations**

To enable read and write access to directories and files for the users on the IBM Spectrum Scale system, you must configure user authentication on the system. Only one user authentication method, and only one instance of that method, can be supported.



The following authentication services can be configured with the IBM Spectrum Scale system for file protocol access:

- Microsoft Active Directory (AD). For more information, see Table 26.
- Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP). For more information, see Table 25.
- Network Information Service (NIS) for NFS client access. For more information, see Table 27.

The following authentication services can be configured with the IBM Spectrum Scale system for object access:

- Microsoft Active Directory (AD). For more information, see Table 29 on page 204.
- Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP). For more information, see Table 28 on page 204.
- Local authentication. For more information, see Table 30 on page 204.
- User defined. For more information, see Table 31 on page 204.

The following matrix gives a quick overview of the supported authentication configurations for both file and object access.

- ✓: Supported
- X: Not supported
- NA: Not applicable

## File Protocol Authentication and ID mapping matrices

*Table 25. Authentication support matrix when LDAP is the Authentication service being used*

Authentication method	ID mapping method	SMB	SMB with Kerberos	NFSV3	NFSV3 with Kerberos	NFSV4	NFSV4 with Kerberos
LDAP with TLS	LDAP	✓	NA	✓	NA	✓	NA
LDAP with Kerberos	LDAP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
LDAP with Kerberos and TLS	LDAP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
LDAP without TLS and without Kerberos	LDAP	✓	NA	✓	NA	✓	NA

*Table 26. Authentication support matrix when AD is the Authentication service being used*

Authentication method	ID mapping method	SMB	SMB with Kerberos	NFSV3	NFSV3 with Kerberos	NFSV4	NFSV4 with Kerberos
AD	Automatic	✓	✓	X	X	X	X
AD	RFC2307	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
AD	LDAP	✓	✓	✓	X	X	X

*Table 27. Authentication support matrix when NIS is the Authentication service being used*

Authentication method	ID mapping method	SMB	SMB with Kerberos	NFSV3	NFSV3 with Kerberos	NFSV4	NFSV4 with Kerberos
NIS	NIS	NA	NA	✓	NA	✓	NA

**Note:** "Local" and "user-defined" authentications are not supported for File protocol.

### Object Protocol Authentication Matrices

*Table 28. Authentication support matrix when LDAP is the Authentication service being used*

Authentication method	Object
LDAP with TLS	✓
LDAP with Kerberos	NA
LDAP with Kerberos and TLS	NA
LDAP with SSL	✓
LDAP without TLS and without Kerberos	✓

*Table 29. Authentication support matrix when AD is the Authentication service being used*

Authentication method	Object
AD	✓
AD with SSL	✓
AD with TLS	✓

*Table 30. Authentication support matrix when "local" is the Authentication service being used*

Authentication method	Object
Local	✓
Local (OpenStack Keystone)	✓
Local (OpenStack Keystone) with SSL	✓

*Table 31. Authentication support matrix when "user defined" is the Authentication service being used*

Authentication method	Object
User defined	✓

#### **Note:**

- NIS is not supported for Object protocol.
- When making use of Unified file and object access (serving same data with file as well as with object), select the appropriate authentication service. For more information, see the *Administering unified file and object access* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

For information on a complete list of supported authentication configurations for both file and Object protocols, see "General authentication support matrix" on page 213.

**Unified Identity between Object & File :** In this case, we need to make sure that the users get the same user UID and GID across POSIX, NFS, SMB, and Object. Therefore, only the following authentication mechanisms are supported:

- Object configured with AD and File with the same AD where the user/group ID is available on AD+RFC 2307
- Object configured with LDAP and File with the same LDAP where the user/group ID is available on LDAP

For more information, see the *Administering unified file and object access* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

The following diagram shows the high-level overview of the authentication configuration.

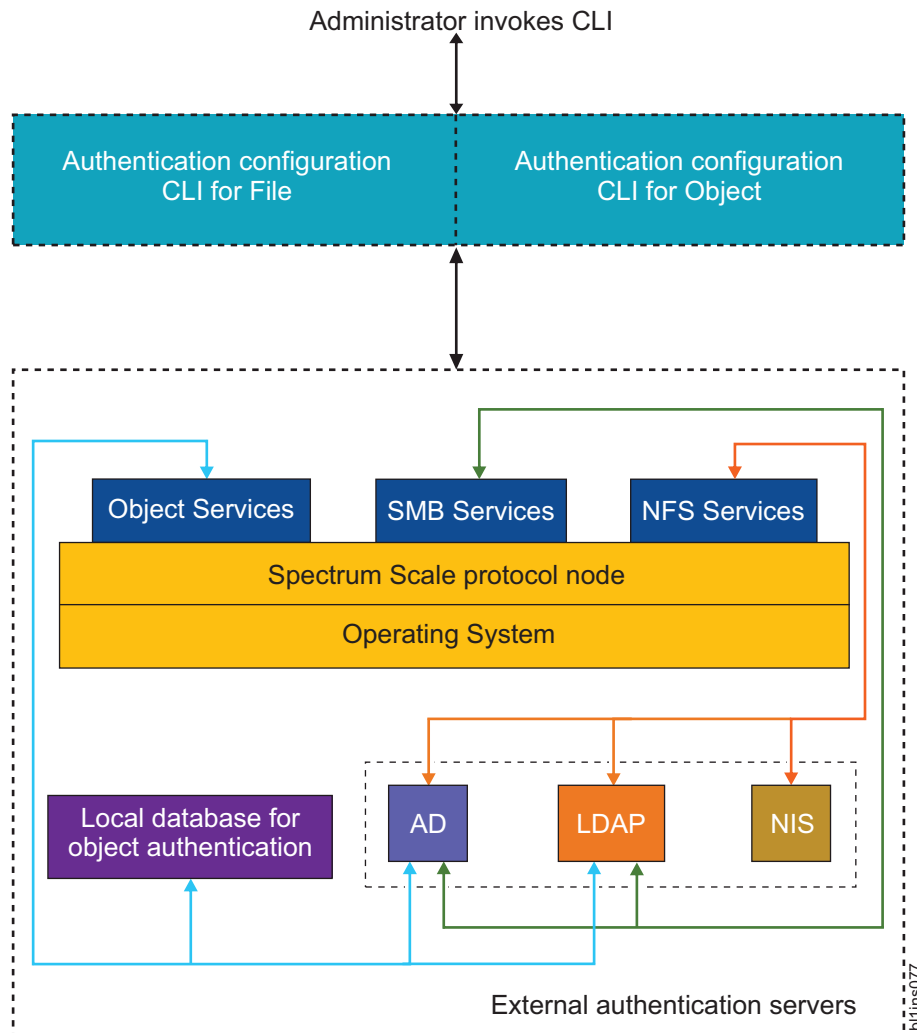


Figure 29. High-level overview of protocol user authentication

The authentication requests that are received from the client systems are handled by the corresponding services in the IBM Spectrum Scale system. For example, if a user needs to access the NFS data, the NFS services resolves the access request by interacting with the corresponding authentication and ID mapping servers.

### Impact of enabling and disabling protocols on authentication

The following are the recommendations for enabling and disabling protocols.

- If authentication is already configured in the system, then the protocols that are enabled in the system to access data cannot be disabled, unless the system administrator cleans up the authentication configuration.
- If authentication is configured, a disabled protocol cannot be enabled. Hence, it is vital to plan properly to decide the protocols that you want to avail now and in near future and enable them correctly in advance.
- If authentication method chosen is AD, then authentication cannot be configured unless the SMB protocol is enabled and started.
- Protocols cannot be disabled unless authentication is unconfigured. Disabling of a protocol is a critical action and it might result in loss of access to the data hosted by that protocol or other protocols. After

disabling the protocol, the authentication can be reconfigured with the same authentication servers and types so that the other enabled protocols can start functioning again.

**Note:** Instead of disabling protocols, the system administrators might stop a protocol if they do not need it. Stopping a protocol is the recommended action instead of disabling the protocol. Stopping a protocol is as good as removing the protocol from the cluster but it does not have an impact on the access to the data. Users can retain the access when the protocol is started again. Use the **mmces stop -nfs -a** command to stop the NFS protocol on the CES nodes. For more details on these options, see *mmces command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

- The restrictions for enabling or disabling protocols are not applicable if user-defined authentication method is used for file or object access.
- The authentication configuration needs to be removed to enable a new protocol in the system. If other protocols are already enabled in the system, the system administrator must reconfigure the authentication with the same authentication servers and types so that the other enabled protocols can start functioning again.

You can also remove ID mappings, along with authentication, if you want to completely remove the authentication configuration. This results in permanent loss of access to the data.

## Authentication and ID mapping for file access

The system supports an external authentication service to authenticate users on the system. Before you configure an authentication method, ensure that the external authentication service is set up correctly.

The following steps are involved in user authentication for file access:

1. User tries to connect to the IBM Spectrum Scale system by using their credentials.
2. The IBM Spectrum Scale system contacts the authentication server to validate the user.
3. The IBM Spectrum Scale system contacts the ID map server that provides UIDs and GIDs of the user and user group to verify the identity of the user.
4. If the user credentials are valid, the user gains access to the system.

The following diagram shows the high-level flow of authentication for File-based protocols.

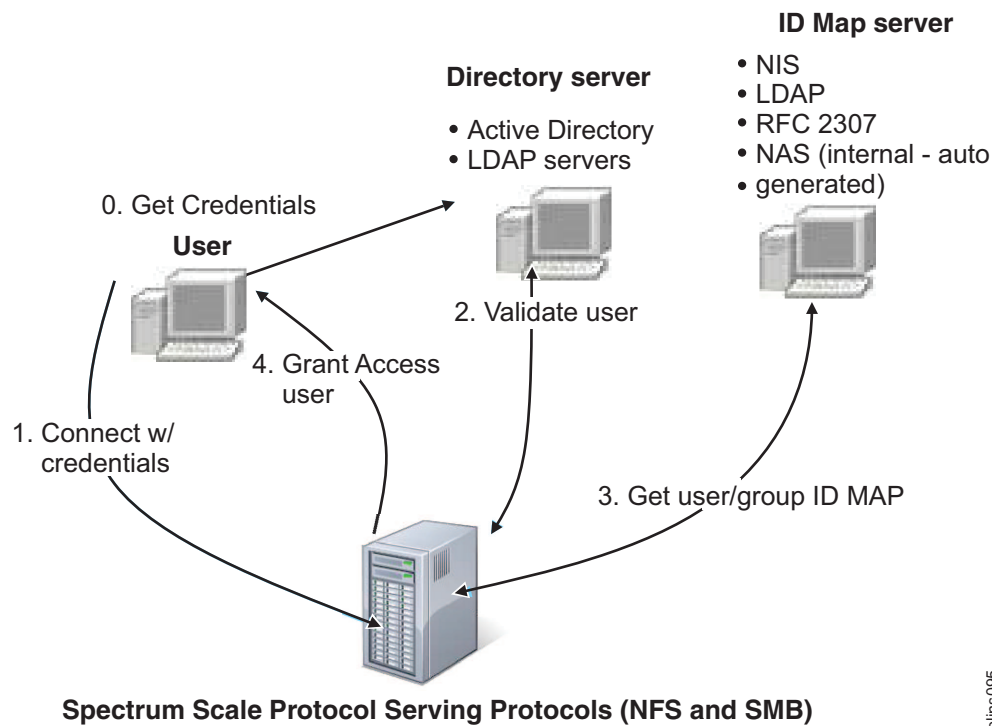


Figure 30. High-level flow of authentication for File protocols

## ID mapping

The authentication of the user or groups of users is also associated with the identification of their unique identifiers. To support data access to Microsoft Windows clients (SMB protocol) and to allow interoperability, that is, to share data among UNIX and Windows clients (SMB and NFS protocols), the IBM Spectrum Scale system must map Windows SID to UNIX UID/GID. This process is referred to as ID mapping and the map is referred to as ID map. The ID mapping can be done either internally in the IBM Spectrum Scale system or in an external authentication server.

ID mapping is part of the user identification process in user authentication. The purpose of identification is to identify users and infrastructure components. Identification methods include unique user identifiers (IDs), keys, or fingerprints such as a public Secure Shell (SSH) key, and digital certificates such as a certificate of a web server.

UNIX based systems such as the IBM Spectrum Scale system use user names and user identifiers (UIDs) to represent users of the system. The user name is typically a human-readable sequence of alphanumeric characters and the UID is a positive integer value. When a user logs on to a UNIX system, the operating system looks up the UID and then uses this UID for further representation of the user. User names, UIDs, and the mapping of user names to UIDs are stored locally in the `/etc/passwd` file or on an external directory service such as Active Directory (AD), Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), Keystone, or Network Information Service (NIS).

UNIX systems implement groups to maintain sets of users that have the same group permissions to access certain system resources. Similar to user names and UIDs, a UNIX system also maintains group names and group identifiers (GID). A UNIX user can be a member of one or more groups, where one group is the primary or default group. Group names, GIDs, the mapping of group names to GIDs, and the memberships of users to groups are stored locally in the `/etc/group` file or on an external directory service such as Active Directory, LDAP, Keystone, or NIS. The primary group of a user is stored in `/etc/passwd` or in an external directory service.

Windows systems reference all operating system entities as resources. For example, users, groups, computers, and so on are Windows resources. Each resource is represented by a security identifier (SID). Resource names and SIDs are stored locally in the Windows registry or in an external directory service such as Active Directory or LDAP. The following methods are used to map Windows SID to UNIX UID and GID:

- External ID mapping methods
  - RFC2307 when AD-based authentication is used
  - LDAP when LDAP-based authentication is used
- Internal ID mapping method
  - Automatic ID mapping when AD-based authentication is used

### External ID mapping

A UID or GID of a user or group is created and stored in an external server such as Microsoft Active Directory, NIS server, or LDAP server.

External ID mapping is useful when user UID or group GID is preexisting in the environment. For example, if NFS client with UID and GID as 100 exists in the environment, and you want a certain share to be accessed by both SMB and NFS client, then you can use an external ID mapping server, assign UID/GID 100 to the SMB user, and thus, allow both SMB and NFS client to access same data.

**Note:** The external server administrator is responsible for creating or populating the UID/GID for the user/group in their respective servers.

The IBM Spectrum Scale system supports the following servers for external ID mapping:

- LDAP server, where the UID or GID is stored in a dedicated field in the user or group object on the LDAP server.
- AD server with RFC2307 schema extension defined. The UID or GID of a user or group that is defined in AD server is stored in a dedicated field of the user or group object.

The UID/GID defined in external server can be used by the IBM Spectrum Scale system.

LDAP ID mapping is supported only when the IBM Spectrum Scale is configured with LDAP authentication.

### Internal ID mapping

The UID or GID of a user or group is created automatically by the IBM Spectrum Scale system and stored in the internal repositories.

When an external ID mapping server is not present in the environment or cannot be used, the IBM Spectrum Scale system uses its internal ID mapping method to create the UID/GID.

IBM Spectrum Scale supports an Automatic ID mapping method if AD-based authentication is used. The Automatic ID mapping method uses a reserved ID range to allocate an ID based on the following logic: A user or group in AD is identified by SID, which includes a component that is called RID. Whenever a user or group from an AD domain accesses IBM Spectrum Scale, a range is allocated per AD domain. The UID or GID is then allocated depending upon this range and the RID of the user/group.

Internal ID mapping cannot be used when the user UID or group GID is preexisting in the environment. However, while using internal ID mapping, if an NFS client wants to access data, then the NFS client must have a UID or GID that is identical to the one created by the IBM Spectrum Scale system.

## Other supported authentication elements for file access

The system supports the following authentication elements as well:

- **Netgroups:** Groups of hosts are used to restrict access for mounting NFS exports on a set of hosts, and deny mounting on the remainder of the hosts. The IBM Spectrum Scale system supports only the netgroups that are stored in NIS and in Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP).
- **Kerberos:** Kerberos is a network authentication protocol that provides secured communication by ensuring passwords are not sent over the network to the system. The system supports Kerberos with both AD and LDAP-based authentication. When you configure AD-based authentication for any ID mapping method (automatic, RFC2307, LDAP), the Kerberos is enabled for the SMB access by default. However, Kerberos for NFS access is supported only for RFC2307 ID mapping method in AD-based authentication, and to enable NFS Kerberos access for AD-based authentication with RFC2307 ID mapping; you need to use the `--enable-nfs-kerberos` and `--unixmap-domains` options in the `mmuserauth` command.  
  
Kerberos is optional for both SMB and NFS access in LDAP. To enable Kerberos with LDAP, you need to integrate the system with MIT KDC.
- **Transport Level Security (TLS):** The TLS protocol is primarily used to increase the security and integrity of data that is sent over the network. These protocols are based on public key cryptography and use digital certificates based on X.509 for identification.

## Caching user and user group information

Every UID and GID, whether generated automatically or through RFC2307 or NIS, is cached during a login attempt. For each successful user login attempt, the UID and GID are stored for seven days. For each failed user login attempt, the UID and GID are cached for two minutes.

When using an external ID mapping server, it is recommended that you not to change any previously created UID or GID. If you must change the UID or GID, plan this activity carefully, preferably before any data associated with the UID or GID exists on the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster. After the change, ensure that the cached entries are flushed out.

## Caching user and user group information while using LDAP-based authentication

In LDAP-based user authentication, the `mmuserauth service create` command populates the LDAP bind user and bind password in its configuration file that is located at: `/etc/pam_ldap.conf`. Using this bind user and password, the *username* is looked up in the LDAP server with the configured *login\_attribute*. This is the *uid* by default. As a result, *uid=<username>* is looked up in LDAP to fetch the DN for this user. If found, the DN and the *password* are used to perform an LDAP bind operation. The authentication fails if either the *username* is not found or if the bind operation fails.

**Note:** If LDAP is used for UNIX style login attempts, the *username* is also compared with what is returned from the LDAP server.

For SMB authentication, the ability to perform the LDAP bind with 'username' and 'password' are not available, since the password is in clear text. Therefore, the SMB client passes an NT hash for the password. The Samba server compares the NT hash from the client to the associated NT hash fetched from LDAP server. For this, the `mmuserauth service create` command configures the Samba registry with the LDAP bind user and password. The LDAP bind user and password are used to look up the Samba-related information from the LDAP server, such as the SID and the NT hash. If the NT hashes match for the bind user, then system access is granted.

**User credentials, group ID mapping, and group membership caching:** User credentials are not cached in the IBM Spectrum Scale system. The user and group ID mapping, and the group membership cache information, are stored in the SSSD component. The cache, local to each node, is for 90 minutes. There is

no IBM Spectrum Scale native command to purge this cache. However, the `sss_cache` command (from the `sssd-common` package) can be used to refresh the cache.

**SMB data caching:** There is a 7 day cache period for the user/group SID within the Samba component of the IBM Spectrum Scale system. This cache is local to each node. There is no IBM Spectrum Scale native command to manage this cache. However, the `'net cache flush'` command may be used, on a per node basis, to purge the cache. A negative cache entry persists for 2 minutes.

**Netgroup caching:** The netgroup information from LDAP is also cached for 90 minutes with the SSSD component. The `sss_cache` command can be used to refresh the cache.

### **Caching user credentials while using NIS-based authentication for file access**

In IBM Spectrum Scale, an NIS server may be used only for users and groups, UID/GID, and group membership lookups for NFS access. In addition, the netgroups defined in NIS are honored as NFS client attributes within the NFS export configuration. Users and groups, UID and GID information, names, and group membership are cached within the SSSD component. This cache, local to each node, is for 90 minutes. There is no IBM Spectrum Scale native command to purge this cache.

The **`sss_cache`** command from the `sssd-common` package may be used to refresh the cache. The `sss_cache` utility only marks the entries in the respective database as expired. If the NIS server is online and available, the expired entries are refreshed immediately. If the NIS server is not available, the old cached entries that are still marked expired become valid. These values are refreshed once the server is available.

The netgroup information from the NIS is also cached for 90 minutes within the SSSD component. The `sss_cache` command can be used to refresh the cache.

### **Caching user and group ID mapping and group membership details while using AD-based authentication**

The Samba component in the IBM Spectrum Scale system uses the SMB protocol NTLM and Kerberos authentication for user authentication. User and group SID to UID and GID mapping information is cached within the Samba component. This cache, local to each node, is maintained for seven days. There is no IBM Spectrum Scale native command to manage this cache. However, the **`net cache flush`** command may be used to refresh the cache. The negative cache entry persists for 2 minutes.

The group membership cache, local to each IBM Spectrum Scale protocol node, lies within the Samba component. For an authenticated user, its group membership cache is valid for the lifetime of that session. The group membership is only refreshed on a new authentication request. Therefore, if an SMB tree connect is requested on an existing session, the group cache is not refreshed. So, if there are group membership changes made on the AD server, all of the existing sessions for that user must be disconnected in order to obtain a new authentication request and subsequent cache refresh for the user. If there is no new authentication request made on behalf of the user, a simple user and group information look-up is requested. For example, if you issue the **`id`** command on the protocol node, the winbind component in IBM Spectrum Scale searches the database to check whether that user's cached information exists from a previous authentication request. If an appropriate entry is found, it is returned. Otherwise, the winbind fetches the mapping information from the AD server and caches it for five minutes.

**Note:** If a user was authenticated in the past, its group membership cache information is within the database and valid for the session lifetime. Winbind keeps referring to this information and will never try to fetch new information from the AD server. To force winbind to fetch new information, you need to make an authentication request, on behalf of the user, to the node in the same way as you would connect from a CIFS client.



## Authentication for object access

The OpenStack identity service that is enabled in the system confirms an incoming request by validating a set of credentials that are supplied by the user. The identity management consists of both authentication and authorization processes.

In the authentication and authorization process, an object user is identified in the IBM Spectrum Scale system by the attributes such as user ID, password, project ID, role, and domain ID with Keystone API V3. The keystone server that is used for the OpenStack identity service that is configured on the IBM Spectrum Scale system manages the user authentication requests for object access with the help of either an external or internal authentication server for the user management. An internal or an external keystone server can be configured to manage the identity service. You can use the following authentication methods for object access either by using an internal keystone server shipped IBM Spectrum Scale or by using an external keystone server:

- External authentication. The keystone server interacts with the following external servers for the user management:
  - AD
  - LDAP
- Internal authentication. The keystone server interacts with an internal database to manage users and authentication requests.

The user can select the authentication method based on their requirement. For example, if the enterprise deployment already consists of AD and the users in the AD need to access object data, the customer would use AD as the backend authentication server.

When the authentication method selected is either AD or LDAP, the user management operations such as creating a user, deleting a user are the responsibility of the AD and LDAP administrator. If local authentication is selected for object access, the user management operations must be managed by the keystone server administrator. The authorization tasks such as defining user roles, creating projects, associating a user with a project are managed by the keystone administrator. The keystone server administration can be done either by using Keystone V3 REST API or by using OpenStack python-based client that is called `openstackclient`.

The following diagram depicts how the authentication requests are handled when IBM Spectrum Scale is with an internal keystone server and external AD or LDAP authentication server.

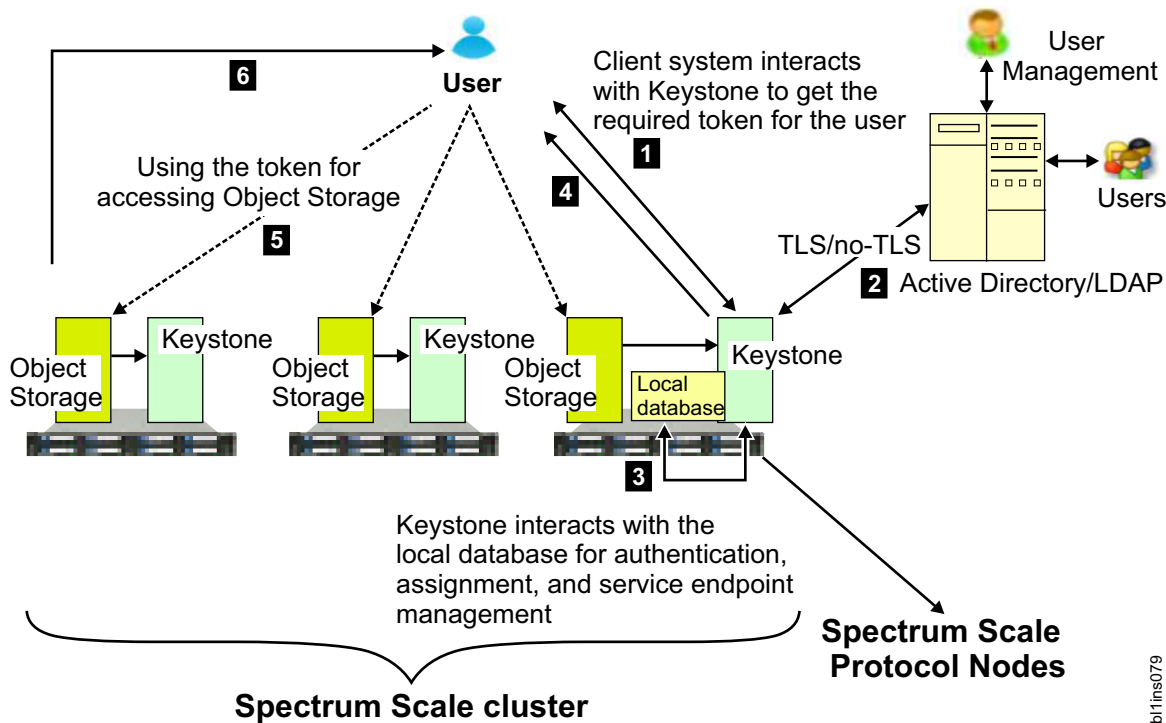


Figure 31. IBM Spectrum Scale integration with internal Keystone server and external AD or LDAP authentication server

The following list provides the authentication process for object access:

1. The user raises the access request to get access to the object data.
2. The keystone server communicates with the authentication server such as AD, LDAP, or a local database. The keystone server interacts with the authentication server for authentication, authorization, and service end-point management.
3. If the user details are valid, the keystone server interacts with the local database to determine the user roles and issues a token to grant access to the user.
4. The OpenStack identity service offers token-based authentication for object access. When user credentials are validated, the identity service issues an authentication token, which the user provides in subsequent requests. That is, the access request also includes the token that is granted in step 3. The token is an alphanumeric string of text that is used to access OpenStack APIs and resources.
5. The authenticated user contacts the object storage to access the data that is stored in it.
6. The object storage grants permission to the user to work on the data based on the associated project ID and user role.

Each object user is part of a project. A project is used to group or isolate resources. Each user needs to be defined with the set of user rights and privileges to perform a specific set of operations on the resources of the project to which it belongs to.

The Identity service also tracks and manages the access to the OpenStack services that are installed on the system. It provides one or more endpoints that can be used to access resources and perform authorized operations. Endpoints are network-accessible addresses (URLs) that can be used to access the service. When the user is authenticated, the keystone server provides a list of services and a token to the user to access the services. For example, if the user is authenticated to access the Object Storage service, the keystone server provides the token to access the service. The Object Storage service then verifies the token and fulfills the request.

To achieve high availability, Object Storage and Keystone are activated on all protocol nodes. The internal database that is required to validate the user is installed on the shared root file system.

Depending upon the configuration, the keystone server needs to interact with AD, LDAP, or the internal database for user authentication. The Keystone internal database is also used for assigning users to projects with a specific role for controlling access to projects. It also holds the definition of OpenStack services and the endpoints for those services.

Each node configured with object storage is configured to interact with the Keystone server.

## Deleting authentication and ID mapping

You can choose to delete the ID mappings generated and stored on IBM Spectrum Scale. The authentication method configured in the system can be deleted too. This might result in a complete loss of data access. Before you delete an ID mapping, determine how to maintain data access if needed.

It is not possible to delete both an authentication method and the current ID mappings at the same time. If you need to delete the current ID mappings, you need to first delete the authentication method that is configured in the system. If only the authentication settings are deleted, you can return to the existing setting by reconfiguring authentication. There is no such recovery method for a deleted ID mapping. Typically, IDs are deleted in test systems or as part of a service operation.

For more information on how to delete authentication and ID mappings, see *Deleting authentication and ID mapping configuration* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## General authentication support matrix

The following matrix gives a quick overview of the supported authentication configurations for both file and object access.

Table 32. General authentication support matrix

Authentication method	ID mapping method	SMB	SMB with Kerberos	NFSV3	NFSV3 with Kerberos	NFSV4	NFSV4 with Kerberos	Object
User-defined	User-defined	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	✓
LDAP with TLS	LDAP	✓	NA	✓	NA	✓	NA	✓
LDAP with Kerberos	LDAP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	NA
LDAP with Kerberos and TLS	LDAP	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	NA
LDAP without TLS and without Kerberos	LDAP	✓	NA	✓	NA	✓	NA	✓
AD	Automatic	✓	✓	X	X	X	X	✓
AD	RFC2307	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
AD	LDAP	✓	✓	✓	X	X	X	✓
NIS	NIS	NA	NA	✓	NA	✓	NA	NA
Local	None	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	✓

**Note:**

- The ID mapping option that is given in this table is only applicable for file access. Ignore the ID mapping details that are listed in the table if you are looking for the supported configurations for object access.
- In the User-defined mode, the customer is free to choose the authentication and ID mapping methods for file and object and manage on their own. That is, the authentication needs to be configured by the administrator outside of the IBM Spectrum Scale commands and ensure that it is common and consistent across the cluster.
- If LDAP-based authentication is used, ACL management for SMB is not supported.

## Planning for NFS

There are a number of decisions that must be made before deploying NFS in an IBM Spectrum Scale environment. The following is an outline of these decision points.

The IBM Spectrum Scale for NFS architecture is shown in Figure 32.

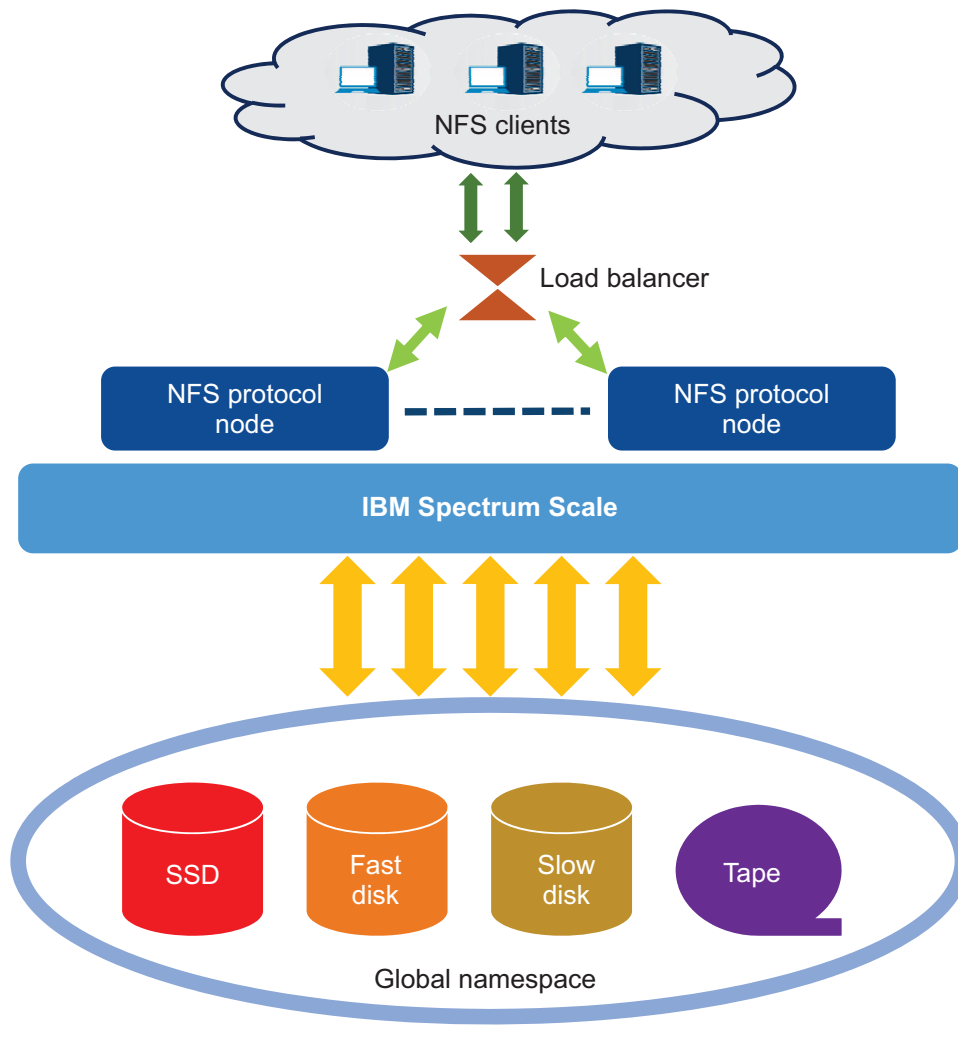


Figure 32. IBM Spectrum Scale for NFS architecture

Each IBM Spectrum Scale protocol node that has NFS enabled, runs the NFS service, other protocol services (SMB and Object, if enabled), and the IBM Spectrum Scale client. NFS users make requests through an NFS client to perform an NFS operation on a mounted NFS file system, for example, to read

or to write a file. The request is routed to an NFS protocol node typically by a load balancer or by using DNS round robin. The NFS server on the protocol node handles the request against the backend IBM Spectrum Scale storage file system. The request completion status is then returned to the user through the NFS client.

## File system considerations for the NFS protocol

Ensure that all IBM Spectrum Scale file systems that export data via NFS are mounted with the **syncnfs** option to prevent clients from running into data integrity issues during failover.

### Linux operating systems

On Linux operating systems, the IBM Spectrum Scale **syncnfs** setting is the default mount option.

### AIX operating system

On AIX, the IBM Spectrum Scale **nosyncnfs** setting is the default mount option. Enter the following command to change the setting to **syncnfs**:

```
mmchfs <fileSystem> -o syncnfs
```

Enter the following command to verify:

```
mmfsfs <fileSystem> -o
```

For more information about mount options, see *Mount options specific to IBM Spectrum Scale* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

For fileset considerations for the NFS protocol, see “Fileset considerations for creating protocol data exports” on page 183.

## NFS supported clients

IBM Spectrum Scale has tested some clients that can be used for accessing IBM Spectrum Scale data by using NFS protocols.

IBM support can help resolve NFS client / server issues when these can be recreated on one of the NFS clients listed here as tested.

Table 33. Tested NFS clients

Operating System	PPC LE	PPC BE	X86_64	X86_32
RHEL6	✓	✓	✓	✓
RHEL7	✓	✓	✓	✓
SLES12	X	✓	✓	X
AIX6	X	✓	X	X
AIX7	X	✓	X	X

**Note:** Other operating systems and versions might work, but were not tested.

You must always:

- Install the latest fix level for the operating system
- Run an operating system still supported by the vendor
- Keep IBM Spectrum Scale on the latest fix level

### Explicitly not supported

All versions of Windows NFS client.

## Considerations for NFS clients

When using NFS clients in an IBM Spectrum Scale environment, the following considerations apply.

- If you mount the same NFS export on one client from two different IBM Spectrum Scale NFS protocol nodes, data corruption might occur.
- IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.1 and later releases allow concurrent access to the same file data using SMB, NFS, and native POSIX access. For concurrent access to the same data, some limitations apply. For more information, see *Multiprotocol export considerations* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
- The NFS protocol version that is used as the default on a client operating system might differ from what you expect. If you are using a client that mounts NFSv3 by default, and you want to mount NFSv4, then you must explicitly specify NFSv4 in the mount command. For more information, see the **mount** command for your client operating system.
- It is recommended to use the CES IP address of the IBM Spectrum Scale system to mount the NFS export on an NFS client.
  - You can use the **mmces address list** command to view the CES IPs.
  - You can use the **mmiscluster --ces** command to determine which nodes host which CES IPs.
- For items that could affect NFS access, see the *Authentication limitation* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Planning for SMB

This section describes the steps to be taken before using the SMB service in IBM Spectrum Scale.

The SMB support for IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.1 and later versions allows clients to access the GPFS file system using SMB clients. The protocol node runs the SMB, NFS, and Object services. The SMB service on the protocol node provides file serving to SMB clients. Requests are routed to an SMB protocol node, typically by using DNS round robin. The SMB server on the protocol node handles these requests by issuing calls to the IBM Spectrum Scale file system.

**Note:** The SMB service is based on a clustering component CTDB. It is strongly recommended to have the CTDB network traffic on some dedicated private network. The CTDB traffic is using the same network interface as the GPFS daemon. It can be configured or changed through the **--daemon-interface** option in the **mmaddnode** and **mmchnode** commands. The recommendation is to ensure that this is on a private network that is not visible outside the cluster.

### SMB file serving

IBM Spectrum Scale provides SMB file serving to SMB clients. This topic describes how to manage SMB file serving in IBM Spectrum Scale.

Thousands of clients can concurrently access the SMB shares in an IBM Spectrum Scale system. The system configuration must be able to support a large number of planned SMB connections. For more information on creating protocol data exports, see “Fileset considerations for creating protocol data exports” on page 183.

### SMB connections

Each IBM Spectrum Scale protocol node is capable of handling a large number of SMB connections.

The number of concurrent SMB connections that a protocol node can handle is dependent on the following factors:

- Number of processors
- Amount of memory installed in the protocol node
- The IO workload. This depends on the following factors:
  - Number of concurrent SMB connections
  - Lifetime and frequency of SMB connections
  - Overhead due to metadata operations
  - Frequency of operations on each SMB connections

- Concurrent access to the same files
- The storage configuration and advanced functions that are configured to run while serving high number of SMB connections

## **SMB fail-over scenarios and upgrade**

When you are planning an IBM Spectrum Scale system configuration that has a high number of SMB connections, you must consider the impact that a fail-over can have on the performance of the system.

In the event that an IBM Spectrum Scale protocol node fails, the IP addresses hosted by that protocol node are located to another IBM Spectrum Scale protocol node. SMB clients have to re-connect to one of the remaining CES nodes. They can use the same IP address after the fail-over is hosted by another CES node. These remaining protocol nodes handle all the SMB connections.

Therefore, when you plan an IBM Spectrum Scale system that has a high number of SMB connections, some buffer in terms of number of SMB connections must be factored into the overall system configuration. This will prevent a system overload during a fail-over scenario, thus reducing any adverse effects to the system performance.

A similar consideration applies to SMB upgrades. The SMB upgrade happens in two phases. During the first phase of the upgrade process, the first half of the nodes are updated. The remaining nodes handle the SMB connections of the node being updated. Once the first half of the nodes are updated, the upgrade moves to the second phase. In the second phase, SMB will be shut down completely. This is done in order to update the SMB code on all of the remaining protocol nodes concurrently. This results in a brief outage of the SMB service. For more information on the SMB upgrade, see “Upgrading SMB packages” on page 424.

## **SMB limitations**

IBM Spectrum Scale can host a maximum of 1,000 SMB shares. There must be less than 3,000 SMB connections per protocol node and less than 20,000 SMB connections across all protocol nodes.

IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.1 and later versions allow concurrent access to the same data file through SMB and NFS, and through native POSIX access.

No support of SID history.

For more details on these options, see the *mmsmb* command in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

For more information on SMB client access and limitations, see *Multiprotocol export considerations* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## **SMB client limitation**

When an SMB client is setting ACLs on a file, the original NTFS ACLs are translated by Samba to NFSv4 ACLs. If the original NTFS ACL contains a deny ACL entry denying READ\_ACL or WRITE\_ACL for the file owner, Samba is translating this ACL into a 'special:owner' NFSv4 ACL entry. Storing such an ACL in the GPFS file system is not supported by GPFS because GPFS requires that the file owner has always read and write access to the file ACL. If an SMB client is trying to write such an ACL, GPFS will deny this request with STATUS\_INVALID\_PARAMETER.

## **SMB share limitations**

Consider all the limitations and support restrictions before you create an SMB share.

SMB share limitations include the following:

- NTFS alternate data streams are not supported. For example, named streams generated by a Mac OS X operating system cannot be stored directly.
- The encryption status of files cannot be queried or changed from SMB clients. Use the **CLI** commands instead.
- When propagation of opportunistic locks across protocols is enabled (SMB option `gpfs:leases`), then Level 2 oplocks are not granted and Exclusive or batch oplocks are not broken down to Level 2 oplocks and are revoked from the system.
- Concurrent access to the same files or directories from many SMB connections on multiple nodes can result in scalability problems.
- Symbolic links cannot be created or changed from SMB clients and are not reported as symbolic links.
- Symbolic links created via NFS or directly in the file system will be respected as long as they point to a target under the same shared directory.
- IBM Spectrum Scale can act as an MS-DFS target but does not currently allow any redirects. For more information, see the `msdfs` proxy option in the *mmsmb* command in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.
- Windows Internet Name Service (WINS) is not supported.
- Retrieving Quota information using `NT_TRANSACT_QUERY_QUOTA` is not supported.
- Setting Quota information using `NT_TRANSACT_SET_QUOTA` is not supported.
- Setting the maximum number of connections to a share is not supported. The MMC GUI allows specifying this parameter, but it cannot be set on an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.
- UNIX Extensions are not supported.
- You cannot create a shadow copy of a shared folder using a remote procedure call from a shadow copy client. Backup utilities, such as Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service, cannot create a shadow copy of a shared folder using a procedure call.
- The Branch Cache hash operations using `SRV_READ_HASH_IOCTL` are not supported.
- Leases are not supported.
- Only the SMB2 and SMB3 protocol versions are supported.
- No support of dynamic ACLs and SACLs.
- SMB Direct (SMB over RDMA) is not supported.
- Multi-channel for SMB is not supported.
- Durable handles are not supported.
- Resilient<sup>®</sup> handles are not supported.
- Persistent handles are not supported.
- Storing arbitrary data in Security Descriptors is not supported.
- Pre-allocating space larger than the file size is not supported. A check for the available disk space is used instead when processing an allocation request from an SMB client.
- The Witness notification protocol is not supported.
- Continuous Availability (CA) SMB exports are not supported.
- Scaleout SMB exports are not supported.
- Creating snapshots from an SMB client is not supported.
- Application instance ID is not supported.
- `FSCTL_SET_ZERO_DATA` is only supported on sparse files. `FSCTL SET_ZERO_DATA` does not support regions that extend past the current of the file.
- Setting compression from an SMB client or querying the compression state from an SMB client is not supported.
- All CES nodes need to be the same hardware architecture (x86 versus Power) and the same endianness (little endian versus big endian).



- Rolling code upgrade is not supported for SMB. The SMB service needs to be stopped on all CES nodes for the upgrade to ensure that the same SMB software level is used on all CES nodes.
- The **AAPL create** context used by Mac OS clients is not supported.
- The number of open files for each SMB connection is limited to 16384.
- The SMB service requires file names and directory names to use the UTF-8 encoding. Files and directories with different encoding cannot be accessed through the SMB protocol.
- The NFSv4 SYNCHRONIZE bit is no longer automatically set on file ACLs. Windows clients expect SYNCHRONIZE on ACLs to correctly allow rename.

## **SMB node limitations**

IBM Spectrum Scale allows a maximum of 16 SMB server nodes in a CES cluster.

## **SMB encryption on Power systems**

SMB encryption on Power systems requires Openssl 1.0.2 or newer for crypto-hardware acceleration, which is provided by RHEL 7.4 or newer. Also, the hardware crypto-acceleration is only available on POWER8® or newer systems.

## **SMB data migration to IBM Spectrum Scale**

This topic documents a procedure for migrating data from an SMB system to IBM Spectrum Scale while preserving SMB metadata like ACLs and SMB file attributes.

### **Prerequisites for SMB data migration:**

This topic describes the prerequisites that must be met before you go ahead with SMB data migration

The recommended tool for migration is Robocopy, which should be running from one or more Windows client machines. The data is read through the SMB protocol from the source machine and written through the SMB protocol to IBM Spectrum Scale file system.

The prerequisites are the following:

- Authentication method has to be Active Directory with the source SMB server and target IBM Spectrum Scale cluster using the same Active Directory environment.
- Windows client machines for the data migration can access the source SMB server and the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster
- A user ID used for the migration needs to be defined and that user must have permissions to read all data from the source SMB server.
- SID history needs to be removed or converted on the source data.

### **Setting up the IBM Spectrum Scale environment for capacity and performance:**

The first step for data migration is to set up the IBM Spectrum Scale nodes if you have not already done so. For more information, see Chapter 3, “Steps for establishing and starting your IBM Spectrum Scale cluster,” on page 243.

To achieve optimum performance while migrating small files, ensure the following:

- Use many Windows clients to scale out the number of SMB sessions
- Use Robocopy with /MT option
- Disable the **syncops:onclose** option while creating the SMB exports, if applicable

## Configuring IBM Spectrum Scale authentication:

The authentication method to be used here is Active Directory (AD) authentication. For more information on setting up file authentication, see the **mmuserauth service create** section of the **mmuserauth** command in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

**Note:** Robocopy reads SIDs from IBM Spectrum Scale and writes to IBM Spectrum Scale so files might use new UIDs based on ID mapping.

## Creating SMB exports:

Create SMB exports for the target of the data migration. For more information on creating SMB exports, see the **mmsmb** command in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*. Ensure to configure the migration user ID as "admin user" for all SMB exports. See the **mmsmb export change SMBexport --option 'admin users=domain\user' options**.

**Note:** Admin users should be set so that migration user ID can write ownerships and ACLs.

## Accessing the source SMB server and the IBM Spectrum Scale file system:

Do the following:

1. From the Windows clients, access the source SMB server and the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.
2. Map network drives for the source SMB server and the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.  
If data for multiple SMB exports are transferred, multiple Windows clients can be used, where each one accesses one pair of source and target SMB exports. This allows to speed up the transfer.

## Running the Robocopy commands:

For each SMB export that you want to migrate, run the **Robocopy** command as follows:

```
Robocopy \\<source-smb-server>\<smbexport> \\<target-scale-cluster>\<smbexport> /copy:ATSO /secfix /Z /E /MT:32 /R:5 /W:3 /sl /log:logfile .
```

The Robocopy options are as follows:

- /COPY:ATSO: Copy file information.
  - A: Attributes
  - T: Timestamps
  - S: Security - NTFS ACLs
  - O: Owner information
- /secfix: Fixes the security on all files
- /Z: Ensures Robocopy can resume the transfer of a large file in mid-file instead of restarting.
- /E : Copy all subdirectories including the empty ones.
- /MT : Create multi-threaded copies with N threads. N must be an integer between 1 and 128. The default value for N is 8.
- /R: Specifies the number of retries on failed copies. The default value is 1,000,000 (one million retries).
- /W: Specifies the wait time between retries, in seconds. The default value is 30 (wait time 30 seconds).
- /sl : Copies the symbolic link instead of the target.
- /log: Writes the status output to the log file (overwrites the existing log file)

### Cleanup after migration:

Do the following steps after migration:

1. Unmount all SMB exports from the Windows clients.
2. Remove the "admin users" entry as it is no longer required and can be harmful if used by accident.

## Planning for object storage deployment

There are a number of decisions that must be made before beginning the object storage deployment in an IBM Spectrum Scale environment. The following is an outline of these decision points.

The IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage architecture is shown in Figure 33.

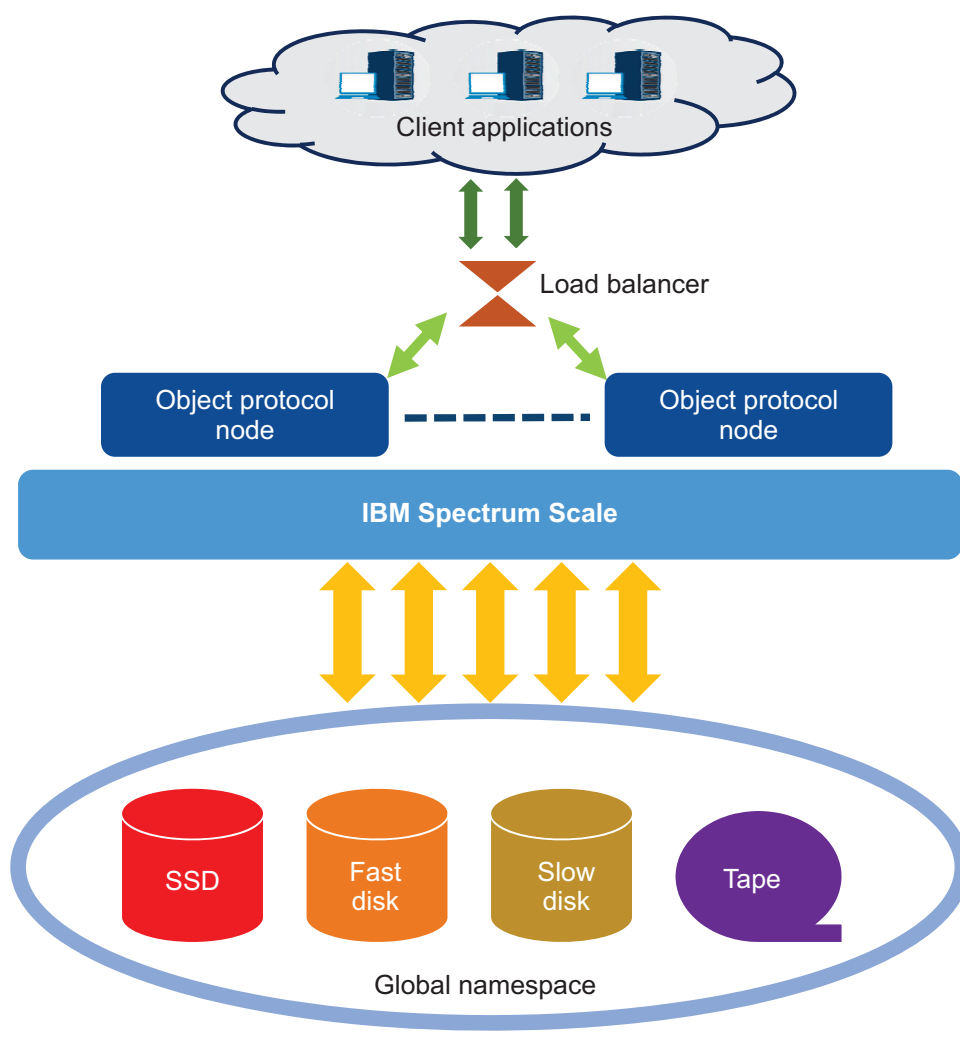


Figure 33. IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage architecture

For every object PUT request, the following inodes are created:

- a hashes directory for a PUT request of every new object
- a target object file
- the parent directory of the hash directory if it doesn't already exist
- the partition directory unless it already exists

- a `hashes.pkl` file
- a temporary `.lock` file

Each protocol node runs all OpenStack Swift object services, the Keystone identity service, and the IBM Spectrum Scale client. Client applications make requests to perform object operations such as uploading an object, downloading an object, and deleting an object. The request is routed to a protocol node typically by a load balancer or by using DNS round robin. The protocol node implements that request by creating, retrieving, or deleting the object on the backend IBM Spectrum Scale storage. The request completion status is then returned to the client application. Each client request must include an authentication token. Typically, client applications first request a token from the Keystone service, and then provide that token in the subsequent object requests, until the token expires. At that point, a new token can be requested.

Client applications make requests to perform operations such as uploading an object, downloading an object, and deleting an object. Account and container information can also be updated, viewed, and removed by client applications. For more information on the API available to clients, see the OpenStack Swift API documentation here: <http://developer.openstack.org/api-ref/object-storage/index.html>

For more information on OpenStack Swift, see OpenStack Swift documentation.

For more information on OpenStack Keystone as it is used with Swift, see Keystone Auth section in the OpenStack Swift documentation.

## Load balancing

Use multiple protocol nodes to provide higher throughput and performance of Object storage by allowing more requests in parallel and distributing the workload among all protocol nodes.

Certain steps might be necessary to ensure that client requests are distributed among all protocol nodes. Object store endpoint URLs stored in keystone contain the destination host name or IP addresses. Therefore, it is important to ensure that requests that are sent to that destination are distributed among all the protocol addresses. This endpoint address is the value that is specified by the **--endpoint** parameter when you set up Object storage with the installation toolkit.

If a host name is resolved to a single protocol IP address (such as 192.168.1.1), then all client requests are sent to the protocol node associated with that specific address. Make sure that requests are distributed among all the protocol nodes instead of just a single protocol node.

To accomplish this you can use a load balancer, such as HAProxy. In this case, the destination for the endpoint is configured to resolve to the load balancer, and the load balancer forwards incoming requests to one of the protocol nodes (based on a balancing strategy). By configuring the load balancer with all of the protocol IP addresses, the client requests can be sent to the entire set of protocol nodes.

Another common solution is to use a DNS Round Robin. In this case, a DNS server is configured so a single host name is associated with a set of addresses. When a client does a DNS lookup of the host name, one address from the set is returned. By configuring the DNS Round Robin service to associate the set of protocol IP addresses with the endpoint host name, client requests are distributed among all protocol nodes. As each client initiates a request to the endpoint hostname, the DNS Round Robin service returns an IP address by cycling through the set of protocol IP addresses.

## Cluster host name

The cluster host name is required during the installation process.

It is the **endpoint** parameter in the **spectrumscale config object** command and it is the **cluster-hostname** parameter in the **mmobj swift base** command. For more information, see *mmobj command* and *spectrumscale command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

Additionally, the cluster host name might be used in your load balancer or DNS round robin configuration. It is the fully qualified name that clients send their object requests to.

## Authentication method

IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage supports a flexible array of configuration options for authentication.

If you already have Keystone deployed in your environment, you can configure IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage to use the existing or external Keystone. If you do configure Keystone as part your IBM Spectrum Scale cluster, you can manage the user information locally, or you can integrate it with a Microsoft Active Directory or LDAP system.

## Backup and disaster recovery strategy

For information on backup and disaster recovery strategy for your object storage, see the *Protocols cluster disaster recovery* section in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## SELinux considerations

To simplify the configuration of the IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage environment, the installation process detects whether SELinux is enabled or not. If SELinux is enabled, the installation process performs steps so that the object services and the database software running on the protocol nodes can interact with the required file system and system resources.

The `openstack-selinux` package is installed automatically when the `spectrum-scale-object` RPM is installed. This configures the object services for SELinux.

If the installer detects that SELinux is enabled, it does the following steps:

1. Ensures that the Postgres database can access the Keystone database directory on the CES shared root file system:  

```
semanage fcontext -a -t postgresql_db_t "<keystone db directory>(/.*)?"  
semanage fcontext -a -t postgresql_log_t "<keystone db directory>/log(/.*)?"  
restorecon -R "<keystone db directory>"
```
2. Ensures that object processes can access the object data fileset:  

```
semanage fcontext -a -t swift_data_t "<object fileset directory>(/.*)?"  
restorecon -R <object fileset directory>/*
```

**Attention:** If SELinux is disabled during installation of IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage, enabling SELinux after installation is not supported.

## SELinux packages required for IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage

IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage requires the following SELinux packages to be installed:

- `selinux-policy-base` at 3.13.1-23 or higher
- `selinux-policy-targeted` at 3.12.1-153 or higher

## Eventual consistency model

An eventual consistency model is used when uploading or deleting object data.

According to the CAP theorem, in distributed storage systems, a system can guarantee two of the following three claims:

1. Consistency
2. Availability
3. Partition tolerance

With Swift and IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage, the availability and partition tolerance claims are chosen. Therefore, in some cases, it is possible to get an inconsistent listing of object store contents. The

most common case is consistency between container listing databases and objects on disk. In the case of a normal object upload, the object data is committed to the storage and the container listing database is updated. Under heavy load, it is possible that the container listing database update does not complete immediately. In that case, the update is made asynchronously by the object-updater service. In the time between the original object commit and when the object-updater executes, you will not see the new object in the container listing, even though the object is safely committed to storage. A similar situation can occur with object deletes.

## Planning for unified file and object access

Unified file and object access allows use cases where you can access data using object as well as file interfaces. Before using unified file and object access, you need to plan for a number of aspects.

### Planning for identity management modes for unified file and object access:

As you plan for unified file and object access, it is important to understand the identity management modes for unified file and object access.

Based on the identity management mode that you plan to use, you need to plan for the authentication mechanism to be configured with file and object. In an existing IBM Spectrum Scale setup, where an authentication mechanism is already set up, a suitable identity management mode needs to be chosen for unified file and object access.

For more information, see *Identity management modes for unified file and object access* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

### Authentication planning for unified file and object access:

Planning for a suitable authentication mechanism for a unified file and object access setup requires an understanding of the Identity management modes for unified file and object access and the authentication setups supported with these modes.

For more information, see *Authentication in unified file and object access* and *Identity management modes for unified file and object access* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

### ibmobjectizer service schedule planning:

The unified file and object access feature allows accessing data ingested through file to be accessed from object. This access is enabled by a process called objectization. Objectization is done by the **ibmobjectizer** service that runs periodically and converts the file data located under unified file and object access enabled filesets to make it available for object access.

It is important to understand the amount and frequency of file data that is expected to be ingested and objectized because the objectization service needs to be scheduled accordingly by the administrator.

For information about the **ibmobjectizer** service, see *The objectizer process*, *Setting up the objectizer service interval*, and *Configuration files for IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

### Prerequisites for unified file and object access:

To enable unified file and object access, you must enable the file-access object capability.

For more information see “Object capabilities” on page 36.

For unified file and object access, the authentication prerequisites depend on the identity management mode for unified file and object access that you plan to use. It is important to decide the mode before

configuring unified file and object access, although it is possible to move from one mode to another. For more information on changing identity management modes for unified file and object access, see *Configuring authentication and setting identity management modes for unified file and object access* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

For more information, see *Authentication in unified file and object access* and *Identity management modes for unified file and object access* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

Unified file and object access is deployed as a storage policy for object storage. Therefore, it is important to understand the concept of a storage policy for object storage and how to associate containers with storage policies. For more information, see “Storage policies for object storage” on page 33.

**Planning for multi-region object deployment**

Use the following information to plan your multi-region object deployment.

Enabling multi-region enables the primary rings to be multi-region and all data to be stored in all regions. Storage policies can be used to limit objects to certain regions.

For information on enabling multi-region object deployment, see “Enabling multi-region object deployment initially” on page 345.

For information on adding a new region to a multi-region object deployment environment, see *Adding a region in a multi-region object deployment* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

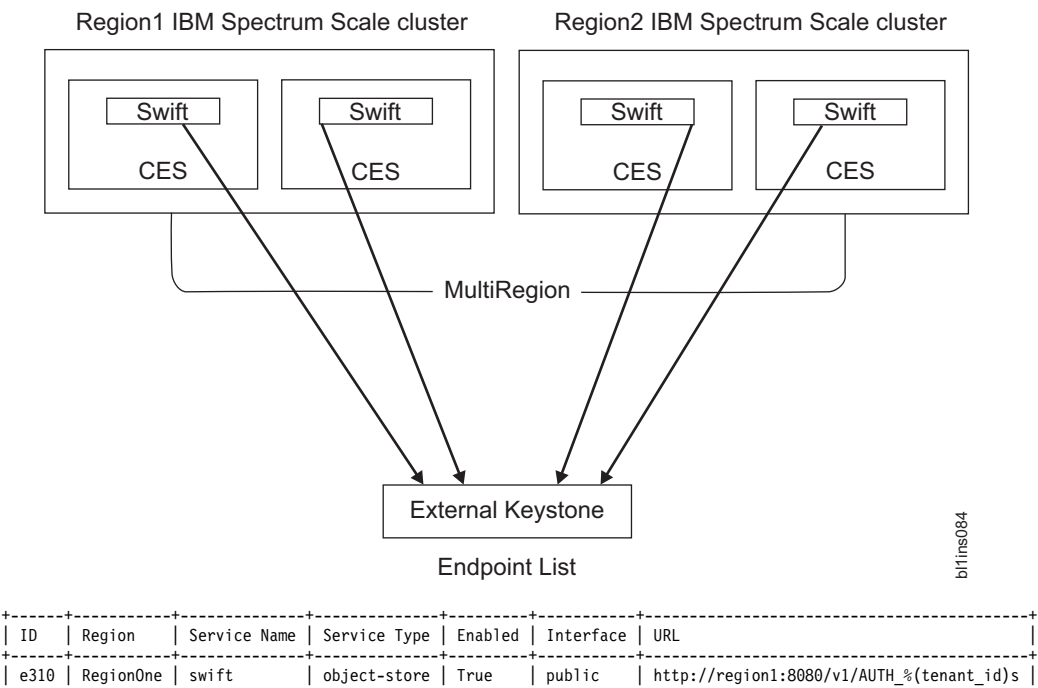
**Authentication considerations for multi-region object deployment:**

In a multi-region object deployment environment, all regions must use the same Keystone service.

The keystone service can be a local keystone installed with the object deployment or it can be an independent service. Subsequent clusters that join the environment must specify an external keystone server during installation.

The following two methods can be used for object authentication configuration with a multi-region setup:

- By using the external keystone



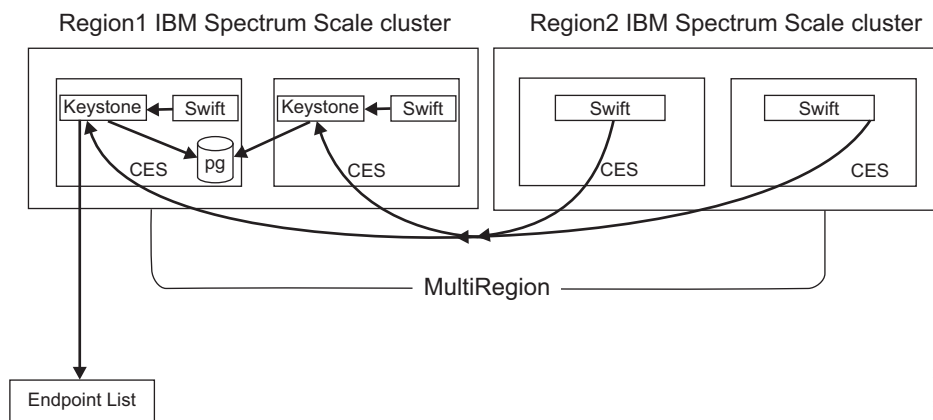
1679	Region0ne	swift	object-store	True	internal	http://region1:8080/v1/AUTH_%(tenant_id)s
c458	Region0ne	swift	object-store	True	admin	http://region1:8080
8a01	Region2	swift	object-store	True	public	http://region2:8080/v1/AUTH_%(tenant_id)s
b821	Region2	swift	object-store	True	internal	http://region2:8080/v1/AUTH_%(tenant_id)s
5188	Region2	swift	object-store	True	admin	http://region2:8080

**Note:** The external keystone and HA must be managed and configured by the customers.

1. On all the participant clusters of the multi-region setup, configure the external keystone with the **spectrumscale auth object external** command.
2. Set the **keystone\_url** and **configure\_remote\_keystone** properties.
3. For manual installation, use the **mmobj swift base** command with the **--remote-keystone-url** and **--configure-remote-keystone** arguments.

**Note:** The installer can automatically create these endpoints if the option to configure the remote keystone is used during installation and **--configure-remote-keystone** is specified.

- By using the keystone installed on one of the IBM Spectrum Scale clusters



ID	Region	Service Name	Service Type	Enabled	Interface	URL
e310	Region0ne	swift	object-store	True	public	http://region1:8080/v1/AUTH_%(tenant_id)s
1679	Region0ne	swift	object-store	True	internal	http://region1:8080/v1/AUTH_%(tenant_id)s
c458	Region0ne	swift	object-store	True	admin	http://region1:8080
8a01	Region2	swift	object-store	True	public	http://region2:8080/v1/AUTH_%(tenant_id)s
b821	Region2	swift	object-store	True	internal	http://region2:8080/v1/AUTH_%(tenant_id)s
5188	Region2	swift	object-store	True	admin	http://region2:8080

**Note:** If the region1 cluster stops functioning, the complete multi-region setup will be unusable because the keystone service is not available.

1. On the first cluster of multi-region setup, configure local Keystone with the **spectrumscale auth object local|ad|ldap** command by using the installation toolkit.
2. For manual installation, use the **mmobj swift base** command with the **--local-keystone** arguments for configuring with keystone with local authentication type.
3. For configuring the object authentication with ad | ldap, use **mmuserauth service create|delete** command after **mmobj swift base** with **--local-keystone**.
4. On the second and third clusters of the multi-region setup, configure the external keystone with the **spectrumscale auth object external** command.
5. Set the **keystone\_url** and **configure\_remote\_keystone** properties.
6. For manual installation, use the **mmobj swift base** command with the **--remote-keystone-url** and **--configure-remote-keystone** arguments.

**Note:** The installer can automatically create these endpoints if the option to configure remote keystone is used during installation if **--configure-remote-keystone** is specified.



**Data protection considerations for multi-region object deployment:** Each cluster must maintain appropriate backups. A multi-region cluster can be more resilient to failures because if a cluster loses multi-region objects or a single cluster fails, the lost objects are restored through the normal Swift replication behavior.

Since all regions use the same Keystone service, ensure the Keystone data is backed up appropriately.

**Network considerations for multi-region object deployment:**

To communicate with nodes in other regions, the Swift services connect to the network addresses as defined in the ring files, which are the CES IP addresses. This means that every node must be able to connect to all CES IPs in all regions.

Ensure that the network routing is properly set up to enable the connections. Ensure that the necessary firewall configuration is done to allow connection to the object, account, and container servers (typically ports 6200, 6201, and 6202) on all nodes in all regions. Swift uses **rsync** to replicate data between regions, so the **rsync** port 873 also needs to be opened between the regions.

**Monitoring and callbacks in an multi-region object deployment setup:** Within a region, the monitoring of multi-region ring files and distribution to nodes is dependent upon the existing monitoring framework and the work done to enable storage policies in the monitoring layer. For the distribution of ring and configuration changes to other regions, the administrator needs to perform those steps manually using the **mmobj multiregion** command. For more information, see *mmobj command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

**Performance considerations for multi-region object deployment:** Before objects are replicated from one cluster to another, there is a delay because of the replicator run time and the network load.

Each region's access to the Keystone server affects the performance of authentication capabilities within its region.

---

## Planning for Cloud services

Proper planning is one of the most important activities that you need to carry out for successful implementation of Cloud services on the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

### Hardware requirements for Cloud services

You must meet certain hardware requirements to be able to install and use Cloud services on the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

For running Cloud services, adhere to the recommended CPU and memory requirements for a CES node even when installing Cloud services on an NSD node. For more information, see <http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html>.

The hardware requirements for Cloud services are:

- Any standard x86 64-bit servers or Power Linux nodes that run supported Linux distributions.
- The minimum size that is required for the `/var/MCStore` folder is 12 GB.

**Note:** For better performance, it is recommended to have a minimum of 2 CPU socket server of the latest Intel variety with at least 128 GB of memory.

A high CPU count promotes better cloud tiering throughput because although object storage can be slow in I/O operations per thread, object storage can support many threads. Use sixteen or more CPUs when you select your hardware.

Cloud tiering services demand a large amount of memory, which is why the minimum recommended memory size is 128 GB. Memory size requirements increase if the number of files increases, as you add files on the cloud means you must increase the memory that is on your system. For larger deployments, it is recommended that you use 10 - 20 times as much memory that is required so the Cloud services can cache its directory database data.

## Software requirements for Cloud services

You must meet certain software requirements to be able to install and use Cloud services on the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

**Note:** Cloud services are shipped along with IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition. Therefore, IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition is required for the installation.

The software requirements for Cloud services are

- For the complete list of OS support, see Table 34.
- It is required to use the following Linux version at the minimum:
  - RHEL 7.2 (Maipo)
  - Kernel version: Cloud services require the minimum kernel revision to be at 3.10.0-327.22.2.el7.x86\_64. For more information, see IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).
- The following packages must be installed on the Transparent cloud tiering core server nodes:
  - Redhat-release-server
  - Unzip
  - Tar
  - bc - An arbitrary precision calculator language
  - SQLite 3.7 and above
  - GPFS base RPMs
  - GPFS RPMs required for a CES node
  - GPFS Advanced Edition RPMs
- For bulk delete functionality to work in Swift, verify that the Bulk middleware to be in pipeline, as follows:
 

```
vim /etc/swift/proxy-server.conf
[pipeline:main] pipeline = healthcheck cache bulk authToken keystone proxy-server
```
- To run client-assist, clients need all the packages listed for server nodes except SQLite.

Table 34. OS support matrix

OS	TCT server	TCT client
RHEL 7.1 (x86)	yes	yes
RHEL 7.2 (x86)	yes	yes
RHEL 7.3 (x86)	yes	yes
RHEL 7.4 (x86)	yes	yes
RHEL 7.5 (x86)	yes	yes
RHEL 7.1 (Power8 LE)	yes	yes
RHEL 7.2 (Power8 LE)	yes	yes
RHEL 7.3 (Power8 LE)	yes	yes
RHEL 7.4 (Power8 LE)	yes	yes

Table 34. OS support matrix (continued)

OS	TCT server	TCT client
RHEL 7.5 (Power8 LE)	yes	yes
RHEL 7.5 (s390x)	yes	yes
SLES 11.2	no	yes
SLES 12.0	no	yes
SLES12 SP3 (s390x)	no	yes
Ubuntu 14.x and 16.4	no	yes
Ubuntu 16.04 and 18.04 (s390x)	no	yes

## Network considerations for Cloud services

This topic describes the network considerations that you need to follow for installing Cloud services on your IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

### Note:

- Network Time Protocol (NTP) must be correctly set on all nodes where the Cloud services are installed. If correct date and time are not set, some of the cloud storage providers will refuse to authenticate your requests.
- Cloud services always use the GPFS cluster (daemon) network and not the CES network.

Cloud storage supports storing cold data on a public cloud object storage service, such as IBM Softlayer or Amazon S3. When using a public cloud, the connection is over a WAN.

Cloud services for both Transparent cloud tiering and Cloud data Sharing can consume a considerable amount of WAN bandwidth. Customers need to ensure that there is sufficient WAN bandwidth for migrations and recalls along with any other WAN usage that they might require. When Cloud services run, an administrator can monitor WAN usage and other running processes in the IBM Spectrum Scale performance monitor. For a list of metrics, see the *Cloud services* section in the *List of Metrics* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

To avoid any conflict of Cloud services I/O traffic and internal IBM Spectrum Scale cluster I/O traffic, it is recommended that the Cloud services node is configured with two or more NICs. One NIC card is designated as the target for all inter-cluster I/O, and the other one is designated for Cloud services I/O traffic.

After the NIC card is set up and connected to the WAN, it is recommended to run any external network speed test, such as speedtest.net, to ensure that the I/O bandwidth to the external network meets your expectations.

If customers choose to configure a private cloud instance, they need to ensure that there is sufficient bandwidth between the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster and the private cloud to support migrating and recalling files. It is preferred to have a 10 GB network for higher throughput.

## Cluster node considerations for Cloud services

This topic describes the cluster considerations that need to be followed before you install Cloud services on the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

You can install the core Cloud services packages on a maximum of 4 CES or NSD (or a combination of both) nodes that you want as members of your Cloud services node class. We support up to 4 node classes. The client package is installed on all other nodes within the same cluster. Cloud data transfer

(migration, recall, import, or export) occurs only from the Cloud services nodes. However, you can initiate a cloud data transfer from either a server or a client node.

- | You can install the transparent cloud tiering server package on a non-gateway node. In this client-assisted recall configuration, the non-gateway node can recall from the same node instead of routing the commands through the gateway nodes. Except for recall, all other commands are routed through the gateway nodes. Thus, file-read requests originating on the client nodes are served immediately from the same node.
- | Use of client-assisted recall configuration is recommended in the following scenarios:
  - | • The non-gateway node has direct network access to the cloud object storage.
  - | • High CPU and memory resources are available on the node as the client-assist package starts a Java™ virtual machine per node-class managed
  - | • If a large number of recalls are initiated through the non-gateway nodes.

Do not use a mixed node cluster configuration in which there are nodes on the cluster that do not allow the installation of clients. For example, Windows nodes do not allow the installation of clients because there is no Transparent cloud tiering Windows client. These configurations:

- Do not support transparent data recalling
- Cannot respond to requests that initiate from nodes on which a client is not installed
- Cannot efficiently perform deletions

Cloud services is supported for use only in IBM Spectrum Scale clusters and on any associated remotely mounted clients, with Intel x86 Linux and Power LE Linux nodes. Use of Windows, PowerPC Big Endian, Linux on Z or AIX nodes that access file systems, where Cloud services is used (either within the cluster or via a remotely mounted client), is untested and unsupported. Inclusion of such nodes is allowed only if there is no possibility that they will ever access Cloud services; for example, such nodes are tested and supported for PowerPC Big Endian nodes in Elastic Storage Server (ESS) BE & LE servers, where no user applications are supported on Elastic Storage Server (ESS).

## IBM Cloud Object Storage considerations

This topic describes about the points that you need to consider before you use IBM Cloud Object Storage as the object storage provider.

**Note:** IBM Cloud Object Storage 3.7.3.2 or above is required for the Cloud services functionality. If you are running an older versions of IBM Cloud Object Storage, please contact IBM support for upgrading your version.

Before you begin, ensure that an access pool is created and available on the IBM Cloud Object Storage system. The access pool must have 'Cloud Storage Object' configured as the API type.

Before you configure Cloud services with IBM Cloud Object Storage as the object storage provider, ensure that the following settings are done through IBM Cloud Object Storage dsNet Manager GUI. If these settings are not correctly set, the cloud account configuration or data migration will fail.

- During the Cloud services setup process, two vaults are created on the IBM Cloud Object Storage system. One of the vaults is used for storing data and the other one is used for storing metadata. The data vault that is created by Cloud services contains the “container-prefix” appended with a unique ID.

**Note:** IBM Cloud Object Storage endpoint URL (“cloud\_url” command line option) should not have this container or vault name.

- In order for Cloud services to be able to create the vault, the user (whose access key is specified in the **mmcloudgateway account create** configuration command) should have "Vault Provisioner" role assigned through the dsNet Manager UI.

To create vaults, go to **dsNet Manager UI > Security** tab and click **user > Roles > Add "Vault Provisioner"** role.

Ensure that either "Create Only" or "Create and Delete" permission is selected under **Administration > Provisioning API configuration**. This enables Cloud services to create vaults by using the IBM Cloud Object Storage vault provisioning APIs. It is not necessary to allow Cloud services privileges to create the vault. If desired, the user can create the vault separately using IBM Cloud Object Storage management services.

**Note:** Delete access is not required for the "Vault Provisioner".

**Note:** To specify the container name of an existing container, use the **--data-name/--meta-container** parameter of the **mmcloudgateway** command.

- For IBM Cloud Object Storage deployed on public cloud and with container mode enabled, user has to contact the cloud object storage admin to obtain the accessor IP address/hostname, S3 credentials, and provisioning code (location) for the container vault.
- To create vaults through the provisioning API, IBM Cloud Object Storage uses provisioning templates. You can provide a provisioning template to the Cloud services in two ways:
  - **Using default template:** A default vault template can be set on the dsNet Manager UI. Go to **dsNet Manager UI > Configure** tab > **Storage pools > Create Vault template**. Then, **dsNet system > Default Vault template** and then select the newly created template. The vault that is created by Cloud services uses the default template.

**Note:** The default template on the IBM Cloud Object Storage system should have index enabled.

- **Using Provisioning code:** If the default vault template is not set or not preferred, then a provisioning code can be used. Ensure that during the creation of the vault template, a unique user-defined provisioning code is specified. The provisioning code is different from the name.

To look up the provisioning code, go to dsNet Manager UI > **Configure** tab > **Storage pools > Vault Templates** > select the template, and look for "Provisioning Code"). Use the **--location** option in the **mmcloudgateway account create** command to specify the provisioning code. Using this mechanism, the vault template configured for Cloud services is used for vault provisioning.

**Note:** If there is no default provisioning template set on the IBM Cloud Object Storage system and a provisioning code is not specified to the **mmcloudgateway account create** command, then the command will fail. If the provisioning code specified is not found on the IBM Cloud Object Storage system, then the command will fail.

The following settings are recommended when you create a vault template on IBM Cloud Object Storage dedicated for Transparent cloud tiering.

*Table 35. Recommended settings when creating a vault template on IBM Cloud Object Storage*

Configuration	Recommended Values	Comment
Width	As per IBM Cloud Object Storage documented configuration for production	
Threshold	As per IBM Cloud Object Storage documented configuration for production	
WriteThreshold	As per IBM Cloud Object Storage documented configuration for production	
Alert Level	As per IBM Cloud Object Storage documented configuration for production	

Table 35. Recommended settings when creating a vault template on IBM Cloud Object Storage (continued)

Configuration	Recommended Values	Comment
Alert Level	As per IBM Cloud Object Storage documented configuration for production	
SecureSlice Technology	Disabled	When using Cloud data sharing services, the user might consider enabling SecureSlice Technology encryption. If using the Transparent cloud tiering services, encryption is not needed and is redundant since data is encrypted by the Transparent cloud tiering service before the data is stored on object storage.
SecureSliceAlgorithm	Not applicable since SecureSlice is disabled.	
Versioning	Disabled	Transparent cloud tiering has built-in versioning capability, hence IBM Cloud Object Storage versioning can be disabled. For the Cloud Data Sharing service, versioning may or may not be turned off depending on the needs for retaining versioning on the data.
DeleteRestricted	Yes/No	Gateway does not attempt to delete the vaults, hence this setting can be set to Yes or No.
Name Index	Disabled	Disabling this setting can result in improved Vault performance.
Recovery Listing	Enabled	For performance reasons, the vault used for storing data should have <b>Name Index</b> disabled and for searchability reasons, the other vault should have index enabled. The second provisioning template should have <b>Name Index</b> enabled and the rest of the settings are the same as above..

Essentially, IBM Cloud Object Storage needs two provisioning templates. One of them is used for storing data and the other one is used for metadata/book keeping. This vault provisioning template must be set as default (Click the **Configure** tab and scroll down to see the option to set the default template). Pass the provisioning code ('demo' in the example) of the first vault provisioning template to the **mmcloudgateway** command during account creation by using the **--location** parameter.

## Firewall recommendations for Cloud services

This topic describes the firewall recommendations that you need to follow to be able to implement Cloud services on your cluster.

Port that can be used is 8085 TCP

- Enables connections to Cloud services nodes from all IBM Spectrum Scale nodes on this port. All communications from non-cluster nodes on this port can be blocked.
- Cloud services nodes are required to communicate with the configured Object storage provider. Typically, this communication occurs over HTTPS (443) or HTTP (80). Contact your Object storage provider for more details.
- The internal port that is used by Cloud services can be changed from 8085 to any other port by using the **mmcloudgateway config** command.

Table 36. Port requirements

Port number	Protocol	Service name	Component involved in communication
8085	TCP	Transparent cloud tiering	Intra cluster
Object storage provider dependent	TCP	Transparent cloud tiering	Transparent cloud tiering connection to Object storage provider on the external network. Typically HTTPS (443) or HTTP (80)

**Note:** For firewall recommendations for other components such as performance monitoring tool, protocol access, and GUI, see the *Securing the IBM Spectrum Scale system using firewall* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Performance considerations

While default configurations on the IBM Spectrum Scale and Cloud services work for the migration and recall of data, some adjustments might be required for optimized performance. This topic addresses some of such adjustments that will likely have the most significant effect on performance.

### IBM Spectrum Scale cluster hardware

Memory, CPU, storage, and network play a significant role in determining how well the cloud tiering is going to perform.

**Memory:** Cloud services requires at least 2 GB RAM for the heap memory, and the IBM Spectrum Scale page pool should also be reasonably high. It is recommended to have a minimum of 64 GB RAM for page pool on the Gateway nodes.

**CPU:** Cloud services can run more threads to transfer data if the system has more CPU cores available. For better performance, it is recommended to have a minimum of 24 or 32 CPU cores (the more, the better) on the Cloud services gateway nodes.

**Storage:** The read/write performance from the IBM Spectrum Scale file system is one of the major factors that determine the migrate/recall performance. To achieve desirable performance, the read/write throughput should be more than the available network bandwidth to the cloud. Some of the general recommendations are:

- Have flash disks for storing metadata on the file system.
- If possible, have a separate flash-based file system to keep the Cloud services database. This will ensure that the internal cloud service operations that can span the entire database (like reconcile) run in a reasonable amount of time.

**Note:** Adding flash storage helps particularly with scaling up the number of files that are supported by Cloud services and is apparent when you get to the hundreds of millions of files migrated to the cloud. So, this recommendation on flash storage only applies if you are scaling to those kinds of numbers.

**Network:** It is recommended to use 10 GB Ethernet for the network interfaces that are used to transmit data to the cloud. In case of on-premise object store, the object store also should have 10 GB Ethernet. It is recommended to have a dedicated external links to the cloud storage and not to use these interfaces for intra-cluster communication.

**Software:** Cloud services uses the Data Management Application programming Interface (DMAPI) of the IBM Spectrum Scale to read and write the data from the file system. As Cloud services can migrate data

only as fast as it might read from the file system, it is important to ensure that the read/write performance of the file system is good. Set the following key configuration parameters by using the **mmchconfig** command:

- **pagepool** – 16 GB
- **maxGeneralThreads** – 1280
- **dmapiWorkerThreads** – 64
- **maxFilesToCache** – 100k
- **workerThreads** – 1024

Another important IBM Spectrum Scale configuration is the file system block size. It is recommended to have the block size greater than the Cloud services slice size (default 512 KB). This will ensure that you do not read from the disk more than once to fill in a single slice.

### Cloud services configurations

Cloud services has configurable parameters, which can be adjusted based on the environment:

- **connector.server.migrate-threadpool-size** – This determines the number of internal threads that accept the migrate requests from the command line. The default value is 32, and is ideal for most of the situations where you have up to 32 CPU cores. If you have a gateway node with more than 32 CPU cores, it is advisable to increase the number to match the number of CPU cores that you have, so Cloud services can process more migrate requests at once.

**Note:** This recommendation is for Intel servers. For Power 8 LE servers, you can efficiently run two threads per CPU core, so adjust your thread count accordingly.

- **connector.server.recall-threadpool-size** – Normally you do not adjust this parameter. This determines the number of internal threads that accept recall requests from the command line. If you are sure of your workload, you can adjust the migrate and recall thread pool size. For example, if you have a very cold archive application and expect more migrates and a very limited number of recalls, then you could increase the migrate thread pool size and reduce the recall thread pool size.

For more information, see the *Tuning Cloud services parameters* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

**Recommendations on number of Gateway nodes:** While increasing the number of gateway nodes to migrate data can increase the total performance, it is to be remembered that we have to find an optimum limit. For example, if the network link from each node to the cloud is 10 Gb and overall read throughput of the file system is 2 GB/s on cluster, just two gateway nodes could achieve the maximum throughput possible. Depending on the file system read/write throughput and the network link, the user has to make an informed decision on what should be the optimal number of gateway nodes.

**Recommendation on number of Cloud Storage Access Points (CSAPs):** If you are going to a public cloud service such as the public IBM Cloud Object Storage (COS) service, there is no need to add in multiple access points since these services have a built-in load balancer. For on-premise object storage, you may choose to add in multiple Cloud Storage Access Points (CSAP) if you are not using a load balancer as follows:

- If there are multiple gateway nodes in the cluster, using more than one CSAP for a Cloud Account is a good idea. The number of requests that can be processed by a single Cloud Storage Access Point is limited, and multiple nodes hitting the same access point can cause the performance to drop. A general guide line is to have about as many CSAPs as the number of gateway nodes.

### Mixing migrate and recall workloads

Cloud services internally shares threads that carry out an operation on each slice of data, as well as threads that carry out the interactions with cloud object storage. Hence, running a huge workload of migrates and recalls simultaneously, would affect the total turn-around of each activity, compared to



running migrates and recalls separately. Cloud services expects migrates to work in batches, where policy identifies a set of cold files to be moved to a cloud storage tier. Recalls, however, are expected to be accessed on demand and are given higher priority than migrates. It is wise to schedule migration policies where possible during off-peak hours to avoid recall performance impacts.

**Note:** Bulk policy-based recall operations are supported, but not expected to be the common method for recalling files. Since recalls are generally expected to be on demand, recalls are prioritized ahead of migrates.

### Distributing files using policies

IBM Spectrum Scale policies can be used to distribute the migrations and recalls to all the nodes in the node class. To effectively use the policy, refer to the following points:

- The **mmappolicy** takes two parameters for the number of parallel threads processing the files (-m) and number of files processed per thread (-b).
  - -m has a default value of 24. If you have more CPU cores available, it is advisable to adjust the -m value accordingly
  - -b has a default value of 100. You can increase the number if you want to process more files in one iteration.
  - Plan the -m and -b carefully, so that all the nodes are given equal number of files. For example, if you have 5000 files to migrate and 4 nodes with Cloud services installed, the default values of -m 24 and -b 100 will try to distribute 2400 files to each node. There will not be enough files to be distributed to all nodes, and two nodes will be idle.
- -N parameter of the **mmappolicy** will accept the node class name, so the policy will distribute the files to all the nodes in the node class.

### Using multiple file system or file sets for the same node group

A customer can configure multiple file systems and multiple file sets for a single node group, and run migrates in parallel for all of them. If they are looking for high performance, it is recommended that they configure the policy in a manner that, migrates run on a single file system or file set at a time. Cloud services design uses a single server process, and resources such as memory, networking and threading are shared between the containers. Running parallel migrates can split the resource, and hence the effective throughput of a single container can be impacted.

Migration policy runs should not be done during the weekly and daily maintenance windows as migrations conflict with some activities that lock the Cloud directory for long periods of time.

### Container spillover

For achieving better performance and ease of maintenance, it is recommended to keep no more than 100 million entries per container. After that, the customer must create a new container for the same file system/fileset and continue migrations. This will ensure that a new database is created for the new container, and the container cloud database size does not grow too large. Operation such as reconcile for a 100 million file database can take a few hours. Growing the size much beyond that results in maintenance operations taking too long since the duration of these operations relative to database size is non-linear.

#### Note:

- | With IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.3, automatic container spillover (auto-spillover) is enabled by default during container creation. Auto-spillover is applicable for containers used with tiering service only.
- | Auto-spillover is not applicable for containers used with sharing service. After reaching the default 100 million entries in a container, as an administrator you need not manually create the new container for the same file system any more. When number of entries in an Active container reaches the given threshold

| value, a new spillover container is automatically created by the Cloud service during the next reconcile  
| operation on container. This container is made an Active container for the configured file system or  
| fileset, for subsequent data migrations. An index value is used as a suffix for new container name. For  
| example, when a container named testContainer reaches spillover threshold value, a new container  
| named testContainer001 is created automatically by the Cloud service. The next spillover index can be  
| seen in the output of **mmcloudgateway containerpairset list** .

| Container level auto-spillover settings can be tuned using **mmcloudgateway containerpairset create /**  
| **update**. More details of auto-spillover CLI options are available under **mmcloudgateway help**. You can  
| create a new container for the given file system at anytime, even before reaching configured threshold  
| entries per container. Auto-spillover occurs only when the Cloud service finds an active container  
| crossing the configured threshold entries.

## Object storage configurations

### Use of a load balancer

Object stores such as Openstack Swift and IBM Cloud Object Storage (formerly known as Cleversafe®) give you an option to have more than one node than can accept the requests from the client. While using a single CSAP, Cloud services can send the requests to only one cloud end-point URL. You can overcome this restriction by using a load balancer to distribute the requests to multiple endpoints.

- NGINX(<https://www.nginx.com/>) - IBM Cloud Object Storage recommends the use of NGINX with COS, and has a solution guide, which can be used to configure NGINX with COS. For most customers, this load balancer does not perform as well as the native load balancer provided by Cloud services.
- HAProxy (<http://www.haproxy.org/>) can be configured on a system, and used to send the requests to more than one end point
- You can use a simple DNS-based load balancer where each DNS lookup for a host name returns an IP address for a different end-point. The host name can be used to create an account with the Cloud services.

If you would prefer that Cloud services distribute the requests to multiple cloud storage endpoint URLs, you can configure more than one CSAP, and Cloud services uses a very basic load balancing algorithm to distribute load across those CSAPs.

## IBM Cloud Object Storage

For on-premise configurations, it is recommended to have multiple accessors setup, so that a load balancer or Cloud services itself will have no single point of failure in its cloud services with COS. For public IBM COS service, there is a built-in load balancer – no additional CSAP or load balancer work is necessary. For public IBM COS service, there is a built-in load balancer, so no additional CSAP or load balancer work is necessary.

### Swift

For on-premise configurations, it is recommended to have multiple accessors setup, so that a load balancer or Cloud services itself will have no single point of failure in its cloud services with Swift.

## Amazon S3

Use the appropriate supported Amazon S3 region while configuring the cloud account. Load balancing or multiple CSAPs are not necessary as Amazon S3 has a built-in load balancer.

## Security considerations

You can integrate Cloud services with IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager (ISKLM) to provide security to the data that is stored on the cloud storage tier, or you can use the native key manager provided with the Cloud services.

**Transparent cloud tiering:** For information on integration of ISKLM with Transparent cloud tiering, see *Configuring Cloud services with SKLM* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

**Note:** Ensure that you back up your security keys by using the `mmcloudgateway service backupConfig` command. Data encrypted by using the Cloud services cannot be recovered, if security keys are lost.

**Cloud data sharing:** Cloud data sharing currently supports importing any cloud data, assuming it is not read in an encrypted format. Cloud data sharing supports encrypted data only if it was exported by Cloud data sharing and the encryption keys are shared between the importer and the exporter. For this reason, it is recommended that the native Cloud services and Cloud data sharing encryption are used to provide encryption at rest. A secure connection should be used to transfer data between IBM Spectrum Scale and the cloud. Thus, data is stored encrypted on IBM Spectrum Scale, and stored encrypted on the cloud, and is secured by the connection when transferring between the two systems.

## Planning for maintenance activities

Cloud services has five key maintenance activities that need to take place. Some are for keeping normal day-to-day operations going and some are contingencies for service restoration in case of a disaster.

The following two activities are not automated and must be addressed by the administrator as follows:

- Backing up the key library manager - a new copy needs to be made every time there is any change to a key in the key manager. For more information, see the *Backing up the Cloud services configuration* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

**Note:** If the key manager is lost, there is no backdoor or secret IBM internally known way to recover the data from cloud storage. So, it is important to have a backup copy of the key manager.

- Cloud services leverages SOBAR as a backup mechanism of Transparent cloud tiering metadata that can be used to restore the Transparent cloud tiering service in case of a failure. A sample script is provided in the Transparent cloud tiering directory that can be deployed to run the backups. For more information, see the *Scale out backup and restore (SOBAR) for Cloud services* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

The following three activities are provided for by an automated Cloud services maintenance service:

- Background removal of deleted files from the object storage. This is recommended to be done daily.
- Backing up the Cloud services full database to the cloud. This is recommended to be done weekly.
- Reconciling the Transparent cloud tiering database. This is recommended to be done every four weeks.

The Transparent cloud tiering maintenance service comes with default daily (at night) and weekly (on the weekend) maintenance windows where these activities run. You can use the `mmcloudgateway maintenance status` command to query what your current maintenance window is. It is important to avoid running migration during these activities so you need to make sure your migration policies run outside of those windows. There are scaling considerations when setting up your maintenance windows. They must be long enough so that maintenance activities fit inside the windows. Consider the following guidelines when you plan these activities:

- Reconcile is by far the longest activity and the main one to consider when you plan your service windows. A reconcile for every 100 million file container (which is the default spillover value) takes a few hours if you run metadata with flash. If you run it from a disk, it takes more like 6 to 12 hours.

- Each Transparent cloud tiering node can run one service activity at a time during the maintenance window. For example, if you have three Transparent cloud tiering nodes, you might be running three maintenance activities in parallel at the same time.
- Keep in mind that maintenance activities run to completion even after the maintenance window has passed. The longest duration outside the maintenance window would be an activity that was scheduled and started just prior to the maintenance window closing. That activity would run almost entirely after the maintenance window had completed.

Here is an explanation of how the maintenance window size affects the ability to scale number of Transparent cloud tiering files. If you have a weekly maintenance window of 24 hours, each node would be able to process two-to-three 100 million file containers per week. Since reconcile maintenance needs to be done every 4 weeks, it would follow that a 24-hour maintenance window can accommodate eight-to-twelve 100 million file containers per node every week. With a full 4-node setup, this adds up to 32 - 48 containers (roughly, that is support for 3-5 billion files) per 24-hour maintenance window for a single node group.

It follows that if you want to use Transparent cloud tiering with more than this, you are likely going to want to consider putting the IBM Spectrum Scale metadata and the Transparent cloud tiering database in flash storage. This will greatly increase the number of files the maintenance window can handle.

For setting up maintenance activities, see the *Setting up maintenance tasks* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Backup considerations for Transparent cloud tiering

You must adhere to some guidelines for backing up files that need to be migrated to a cloud storage tier.

In many cases, Transparent cloud tiering (cooler data) might be run along with file system backups (for hot and warm data) for data protection. Transparent cloud tiering should not be used as a replacement for a valid backup strategy. Files that are migrated with Transparent cloud tiering might be lost if accidentally deleted or if there is a complete site failure. File system backups can protect from these types of events.

When you work with Transparent cloud tiering file system backups, it is important that a file is backed up before it is sent to a cloud storage. A file that is not backed up is recalled from the cloud storage tier when a backup program is run. This can cause unnecessary recall traffic, and also cause the backup to take longer to run. Recalling data also involves cost if you are using a public cloud provider.

To ensure that files are not migrated before they are backed up, it is best to define a migration policy that explicitly excludes files that are recently modified. For example, if nightly backups are run, at minimum, a migration policy should exclude files that are modified within the past day, so they can be backed up before they are migrated. In most cases, it is best to wait longer to avoid recalls if a backup window is missed for some reason. For example, if you run a nightly backup, it is advisable to exclude files that are modified in the past 3 days. If there is an issue with running backups for a long period, it might be necessary to disable a migration policy until the problem with backups is resolved. This avoids many recalls during the next successful backup.

The following is a sample migration policy and it should be tuned as per the backup frequency that is configured for a IBM Spectrum Scale file system.

**Note:** The amount of time to wait to migrate a file should be greater than the frequency of file system backups.

For information on backing up configuration data, see *Backing up the Cloud services configuration* topic in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

For information on backing up the cloud database, see *Backing up the Cloud services database to the cloud* topic in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

You can exclude recently modified files with a policy statement such as the following:

```
WHERE (DAYS(CURRENT_TIMESTAMP) - DAYS(MODIFICATION_TIME)) > 5
```

This statement can also be added for manual application of the policy for a directory.

```
/* Define a cloud pool, using the 'mmcloudgateway' command to perform migrations to the pool */
RULE EXTERNAL POOL 'cloudpool' EXEC '/usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mmcloudgateway files' OPTS '-F'

/* Define a migrate rule, in this example we will migrate from the system pool */
RULE 'MigrateToCloud' MIGRATE FROM POOL 'system'

/* Define the threshold to use, in this example we will migrate when the pool is 85% full,
and attempt to migrate files until the pool is 75% full */
THRESHOLD (85, 75)

/* Next, define a weight for the file to determine which files to migrate first */
/* Here we will use the last access time for the file by subtracting it from the current time,
giving a higher weight to older files */
WEIGHT(CURRENT_TIMESTAMP - ACCESS_TIME)

/* Define that we want to move to the cloud pool */
TO POOL ('cloudpool')

/* We don't want to migrate files that are smaller than 8k in size, because there are little to
no space savings due to file overhead */
WHERE (KB_ALLOCATED > 8)

/* Do not migrate Cloud services internal files, which reside in the .mcstore directory */
AND NOT(PATH_NAME LIKE '%/.mcstore/%')

/* Ignore files that have been modified in the past 5 days. This needs to be customized based on
the backup frequency. */
AND (DAYS(CURRENT_TIMESTAMP) - DAYS(MODIFICATION_TIME)) > 5
```

## Quota support for tiering

Transparent cloud tiering supports container-level quotas in ways that are described here.

IBM Spectrum Scale does not account for data that Transparent cloud tiering has migrated to the Cloud for quota support.

- Files in non-resident states do not count against quota as defined by IBM Spectrum Scale.

Object storage generally supports quotas and might be used to provide quota support.

- For example, IBM Cloud Object Storage supports hard quotas at the granularity of a container.

General guidelines for quota support:

- Use fileset support – this provides the level of granularity you need for cloud storage quotas to be useful.
- Set the desired quota for each fileset by using the object storage quota setting for the container.
- On container spillover, the size for each container in the fileset needs to be accounted for.
  - Since all but the most recent container will no longer be growing, you can set the quota for the most recent (and active) container based on the remaining capacity after subtracting for the current size of the older containers.
  - If older containers have a significant number of files deleted from them, the quota for the active container might need to be periodically adjusted upwards.
- A quota support script is available in the samples directory. that provides a report of space taken in the cloud for a given filesystem. The report does not include space allocated for files that are deleted or are overwritten with a new version that are being retained for the specified retention period.

**Note:** For more information on setting quota at a container level, see documentation for the specific cloud account that you use in your environment.

## | Client-assisted recalls

- | Non-gateway nodes can have an extended client which can service the recalls locally.
- | You must install a transparent cloud tiering server package on a non-gateway node.
- | To enable recalls from a non-gateway node, run **mmcloudgateway clientassist enable** on the non-gateway node where the package is installed. If a node is client-assist enabled, the transparent cloud tiering server nodes might still be called upon for transparent recalls if the node gets overloaded with transparent recall requests with a full queue.
- | All recalls originating from this node are serviced from this node only, without routing through the gateway node.
- | To disable client assisted recalls, run **mmcloudgateway clientassist disable**.

---

## Planning for AFM

The following topics assist you in planning for AFM

### Requirements for UID and GID on the cache and home clusters

This topic describes the UID and GID requirements on the cache and home clusters.

User IDs and group IDs must be managed the same way across the cache and home clusters. However, for AFM relationships, which are using the native GPFS protocol, where user IDs are different on the home and the cache, the IDs can be remapped using GPFS UID remapping. For a detailed procedure, see *Configuring ID mappings in IMU* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

### Recommended workerthreads on cache cluster

This topic specifies the number of workerthreads on cache cluster.

It is recommended to increase the **workerthreads** to twice the default value while using GPFS backend. For NFS protocol, the number of **workerthreads** can be equal to the default value. The default value is 48.

See the following table -

*Table 37. workerthreads value per Backend*

Backend	Minimum workerthreads value
NFS	48(default)
GPFS	96 (2*default)

### Inode limits to set at cache and home

To control the number of inodes used by a cache or home fileset, you can specify a limit on the number of inodes for that fileset during fileset creation time ( see *mmcrfileset command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference* and the **--inode-limit** option).

If home is a dependent fileset in the filesystem, no inode limit is enforced. The limits applicable to the filesystem would hold good for the dependent fileset.

**Note:** AFM does not perform cache eviction for cache fileset, even if the inode limit is reached. Cache eviction is applicable for block quotas.

---

## Planning for AFM DR

The following topics assist you in planning for AFM DR

### Requirements for UID/GID on primary and secondary clusters

User IDs and group IDs must be managed the same way across the primary and secondary clusters.

However, for AFM DR relationships, which use native GPFS protocol, where user IDs are different on the primary and secondary clusters, the IDs may be mapped again using GPFS UID remapping.

### Recommended worker1threads on primary cluster

IBM recommends that you increase the **worker1threads** to twice the number of AFM DR filesets using GPFS backend, that exist on all filesystems in the cache cluster.

For example, if a cluster has 50 primary filesets using NFS protocol and 50 primary using GPFS protocol, the **worker1threads** must be at least 150 ( $50 + 2 \times 50$ ). For NFS protocol, the number of **worker1threads** can be equal to the number of primary filesets.

### NFS setup on the secondary cluster

NFS setup on the secondary cluster follows the same rules as NFS setup on the AFM home cluster.

---

## Firewall recommendations

The IBM Spectrum Scale system administrator is supposed to follow certain recommendations to set up firewall to secure the IBM Spectrum Scale system from unauthorized access.

For more information firewall recommendations, see *Securing the IBM Spectrum Scale system using firewall* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

---

## Considerations for GPFS applications

Application design should take into consideration the exceptions to Open Group technical standards with regard to the **stat()** system call and NFS V4 ACLs. Also, a technique to determine whether a file system is controlled by GPFS has been provided.

For more information, see the following topics in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*:

- *Exceptions to Open Group technical standards*
- *Determining if a file system is controlled by GPFS*
- *GPFS exceptions and limitation to NFS V4 ACLs*
- *Considerations for GPFS applications*





---

## Chapter 3. Steps for establishing and starting your IBM Spectrum Scale cluster

There are several steps you must perform to establish and start your IBM Spectrum Scale cluster. This topic provides the information you need for performing those steps.

The installation toolkit, available on a few Linux distributions, automates many of the steps listed below.

You can install IBM Spectrum Scale and deploy protocols either manually or by using the installation toolkit. This topic provides the information you need for establishing and starting your IBM Spectrum Scale cluster manually. If you have already installed IBM Spectrum Scale with the installation toolkit, these steps have already been completed.

Follow these steps to establish your IBM Spectrum Scale cluster:

1. Review supported hardware, software, and limits by reviewing the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)) for the latest recommendations on establishing a IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.
2. Install the IBM Spectrum Scale licensed program on your system:
  - For existing systems, see Chapter 16, “Upgrading,” on page 401.
  - For new systems:
    - For your Linux nodes, see Chapter 4, “Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Linux nodes and deploying protocols,” on page 245.
    - For your AIX nodes, see Chapter 5, “Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on AIX nodes,” on page 349.
    - For your Windows nodes, see Chapter 6, “Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Windows nodes,” on page 353.
3. Decide which nodes in your system will be quorum nodes (see “Quorum” on page 152).
4. Create your GPFS cluster by issuing the **mmcrcluster** command. See “GPFS cluster creation considerations” on page 158.
5. Use the **mmchlicense** command to assign an appropriate GPFS license to each of the nodes in the cluster. See “IBM Spectrum Scale license designation” on page 143 for more information.

If you use the installation toolkit to install IBM Spectrum Scale, following steps 2 through 5, and optionally, step 6 are completed by the installation toolkit.

After your IBM Spectrum Scale cluster has been established:

1. Ensure you have configured and tuned your system according to the values suggested in the *Configuring and tuning your system for GPFS* topic in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
2. Start IBM Spectrum Scale by issuing the **mmstartup** command. For more information, see **mmstartup command** in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.
3. Create new disks for use in your file systems by issuing the **mmcrnsd** command. See “Network Shared Disk (NSD) creation considerations” on page 164.
4. Create new file systems by issuing the **mmcrfs** command. See “File system creation considerations” on page 167.
5. Mount your file systems by issuing the **mmmout** command.
6. As an optional step, you can also create a temporary directory (**/tmp/mmfs**) to collect problem determination data. The **/tmp/mmfs** directory can be a symbolic link to another location if more space can be found there. If you decide to do so, the temporary directory should *not* be placed in an IBM Spectrum Scale file system, as it might not be available if IBM Spectrum Scale fails.

If a problem should occur, IBM Spectrum Scale might write 200 MB or more of problem determination data into **/tmp/mmfs**. These files must be manually removed when any problem determination is complete. This should be done promptly so that a **NOSPACE** condition is not encountered if another failure occurs. An alternate path can be specified by issuing the **mmchconfig dataStructureDump** command.

---

## Chapter 4. Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Linux nodes and deploying protocols

Use this information for installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Linux nodes and deploying protocols.

Before installing IBM Spectrum Scale, you must review “Planning for GPFS” on page 149 and the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

Installing IBM Spectrum Scale without ensuring that the prerequisites listed in “Hardware requirements” on page 149, “Software requirements” on page 150, and “Installation prerequisites” on page 246 are satisfied can lead to undesired results.

**Note:** For information about installing IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition, see *IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition documentation in IBM Knowledge Center*.

There are three methods available for installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Linux nodes.

Installation method	Description
Manual	<p>You can install the GPFS software packages using the <b>rpm</b> command (for SLES and Red Hat Enterprise Linux) or the <b>dpkg</b> command (for Ubuntu Linux).</p> <p>For more information, see “Manually installing the IBM Spectrum Scale software packages on Linux nodes” on page 256.</p>
Installation toolkit	<p>On Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x, Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS, and SLES 12 and 15, you can install GPFS and deploy protocols using the installation toolkit.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The object protocol is not supported on SLES 12.</li><li>• SMB, NFS, and object protocols are not supported on the s390x architecture.</li><li>• SMB, NFS, and object protocols are not supported on SLES 15.</li></ul> <p>For more information, see “Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Linux nodes with the installation toolkit” on page 283.</p> <p>For information on limitations if you are using the installation toolkit, see “Limitations of the installation toolkit” on page 289.</p>
Installation GUI	<p>You can use the installation GUI to install IBM Spectrum Scale system. However, the scope of installation related activities that can be done using the installation GUI is limited.</p> <p>For more information, see “Installing IBM Spectrum Scale by using the graphical user interface (GUI)” on page 342.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The installation GUI is deprecated and it will be removed in a future release.</p>

---

## Deciding whether to install IBM Spectrum Scale and deploy protocols manually or with the installation toolkit

On supported Linux distributions, you can install IBM Spectrum Scale and deploy protocols either manually or using the installation toolkit.

### Why would I want to use the installation toolkit?

While planning your installation, consider the advantages provided by the installation toolkit. The installation toolkit:

1. Simplifies IBM Spectrum Scale cluster creation
2. Automatically creates NSD and file system stanza files
3. Creates new NSDs, file systems, and adds new nodes
4. Has a single package manager for all components of a release
5. Deploys Object, SMB, NFS by automatically pulling in all prerequisites
6. Configures file and object authentication during deployment
7. Consistently sets and synchronizes time on all nodes
8. Deploys the IBM Spectrum Scale GUI
9. Configures Performance Monitoring consistently across all nodes
10. Installs and configures file audit logging and call home functions
11. Simplifies upgrade with a single command to upgrade all components on all nodes.

Before deciding which method you want to use, review the following topics:

- “Installation prerequisites”
- “IBM Spectrum Scale packaging overview” on page 252
- “Understanding the installation toolkit options” on page 287
- “Limitations of the installation toolkit” on page 289
- “Using the installation toolkit to perform installation tasks: Explanations and examples” on page 300
- “Manually installing the IBM Spectrum Scale software packages on Linux nodes” on page 256

---

## Installation prerequisites

These are the several prerequisites for installing IBM Spectrum Scale including those for installing protocols and performance monitoring.

### Required packages for supported Linux distributions

For the list of packages that must be installed on the system before you can install IBM Spectrum Scale, see “Software requirements” on page 150.

### Required packages for CES

IBM Spectrum Scale Cluster Export Services (CES) requires the following packages to be installed:

- `ethtool`
- `nfs-utils` (on Ubuntu: `nfs-common`)
- `rpcbind`
- `psmisc`
- `iputils` (on Ubuntu: `iputils-arping`)
- On Ubuntu: `ifupdown` (there is no additional package requirement for RHEL/SLES)

### Prerequisites for the installation toolkit

For information on prerequisites for using the installation toolkit, see “Preparing to use the installation toolkit” on page 298.

### Requirements for file authentication

Before configuring file authentication, ensure that prerequisites are met to avoid installation failure. For information on prerequisites for configuring file authentication, see *Configuring authentication and ID mapping for file access* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

For Active Directory (AD) authentication considerations, see *Integrating with AD server* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

For LDAP considerations, see the *Integrating with LDAP server* topic in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

### Required packages for IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage

IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage requires the following SELinux packages to be installed:

- selinux-policy-base at 3.13.1-23 or higher
- selinux-policy-targeted at 3.12.1-153 or higher

**Attention:** If SELinux is disabled during installation of IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage, enabling SELinux after installation is not supported.

### Requirements for IBM Spectrum Scale object storage on Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS

- The postgresql version must be 9.5 or later.
- A postgresql cluster named Keystone is created during the configuration process. Do not migrate the Keystone cluster to a newer postgresql version.
- Object storage is not integrated with AppArmor.

During installation, the following conflicting packages are removed if they were previously installed:

- keystone
- python-keystone
- swift
- python-swift
- swift-object
- swift-container
- swift-object-expirer
- swift-proxy
- python-keystonemiddleware
- python-keystoneauth1
- python-keystoneclient
- python-openstackclient
- python-swiftclient

### Cleanup required if you previously used the Object Redpaper configuration process

If you have already configured the system with Openstack software to use GPFS (following instructions from the Object Red paper) be sure to follow the Object cleanup steps in “Cleanup procedures required if reinstalling with the installation toolkit” on page 392 before you start any installation activity.

### Requirements for the management GUI

The following packages must be installed on the node on which GUI needs to be installed:

- PostgreSQL server including contrib package. The PostgreSQL server must be specific to the Linux distribution.

- IBM Spectrum Scale Java Runtime Environment (JRE) (gpfs.java RPM).
- IBM Spectrum Scale performance collector (gpfs.pmcollector RPM).
- openssl for HTTPS certificate management.
- gpfs.gskit to use CCR.

#### Required packages for file audit logging

The following packages must be installed on all nodes before you can enable file audit logging:

- gpfs.java
- openssl

For more information, see “Enabling and configuring file audit logging using the installation toolkit” on page 317.

#### GPFS 4.2.0 or later required on protocol and quorum nodes

If you want to run protocols in a mixed-version cluster, the protocol nodes and all of the quorum nodes must be running on the same version that can be 4.2.0 or later.

**Note:** For the object protocol, the GPFS software is not required on the node that hosts the Keystone identity service if it is deployed on a separate node from the GPFS protocol nodes.

#### Additional GPFS requirements

- If you want to run protocols, Cluster Configuration Repository (CCR) must be available.
- **mmchconfig release=LATEST** must be run.
- A GPFS cluster and a file system are required. If this infrastructure does not already exist, you must install the GPFS software, create a GPFS cluster and create a file system. You can use the installation toolkit to do these tasks. For more information, see “Using the installation toolkit to perform installation tasks: Explanations and examples” on page 300.
- The GPFS file system must be mounted on all GPFS protocol nodes.
- It is strongly recommended to configure the file system to only support NFSv4 ACLs. You can use the installation toolkit to do this task also if you use the installation toolkit to install GPFS. For more information, see “Using the installation toolkit to perform installation tasks: Explanations and examples” on page 300.

Alternatively, you can use the **-k nfs4** parameter for **mmcrfs**. NFSv4 ACLs are a requirement for ACL usage with the SMB and NFS protocols. For more information, see **mmcrfs** examples in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

- Quotas are not enabled by default in GPFS file systems but are recommended for use with SMB and NFS protocols. For more information about quota management, see *Enabling and disabling GPFS quota management* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

#### Creation of a file system or fileset or path for a CES shared root, and creation of an object fileset

The installation toolkit uses a shared root storage area to install the protocols on each node. This storage is also used by NFS and object protocols to maintain system data associated with the cluster integration. This storage can be a subdirectory in an existing file system or it can be a file system on its own. For production systems, it is recommended to create a dedicated file system for this purpose due to performance reasons. Once this option is set, changing it requires a restart of GPFS.

You can use the installation toolkit to set up this CES shared root storage area if you use the toolkit for GPFS installation and file system creation. For more information, see “Using the installation toolkit to perform installation tasks: Explanations and examples” on page 300.

However, if you want to set up shared root before launching the installation toolkit, the following steps can be used:

1. Create a file system or fileset for the shared root. Size must be at least 4 GB.
2. Use the following command:

```
mmchconfig cesSharedRoot=path_to_the_filesystem/fileset_created_in_step_1
```

For object, the installation toolkit creates an independent fileset in the GPFS file system that you name.

### SSH and network setup

This is a general GPFS prerequisite, not specific to protocols other than protocol-specific ports that need to be open on the firewall.

The node used for initiating installation of SMB, NFS, and/or Object protocols using the installation toolkit must be able to communicate through an internal or external network with all protocol nodes to be installed. All nodes also require SSH keys to be set up so that the installation toolkit can run remote commands without any prompts. Examples of prompts include a prompt for a remote node's password or a prompt for a yes-or-no question. No prompts should occur when using SSH among any cluster nodes to and from each other, and to and from the node designated for installation.

For information on ports required by IBM Spectrum Scale, see *Securing the IBM Spectrum Scale system using firewall and GPFS port usage* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

For examples of how to open firewall ports on different operating systems, see *Examples of how to open firewall ports* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

### Repository setup

This is a general GPFS prerequisite, not specific to protocols.

The installation toolkit contains all necessary code for installation; however, there may be base operating system packages required as prerequisites. In order to satisfy any prerequisites, it might be necessary for your nodes to have access to a DVD repository or an external repository accessible by network. Repositories containing IBM Spectrum Scale dependencies include the following x86\_64 example:

```
rhel-x86_64-server-7 Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server
```

For information on setting up repositories on Red Hat Enterprise Linux nodes, see *Configuring Yum and Yum Repositories* ([https://access.redhat.com/documentation/en-US/Red\\_Hat\\_Enterprise\\_Linux/7/html/System\\_Administrators\\_Guide/sec-Configuring\\_Yum\\_and\\_Yum\\_Repositories.html](https://access.redhat.com/documentation/en-US/Red_Hat_Enterprise_Linux/7/html/System_Administrators_Guide/sec-Configuring_Yum_and_Yum_Repositories.html)).

For information on setting up repositories on SLES nodes, see *Managing Software Repositories and Services* ([https://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book\\_sle\\_deployment/data/sec\\_y2\\_sw\\_instsource.html](https://www.suse.com/documentation/sles-12/book_sle_deployment/data/sec_y2_sw_instsource.html)).

For information on setting up repositories on Ubuntu nodes, see *Repositories/Ubuntu* (<https://help.ubuntu.com/community/Repositories/Ubuntu>).

**Important:** You must disable all configured EPEL repositories on all nodes added to the installation toolkit before proceeding with installation, deployment, or upgrade.

### NTP setup

It is recommended that Network Time Protocol (NTP) be configured on all nodes in your system to ensure that the clocks of all of the nodes are synchronized. Clocks that are not synchronized will cause debugging issues and authentication problems with the protocols.

If you are using the installation toolkit for IBM Spectrum Scale installation, then no prior NTP configuration is required other than that the NTP package is installed and the NTP daemon (ntpd) is not running on all nodes.

Before setting up NTP on a node running on SLES 12 SP1 or earlier, you must run the **logprof** command, save the updated local profiles, and then reboot the node. This step is not required for nodes running on SLES 12 SP2.

For example:

```
# logprof
Reading log entries from /var/log/messages.
Updating AppArmor profiles in /etc/apparmor.d.
```

Enforce-mode changes:

```
Profile: /usr/sbin/avahi-daemon
Path:    /run/nscd/group
Mode:    r
Severity: unknown
```

```
[1 - /run/nscd/group]
```

```
(A)llow / [(D)eny] / (G)lob / Glob w/(E)xt / (N)ew / Abo(r)t / (F)inish / (O)pts
Adding /run/nscd/group r to profile.
```

```
Profile: /usr/sbin/avahi-daemon
Path:    /run/nscd/passwd
Mode:    r
Severity: unknown
```

```
[1 - /run/nscd/passwd]
```

```
(A)llow / [(D)eny] / (G)lob / Glob w/(E)xt / (N)ew / Abo(r)t / (F)inish / (O)pts
Adding /run/nscd/passwd r to profile.
```

= Changed Local Profiles =

The following local profiles were changed. Would you like to save them?

```
[1 - /usr/sbin/avahi-daemon]
```

```
(S)ave Changes / [(V)iew Changes] / Abo(r)t
Writing updated profile for /usr/sbin/avahi-daemon.
```

Reboot the node for the changes to take effect.

Use the **config ntp** commands listed in Understanding the spectrumscale installation toolkit options, Table 1 to set NTP servers and then NTP will automatically be configured at install time. For example:

```
/usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/installer/spectrumscale config ntp -e on -s 198.51.100.2,198.51.100.4
[ WARN ] The NTP package must already be installed and full bidirectional access to the UDP
port 123 must be allowed.
[ WARN ] If NTP is already running on any of your nodes, NTP setup will be skipped. To stop
NTP run 'service ntpd stop'.
[ INFO ] Setting NTP to on
[ INFO ] Setting Upstream NTP Servers to 198.51.100.2,198.51.100.4
```

However, if you are manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale or would prefer to manually configure NTP, see the following example of enabling NTP on a node.

#### On Red Hat Enterprise Linux nodes

```
# yum install -y ntp
# ntpdate <NTP_server_IP>
# systemctl enable ntpd
# systemctl start ntpd
# timedatectl list-timezones
# timedatectl set-timezone
# systemctl enable ntpd
```

#### On SLES 12 nodes

```
# zypper install -y ntp
# ntpdate <NTP_server_IP>
# systemctl enable ntpd
# systemctl start ntpd
# timedatectl list-timezones
# timedatectl set-timezone
# systemctl enable ntpd
```



On SLES 12 nodes, if the **systemctl start ntp** command hangs, use the resolution documented in Novell Knowledgebase Document 7015867.

#### On Ubuntu 16.04 LTS nodes

```
# apt-get install -y ntp
# ntpdate <NTP_server_IP>
# systemctl enable ntpd
# systemctl start ntpd
# timedatectl list-timezones
# timedatectl set-timezone
# systemctl enable ntpd
# systemctl status ntpd
```

For information about NTP configuration on Ubuntu nodes, see Ubuntu documentation about NTP.

#### Required packages for **mmprotocoltrace**

Some of the advanced tracing components of the **mmprotocoltrace** command require specific packages to be installed on all nodes that need to participate in tracing related operations.

- To enable network tracing with **mmprotocoltrace**, you need to install the **wireshark** package.
- To enable the **syscalls-tracing** for SMB, you need to install the **strace** package.

#### Collection of core dump data

For information about changing configuration to enable collection of core dump data from protocol nodes, see *Configuration changes required on protocol nodes to collect core dump data* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

---

## Preparing the environment on Linux nodes

Before proceeding with installation, prepare your environment by following the suggestions in the following sections.

### Add the GPFS bin directory to your shell PATH

Ensure that the PATH environment variable for the root user on each node includes **/usr/lpp/mmfs/bin**. (This is not required for the operation of GPFS, but it can simplify administration.)

### Other suggestions for cluster administration

GPFS commands operate on all nodes required to perform tasks. When you are administering a cluster, it may be useful to have a more general form of running commands on all of the nodes. One suggested way to do this is to use an OS utility like **dsh** or **pdsh** that can execute commands on all nodes in the cluster. For example, you can use **dsh** to check the kernel version of each node in your cluster:

```
# uname -opr
3.10.0-693.el7.x86_64 x86_64 GNU/Linux
```

Once you have **dsh** set up, you can use it to install GPFS on a large cluster. For details about setting up **dsh** or a similar utility, review the documentation for the utility.

### Verify that prerequisite software is installed

Before installing GPFS, it is necessary to verify that you have the correct levels of the prerequisite software installed on each node in the cluster. If the correct level of prerequisite software is *not* installed, see the appropriate installation manual before proceeding with your GPFS installation.

For the most up-to-date list of prerequisite software, see the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

The FAQ contains the latest information about the following:

- Supported Linux distributions and kernel levels
- Recommended or required RPM levels
- Software recommendations
- Configuration information

Before proceeding, see also “GPFS and network communication” on page 17.

---

## IBM Spectrum Scale packaging overview

The IBM Spectrum Scale self-extracting package consists of several components.

Components	Description
Installation toolkit and license	The components necessary to begin the protocol installation.
GPFS	GPFS version 5.0.x, included in this self-extracting package. It also includes call home and file audit logging packages.
NFS (Ganesha)	The packages for Ganesha, the open-source, user-space implementation of the NFS protocol. They can be installed, enabled, and configured using the installation toolkit.
SMB (Samba)	The packages for Samba, the open-source implementation of the SMB protocol. They can be installed and enabled using the installation toolkit.
Object (Swift and Keystone)	The Swift and Keystone packages necessary for enablement of Object services. They can be installed, enabled, and configured using the installation toolkit.
Performance monitoring tool	The packages necessary for performance monitoring by GPFS (including protocols). They can be installed and enabled using the installation toolkit.

---

## Preparing to install the GPFS software on Linux nodes

Follow the steps in this topic in the specified order to install the GPFS software.

This procedure installs GPFS on one node at a time:

1. “Accepting the electronic license agreement on Linux nodes” on page 253
2. “Extracting the IBM Spectrum Scale software on Linux nodes” on page 253
3. “Extracting IBM Spectrum Scale patches (update SLES or Red Hat Enterprise Linux RPMs or Ubuntu Linux packages)” on page 255
4. “Installing the IBM Spectrum Scale man pages on Linux nodes” on page 255
5. “Deciding whether to install IBM Spectrum Scale and deploy protocols manually or with the installation toolkit” on page 246  
In this step, you can choose to install GPFS and protocols either manually or using the **spectrumscale** installation toolkit.
6. “Verifying the IBM Spectrum Scale installation on SLES and Red Hat Enterprise Linux nodes” on page 270  
or  
“Verifying the IBM Spectrum Scale installation on Ubuntu Linux nodes” on page 270

## Accepting the electronic license agreement on Linux nodes

The GPFS software license agreement is shipped with the GPFS software and is viewable electronically. When you extract the GPFS software, you are asked whether or not you accept the license.

The electronic license agreement must be accepted before software installation can continue. Read the software agreement carefully before accepting the license. See “Extracting the IBM Spectrum Scale software on Linux nodes.”

## Extracting the IBM Spectrum Scale software on Linux nodes

The IBM Spectrum Scale software is delivered in a self-extracting archive.

This self-extracting archive can be downloaded from Fix Central.

The self-extracting image contains the following.

- The IBM Spectrum Scale product installation SLES and Red Hat Enterprise Linux RPMs and Ubuntu Linux packages
- The License Acceptance Process (LAP) Tool

The LAP Tool is invoked for acceptance of the IBM Spectrum Scale license agreements. The license agreements must be accepted to obtain access to the IBM Spectrum Scale product installation images.

- A version of the Java Runtime Environment (JRE) necessary to run the LAP Tool
1. Copy the self-extracting product image to a local directory, specifying the correct version of the product for your hardware platform and Linux distribution. For example:

```
cp /media/archive/Spectrum_Scale_Standard-5.0.3-x-x86_64-Linux-install/  
/tmp/Linux/Spectrum_Scale_Standard-5.0.3-x-x86_64-Linux-install
```

2. Verify that the self-extracting program has executable permissions, for example:

```
# ls -l /tmp/Spectrum_Scale_Standard-5.0.3-x-x86_64-Linux-install
```

The system displays information similar to the following:

```
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root 673341648 Nov 10 13:53 /tmp/Spectrum_Scale_Standard-5.0.3-x-x86_64-Linux-install
```

If it is not executable, you can make it executable by issuing the **chmod +x** command.

**Note:** To get a list of all packages in the self-extracting installation image, you can issue the following command (specifying the **--manifest** option):

```
Spectrum_Scale_Standard-5.0.3-x-x86_64-Linux-install --manifest
```

The system displays output similar to the following:

```
manifest  
sw,rpm,gpfs.base-5.0.3-x.x86_64.rpm,  
Thu 16 Feb 2019 10:40:41 AM MST,md5sum:99e940728f73649520533c06ae14b941  
sw,rpm,gpfs.adv-5.0.3-x.x86_64.rpm,  
Thu 16 Feb 2019 10:46:43 AM MST,md5sum:8c7a635ee2381b075e7960813bef3c47  
sw,rpm,gpfs.callhome-ecc-client-5.0.3-x.noarch.rpm,  
Thu 16 Feb 2019 12:22:35 PM MST,md5sum:9939576c9212650916e65092dd0e2c2e  
sw,rpm,gpfs.gskit-8.0.50-86.x86_64.rpm,  
Thu 16 Feb 2019 10:45:15 AM MST,md5sum:2e844aa5351dd87c234f5273ef9f3673  
sw,rpm,gpfs.gss.pmsensors-5.0.3-x.el7.x86_64.rpm,  
Wed 15 Feb 2019 09:56:29 AM MST,md5sum:3f4c084e93f3bd0d7cdf4adb8fe65448  
sw,rpm,gpfs.gss.pmcollector-5.0.3-x.el7.x86_64.rpm,  
Wed 15 Feb 2019 09:56:30 AM MST,md5sum:5fd3d21c935fea27d3b8c9b97b8c49e2  
sw,rpm,gpfs.gss.pmsensors-5.0.3-x.sles12.x86_64.rpm,  
Wed 15 Feb 2019 09:56:34 AM MST,md5sum:abab4976a83814877a140bab5e96c12f  
sw,rpm,gpfs.gss.pmcollector-5.0.3-x.sles12.x86_64.rpm,  
Wed 15 Feb 2019 09:56:31 AM MST,md5sum:48ae6aedf41c6681c98bc167dc1babdf  
sw,rpm,gpfs.gpl-5.0.3-x.noarch.rpm,  
Thu 16 Feb 2019 10:52:11 AM MST,md5sum:5989f71ace5dd4e7ca92f030de451819  
sw,rpm,gpfs.gui-5.0.3-x.noarch.rpm,
```

```

Mon 13 Feb 2019 10:34:37 AM MST,md5sum:e562910893e468cf9790865093623129
sw,rpm,gpfs.msg.en_US-5.0.3-x.noarch.rpm,
Thu 16 Feb 2019 10:44:37 AM MST,md5sum:6fe50b1bf9265d6dab322e0a472266ec
sw,rpm,gpfs.callhome-5.0.3-x.sles.noarch.rpm,
Thu 16 Feb 2019 12:21:00 PM MST,md5sum:0308af742b0e2e3469cb8016c83c972a
sw,rpm,gpfs.java-5.0.3-x.x86_64.rpm,
Tue 22 Nov 2016 08:38:17 AM MST,md5sum:03b8d22c87a145c168dddeef16f44ca2
sw,rpm,gpfs.callhome-5.0.3-x.el7.noarch.rpm,
Thu 16 Feb 2019 12:20:44 PM MST,md5sum:de55de4bcf87f7ec2406010ae9b88882

```

(The remaining packages in the installation image are displayed.)

3. Invoke the self-extracting image that you copied to a local directory by using a command such as `Spectrum-Scale-Standard-5.0.3.x-x86_64-Linux-install` and accept the license agreement:
  - a. By default, the LAP Tool, JRE, and GPFS installation images are extracted to the target directory `/usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x`
  - b. The license agreement files on the media can be viewed in text-only mode or graphics mode:
    - Text-only is the default mode. When run the output explains how to accept the agreement:
 

```

<...Last few lines of output...>
Press Enter to continue viewing the license agreement, or
enter "1" to accept the agreement, "2" to decline it, "3"
to print it, "4" to read non-IBM terms, or "99" to go back
to the previous screen.
              
```
    - To view the files in graphics mode, invoke `Spectrum-Scale-Standard-5.0.3.x-x86_64-Linux-install`
  - c. Using the graphics-mode installation requires a window manager to be configured.
  - c. You can use the `--silent` option to accept the license agreement automatically.
  - d. Use the `--help` option to obtain usage information from the self-extracting archive.

Upon license agreement acceptance, the IBM Spectrum Scale product installation images are placed in the extraction target directory (`/usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x`). This directory contains the GPFS packages according to the target Linux distribution that are applicable for the IBM Spectrum Scale edition that you installed (Standard, Advanced, or Data Management). For more information, see “Location of extracted packages” on page 259.

**Note:** For this release, the IBM Global Security Kit (GSKit) version for RPMs and Ubuntu Linux packages must be at least 8.0.50-86 or higher.

In this directory there is a **license** subdirectory that contains license agreements in multiple languages. To view which languages are provided, issue the following command:

```
ls /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/license
```

The system displays information similar to the following:

```

Chinese_TW.txt  French.txt  Japanese.txt  notices.txt  Slovenian.txt
Chinese.txt     German.txt  Korean.txt    Polish.txt   Spanish.txt
Czech.txt      Greek.txt   Lithuanian.txt Portuguese.txt Status.dat
English.txt     Indonesian.txt Italian.txt  non_ibm_license.txt Russian.txt  Turkish.txt

```

The license agreement remains available in the extraction target directory under the **license** subdirectory for future access. The license files are written using operating system-specific code pages. This enables you to view the license in English and in the local language configured on your machine. The other languages are not guaranteed to be viewable.

## Extracting IBM Spectrum Scale patches (update SLES or Red Hat Enterprise Linux RPMs or Ubuntu Linux packages)

Typically when you install an IBM Spectrum Scale system there are patches available. It is recommended that you always look for the latest patches when installing or updating an IBM Spectrum Scale node.

**Note:** For information about restrictions pertaining to Ubuntu Linux, see the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

IBM Spectrum Scale patches (update SLES and Red Hat Enterprise Linux RPMs and Ubuntu Linux packages) are available from Fix Central.

The updated SLES and Red Hat Enterprise Linux RPMs and Ubuntu Linux packages are distributed as self-extracting base software.

If you are applying a patch during the initial installation of IBM Spectrum Scale on a node, you only need to build the portability layer once after the base and update SLES or Red Hat Enterprise Linux RPMs or Ubuntu Linux packages are installed.

### Related tasks:

“Building the GPFS portability layer on Linux nodes” on page 261  
Before starting GPFS, you must build and install the GPFS portability layer.

## Installing the IBM Spectrum Scale man pages on Linux nodes

In order to use the IBM Spectrum Scale man pages, the **gpfs.docs** package (rpm or deb package) must be installed.

Once you have installed the **gpfs.docs** package, the IBM Spectrum Scale man pages are located at **/usr/share/man/**.

You do not need to install the **gpfs.docs** package on all nodes if man pages are not desired (for example, if local file system space on the node is minimal).

If you are using the installation toolkit on supported Linux distributions, it automatically installs the associated man pages when it runs **spectrumscale install** to create a new GPFS cluster.

## For Linux on Z: Changing the kernel settings

In order for GPFS to run on Linux on Z, the kernel settings need to be changed.

Before starting GPFS, perform the following steps on each Linux on Z node.

### On SLES 12 or SLES 15:

1. In the **/etc/default/grub** file, add the following:  

```
GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX_DEFAULT=" hvc_iucv=8 TERM=dumb osameid=eth instmode=ftp x  
crashkernel=206M-:103M cio_ignore=all,!ipldev,!condev vmlloc=4096G "
```
2. Run the following command:  

```
grub2-mkconfig -o /boot/grub2/grub.cfg
```
3. Reboot the node.

### On Red Hat Enterprise Linux:

1. In the **/etc/zipl.conf** file, add **vmlloc=4096G** as shown in the following example:

```
| [defaultboot]  
| defaultauto  
| prompt=1  
| timeout=5  
| default=3.10.0-957.el7.s390x
```

```
target=/boot
[3.10.0-957.el7.s390x]
image=/boot/vmlinuz-3.10.0-957.el7.s390x
parameters="root=/dev/mapper/system_vg-root
crashkernel=auto rd.dasd=0.0.0201
rd.lvm.lv=system_vg/root
cio_ignore=all,!condev,!0.0.1000-0.0.1002
rd.znet=qeth,0.0.1000,0.0.1001,0.0.1002,layer2=1
LANG=en_US.UTF-8
vmalloc=4096G"
ramdisk=/boot/initramfs-3.10.0-957.el7.s390x.img
```

2. Run the **zipl** command.

**Note:** For information about the **zipl** command, see the topic about the initial program loader for IBM Z (-zipl) in Device Drivers, Features, and Commands ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/api/content/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz\\_r\\_dd.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/api/content/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz_r_dd.html)) in the Linux on Z library overview.

3. Reboot the node.

#### On Ubuntu:

1. In the `/etc/zipl.conf` file, add `vmalloc=4096G` as shown in the following example:

```
[defaultboot]
default=UBUNTU18.04.1
target=/boot

[UBUNTU18.04.1]
target=/boot
image=/boot/vmlinuz
parameters="crashkernel=1G-:128M zfcplib.allow_lun_scan=0
scsi_mod.scsi_logging_level=4605
printk.time=1
zfcplib.dbfsz=100
root=/dev/disk/by-path/ccw-0.0.db85-part1
vmalloc=4096G"
ramdisk=/boot/initrd.img
```

2. Run the **zipl** command.

**Note:** For information about the **zipl** command, see the topic about the initial program loader for IBM Z (-zipl) in Device Drivers, Features, and Commands ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/api/content/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz\\_r\\_dd.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/api/content/linuxonibm/liaaf/lnz_r_dd.html)) in the Linux on Z library overview.

3. Reboot the node.

**Note:** For more detailed information about installation and startup of GPFS on IBM Z, see the “Getting started with Elastic Storage for Linux on Z based on GPFS technology” white paper, available on the Welcome Page for IBM Spectrum Scale in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/ibmspectrumscale\\_welcome.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/ibmspectrumscale_welcome.html)).

## Manually installing the IBM Spectrum Scale software packages on Linux nodes

Use this information to manually install the IBM Spectrum Scale software on Linux nodes.

**Note:** You can also use the installation toolkit to install and configure packages on supported Linux distributions. For more information, see “Overview of the installation toolkit” on page 283.

The IBM Spectrum Scale software packages are installed using the **rpm** command (for SLES and Red Hat Enterprise Linux) or the **dpkg** command (for Ubuntu Linux).

### Required packages for SLES and Red Hat Enterprise Linux

The following packages are required for IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition on SLES and Red Hat Enterprise Linux:

- `gpfs.base-5.0.*.rpm`
- `gpfs.gpl-5.0.*.noarch.rpm`
- `gpfs.msg.en_US-5.0.*.noarch.rpm`
- `gpfs.gskit-8.0.50.*.rpm`
- `gpfs.license*.rpm`
- `gpfs.compression-5.0.*.rpm`

The following packages are required for IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition on SLES and Red Hat Enterprise Linux, in addition to the packages listed for IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition:

- `gpfs.crypto-5.0.*.rpm`
- `gpfs.adv-5.0.*.rpm`

### Required packages for Ubuntu Linux

The following packages are required for IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition on Ubuntu Linux:

- `gpfs.base_5.0.*.deb`
- `gpfs.gpl_5.0.*all.deb`
- `gpfs.msg.en-us_5.0.*all.deb`
- `gpfs.gskit_8.0.50.*.deb`
- `gpfs.license*.deb`
- `gpfs.compression_5.0.*.deb`

The following packages are required for IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition on Ubuntu Linux, in addition to the packages listed for IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition:

- `gpfs.crypto_5.0.*.deb`
- `gpfs.adv_5.0.*.deb`

**Note:** For this release, the IBM Global Security Kit (GSKit) version for RPMs and Ubuntu Linux packages must be at least 8.0.50-86 or later.

### Optional packages for SLES and Red Hat Enterprise Linux

- `gpfs.docs-5.0.*noarch.rpm`
- `gpfs.java-5.0.*.rpm`
- `gpfs.callhome-ecc-client-5.0.*.rpm`
- `gpfs.callhome-5.0.*.rpm`
- `gpfs.gui-5.0.*.rpm`
- `gpfs.kafka-5.0.*.x86_64.rpm` (Red Hat Enterprise Linux x86\_64 only)
- `gpfs.librdkafka-5.0.*.x86_64.rpm` (Red Hat Enterprise Linux x86\_64 only)

For information about manually installing call home and management GUI packages, see Chapter 11, “Installing call home,” on page 377 and “Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI” on page 276.

For information about manually installing file audit logging, see “Manually installing file audit logging” on page 381.

The following performance monitoring packages are also optional for SLES and Red Hat Enterprise Linux.

- `gpfs.gss.pmcollector-5.0.*.rpm`
- `gpfs.gss.pmsensors-5.0.*.rpm`

The following protocols packages are available for Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x (x86\_64-linux and PPC64-linux platforms):

- `gpfs.nfs-ganesha-2.5.*.el7.*.rpm`
- `gpfs.nfs-ganesha-gpfs-2.5.*.el7.*.rpm`
- `gpfs.nfs-ganesha-utils-2.5.*.el7.*.rpm`
- `gpfs.smb-4.9.*_gpfs_*.el7.*.rpm`
- `spectrum-scale-object-5.0.*.noarch.rpm`
- `gpfs.scst*.el7.*.rpm`
- `gpfs.pm-ganesha-*.el7.*.rpm`
- `pmswift_5.0.*.noarch.rpm`
- `gpfs.protocols-support-5.0.*.rpm`

The following protocols packages are available for SLES 12:

- `gpfs.nfs-ganesha-2.5.*.sles12.x86_64.rpm`
- `gpfs.nfs-ganesha-gpfs-2.5.*.sles12.x86_64.rpm`
- `gpfs.nfs-ganesha-utils-2.5.*.sles12.x86_64.rpm`
- `gpfs.smb-4.9.*_gpfs_*.sles12.x86_64.rpm`
- `gpfs.pm-ganesha-*.sles12.x86_64.rpm`
- `gpfs.protocols-support-5.0.*.rpm`

For information on manually installing packages including protocols packages on Red Hat Enterprise Linux, SLES, and Ubuntu nodes, see “Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale and deploying protocols on Linux nodes” on page 263.

For information about manually installing performance monitoring packages, see “Manually installing the performance monitoring tool” on page 273.

### Optional packages for Ubuntu Linux

The following packages are optional for Ubuntu Linux.

- `gpfs.docs_5.0.*all.deb`
- `gpfs.kafka-5.0*.deb`
- `gpfs.librdkafka-5.0*.deb`

The following performance monitoring packages are optional for Ubuntu Linux (x86\_64 and s390x).

- `gpfs.gss.pmcollector_5.0.*U16*.deb` (Ubuntu 16.04 LTS)
- `gpfs.gss.pmsensors_5.0.*U16*.deb` (Ubuntu 16.04 LTS)
- `gpfs.gss.pmcollector_5.0.*U18*.deb` (Ubuntu 18.04 LTS)
- `gpfs.gss.pmsensors_5.0.*U18*.deb` (Ubuntu 18.04 LTS)

The following protocols packages are available for Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS:

- `gpfs.nfs-ganesha_2.5.*amd64.deb`
- `gpfs.nfs-ganesha_gpfs-2.5.*amd64.deb`
- `gpfs.nfs-ganesha_utils-2.5.*amd64.deb`
- `gpfs.smb_4.9.*gpfs*-1_amd64.deb` (Ubuntu 16.04 LTS)
- `gpfs.smb_4.9.*gpfs*bionic*amd64.deb` (Ubuntu 18.04 LTS)



- spectrum-scale-object\_5.0.\*.deb
- gpfs.pm-ganesha-\*.amd64.deb
- pmswift\_5.0.\*.deb
- gpfs.protocols-support\_5.0.\*.deb

The following packages are required (and provided) only on the Elastic Storage Server (ESS):

- gpfs.gnr.base-1.0.0-0.ppc64.rpm
- gpfs.gnr-5.0.\*.ppc64.rpm
- gpfs.gss.firmware-5.0.\*.ppc64.rpm

For more information about Elastic Storage Server (ESS), see Elastic Storage Server (ESS) documentation on IBM Knowledge Center.

The gpfs.gnr-3.5.\*.ppc64.rpm package is required only if IBM Spectrum Scale RAID on Power 775 is used. For more information about IBM Spectrum Scale RAID, see *IBM Spectrum Scale RAID: Administration* in Elastic Storage Server (ESS) documentation on IBM Knowledge Center.

## Location of extracted packages

The installation images are extracted to following component specific directories.

### Base GPFS packages

- Ubuntu: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs\_debs and /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs\_debs/<os>
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs\_rpms and /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs\_rpms/<os>
- SLES: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs\_rpms and /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs\_rpms/<os>

### NFS packages

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/ganesha\_rpms/rhel7
- Ubuntu 16.04 and 18.04: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/ganesha\_debs/ubuntu16
- SLES 12: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/ganesha\_rpms/sles12

### SMB packages

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/smb\_rpms/rhel7
- Ubuntu 16.04: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/smb\_debs/ubuntu/ubuntu16
- Ubuntu 18.04: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/smb\_debs/ubuntu/ubuntu18
- SLES 12: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/ganesha\_rpms/sles12

### Object packages

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/object\_rpms/rhel7
- Ubuntu 16.04 and 18.04: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/object\_debs/ubuntu16

**Note:** Object protocol is not supported on SLES 12.

### Performance monitoring packages

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/zimon\_rpms/rhel7
- Ubuntu 16.04: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/zimon\_debs/ubuntu/ubuntu16<sup>1</sup>
- Ubuntu 18.04: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/zimon\_debs/ubuntu/ubuntu18<sup>1</sup>
- SLES 12: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/zimon\_rpms/sles12

**Note:** The pm-ganesha and pmswift packages are extracted from the following directories:

- The packages are extracted from the /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/zimon\_rpms/rhel7 directory for Red Hat Enterprise Linux.

- The packages are extracted from the /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/zimon\_rpms/sles12 directory for GPFS SLES.

## Installation of packages for SLES or Red Hat Enterprise Linux

To install all of the required GPFS SLES or Red Hat Enterprise Linux RPMs for the IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition, change the directory to where the installation image is extracted. For example, issue this command:

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/gpfs_rpms
```

Then, issue this command for Standard Edition:

```
rpm -ivh gpfs.base*.rpm gpfs.gpl*rpm gpfs.license.std*.rpm gpfs.gskit*rpm gpfs.msg*rpm
```

or issue the following command for Data Access Edition:

```
rpm -ivh gpfs.base*.rpm gpfs.gpl*rpm gpfs.license.da*.rpm gpfs.gskit*rpm gpfs.msg*rpm
```

To install all of the required GPFS SLES or Red Hat Enterprise Linux RPMs for the IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition, change to the directory where the installation image is extracted. For example, enter the following command:

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/gpfs_rpms
```

Then, issue the following command for Advanced Edition:

```
rpm -ivh gpfs.base*.rpm gpfs.gpl*rpm gpfs.license.adv*.rpm gpfs.gskit*rpm  
gpfs.msg*rpm gpfs.adv*rpm gpfs.crypto*rpm
```

or issue the following command for Data Management Edition:

```
rpm -ivh gpfs.base*.rpm gpfs.gpl*rpm gpfs.license.dm*.rpm gpfs.gskit*rpm  
gpfs.msg*rpm gpfs.adv*rpm gpfs.crypto*rpm
```

To install the optional gpfs.doc package for GPFS SLES or Red Hat Enterprise Linux issue the following command:

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/gpfs_rpms  
rpm -ivh gpfs.docs*.rpm
```

## Installation of packages for Ubuntu Linux

To install all of the GPFS Ubuntu Linux packages for the IBM Spectrum Scale Standard edition, change the directory to where the installation image is extracted. For example, issue this command:

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/gpfs_debs
```

then, issue this command for Standard Edition:

```
dpkg -i gpfs.base*deb gpfs.gpl*deb gpfs.license.std*.deb gpfs.gskit*deb gpfs.msg*deb
```

or issue the following command for Data Access Edition:

```
dpkg -i gpfs.base*deb gpfs.gpl*deb gpfs.license.da*.deb gpfs.gskit*deb gpfs.msg*deb
```

To install all of the GPFS Ubuntu Linux packages for IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition, change the directory to where the installation image is extracted. For example, issue this command:

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/gpfs_debs
```

then, issue this command for Advanced Edition:

```
dpkg -i gpfs.base*deb gpfs.gpl*deb gpfs.license.adv*.deb gpfs.gskit*deb gpfs.msg*deb gpfs.adv*deb gpfs.crypto*deb
```

or, issue this command for Data Management Edition:

```
dpkg -i gpfs.base*deb gpfs.gpl*deb gpfs.license.dm*.deb gpfs.gskit*deb gpfs.msg*deb gpfs.adv*deb gpfs.crypto*deb
```

To install optional gpfs.doc package for GPFS Ubuntu Linux package, change the directory to where the installation image is extracted and install the package. For example, issue this command:

```
dpkg -i /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/gpfs_debs/gpfs.doc*deb
```

#### Related concepts:

“Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI” on page 276

The management GUI provides an easy way for the users to configure, manage, and monitor the IBM Spectrum Scale system.

Chapter 11, “Installing call home,” on page 377

The call home feature collects files, logs, traces, and details of certain system health events from different nodes and services. These details are shared with the IBM support center for monitoring and problem determination.

“Manually installing file audit logging” on page 381

Use this information to manually install file audit logging on your system.

“Manually installing the performance monitoring tool” on page 273

The performance monitoring tool is automatically installed by the installation toolkit. You can also install the performance monitoring tool manually for the releases that are not supported by the installation toolkit.

“Object protocol further configuration” on page 344

If the Object protocol was enabled during installation, use the following information to verify the Object protocol configuration and to enable features such as unified file and object access and multi-region object deployment.

## Building the GPFS portability layer on Linux nodes

Before starting GPFS, you must build and install the GPFS portability layer.

The GPFS portability layer is a loadable kernel module that allows the GPFS daemon to interact with the operating system.

**Note:** The GPFS kernel module should be updated every time the Linux kernel is updated. Updating the GPFS kernel module after a Linux kernel update requires rebuilding and installing a new version of the module.

**Tip:** You can configure a cluster to rebuild the GPL automatically whenever a new level of the Linux kernel is installed or whenever a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale is installed. This feature is available only on the Linux operating system. For more information, see the description of the **autoBuildGPL** attribute in the topic *mmchconfig command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

To build the GPFS portability layer on Linux nodes, do the following:

1. Check for the following before building the portability layer:
  - Updates to the portability layer at the IBM Support Portal: Downloads for General Parallel File System ([www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Downloads/Software/Cluster\\_software/General\\_Parallel\\_File\\_System](http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Downloads/Software/Cluster_software/General_Parallel_File_System)).
  - The latest kernel levels supported in the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).
2. Build your GPFS portability layer in one of the following ways:
  - Using the **mmbuildgpl** command (recommended) for nodes running GPFS 4.1.0.4 or later. For more information, see *mmbuildgpl command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.
  - Using the **Autoconfig** tool.
  - Using the directions in **/usr/lpp/mmfs/src/README**.

## Using the `mmbuildgpl` command to build the GPFS portability layer on Linux nodes

Starting with GPFS 4.1.0.4, you can use the `mmbuildgpl` command to simplify the build process.

To build the GPFS portability layer using `mmbuildgpl`, enter the following command:

```
/usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mmbuildgpl
```

Each kernel module is specific to a Linux version and platform. If you have multiple nodes running exactly the same operating system level on the same platform, and only some of these nodes have a compiler available, you can build the kernel module on one node, then create an installable package that contains the binary module for ease of distribution.

If you choose to generate an installable package for portability layer binaries, perform the following additional step:

```
/usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mmbuildgpl --build-package
```

When the command finishes, it displays the location of the generated package as in the following examples:

```
Wrote: /root/rpmbuild/RPMS/x86_64/gpfs.gplbin-3.10.0-229.el7.x86_64-5.0.3-x.x86_64.rpm
```

or

```
| Wrote: /tmp/deb/gpfs.gplbin-4.4.0-127-generic_5.0.3_amd64.deb
```

```
| You can then copy the generated package to other machines for deployment. By default, the generated
| package can be deployed only to machines whose architecture, distribution level, Linux kernel, and IBM
| Spectrum Scale maintenance level are identical with those of the machine on which the gpfs.gplbin
| package was built. However, you can install the generated package on a machine with a different Linux
| kernel by setting the MM_INSTALL_ONLY environment variable before you install the generated package. If
| you install the gpfs.gplbin package, you do not need to install the gpfs.gpl package.
```

**Note:** During the package generation, temporary files are written to the `/tmp/rpm` or `/tmp/deb` directory, so be sure there is sufficient space available. By default, the generated package goes to `/usr/src/packages/RPMS/<arch>` for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server, `/usr/src/redhat/RPMS/<arch>` for Red Hat Enterprise Linux, and `/tmp/deb` for Ubuntu Linux.

### Important:

- The GPFS portability layer is specific to both the current kernel and the GPFS version. If either the kernel or the GPFS version changes, a new GPFS portability layer needs to be built.
- Although operating system kernels might upgrade to a new version, they are not active until after a reboot. Thus, a GPFS portability layer for this new kernel must be built after a reboot of the operating system.
- Before you install a new GPFS portability layer, make sure to uninstall the prior version of the GPFS portability layer first.

## Using the Autoconfig tool to build the GPFS portability layer on Linux nodes

To simplify the build process, GPFS provides an automatic configuration tool called **Autoconfig**.

The following example shows the commands required to build the GPFS portability layer using the **Autoconfig** tool:

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/src
make Autoconfig
make World
make InstallImages
```

Each kernel module is specific to a Linux version and platform. If you have multiple nodes running exactly the same operating system level on the same platform, or if you have a compiler available on only one node, you can build the kernel module on one node, then create an installable package that contains the binary module for ease of distribution.

If you choose to generate an installable package for portability layer binaries, perform the following additional step:

**make rpm** for SLES and RHEL Linux

**make deb** for Ubuntu Linux

When the command finishes, it displays the location of the generated package as in the following examples:

```
Wrote: /root/rpmbuild/RPMS/x86_64/gpfs.gplbin-3.10.0-229.el7.x86_64-5.0.3-x.x86_64.rpm
```

or

```
| Wrote: /tmp/deb/gpfs.gplbin-4.4.0-127-generic_5.0.3_amd64.deb
```

```
| You can then copy the generated package to other machines for deployment. By default, the generated
| package can be deployed only to machines whose architecture, distribution level, Linux kernel, and IBM
| Spectrum Scale maintenance level are identical with those of the machine on which the gpfs.gplbin
| package was built. However, you can install the generated package on a machine with a different Linux
| kernel by setting the MM_INSTALL_ONLY environment variable before you install the generated package. If
| you install the gpfs.gplbin package, you do not need to install the gpfs.gpl package.
```

**Note:** During the package generation, temporary files are written to the **/tmp/rpm** or **/tmp/deb** directory, so be sure there is sufficient space available. By default, the generated package goes to **/usr/src/packages/RPMS/<arch>** for SUSE Linux Enterprise Server, **/usr/src/redhat/RPMS/<arch>** for Red Hat Enterprise Linux, and **/tmp/deb** for Ubuntu Linux.

#### **Important:**

- The GPFS portability layer is specific to both the current kernel and the GPFS version. If either the kernel or the GPFS version changes, a new GPFS portability layer needs to be built.
- Although operating system kernels might upgrade to a new version, they are not active until after a reboot. Thus, a GPFS portability layer for this new kernel must be built after a reboot of the operating system.
- Before you install a new GPFS portability layer, make sure to uninstall the prior version of the GPFS portability layer first.

## **Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale and deploying protocols on Linux nodes**

Use this information to manually install IBM Spectrum Scale and deploying protocols on systems running on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x, SLES 12, and Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS.

These prerequisites must be met before installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Linux systems.

- Repository must be set up.
  - For information on setting up repository on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x, see *Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7 System Administrator's Guide*.
  - For information on setting up repository on SLES 12, see *SLES 12 Deployment Guide*.
  - For information on setting up repository on Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS, see *Ubuntu Server Guide*.

- All prerequisite packages must be installed. For a list of prerequisite packages, see “Software requirements” on page 150 and “Installation prerequisites” on page 246.
- Passwordless SSH must be set up between all nodes in the cluster. For more information, see *Problems due to missing prerequisites* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.
- Firewall configuration must be according to your requirements. It is recommended that firewalls are in place to secure all nodes. For more information, see *Securing the IBM Spectrum Scale system using firewall* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

To check the status of the firewall on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x, issue the following command:

```
systemctl status firewalld
```

To check the status of the firewall on SLES 12, issue the following command:

```
sudo /sbin/rcSuSEfirewall12 status
```

To check the status of the firewall on Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS, issue the following command:

```
sudo ufw status
```

For examples of how to open firewall ports on different operating systems, see *Examples of how to open firewall ports* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

- Every node must have a non-loopback IP address assigned. In some scenarios, a freshly installed node might have its host name pointing to 127.0.0.1 in `/etc/hosts`. 127.0.0.1 is a loopback IP address and it is not sufficient for multi-node IBM Spectrum Scale cluster creation. In these cases, each node needs a static IP with connectivity to the other nodes.
- Optionally, the bash profile can be updated to allow easier access to IBM Spectrum Scale commands.
  - Verify that the PATH environment variable for the root user on each node includes `/usr/lpp/mmfs/bin` and the required tool directories. This allows a user to execute IBM Spectrum Scale commands without having to first change directory to `/usr/lpp/mmfs/bin`.
  - Export the `WCOLL` variable used by `mmdsh`. In the following example, `/nodes` is a manually created file, listing line by line, each node within the cluster using the nodes' FQDN. Once IBM Spectrum Scale is installed, this configuration allows the `mmdsh` command to execute commands on multiple nodes simultaneously.

Example:

```
# cat ~/.bash_profile
# .bash_profile
# Get the aliases and functions
if [ -f ~/.bashrc ]; then
    . ~/.bashrc
fi

#####
# User specific environment and startup programs
#####
#####
# Specifics for GPFS testing
#####
export PATH=$PATH:$HOME/bin:/usr/lpp/mmfs/bin
export WCOLL=/nodes
```

Log out and then log in again for the changes in the bash profile to take effect.

## Installing IBM Spectrum Scale packages on Linux systems

Use this information to manually install IBM Spectrum Scale packages on systems running on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x, SLES 12, and Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS.

Do these steps on all nodes on which you want to install IBM Spectrum Scale, one by one unless noted otherwise.

1. Download and extract IBM Spectrum Scale packages, and then accept the licensing agreement. For more information, see “Extracting the IBM Spectrum Scale software on Linux nodes” on page 253 and “Accepting the electronic license agreement on Linux nodes” on page 253.

For information on the location of extracted packages, see “Location of extracted packages” on page 259.

2. Install the IBM Spectrum Scale RPMs, including the Advanced Edition packages, by issuing one of the following commands depending on the operating system.

- On Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x and SLES 12, issue the following command.

```
# rpm -ivh gpfs.base*.rpm gpfs.gpl*.rpm gpfs.license*.rpm gpfs.gskit*.rpm
gpfs.msg*.rpm gpfs.compression*.rpm gpfs.adv*.rpm gpfs.crypto*.rpm
```

- On Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS, issue the following command.

```
dpkg -i gpfs.base*deb gpfs.gpl*deb gpfs.license.ad*.deb gpfs.gskit*deb
gpfs.msg*deb gpfs.compression*deb gpfs.adv*deb gpfs.crypto*deb
```

A sample output is as follows.

```
Preparing... ##### [100%]
1:gpfs.base ##### [ 11%]
2:gpfs.compression ##### [ 27%]
3:gpfs.adv ##### [ 33%]
4:gpfs.crypto ##### [ 44%]
5:gpfs.gpl ##### [ 56%]
6:gpfs.license.adv ##### [ 67%]
7:gpfs.msg.en_US ##### [ 83%]
8:gpfs.gskit ##### [ 100%]
```

3. Build the portability layer using the following command.

```
# /usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mmbuildgpl
```

A sample output is as follows. The output will vary depending on the operating system.

```
-----
mmbuildgpl: Building GPL module begins at Thu Mar 24 15:18:23 CST 2016.
-----
Verifying Kernel Header...
kernel version = 31228004 (3.12.28-4-default, 3.12.28-4)
module include dir = /lib/modules/3.12.28-4-default/build/include
module build dir   = /lib/modules/3.12.28-4-default/build
kernel source dir  = /usr/src/linux-3.12.28-4/include
Found valid kernel header file under /lib/modules/3.12.28-4-default/build/include
Verifying Compiler...
make is present at /usr/bin/make
cpp is present at /usr/bin/cpp
gcc is present at /usr/bin/gcc
g++ is present at /usr/bin/g++
ld is present at /usr/bin/ld
Verifying Additional System Headers...
Verifying linux-glibc-devel is installed ...
Command: /bin/rpm -q linux-glibc-devel
The required package linux-glibc-devel is installed
make World ...
make InstallImages ...
-----
mmbuildgpl: Building GPL module completed successfully at Thu Mar 24 15:18:31 CST 2016.
-----
```

You might need to install prerequisite packages, if the portability layer cannot be built due to missing prerequisite packages. For a list of prerequisite packages, see “Software requirements” on page 150.

If the repository setup and the kernel configuration are correct, you can install the prerequisite packages by issuing one of the following commands depending on the operating system:

**Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x:**

```
# /usr/bin/yum install -y package_name1 package_name2 ... package_nameN
```

**SLES 12:**

```
# /usr/bin/zypper install -y package_name1 package_name2 ... package_nameN
```

**Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS:**

```
# /usr/bin/apt-get install -y package_name1 package_name2 ... package_nameN
```

Once IBM Spectrum Scale is built on all nodes, you can create the cluster. It is recommended to have an odd number of quorum nodes and that your NSD nodes be designated as quorum nodes

4. Create the cluster using the following command from one of the nodes.

```
# /usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mmcrcluster -N NodesList --ccr-enable -r /usr/bin/ssh -R /usr/bin/scp -C cluster1.spectrum
```

In this command example, *NodesList* is a file that contains a list of nodes and node designations to be added to the cluster and its contents are as follows:

```
node1:quorum
node2
node3
node4:quorum-manager
node5:quorum-manager
```

Running the **mmcrcluster** command generates output similar to the following:

```
mmcrcluster: Performing preliminary node verification ...
mmcrcluster: Processing quorum and other critical nodes ...
mmcrcluster: Processing the rest of the nodes ...
mmcrcluster: Finalizing the cluster data structures ...
mmcrcluster: Command successfully completed
mmcrcluster: Propagating the cluster configuration data to all
affected nodes. This is an asynchronous process.
# Thu Mar 24 15:33:06 CST 2016: mmcommon pushSdr_async: mmsdrfs propagation started
Thu Mar 24 15:33:10 CST 2016: mmcommon pushSdr_async: mmsdrfs propagation completed; mmdsh rc=0
```

5. Accept proper role licenses for the nodes using the following commands from one of the nodes.

- a. Accept the server licenses for the applicable nodes.

```
# /usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mmchlicense server --accept -N node1,node4,node5
```

The system displays output similar to the following:

The following nodes will be designated as possessing server licenses:

```
node1
node4
node5
```

```
mmchlicense: Command successfully completed
mmchlicense: Warning: Not all nodes have proper GPFS license designations.
Use the mmchlicense command to designate licenses as needed.
mmchlicense: Propagating the cluster configuration data to all
affected nodes. This is an asynchronous process.
# Thu Mar 24 15:37:59 CST 2016: mmcommon pushSdr_async: mmsdrfs propagation started
Thu Mar 24 15:38:01 CST 2016: mmcommon pushSdr_async: mmsdrfs propagation completed; mmdsh rc=0
```

- b. Accept the client licenses for the applicable nodes.

```
# /usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mmchlicense client --accept -N node2,node3
```

The system displays output similar to the following:

The following nodes will be designated as possessing client licenses:

```
node2
node3
```

```
mmchlicense: Command successfully completed
mmchlicense: Propagating the cluster configuration data to all
affected nodes. This is an asynchronous process.
# Thu Mar 24 15:38:26 CST 2016: mmcommon pushSdr_async: mmsdrfs propagation started
Thu Mar 24 15:38:28 CST 2016: mmcommon pushSdr_async: mmsdrfs propagation completed; mmdsh rc=0
```

IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is now created. You can view the configuration information of the cluster using the following command.

```
# /usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mmislcluster
```

The system displays output similar to the following:

```
GPFS cluster information
=====
GPFS cluster name:      cluster1.spectrum
GPFS cluster id:       993377111835434248
GPFS UID domain:       cluster1.spectrum
Remote shell command:  /usr/bin/ssh
Remote file copy command: /usr/bin/scp
```



Repository type: CCR  
GPFS cluster configuration servers:

-----				
Primary server:		node1 (not in use)		
Secondary server:		(none)		
Node	Daemon	node name	IP address	Admin node name Designation
-----				
1	node1		203.0.113.11	node1 quorum
2	node4		203.0.113.14	node4 quorum-manager
3	node5		203.0.113.15	node5 quorum-manager
4	node2		203.0.113.12	node2
5	node3		203.0.113.13	node3

6. Start the GPFS daemons and the cluster using the following command from one of the nodes.

```
# /usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mmstartup -N NodesList
```

*NodesList* is the list of nodes on which the daemons and the cluster are to be started.

You can use the **mmgetstate -N NodesList** command to verify that the GPFS software is running on these nodes.

## Creating NSDs and file systems as part of installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Linux systems

Use this information to create NSDs and file systems for installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x, SLES 12, and Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS systems.

For information about NSD creation considerations, see “Network Shared Disk (NSD) creation considerations” on page 164.

1. Create NSDs as follows.

- a. Identify available physical disks in the /dev directory.
- b. Create the NSD stanza file to be used with the **mmcrnsd** command.

For example, consider you have 2 disks, /dev/sdc and /dev/sdd, and your node name is exnode1 and it is running Linux. In this case, your NSD stanza file contents are similar to the following:

```
%nsd:
device=/dev/sdc
nsd=nsd1
servers=exnode1
usage=dataAndMetadata
failureGroup=-1
pool=system
%nsd:
device=/dev/sdd
nsd=nsd2
servers=exnode1
usage=dataAndMetadata
failureGroup=-1
```

**Note:** The server name used in the NSD stanza file must be resolvable by the system.

- c. Create the NSDs using the following command.

```
# mmcrsnd -F NSD_Stanza_Filename
```

2. Create a GPFS file system using the following command.

```
# mmcrfs fs1 -F NSD_Stanza_Filename -k nfs4
```

**Attention:** Ensure that you do not use the same NSD stanza files that was used to create NSDs. Using the same NSD stanza file is not desirable because it results in all NSDs getting associated with one file system. If this file system gets corrupted, you can no longer access it and because all your NSDs are associated with this file system, your cluster becomes unusable.

## Installing Cluster Export Services as part of installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Linux systems

Use this information to install Cluster Export Services (CES) on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x, SLES 12, and Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS systems.

### Note:

- The object protocol is not supported on SLES 12.
- SMB, NFS, and object protocols are not supported on the s390x architecture.

**Important:** If you plan to install and configure CES, all protocols available on your platform must be installed. Installing a subset of available protocols is not supported.

1. Unmount GPFS file systems and stop GPFS on all nodes using the following command.  

```
# mmshutdown -a
```
2. Configure the CES shared root file system on one of the available file systems using the following command.  

```
# mmchconfig cesSharedRoot=/gpfs/fs0
```
3. Start GPFS on all nodes in the cluster using the following command.  

```
# mmstartup -a
```
4. Enable CES on the required nodes using the following command.  

```
# mmchnode --ces-enable -N prnode1,prnode2,prnode3
```
5. Add the IP addresses of the protocol nodes to CES using the following commands.  

```
# mmces address add --ces-ip 198.51.100.2  
# mmces address add --node prnode1 --ces-ip 198.51.100.2
```
6. Verify the CES configuration using the following commands.  

```
# mmlscluster --ces  
# mmces address list
```

At this point, there are no services enabled. You can verify that using the **mmces service list --all** command. The system displays output similar to the following.

No CES services are enabled.

7. Download and extract IBM Spectrum Scale protocol packages, and then accept the licensing agreement. For more information, see “Extracting the IBM Spectrum Scale software on Linux nodes” on page 253 and “Accepting the electronic license agreement on Linux nodes” on page 253. For information on the location of extracted packages, see “Location of extracted packages” on page 259.
8. Install IBM Spectrum Scale NFS packages by issuing one of the following commands depending on the operating system.

- On Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x and SLES 12, issue the following command.

```
# rpm -ivh NFS_Package_Name1 NFS_Package_Name2 ... NFS_Package_NameN
```

- On Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS, issue the following command.

```
# dpkg -i NFS_Package_Name1 NFS_Package_Name2 ... NFS_Package_NameN
```

For a list of packages for the current IBM Spectrum Scale release, see “Manually installing the IBM Spectrum Scale software packages on Linux nodes” on page 256.

9. Remove conflicting Samba packages that might have been installed on each CES node by issuing one of the following commands depending on the operating system.
- On Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x and SLES 12, issue the following command.  

```
# mmdsh -N all rpm -e samba-common --nodeps  
# mmdsh -N all rpm -e samba-client
```
  - On Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS, issue the following command.

```
# mmdsh -N all dpkg -P samba-common
# mmdsh -N all dpkg -P samba-client
```

10. Install IBM Spectrum Scale SMB package by issuing one of the following commands depending on the operating system.

- On Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x and SLES 12, issue the following command.

```
# rpm -ivh gpfs.smb*.rpm
```

- On Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS, issue the following command.

```
# dpkg -i gpfs.smb*.deb
```

For a list of packages for the current IBM Spectrum Scale release, see “Manually installing the IBM Spectrum Scale software packages on Linux nodes” on page 256.

11. Install IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage package using one of these procedures depending on the operating system.

- “Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x nodes” on page 271.
- “Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage on Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS nodes” on page 272.

12. If you want to use the CES BLOCK service that is available only on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x, install the package using the following command.

```
# rpm -ivh BLOCK_Service_Package_Name
```

For a list of packages for the current IBM Spectrum Scale release, see “Manually installing the IBM Spectrum Scale software packages on Linux nodes” on page 256.

For an overview of the CES BLOCK service, see “CES iSCSI support” on page 40.

For information on configuring the CES BLOCK service, see *Configuring and enabling the BLOCK service* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Enabling NFS, SMB, and object on Linux systems

Use this information to enable NFS, SMB, and object on Linux systems after installing the packages.

Before you begin enabling NFS, SMB, and object, you must have installed the corresponding IBM Spectrum Scale packages.

- Enable NFS as follows.

1. Mask and stop the kernel NFS service on all nodes where CES NFS needs to be installed using the following commands.

```
# systemctl mask nfs-server.service
# systemctl daemon-reload
# systemctl stop nfs
```

2. Enable the NFS services using the following command.

```
# mmces service enable NFS
```

If you get the `/sbin/rpc.statd: not found [No such file or directory]` error, try the following workaround.

Run the following commands on every protocol node.

```
# ln -s /usr/sbin/rpc.statd /sbin/rpc.statd
# ln -s /sbin/rpcinfo /usr/sbin/rpcinfo
```

After you have run these commands, try enabling the NFS services again.

- Enable the SMB services using the following command.

```
# mmces service enable SMB
```

- Enable object on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x and Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS nodes. For more information, see “Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x nodes” on page 271 and “Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage on Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS nodes” on page 272.

## Verifying the IBM Spectrum Scale installation on Ubuntu Linux nodes

You can verify the installation of the IBM Spectrum Scale Ubuntu Linux packages on each node.

To check that the software has been successfully installed, use the **dpkg** command:

```
dpkg -l | grep gpfs
```

The system returns output similar to the following if you have IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition installed:

```
ii gpfs.base          5.0.3-x      amd64  GPFS File Manager
ii gpfs.base-debuginfo 5.0.3-x      amd64  Debug information for package gpfs.base
ii gpfs.compression    5.0.3-x      amd64  IBM Spectrum Scale Compression Libraries
ii gpfs.docs           5.0.3-x      all    GPFS Server Manpages and Documentation
ii gpfs.gpl            5.0.3-x      all    GPFS Open Source Modules
ii gpfs.gskit          8.0.50-86    amd64  GPFS GSKit Cryptography Runtime
ii gpfs.librdkafka     5.0.3-x      amd64  librdkafka shared library installation
ii gpfs.msg.en-us      5.0.3-x      all    GPFS Server Messages - U.S. English
ii gpfs.license.std    5.0.3-x      amd64  IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition ITLM files
```

or

```
ii gpfs.license.da     5.0.3-0      amd64  IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition ITLM files
```

If you have IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition installed, you should also see the following lines in the output:

```
ii gpfs.adv           5.0.3-x      amd64  GPFS Advanced Features
ii gpfs.crypto        5.0.3-x      amd64  GPFS Cryptographic Subsystem
ii gpfs.license.adv    5.0.3-x      amd64  IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition ITLM files
```

or

```
ii gpfs.license.dm     5.0.3-x      amd64  IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition ITLM files
```

## Verifying the IBM Spectrum Scale installation on SLES and Red Hat Enterprise Linux nodes

You can verify the installation of the IBM Spectrum Scale SLES or Red Hat Enterprise Linux RPMs on each node.

To check that the software has been successfully installed, use the **rpm** command:

```
rpm -qa | grep gpfs
```

The system returns output similar to the following if you have IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition installed:

```
gpfs.docs-5.0.3-x
gpfs.base-5.0.3-x
gpfs.msg.en_US-5.0.3-x
gpfs.compression-5.0.3-x
gpfs.gpl-5.0.3-x
gpfs.gskit-8.0.50-86
gpfs.license.std-5.0.3-xor
```

```
gpfs.license.da-5.0.3-0
```

If you have IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition installed, you should also see the following in the output:

```
gpfs.crypto-5.0.3-x
gpfs.adv-5.0.3-x
gpfs.license.dm-5.0.3-x or gpfs.license.adv-5.0.3-x
```

For installations that include IBM Spectrum Scale RAID, you should also see the following in the output:  
gpfs.gnr-5.0.3-x

For more information about IBM Spectrum Scale RAID, see *IBM Spectrum Scale RAID: Administration* in Elastic Storage Server (ESS) documentation on IBM Knowledge Center.

To run the system health check for verifying IBM Spectrum Scale installation, issue the following command:

```
mmhealth node show -N all
```

## Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x nodes

IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage is typically installed using the installation toolkit. If you do not want to use the installation toolkit, use the following steps to manually install IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage.

For information about prerequisites, see “Software requirements” on page 150 and “Installation prerequisites” on page 246.

Before you begin manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage, complete the following prerequisite tasks.

1. Create protocol nodes for object service. For more information, see *Configuring CES protocol service IP addresses* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
2. Add at least one CES IP address.

Manually install the object protocol and then enable object services as follows.

1. On all protocol nodes, install the spectrum-scale-object package and its associated dependencies by issuing the following command.

```
yum -y install spectrum-scale-object
```

The package is created in the /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/object\_rpms/rhel7 directory by expanding the Spectrum\_Scale\_Protocols installation image. For more information about extracting an installation image, see “Extracting the IBM Spectrum Scale software on Linux nodes” on page 253.

**Note:** The path /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/object\_rpms/rhel7, depends upon the release version.

You might need to create the **yum** repository before using this command. To create the **yum** repository, create an entry similar to the following in the /etc/yum.repos.d directory:

```
[spectrum_scale]
name=spectrum_scale
baseurl=file:///usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/object_rpms/rhel7
enabled=1
gpgcheck=0
```

**Note:** The path file:///usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/object\_rpms/rhel7, in the above example depends upon the release version.

2. From one of the protocol nodes, install the object protocol by using the **mmobj swift base** command.

```
mmobj swift base -g /ibm/fs1 -o object_fileset --cluster-hostname protocol-cluster.example.net \
--local-keystone --pwd-file mmobjpwd
```

A sample output is as follows.

```
mmobj swift base: Validating execution environment.
mmobj swift base: Performing SELinux configuration.
mmobj swift base: Creating fileset /dev/fs1 object_fileset.
mmobj swift base: Configuring Keystone server in /gpfs/fs1/object/keystone.
mmobj swift base: Creating postgres database.
```

```
mmobj swift base: Validating Keystone environment.
mmobj swift base: Validating Swift values in Keystone.
mmobj swift base: Configuring Swift services.
mmobj swift base: Uploading configuration changes to the CCR.
mmobj swift base: Configuration complete.
```

After the initial install is complete, the object protocol needs to be enabled across all the protocol nodes.

3. Complete the configuration and start object services on all protocol nodes by using the **mmces service enable** command.

```
# mmces service enable OBJ
```

4. List the protocols enabled in the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster by using the **mmces service list** command. List a verbose output of object services running on the local node using the **-v** flag.

```
# mmces service list -v
```

A sample output is as follows.

```
Enabled services: OBJ SMB NFS
OBJ is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-object           is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-account          is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-container        is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-proxy            is running
OBJ:memcached                        is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-object-replicator is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-account-reaper   is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-account-replicator is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-container-replicator is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-object-sof       is running
OBJ:httpd (keystone)                 is running
SMB is running
NFS is running
```

## Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage on Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS nodes

IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage is typically installed using the installation toolkit. If you do not want to use the installation toolkit, use the following steps to manually install IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage on Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS nodes.

For information about prerequisites, see “Software requirements” on page 150 and “Installation prerequisites” on page 246.

Before you begin manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage, complete the following prerequisite tasks.

1. After GPFS is configured, create protocol nodes for object service. For more information, see *Configuring CES protocol service IP addresses* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
2. Add at least one CES IP address.

Manually install and configure the object protocol and then enable object services as follows.

1. On all protocol nodes, install the `spectrum-scale-object` package and its associated dependencies by issuing the following command.

```
apt-get -o Dpkg::Options::="--force-overwrite" --allow-unauthenticated install -y spectrum-scale-object
```

The package is created in the `/usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/object_debs/ubuntu16` directory by expanding the `Spectrum_Scale_Protocols` installation image. For more information about extracting an installation image, see “Extracting the IBM Spectrum Scale software on Linux nodes” on page 253.

You might need to create the local APT repository before using the **apt-get** command. To create the APT repository, use these steps:

- a. Create a file named `Packages.gz`.

```
# cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/object_debs/ubuntu16
# dpkg-scanpackages . /dev/null | gzip -9c > Packages.gz
```

- b. Add the following entry in the `/etc/apt/sources.list` file.

```
deb file:/usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/object_debs/ubuntu16 ./
```

- c. Update the repository.

```
# apt-get update
```

**Note:** The path `/usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/object_debs/ubuntu16`, depends upon the release version.

2. From one of the protocol nodes, configure the object protocol by issuing the following command.

```
# mmobj swift base -g /ibm/fs1 -o object_fileset --cluster-hostname protocol-cluster.example.net \
--local-keystone --pwd-file mmobjpwd --admin-user keystone
```

A sample output is as follows.

```
mmobj swift base: Validating execution environment.
mmobj swift base: Creating fileset gpfs0 object_fileset.
mmobj swift base: Configuring Keystone server in /ibm/fs1/object/keystone.
mmobj swift base: Creating postgres database.
mmobj swift base: Setting cluster attribute object_database_node=198.51.100.13.
mmobj swift base: Validating Keystone environment.
mmobj swift base: Validating Swift values in Keystone.
mmobj swift base: Configuring Swift services.
mmobj swift base: Setting cluster attribute object_singleton_node=198.51.100.13.
mmobj swift base: Uploading configuration changes to the CCR.
mmobj swift base: Configuration complete.
```

After the initial installation is complete, the object protocol needs to be enabled across all the protocol nodes.

3. Complete the configuration and start object services on all protocol nodes by issuing the following command.

```
# mmces service enable OBJ
```

4. Issue the **mmces service list** command to list the protocols enabled in the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster. List a verbose output of object services running on the local node using the `-v` flag as shown in the following example.

```
# mmces service list -v
```

A sample output is as follows.

```
Enabled services: OBJ SMB NFS
OBJ is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-object          is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-account         is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-container       is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-proxy           is running
OBJ:memcached                       is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-object-replicator is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-account-reaper  is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-account-replicator is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-container-replicator is running
OBJ:openstack-swift-object-sof      is running
OBJ:httpd (keystone)                is running
SMB is running
NFS is running
```

## Manually installing the performance monitoring tool

The performance monitoring tool is automatically installed by the installation toolkit. You can also install the performance monitoring tool manually for the releases that are not supported by the installation toolkit.

For more information, see “Understanding the installation toolkit options” on page 287. For more information about the performance monitoring tool, see *Configuring the performance monitoring tool* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

A single collector can easily support up to 150 sensor nodes. The collector can be any node on the system. All sensors report to this node. Select any node in the system to be the collector node. For information on configuring the sensors and collectors, see the *Configuring the performance monitoring tool* section in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*. You can manually install the tool by performing the following steps:

1. Download the installation images and install the performance monitoring packages.

For information on where these packages are extracted, see “Location of extracted packages” on page 259.

#### Performance monitoring packages

```
gpfs.gss.pmsensors-version_release.os.target_arch.file_format
gpfs.gss.pmcollector-version_release.os.target_arch.file_format
```

Then use your operating system’s native package management mechanism to install the packages.

For example:

- To install 5.0.\*-0 sensors on a Red Hat 7 x86\_64 node use the following command:

```
rpm -ivh gpfs.gss.pmsensors-5.0.*-0.el7.x86_64.rpm
```

- To install 5.0.\*-0 sensors on a SLES 12 x86\_64 node use the following command:

```
rpm -ivh gpfs.gss.pmsensors-5.0.*.sles12.x86_64.rpm
```

- To install 5.0.\*-0 sensors on a Ubuntu amd64 node, use the following command:

```
dpkg -i gpfs.gss.pmsensors_5.0.*-0.U*amd64.deb
```

- To install a 5.0.\*-0 collector on a Red Hat 7 PPC64LE node use the following command:

```
rpm -ivh gpfs.gss.pmcollector-5.0.*-0.el7.ppc64le.rpm
```

2. To enable performance monitoring on a protocol node for NFS, SMB or Object, follow the given steps

- For NFS:

- a. Install the pm-ganesha package as follows:

- RHEL or SLES: `rpm -ivh gpfs.pm-ganesha_version-release.os.target_arch.rpm`
- Ubuntu: `dpkg -i gpfs.pm-ganesha_version-release.deb`

- b. Ensure that the `/opt/IBM/zimon/defaults/ZIMonSensors_nfs.cfg` sensor is created as shown:

```
sensors={
    name = "NFSIO"
    period = 10
    type = "Generic"
    restrict = "cesNodes"
}
```

- c. Run the following command to add the sensor:

```
mmperfmon config add --sensors /opt/IBM/zimon/defaults/ZIMonSensors_nfs.cfg
```

- d. Run the following code to ensure that the newly added sensor is made visible to the system:

```
mmhealth node show nfs --refresh -N cesNodes
```

- For SMB:

- a. Run the following command to add the sensor:

```
mmperfmon config add --sensors /opt/IBM/zimon/defaults/ZIMonSensors_smb.cfg
```

**Note:** No additional sensor package is needed for the SMB sensors.

- b. Run the following code to ensure that the newly added sensor is made visible to the system:

```
mmhealth node show smb --refresh -N cesNodes
```

- For Object:



- a. Install the pmswift package as follows:

- RHEL: `rpm -ivh pmswift-version-release.noarch.rpm`
- Ubuntu: `dpkg -i pmswift_version-release.deb`

where *version* is equal to or greater than 4.2 and *release* is equal to or greater than 0.

The installation of the pmswift RPM also copies SWIFT related sensors configuration files, namely, `SwiftAccount.cfg`, `SwiftContainer.cfg`, `SwiftObject.cfg` and `SwiftProxy.cfg` to the performance monitoring tool's installation directory, `/opt/IBM/zimon/`. The pmswift rpm converts the operational metrics for Object into a form that is usable by the performance monitoring tool.

- b. Edit the Object configuration files for all Object servers that reside in cluster configuration repository (CCR), using the following command:

```
/usr/local/pmswift/bin/pmswift-config-swift set
```

CCR then propagates the modified configuration files to `/etc/swift/` directory on all the protocol nodes within the cluster. The modified configuration files are:

- `account - *.conf`
- `container - *.conf`
- `object - *.conf`
- `proxy - *.conf`

- c. Use the `/usr/local/pmswift/bin/pmswift-config-zimon set` command to edit the sensors configuration information stored in the CCR. This adds the SWIFT related following sensors entries:

```
{
    # SwiftAccount operational metrics
    name = "SwiftAccount"
    period = 1
    type = "generic"
},
{
    # SwiftContainer operational metrics
    name = "SwiftContainer"
    period = 1
    type = "generic"
},
{
    # SwiftObject operational metrics
    name = "SwiftObject"
    period = 1
    type = "generic"
},
{
    # SwiftProxy operational metrics
    name = "SwiftProxy"
    period = 1
    type = "generic"
},
}
```

These entries are then automatically propagated to the `ZIMonSensors.cfg` file in `/opt/IBM/zimon` on all the nodes in the cluster.

- d. Start the **pmswiftd.service** using the following command:

```
systemctl start pmswiftd.service
```

- e. Start or restart the **pmsensors.service** using the following command:

```
systemctl start|restart pmsensors.service
```

For more information on how to manually upgrade pmswift, see the “Manually upgrading pmswift” on page 428 topic.

3. If the protocol sensors are enabled on a GPFS-only node, you see an error message stating that the sensors are unavailable. However, the other sensors continue to run.
4. Start the sensors on each node using the **systemctl start pmsensors.service** command.
5. On the collector nodes, start the collector, using the **systemctl start pmcollector.service** command.
6. To ensure that sensors and collectors are restarted after the node reboots, you can enable them using the following commands:

#### **Sensors**

To enable sensors, use the **systemctl enable pmsensors.service** command.

To disable sensors, use the **systemctl disable pmsensors.service** command.

#### **Collector**

To enable the collector, use the **systemctl enable pmcollector.service** command.

To disable the collector, use the **systemctl disable pmcollector.service** command.

The collector node starts gathering all the requested metrics.

**Important:** Once the RPM is installed, the pmsensor and pmcollector services are activated automatically.

**Note:** Although you can enable sensors on every node in a system, with the increase in number of nodes, the metric collection work for the collector also increases. It is recommended to ensure that collection of metrics does not increase above 1000000 metrics per second.

By default, the installation toolkit enables sensors on each protocol node (CES node) but not on the other GPFS nodes (non-CES nodes).

Metrics can be retrieved from any node in the system using the **mmperfmon query** command. For more information, see *mmperfmon command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

For more information about the performance monitoring tool, see *Configuring the performance monitoring tool* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

## **Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI**

The management GUI provides an easy way for the users to configure, manage, and monitor the IBM Spectrum Scale system.

You can install the management GUI by using the following methods:

- Installing management GUI by using the installation GUI. For more information on how to install the management GUI by using the installation GUI, see “Installing IBM Spectrum Scale by using the graphical user interface (GUI)” on page 342.
- Installing management GUI by using the installation toolkit. For more information on installing the management GUI by using the installation toolkit, see “Installing IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI by using the installation toolkit” on page 322.
- Manual installation of the management GUI. The following sections provides the details of how to manually install the management GUI.

### **Prerequisites**

The prerequisites that are applicable for installing the IBM Spectrum Scale system through CLI are applicable. For more information on the prerequisites for installation, see “Installation prerequisites” on page 246.

The IBM Spectrum Scale GUI package is also part of the installation package. You need to extract this package to start the installation. The performance tool packages are also required to enable the performance monitoring tool that is integrated into the GUI. The following packages are required for performance monitoring tools in GUI:

- The performance tool collector package. This package is placed only on the collector nodes.
- The performance tool sensor package. This package is applicable for the sensor nodes, if not already installed.

**Note:** The GUI must be a homogeneous stack. That is, all packages must be of the same release. For example, do not mix the 5.0.0 GUI rpm with a 4.2.3 base rpm. However, GUI PTFs and efices can usually be applied without having to install the corresponding PTF or efiz of the base package. This is helpful if you just want to get rid of a GUI issue without changing anything on the base layer.

The following table lists the IBM Spectrum Scale GUI and performance tool package that are required for different platforms.

*Table 38. GUI packages required for each platform*

GUI Platform	Package name
RHEL 7.x x86	gpfs.gui-5.0.3-x.noarch.rpm gpfs.java-5.0.3-x.x86_64.rpm
RHEL 7.x ppc64 (big endian)	gpfs.gui-5.0.3-x.noarch.rpm gpfs.java-5.0.3-x.ppc64.rpm
RHEL 7.x ppc64le (little endian)	gpfs.gui-5.0.3-x.noarch.rpm gpfs.java-5.0.3-x.ppc64le.rpm
SLES12 x86	gpfs.gui-5.0.3-x.noarch.rpm gpfs.java-5.0.3-x.x86_64.rpm
SLES12 ppc64le (little endian)	gpfs.gui-5.0.3-x.noarch.rpm gpfs.java-5.0.3-x.ppc64le.rpm
Ubuntu 16	gpfs.gui_5.0.3-x_all.deb gpfs.java_5.0.3-x_amd64.deb gpfs.java_5.0.3-x_s390x.deb gpfs.java_5.0.3-x_ppc64el.deb
Ubuntu 18 <b>Note:</b> The management GUI packages for Ubuntu 18 are available from release 5.0.1.2 onwards.	gpfs.gui_5.0.3-x_all.deb gpfs.java_5.0.3-x_amd64.deb gpfs.java_5.0.3-x_s390x.deb gpfs.java_5.0.3-x_ppc64el.deb
Performance monitoring tool platform	Performance monitoring tool rpms
RHEL 7.x x86	gpfs.gss.pmc collector-5.0.3-x.e17.x86_64.rpm gpfs.gss.pmsensors-5.0.3-x.e17.x86_64.rpm
RHEL 7 s390x	gpfs.gss.pmsensors-5.0.3-x.e17.s390x.rpm gpfs.gss.pmc collector-5.0.3-x.e17.s390x.rpm
RHEL 7.x ppc64	gpfs.gss.pmc collector-5.0.3-x.e17.ppc64.rpm gpfs.gss.pmsensors-5.0.3-x.e17.ppc64.rpm

Table 38. GUI packages required for each platform (continued)

GUI Platform	Package name
RHEL 7.x ppc64 LE	gpfs.gss.pmcollector-5.0.3-x.e17.ppc64le.rpm gpfs.gss.pmsensors-5.0.3-x.e17.ppc64le.rpm
SLES12 x86	gpfs.gss.pmcollector-5.0.3-x.SLES12.x86_64.rpm gpfs.gss.pmsensors-5.0.3-x.SLES12.X86_64.rpm
SLES12 SP1 s390x	gpfs.gss.pmsensors-5.0.3-x.SLES12.1.s390x.rpm gpfs.gss.pmcollector-5.0.3-x.SLES12.1.s390x.rpm
SLES12 ppc64	gpfs.gss.pmcollector-5.0.3-x.SLES12.ppc64.rpm gpfs.gss.pmsensors-5.0.3-x.SLES12.ppc64.rpm
SLES12 ppc64 LE	gpfs.gss.pmcollector-5.0.3-x.SLES12.ppc64le.rpm gpfs.gss.pmsensors-5.0.3-x.SLES12.ppc64le.rpm
Ubuntu 16.04 LTS sensor packages	gpfs.gss.pmsensors_5.0.3-x.U16.04_amd64.deb
Ubuntu 16.04 LTS collector packages	gpfs.gss.pmcollector_5.0.3-x.U16.04_amd64.deb
Ubuntu 18.04 LTS sensor packages	gpfs.gss.pmsensors_5.0.3-x.U18.04_amd64.deb
Ubuntu 18.04 LTS collector packages	gpfs.gss.pmcollector_5.0.3-x.U18.04_amd64.deb

**Note:** Before you start the installation, ensure that the package files that are specific to the platform are placed on the installer node.

Ensure that the performance tool collector runs on the same node as the GUI.

### Yum repository setup

You can use yum repository to manually install the GUI rpm files. This is the preferred way of GUI installation as yum checks the dependencies and automatically installs missing platform dependencies like the postgres module, which is required but not included in the package.

## Installation steps

You can install the management GUI either using the package manager (yum or zypper commands) or by installing the packages individually.

### Installing management GUI by using package manager (yum or zypper commands)

It is recommended to use this method as the package manager checks the dependencies and automatically installs missing platform dependencies. Issue the following commands to install management GUI:

#### Red Hat Enterprise Linux

```

yum install gpfs.gss.pmsensors-5.0.3-x.e17.<arch>.rpm
yum install gpfs.gss.pmcollector-5.0.3-x.e17.<arch>.rpm
yum install gpfs.java-5.0.3-x.<arch>.rpm
yum install gpfs.gui-5.0.3-x.noarch.rpm

```

#### SLES

```
zypper install gpfs.gss.pmsensors-5.0.3-x.SLES12.<arch>.rpm
zypper install gpfs.gss.pmcollector-5.0.3-x.SLES12.<arch>.rpm
zypper install gpfs.java-5.0.3-x.<arch>.rpm
zypper install gpfs.gui-5.0.3-x.noarch.rpm
```

## Installing management GUI by using RPM

Issue the following commands for both RHEL and SLES platforms:

```
rpm -ivh gpfs.java-5.0.3-x.<arch>.rpm
rpm -ivh gpfs.gss.pmsensors-5.0.3-x.el7.<arch>.rpm
rpm -ivh gpfs.gss.pmcollector-5.0.3-x.el7.<arch>.rpm
rpm -ivh gpfs.gui-5.0.3-x.noarch.rpm
```

## Installing management GUI on Ubuntu by using dpkg and apt-get

Issue the following commands for Ubuntu platforms:

```
dpkg -i gpfs.java_5.0.3-x_<arch>.deb
dpkg -i gpfs.gss.pmsensors_5.0.3-x.<os>_<arch>.deb
dpkg -i gpfs.gss.pmcollector_5.0.3-x.<os>_<arch>.deb
apt-get install postgresql
dpkg -i gpfs.gui_5.0.3-x_all.deb
```

The sensor package must be installed on any additional node that you want to monitor. All sensors must point to the collector node.

## Start the GUI

Start the GUI by issuing the **systemctl start gpfsgui** command.

- | **Note:** After installing the system and GUI package, you need to create the first GUI user to log in to the
- | GUI. This user can create other GUI administrative users to perform system management and monitoring
- | tasks. When you launch the GUI for the first time after the installation, the GUI welcome page provides
- | options to create the first GUI user from the command-line prompt by using the following command:
- | `/usr/lpp/mmfs/gui/cli/mkuser <user_name> -g SecurityAdmin`

## Enabling performance tools in management GUI

The performance tool consists of sensors that are installed on all nodes that need to be monitored. It also consists of one or more collectors that receive data from the sensors. The GUI expects that a collector runs on a GUI node. The GUI queries the collectors for performance and capacity data. The following steps use the automated approach to configure and maintain performance data collection by using the **mmperfmon** CLI command. Manually editing the `/opt/IBM/zimon/ZIMonSensors.cfg` file is not compatible with this configuration mode.

1. Install the necessary software packages. Install the collector software package, `gpfs.gss.pmcollector`, on all GUI nodes. Install the sensor software packages, `gpfs.gss.pmsensors`, on all nodes, which are supposed to send the performance data. While mixed software levels for sensors are accepted, it is required that all collectors run at the same software level.
2. Initialize the performance collection. Use the **mmperfmon config generate --collectors [node list]** command to create an initial performance collection setup on the selected nodes. The GUI nodes must be configured as collector nodes. Depending on the installation type, this configuration might be already completed before. However, verify the existing configuration.
3. Enable nodes for performance collection. You can enable nodes to collect performance data by issuing the **mmchnode --perfmon -N [SENSOR\_NODE\_LIST]** command. **[SENSOR\_NODE\_LIST]** is a comma-separated list of sensor nodes' host names or IP addresses and you can also use a node class. Depending on the type of installation, nodes might have already been configured for performance collection.

4. Configure peer configuration for the collectors. The collector configuration is stored in the `/opt/IBM/zimon/ZIMonCollector.cfg` file. This file defines collector peer configuration and the aggregation rules. If you are using only a single collector, you can skip this step. Restart the `pmcollector` service after making changes to the configuration file. The GUI must have access to all data from each GUI node. For more information on how to configure a system to use multiple collectors, see *Configuring multiple collectors* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
5. Configure aggregation configuration for the collectors. The collector configuration is stored in the `/opt/IBM/zimon/ZIMonCollector.cfg` file. The performance collection tool has already predefined rules on how data is aggregated once data gets older. By default, four aggregation domains are created: a raw domain that stores the metrics uncompressed, a first aggregation domain that aggregates data to 30-second averages, a second aggregation domain that stores data in 15-minute averages, and a third aggregation domain that stores data in 6-hour averages.

In addition to the aggregation that is done by the performance collector, the GUI might request aggregated data depending on the zoom level of the chart. For details on configuring aggregation, see *Configuring the collector* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

6. Configure the sensors. Several GUI pages display performance data that is collected with the help of performance monitoring tools. If data is not collected, the GUI shows the error messages like "No Data Available" or "Objects not found" in the performance charts. Installation using the `spectrumscale` installation toolkit manages the default performance monitoring installation and configuration. The GUI contextual help that is available on various pages shows performance metric information. The GUI context-sensitive help also lists the sensor names. Use `mmperfmon config show` command to verify the sensor configuration. Use the `mmperfmon config update` command to adjust the sensor configuration to match your needs. For more information on configuring sensors, see *Configuring the sensor* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

The local file `/opt/IBM/zimon/ZIMonSensors.cfg` can be different on every node and it may be changed automatically whenever there is a configuration change. Therefore, this file must not be edited manually when using the automated configuration mode. During distribution of the sensor configuration, the `restrict` clause is evaluated and the period for all sensors is set to 0 in the `/opt/IBM/zimon/ZIMonSensors.cfg` file on those nodes that did not match the `restrict` clause. You can check the local file to confirm that a `restrict` clause worked as intended.

Capacity-related sensors need manual steps for initialization. It is necessary to configure a single node where the capacity collection must occur. You can do this by using a `restrict` clause. The `restrict` clause expects that the node name must be the admin node name as shown by the `mmcluster` command. Alternative host names that are known to DNS ignored in the `restrict` clause.

To collect file system and disk level capacity data, update the sensor configuration as shown in the following example, where the IBM Spectrum Scale node name of the GUI node is `gui_node`:

```
mmperfmon config update GPFSDiskCap.restrict=gui_node GPFSDiskCap.period=86400
```

If this sensor is disabled, the GUI does not show any capacity data. The recommended period is 86400, which means once per day. As this sensor runs `mmddf`, it is not recommended to use a value less than 10800 (every 3 hours) for `GPFSDiskCap.period`.

To show fileset capacity information, it is necessary to enable quota for all file systems where fileset capacity must be monitored. For information on enabling quota, see the `-q` option in `mmchfs` command and `mmcheckquota` command in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

To update the sensor configuration to trigger an hourly collection of capacity-based fileset capacity information, issue the `mmperfmon` command as shown in the following example:

```
mmperfmon config update GPFSSetQuota.restrict=gui_node GPFSSetQuota.period=3600
```

## Configuring single-node sensors

It is possible automatically assign single node for certain sensors. For new installations, capacity-related sensors are configured to a single node where the capacity collection occurs. To collect file system and disk level capacity data on a single node selected by the system, update the sensor configuration as shown in the following example:

```
mmperfmon config update GPFSDiskCap.restrict=@CLUSTER_PERF_SENSOR
```

If this sensor is disabled, the GUI does not show any capacity data. The recommended period is 86400, which means once per day. As the *GPFSDiskCap.period* sensor runs **mmdf** command to get the capacity data, it is not recommended to use a value less than 10800 (every 3 hours). To show fileset capacity information, it is necessary to enable quota for all file systems where fileset capacity must be monitored. For information on enabling quota, see the **-q** option in the **mmchfs** command and **mmcheckquota** command.

To update the sensor configuration to trigger an hourly collection of capacity-based fileset capacity information, issue the **mmperfmon** command as shown in the following example:

```
mmperfmon config update GPFSFilesetQuota.restrict=gui_node GPFSFilesetQuota.period=3600
```

## Checking GUI and performance tool status

Issue the **systemctl status gpfsgui** command to know the GUI status as shown in the following example:

```
systemctl status gpfsgui.service
gpfsgui.service - IBM GPFS GUI Administration GUI
Loaded: loaded (/usr/lib/systemd/system/gpfsgui.service; disabled)
Active: active (running) since Fri 2015-04-17 09:50:03 CEST; 2h 37min ago
Process: 28141 ExecStopPost=/usr/lpp/mmfs/gui/bin/cfgmantraclient unregister (code=exited, status=0/SUCCESS)
Process: 29120 ExecStartPre=/usr/lpp/mmfs/gui/bin/check4pgsql (code=exited, status=0/SUCCESS)
Main PID: 29148 (java)
Status: "GSS/GPFS GUI started"
CGroup: /system.slice/gpfsgui.service
<-29148 /opt/ibm/wlp/java/jre/bin/java -XX:MaxPermSize=256m -Dcom.ibm.gpfs.platform=GPFS
-Dcom.ibm.gpfs.vendor=IBM -Djava.library.path=/opt/ibm/wlp/usr/servers/gpfsgui/lib/
-javaagent:/opt/ibm/wlp/bin/tools/ws-javaagent.jar -jar /opt/ibm/wlp/bin/tools/ws-server.jar gpfsgui
--clean
```

```
Apr 17 09:50:03 server-21.localnet.com java[29148]: Available memory in the JVM: 484MB
Apr 17 09:50:03 server.localnet.com java[29148]: Max memory that the JVM will attempt to use: 512MB
Apr 17 09:50:03 server.localnet.com java[29148]: Number of processors available to JVM: 2
Apr 17 09:50:03 server.localnet.com java[29148]: Backend started.
Apr 17 09:50:03 server.localnet.com java[29148]: CLI started.
Apr 17 09:50:03 server.localnet.com java[29148]: Context initialized.
Apr 17 09:50:03 server.localnet.com systemd[1]: Started IBM_GPFS_GUI Administration GUI.
Apr 17 09:50:04 server.localnet.com java[29148]: [AUDIT ] CWWKZ0001I: Application /
started in 6.459 seconds.
Apr 17 09:50:04 server.localnet.com java[29148]: [AUDIT ] CWWKF0012I: The server
installed the following features: [jdbc-4.0, ssl-1.0, localConnector-1.0, appSecurity-2.0,
jsp-2.2, servlet-3.0, jndi-1.0, usr:FscclUserRepo, distributedMap-1.0].
Apr 17 09:50:04 server-21.localnet.com java[29148]: [AUDIT ] CWWKF0011I: ==> When you see
the service was started anything should be OK !
```

Issue the **systemctl status pmcollector** and **systemctl status pmsensors** commands to know the status of the performance tool.

You can also check whether the performance tool backend can receive data by using the GUI or alternative by using a command line performance tool that is called *zc*, which is available in */opt/IBM/zimon* folder. For example:

```
echo "get metrics mem_active, cpu_idle, gpfs_ns_read_ops last 10 bucket_size 1" | ./zc 127.0.0.1
Result example:
1: server-21.localnet.com|Memory|mem_active
```

```

2: server-22.localnet.com|Memory|mem_active
3: server-23.localnet.com|Memory|mem_active
4: server-21.localnet.com|CPU|cpu_idle
5: server-22.localnet.com|CPU|cpu_idle
6: server-23.localnet.com|CPU|cpu_idle
7: server-21.localnet.com|GPFSNode|gpfs_ns_read_ops
8: server-22.localnet.com|GPFSNode|gpfs_ns_read_ops
9: server-23.localnet.com|GPFSNode|gpfs_ns_read_ops
Row Timestamp mem_active mem_active mem_active cpu_idle cpu_idle cpu_idle gpfs_ns_read_ops
gpfs_ns_read_ops gpfs_ns_read_ops
1 2015-05-20 18:16:33 756424 686420 382672 99.000000 100.000000 95.980000 0 0 0
2 2015-05-20 18:16:34 756424 686420 382672 100.000000 100.000000 99.500000 0 0 0
3 2015-05-20 18:16:35 756424 686420 382672 100.000000 99.500000 100.000000 0 0 6
4 2015-05-20 18:16:36 756424 686420 382672 99.500000 100.000000 100.000000 0 0 0
5 2015-05-20 18:16:37 756424 686520 382672 100.000000 98.510000 100.000000 0 0 0
6 2015-05-20 18:16:38 774456 686448 384684 73.000000 100.000000 96.520000 0 0 0
7 2015-05-20 18:16:39 784092 686420 382888 86.360000 100.000000 52.760000 0 0 0
8 2015-05-20 18:16:40 786004 697712 382688 46.000000 52.760000 100.000000 0 0 0
9 2015-05-20 18:16:41 756632 686560 382688 57.580000 69.000000 100.000000 0 0 0
10 2015-05-20 18:16:42 756460 686436 382688 99.500000 100.000000 100.000000 0 0 0

```

## Node classes used for the management GUI

The IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI automatically creates the following node classes during installation:

- GUI\_SERVERS: Contains all nodes with a server license and all the GUI nodes
- GUI\_MGMT\_SERVERS: Contains all GUI nodes

Each node on which the GUI services are started is added to these node classes.

For information about removing nodes from these node classes, see “Removing nodes from management GUI-related node class” on page 398.

For information about node classes, see *Specifying nodes as input to GPFS commands* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

### Related concepts:

“Uninstalling the IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI” on page 397

Do the following to uninstall management GUI and remove the performance monitoring components that are installed for the GUI:

“Introduction to IBM Spectrum Scale GUI” on page 100

The IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI provides an easy way to configure and manage various features that are available with the IBM Spectrum Scale system.

## Root privilege considerations for IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI

The IBM Spectrum Scale GUI WebSphere Java process runs as a user named “scalemgmt”. This provides improved security because web applications running as a non-root user are less vulnerable to security threats. The *scalemgmt* user is set up as a system account with no login privileges.

The GUI and GUI user still need root privileges in the backend to perform the following tasks:

- Monitoring and managing the cluster by issuing the IBM Spectrum Scale CLI commands.
- Bind to the privileged ports such as 80 (http) and 443 (https) to work with the GUI.

The system automatically performs the required configuration. It does not require any configuration to be done by the user.



## Enabling the scalemgmt user to monitor and manage the system through GUI

As root privileges are not available to the GUI user, the system enables the scalemgmt user to run the CLI commands through sudo. The GUI installation adds the file `/etc/sudoers.d/scalemgmt_sudoers`, which allows the scalemgmt user to run commands that match the wildcard `"/usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mm"`.

During installation of the IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI, the following lines are appended to the `/etc/sudoers` file:

```
## Read drop-in files from /etc/sudoers.d
#includedir /etc/sudoers.d
```

**Note:** Do not alter these lines if you are editing the `/etc/sudoers` file. If these lines are removed or moved from the default location, the GUI cannot run the CLI commands as a non-root user.

## Binding to the GUI privileged ports

A non-root process cannot bind privileged ports such as 80 and 443. So, the GUI process now runs on port 47443 and 47080 and uses *iptables* rules to forward port 443 to 47443 and 80 to 47080. The GUI is only available in the browser on port 443 through HTTPS. However, versions prior to 4.2.3 used port 80 to send events to the GUI, so to stay backwards compatible in clusters that still contain nodes with older versions, the GUI still accepts events on port 80.

To reach the GUI from outside, not only port 443 and 80 but also port 47443 and 47080 must be opened to the outside. This is because the port forwarding redirects port 443 to 47443 and 80 to 47080 before evaluating the rules of the *iptables* INPUT chain.

The *iptables* rules necessary for the port forwarding are automatically checked every time the GUI is started through the `systemctl start gpfsGUI` command. The user does not have to configure anything manually.

---

## Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Linux nodes with the installation toolkit

Use this information to install IBM Spectrum Scale using the installation toolkit. The information to use the installation toolkit for tasks such as deploying protocols on existing clusters and adding nodes to an existing installation is also documented.

## Overview of the installation toolkit

The installation toolkit automates the steps that are required to install GPFS, deploy protocols, and install updates and patches.

For a release-wise list of features available in the installation toolkit, see Table 39 on page 285.

When you are using the installation toolkit, you provide environmental information and the installation toolkit installs, configures, and deploys the optimal configuration, dynamically creating a cluster definition file.

This install toolkit enables you to do the following tasks:

- Install and configure GPFS.
- Add GPFS nodes to an existing cluster.
- Deploy and configure SMB, NFS, Object, and performance monitoring tools over GPFS.
- Perform verification before installing, deploying, or upgrading. It includes checking whether passwordless SSH is set up correctly.
- Configure authentication services for protocols.

- Enable and configure call home and file audit logging functions.
- Upgrade GPFS and all protocols and install patches.

Installation and configuration are driven through commands.

In the self-extracting package, the installation toolkit is in this location:

*location\_extracted\_to/5.0.x.x/installer*

Using the installation toolkit is driven from the **spectrumscale** command in the installer directory, and this directory can optionally be added to the path.

**Note:** The installation toolkit installs the Chef configuration management tool, a Python-based tool wrapped around Opscode Chef technologies, enabling configuration management and deployment at scale. For more information, see Apache license information ([www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0](http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0)).

The installation toolkit operation consists of four phases:

1. User input by using **spectrumscale** commands
  - a. All user input is recorded into a cluster definition file in `/usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/installer/configuration`
  - b. Review the cluster definition file to make sure that it accurately reflects your cluster configuration.
  - c. As you input your cluster configuration, you can have the toolkit act on parts of the cluster by not specifying nodes that might have incompatible Operating systems, OS levels, or architectures.
2. A **spectrumscale install** phase
  - a. Installation acts upon all nodes that are defined in the cluster definition file.
  - b. GPFS and performance monitoring packages are installed.
  - c. Call home and file audit logging packages might be installed.
  - d. GPFS portability layer is created.
  - e. GPFS is started.
  - f. A GPFS cluster is created.
  - g. Licenses are applied.
  - h. GUI nodes might be created and the GUI might be started upon these nodes.
  - i. NTP, performance monitoring, GPFS ephemeral ports, and cluster profile might be configured.
  - j. NSDs might be created.

**Note:** File systems are not created during installation.

3. A **spectrumscale deploy** phase
  - a. Deployment acts upon all nodes that are defined into the cluster definition file.
  - b. File systems are configured. It is possible to configure file systems only during the deployment phase if you do not want protocols.
  - c. SMB, NFS, and Object protocol packages are copied to all protocol nodes.
  - d. SMB, NFS, and Object services might be started.
  - e. Authentication might be configured.
  - f. File audit logging and message queue might be configured.
  - g. Licenses are applied.
  - h. GUI nodes might be created and the GUI might be started upon these nodes.
  - i. NTP, performance monitoring, call home, file audit logging, GPFS ephemeral ports, and cluster profile might be configured.
  - j. NSDs might be created.

4. A **spectrumscale upgrade** phase
  - a. Upgrade acts upon all nodes input into the cluster definition file.
  - b. All installed/deployed components are upgraded.
  - c. Upgrades are sequential with multiple passes. For more information, see “Upgrade process flow” on page 446.
  - d. The IBM Spectrum Scale GUI might be upgraded and restarted upon upgrade.

**Note:** The upgrade phase does not allow new function to be enabled. In the upgrade phase, the required packages are upgraded, but adding functions must be done either before or after the upgrade.

For information about command options available with the **spectrumscale** command, see the **spectrumscale** command description in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

The following table lists the features available in the installation toolkit in the reverse chronological order of releases.

Table 39. Installation toolkit: List of features

Release	Features
5.0.3.x	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Support for SLES 15 on x86_64 and s390x</li> <li>• Upgrade related enhancements:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Upgrade flow changes to minimize I/O disruptions</li> <li>– Enhanced upgrade pre-checks to determine the packages that must be upgraded.</li> </ul> <p>Compare the versions of the installed packages with the versions in the repository of the packages you want to upgrade to. In a mixed operating system cluster, the comparison is done with the package repository applicable for the operating system running on the respective nodes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Mixed OS support for upgrade</li> <li>– Enhanced upgrade post-checks to ensure that all packages have been upgraded successfully</li> <li>– Enhanced dependency checks to ensure dependencies are met for each required package</li> </ul> </li> <li>• IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Ability to define a new setup type ece</li> <li>– Ability to designate a scale-out node</li> <li>– Ability to define recovery group, vdisk set, and file system</li> <li>– Support for installation and deployment of IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition</li> <li>– Support for config populate function in an IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition environment</li> <li>– Offline upgrade support for IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Table 39. Installation toolkit: List of features (continued)

Release	Features
5.0.2.x	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Support for IBM Z (RHEL 7.x, SLES12.x, Ubuntu 16.04 and Ubuntu 18.04 on s390x)</li> <li>• Support for RHEL 7.6 on x86_64, PPC64, PPC64LE, and s390x</li> <li>• Support for offline upgrade of nodes or components while they are stopped or down</li> <li>• Support for excluding nodes from an upgrade run</li> <li>• Support for rerunning an upgrade procedure after a failure</li> <li>• Support for watch folder</li> <li>• Configuration of message queue for file audit logging and watch folder</li> <li>• Enhancements in CES shared root creation and detection in config populate</li> <li>• Upgraded bundled Chef package</li> </ul>
5.0.1.x	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Support for Ubuntu 18.04 on x86_64</li> <li>• Support for RHEL 7.5 on x86_64, PPC64, and PPC64LE</li> <li>• Support for Ubuntu 16.04.4 on x86_64</li> <li>• Config populate support for call home and file audit logging</li> <li>• Performance monitoring configuration-related changes</li> </ul>
5.0.0.x	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Extended operating system support <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Ubuntu 16.04.0, 16.04.1, 16.04.2, 16.04.3 on x86_64</li> <li>– RHEL 7.4 on x86_64, PPC64, and PPC64LE</li> <li>– SLES 12 SP3 on x86_64</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Improved deployment integration with Elastic Storage Server: The installation toolkit includes the capability to detect ESS nodes (EMS and I/O) and it ensures validation of permitted operations when you are adding protocol or client nodes to a cluster containing ESS.</li> <li>• File audit logging installation and configuration</li> <li>• Call home configuration</li> <li>• Cumulative object upgrade support</li> <li>• Enhanced network connectivity pre-checks including passwordless SSH validation from the admin node</li> <li>• Updated file system default block size for more likely best performance defaults</li> </ul>
4.2.3.x	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Extended Operating System support (SLES 12 SP1, SP2 on x86_64)</li> <li>• Enhanced problem determination: Enhanced pre-checks including checks for base OS repository setup, base software requirements, authentication prerequisites, and error reporting to console for faster problem resolution.</li> <li>• Config populate: Installation toolkit configuration retrieval from existing clusters that queries all required cluster topology and state (allowing for seamless transition to further operations with the installation toolkit usage on clusters that are created without it).</li> <li>• Installation and upgrade of gpfs.adv, gpfs.crypto, and license packages</li> <li>• Cluster upgrade enhancements (Extended upgrade pre-checks and supports the Spectrum scale upgrade when in an LTFS environment).</li> <li>• Support for up to 7 secondary NSD servers</li> </ul>

Table 39. Installation toolkit: List of features (continued)

Release	Features
4.2.2.x	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enhanced operating system support <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>RHEL 7.3 on x86_64, PPC64, PPC64LE</li> <li>RHEL 7.1, RHEL7.2 on PPC64LE</li> <li>SLES 12 on x86_64 (no Object)</li> <li>RHEL 6.8 on x86_64 and PPC64 (no CES)</li> </ul> </li> <li>Extended platform architecture support (PPC64LE with RHEL 7.1 and 7.2)</li> <li>Heterogeneous OS clusters (a single cluster can now contain any combination of supported operating systems)</li> </ul>
4.2.1.x	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enhanced operating system support (RHEL 7.2 CES protocol support on x86_64 and PPC64)</li> <li>Guided installation and deployment</li> <li>Logging and debugging and separate error log</li> <li>Enhanced pre-checks</li> <li>Support for Central Chef server</li> <li>Shared Java support</li> </ul>
4.2.0.x	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All upgrades involving CES protocols must upgrade to 4.2.0.0 before continuing on.</li> <li>Management GUI installation and configuration during installation, deployment, and node addition</li> <li>Installation GUI for basic cluster configuration (no NSD or file system or Protocols)</li> <li>Additional Object configuration</li> <li>Build package now includes full packages for upgrades.</li> <li>Non-RHEL 7.x awareness</li> </ul>
4.1.1 [Initial release of the installation toolkit]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stacked CES + NSD node support (not ESS)</li> <li>Cluster installation and creation</li> <li>NSD creation during installation</li> <li>Client/server license configuration</li> <li>File system creation during deployment</li> <li>Operating system support (RHEL 7.0 and RHEL 7.1 on x86_64)</li> <li>Protocols Quick Overview Guide</li> <li>Single node cluster support</li> <li>Install Toolkit portability (Newer toolkits can be used with older code)</li> <li>Authentication configuration during deployment <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>File: LDAP, AD, NIS, none</li> <li>Object: LDAP, AD, local, ext</li> </ul> </li> <li>Performance monitoring reconfiguration</li> <li>Ability to add nodes, protocols, NSDs, file systems, authentication to existing configurations</li> </ul>

## Understanding the installation toolkit options

Use the following information to understand how to work with the installation toolkit, and toolkit options.

- | When you use the installation toolkit to install GPFS, the procedure comprises two stages:
- | 1. Using a series of **spectrumscale** commands to add node and NSD specifications and configuration properties to the cluster definition file.
- | 2. Using the **spectrumscale install** command to install GPFS on the nodes specified in the cluster definition file and to apply the configuration options to the cluster.
- | When you use the installation toolkit to deploy protocols, the procedure comprises two similar stages:
- | 1. Using a series of **spectrumscale** commands to specify environment details, to identify which protocols are to be enabled, and to define protocol-specific properties in the cluster definition file.
- | 2. Using the **spectrumscale deploy** command to deploy protocols as specified in the cluster definition file.
- | If you already have an existing GPFS cluster, with GPFS started and at least one file system for the CES shared file system, you can just define protocol nodes in the cluster definition and then deploy protocols.
- | See “Using the installation toolkit to perform installation tasks: Explanations and examples” on page 300 for information on how to use the command options listed in Table 40 to perform the installation and deployment. After you review the examples, you can tailor them according to your own needs and then proceed to implement them.

| *Table 40. spectrumscale command options for installing GPFS and deploying protocols*

spectrumscale command option	Purpose
node add	Adds node specifications to the cluster definition file
node delete	Removes node specifications from the cluster definition file
nsd add	Adds NSD specifications to the cluster definition file
nsd clear	Clears all NSDs
nsd delete	Removes a single NSD
nsd list	Lists all NSDs currently in the configuration
nsd modify	Modifies an NSD
nsd balance	Balances the NSD preferred node between the primary and secondary nodes
filesystem list	Lists all file systems that currently have NSDs assigned to them
filesystem modify	Changes the block size and mount point of a file system
auth file	Configures file authentication on protocols in the cluster definition file
auth object	Specifies Object authentication on protocols in the cluster definition file
config gpfs	Adds GPFS-specific properties to the cluster definition file
install	Installs GPFS on the configured nodes, creates a cluster, and creates NSDs.
config protocols	Provides details about the GPFS environment to be used during protocol deployment
config perfmon	Configures performance monitoring settings
config object	Defines object-specific properties to be applied during deployment
config populate	Populates cluster definition file with current cluster configuration

Table 40. **spectrumscale** command options for installing GPFS and deploying protocols (continued)

spectrumscale command option	Purpose
<b>deploy</b>	Creates file systems and deploys protocols on your configured nodes
<b>config ntp</b>	Configures NTP settings
<b>callhome</b>	Configures call home settings
<b>fileauditlogging</b>	Configures file audit logging settings
<b>watchfolder</b>	Configures watch folder settings
<b>upgrade</b>	Upgrades the various components of the installation.

The list of **spectrumscale** command options listed is not exhaustive. For all command options available with the **spectrumscale** command and for more information about these command options, see the **spectrumscale** command description in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

### Required cleanup if you are reinstalling with the installation toolkit

If you are reinstalling with the installation toolkit, you must perform some cleanup procedures first. See “Cleanup procedures required if reinstalling with the installation toolkit” on page 392.

### Limitations of the installation toolkit

Before using the installation toolkit to install IBM Spectrum Scale and deploy protocols, review the following limitations and workarounds, if any.

Table 41. Installation toolkit limitations

Function	Description	Workaround, if any
CES groups	The installation toolkit does not support the configuration of CES groups. This causes protocol deployments to fail in multi-network environments. Having CES groups might cause issues with upgrades as well because the installation toolkit is not aware of CES groups during the upgrade.	
Clusters larger than 32 nodes	The installation toolkit does not restrict the number of nodes in a cluster in which the toolkit can be used. However, it is currently designed as a single node server so as the number of nodes increases, the bandwidth to the installer node decreases and the latency goes up. This might cause issues in implementations with more than 32 nodes. <b>Note:</b> If you want to use the installation toolkit in a cluster larger than 32 nodes, contact <a href="mailto:scale@us.ibm.com">scale@us.ibm.com</a> .	

Table 41. Installation toolkit limitations (continued)

Function	Description	Workaround, if any
Clusters without passwordless SSH between all nodes	If clusters are setup in an AdminCentral=True configuration, which is a widely used configuration, the installation toolkit and protocols might not function correctly.	Set up passwordless SSH between all nodes in the cluster and to the nodes themselves using FQDN, IP address, and host name.
Compression	The installation toolkit does not configure file system compression.	After installation, configure the compression function manually. For more information, see <i>File compression in IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide</i> .
Concurrent upgrade	<p>The installation toolkit does not support concurrent upgrade. You must plan for an outage depending on your setup. This is a brief outage to prevent mixed code versions from running at the same time and it is also required in case of a manual upgrade.</p> <p>Although the upgrade is non-concurrent, data is typically still accessible during the upgrade window. Access might be lost and need to be re-established multiple times due to how the upgrade procedure is executed among nodes.</p>	
Configuration change	<p>The installation toolkit does not support changing existing settings and node designations. Although, it can be used to add nodes, NSDS, or file systems to an existing cluster.</p> <p>The installation does not support authentication reconfiguration. It does not use the authentication section of the cluster definition file during upgrade.</p>	If you want to change the authentication method, see <i>If you want to change the authentication method</i> in <i>IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide</i> .
Customer designation of sensor or collector nodes	The installation toolkit does not support customer designation of sensor or collector nodes. The installation toolkit automatically sets up sensor or collectors without allowing the user to choose which nodes will have these functions.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Use the <b>./spectrumscale config perfmon -d</b> flag to disable performance monitoring and the <b>-r</b> flag to reconfigure performance monitoring, if required.</li> <li>2. Follow up with manual configuration of performance monitoring.</li> </ol>
Custom profiles	The installation toolkit allows a user to choose between two GPFS profiles during installation prior to cluster creation.	Obtain the sample profiles that the installation toolkit uses and edit them directly. The profiles are located in the <code>/usr/lpp/mmfs/profiles</code> directory.



Table 41. Installation toolkit limitations (continued)

Function	Description	Workaround, if any
Disabling or uninstalling protocols and uninstalling GPFS	The installation toolkit does not support disabling or uninstalling protocols and uninstalling GPFS on an existing GPFS cluster.	Use the manual procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For information about removing exports, see <i>Managing protocol data exports</i> in <i>IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide</i>.</li> <li>For information about disabling protocol services, see <i>Managing protocol services</i> in <i>IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide</i>.</li> <li>For information about uninstalling GPFS, see Chapter 15, “Steps to permanently uninstall GPFS,” on page 391.</li> </ul>
ESS and IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition mixed environment	The installation toolkit does not support an environment in which ESS and IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition coexist.	Use the manual procedure to install, deploy, or upgrade IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition in a cluster that contains ESS.
Encryption	The installation toolkit does not support encrypted file systems. Therefore, installation and deployment using the installation toolkit do not work if the CES shared root file system or any other file system that the installation toolkit works with is encrypted.	
EPEL and OpenStack repositories	The installation toolkit does not support the configuration of protocols when either EPEL or OpenStack repositories are configured	Remove or disable these repositories before using the installation toolkit for installation, deployment, or upgrade.
File system DMAPI flag set to Yes (-z)  <b>installation and deployment</b>	<p>The file system DMAPI flag is used in IBM Spectrum Scale for IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management and policy management, attaching with an IBM Spectrum Protect server, and with IBM Spectrum Archive.</p> <p>The installation toolkit does not have any option to add a DMAPI flag to a new or existing file system. If this is desired, the installation toolkit can be used to create the file system and later the DMAPI flag can be set manually as appropriate.</p>	For information on manual procedures for installation and deployment, see “Manually installing the IBM Spectrum Scale software packages on Linux nodes” on page 256.

Table 41. Installation toolkit limitations (continued)

Function	Description	Workaround, if any
File system DMAPI flag set to Yes (-z)  upgrade	<p>An upgrade using the installation toolkit is affected by the presence of the DMAPI flag in a few ways:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If the CES shared root shares a file system that has the DMAPI flag set: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In this situation, the installation toolkit cannot unmount or mount the file system on each node it attempts to upgrade unless the user has preemptively removed the DMAPI flag and stopped all DMAPI services. For more information, see “Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale on IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes using the installation toolkit” on page 458.</li> <li>• This scenario is different from scenario 2, because the CES shared root file system is essential for maintaining healthy CES status of the cluster. Without the CES shared root mounted, the CES component remains unhealthy and prevents upgrade from continuing.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. If a non-CES shared root file system has the DMAPI flag set: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In this scenario, the installation toolkit cannot unmount the file system during upgrade of each node unless the user has preemptively stopped all DMAPI related services and unmounted the file system.</li> <li>• Following this, the installation toolkit cannot remount the file system after upgrade of each node. The file system is left unmounted and the user needs to bring it up manually on each node individually after the GPFS portion of the upgrade has finished. Otherwise, the user can wait until the entire upgrade has finished and bring up the file system on all nodes at once.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For information on using the installation toolkit for upgrade in clusters where the DMAPI flag is set to Yes for any of the file systems, see “Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale on IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes using the installation toolkit” on page 458.</li> <li>• In the case of a failed upgrade that needs to be restarted, if some of the nodes have been restarted, then steps need to be taken to get all of the file systems mounted again and the cluster healthy before another attempt can be made. This might require stopping DMAPI services again if they auto-started after a node was upgraded.</li> </ul>

Table 41. Installation toolkit limitations (continued)

Function	Description	Workaround, if any
FPO configuration for disks	The installation toolkit does not support the extra stanza file flags required for FPO setup.	Do one of the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Create NSDs using the installation toolkit.</li> <li>2. Manually edit the NSD stanza file afterwards. The installation toolkit places the NSD stanza file in the /usr/lpp/mmfs directory.</li> <li>3. Use <b>mmchnsd</b> to do the changes.</li> </ol> <b>OR</b> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Create the cluster using the installation toolkit.</li> <li>2. Deploy protocols on the protocol nodes using the installation toolkit.</li> <li>3. Manually create the NSDs for the FPO setup.</li> </ol>
Host-based SSH authentication	The installation toolkit does not support host-based SSH authentication. It supports only key-based SSH authentication.	Either set up key-based SSH authentication temporarily for use with the toolkit, or follow the manual steps in “Manually installing the IBM Spectrum Scale software packages on Linux nodes” on page 256.
IPv6	The installation toolkit supports only IPv4 address as input. Protocols also have this limitation.	
iSCSI BLOCK	The installation toolkit does not install or configure the iSCSI BLOCK function.	Use the manual procedure. For more information, see “Installing Cluster Export Services as part of installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Linux systems” on page 268.
Kafka packages	To make the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster ready for file audit logging and watch folder functions, the installation toolkit automatically installs the gpfs.kafka and gpfs.librdkafka packages for supported operating systems and hardware architectures. This might lead to errors if the prerequisites for gpfs.kafka and gpfs.librdkafka are not installed.	Ensure that the prerequisite packages for gpfs.kafka and gpfs.librdkafka are installed. For more information, see “Requirements and limitations for file audit logging” on page 379.
Multiple CES networks	The installation toolkit does not support deployments with multiple CES networks. Attempting deployment in this configuration has a high probability of failure. This is because when the CES address pool has multiple subnets, the command for adding CES address assigns an IP to a CES node that cannot handle that subnet of address, which causes the deployment failure.	

Table 41. Installation toolkit limitations (continued)

Function	Description	Workaround, if any
Multiple clusters	The installation toolkit does not support multiple clusters being defined in the cluster definition.	
Multi-region object deployment	For a multi-region object deployment, the installation toolkit only sets up the region number not the replication. For information about setting up multi-region object deployment, see “Enabling multi-region object deployment initially” on page 345.	
NFS or SMB exports configuration	The installation toolkit does not configure any exports on SMB or NFS.	Use the manual procedure. For information about configuring Cluster Export Services and creating exports, see <i>Configuring Cluster Export Services</i> and <i>Managing protocol data exports</i> in <i>IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide</i> .
Node function addition during upgrade	The installation toolkit does not support designating node functionality during upgrade.	To add a function to the cluster or a node, designate this new function using the installation toolkit and proceed with an installation or a deployment. Perform this action either before or after an upgrade.
NSD balancing with pools or failure groups	The installation toolkit NSD balance function only balances NSDs evenly across primary and secondary NSD servers. It does not take into account pools or failure groups.	Add nodes using the <code>./spectrumscale nsd add</code> command that have the required balanced values already configured manually across failure groups, pools, and primary and secondary NSD servers.
NSD SAN attachment during initial installation	The installation toolkit cannot be used for NSD SAN attachment during initial installation because when adding NSDs using the installation toolkit, a primary and an optional comma-separated list of secondary NSD servers must be designated.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Create NSDs using the installation toolkit.</li> <li>2. Manually edit the NSD stanza file afterwards.</li> <li>3. Use <code>mmchnsd</code> to do the changes.</li> </ol>
NTP server setup	The installation toolkit can be used to configure NTP clients on supported operating systems but not NTP servers.	
Package managers other than yum, zypper, or apt--get	The installation toolkit requires the use of yum (RHEL), zypper (SLES), and apt--get (Ubuntu) package managers to function.	
PPC and x86_64 or PPC and s390x or x86_64 and s390x mix	The installation toolkit does not support mixed CPU architecture configurations.	Use the installation toolkit on a subset of nodes that are supported and then manually install, deploy, or upgrade on the remaining nodes.

Table 41. Installation toolkit limitations (continued)

Function	Description	Workaround, if any
PPC LE and PPC BE mix	The installation toolkit does not support mixed endian configurations.	Use the installation toolkit on a subset of nodes that are supported and then manually install, deploy, or upgrade on the remaining nodes.
Quorum or manager configuration after cluster installation	The installation toolkit allows a user to add -m (to specify a manager node) and -q (to specify a quorum node) flags to various nodes as they are added. If the proposed configuration does not match the existing configuration, the installation toolkit does nothing to change it.	Manually change node roles by using the <b>mmchnode</b> command.
Remote mounted file systems	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Object protocol deployment using the installation toolkit fails in case of remotely mounted file systems. This occurs because the Object component must both list and create filesets, which is not allowed on a remotely mounted file system.</li> <li>NFS and SMB deployments on remote mounted file systems work using the installation toolkit.</li> <li>The setup of a CES shared root file system when the file system is remotely mounted works using the installation toolkit.</li> </ul>	
Repository proxy	The installation toolkit does not support proxy setups when working with repositories. yum repolist must not have any failed repos and it must be clean.	Ensure that there are no stale or failed repositories and that only the base OS repositories are enabled during any installation toolkit activities such as installation, deployment, or upgrade.
RPMs that have dependencies upon GPFS RPMs and GPFS settings	In an environment where some RPMs have dependencies on base GPFS RPMs or GPFS settings, the installation toolkit cannot be used for installation or upgrade.	
Running <b>mmchconfig release=LATEST</b> to complete an upgrade	The installation toolkit does not run <b>mmchconfig release=LATEST</b> after an upgrade. This is to give users time to verify an upgrade success and decide if the code level upgrade should be finalized.	Use <b>mmchconfig release=LATEST</b> after an upgrade using the installation toolkit to finalize the upgrade across the cluster.
Separate admin and daemon network	The installation toolkit does not support separate admin and daemon network.	
Sudo user	The installation toolkit does not function correctly unless run as root. Running as sudo or as another user does not work.	

Table 41. Installation toolkit limitations (continued)

Function	Description	Workaround, if any
Support for AIX, Debian, PowerKVM, Windows	The installation toolkit does not support AIX, Debian, PowerKVM, Windows operating systems. If these operating systems are installed on any cluster nodes, do not add these nodes to the installation toolkit.	Use the installation toolkit on a subset of nodes that are supported and then manually perform installation, deployment, or upgrade on the remaining nodes. For information about manual upgrade, see Chapter 16, “Upgrading,” on page 401.
Tie-Breaker NSD configuration	The installation toolkit does not configure tie-breaker disks.	Manually set the tie-breaker configuration as required using <b>mmchconfig</b> after completing installation using the toolkit.
Transparent cloud tiering	The installation toolkit does not install, configure, or upgrade Transparent cloud tiering.	Use the manual procedures. For more information, see Chapter 7, “Installing Cloud services on IBM Spectrum Scale nodes,” on page 367.
Unique NSD device configuration	The installation toolkit relies upon a user having already configured and run the <b>nsdddevices</b> sample script provided within a GPFS installation.  The <b>mmcrnsd</b> and <b>mmchnsd</b> commands require running of the <b>nsdddevices</b> script beforehand. Therefore, the installation toolkit will fail if this has not been done by the user.	
Upgrade in clusters in which the entire protocol stack is not installed	The installation toolkit does not support upgrade in clusters in which the entire protocols stack was not originally installed.	Use the manual upgrade procedure. For information about manual upgrade, see Chapter 16, “Upgrading,” on page 401.
Upgrade while skipping over versions	The installation toolkit does not support skipping over major or minor versions of IBM Spectrum Scale releases when doing an online upgrade. For example, if an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is at version 4.1.1.x, you cannot use the installation toolkit for an online upgrade directly to version 5.0.x.	Do an offline upgrade from version 4.1.1.x to 5.0.x. For more information, see “Performing offline upgrade or excluding nodes from upgrade using installation toolkit” on page 454.
Upgrade in a mixed OS cluster (RHEL + Ubuntu or SLES + Ubuntu)	The installation toolkit does not support upgrade in a mixed OS cluster containing a mix of Ubuntu and RHEL nodes or Ubuntu and SLES nodes.	Use one of the following workarounds: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the manual upgrade procedure. For information about manual upgrade, see Chapter 16, “Upgrading,” on page 401.</li> <li>• Use the installation toolkit to upgrade a subset of nodes of each OS; one subset of nodes followed by the other subset.</li> </ul>

#### Related concepts:

“Limitations of config populate option of the installation toolkit” on page 323

You can use the **config populate** option of the installation toolkit to populate the cluster definition file with the current cluster state.

## Mixed operating system support with the installation toolkit

You can use the installation toolkit to install GPFS and deploy protocols in a cluster that contains nodes that are running on different operating systems. Several validations are done when you use the **spectrumscale** command in a mixed operating system cluster.

The following operating systems are supported with the installation toolkit in a mixed operating system cluster.

Table 42. Operating systems supported with the installation toolkit in a mixed cluster

CPU architecture	Operating system
x86_64	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.1, 7.2, 7.3, 7.4, 7.5, and 7.6</li><li>Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS</li><li>SLES 12 and 15</li></ul>
s390x	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.1, 7.2, 7.3, 7.4, 7.5, and 7.6</li><li>Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS</li><li>SLES 12 and 15</li></ul>

### Note:

- The object protocol is not supported on SLES 12.
- SMB, NFS, and object protocols are not supported on the s390x architecture.
- SMB, NFS, and object protocols are not supported on SLES 15.

### Important:

- In a mixed operating system cluster, all protocol nodes must be running on the same operating system. However, nodes that are running on different minor versions of Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x (7.1, 7.2, 7.3, 7.4, 7.5, or 7.6) can be designated as protocol nodes in the same cluster.
- In a mixed operating system cluster, all nodes must have the same CPU architecture and endianness.

The installation toolkit performs the required validations in a mixed operating system cluster to prevent users from attempting any configurations that are not supported. These validations include the following.

Table 43. Validations by the installation toolkit in a mixed operating system cluster

Operation that is attempted with the installation toolkit	Validations done
Node addition by using the <b>spectrumscale node add NodeName</b> command	Check whether the operating system of the target node is supported. If it is not supported, an error occurs.
Protocol node designation by using the <b>spectrumscale node add NodeName -p</b> command	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Check whether the operating system of the target node is SLES 12. If it is SLES 12, a warning is generated that states: Object protocol is not supported on SLES 12.</li><li>Check whether all protocol nodes being added are running on the same operating system. If you attempt to add protocol nodes running on different operating systems, then that operation is not allowed.</li></ul> <p>For example, if you have added a protocol node running on Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x and then you try to add another protocol node running on SLES 12, then that operation is not allowed.</p>

Table 43. Validations by the installation toolkit in a mixed operating system cluster (continued)

Operation that is attempted with the installation toolkit	Validations done
Protocol enablement by using the <b>spectrumscale enable Protocol</b> command	<p>Check whether the protocol being enabled is supported on the operating system that is running on the node. If the protocol is not supported, an error occurs and you cannot continue with the installation and deployment.</p> <p>For example, if you try to enable object on a node running on SLES 12, an error occurs.</p>

## Mixed operating system support during upgrade

During the upgrade precheck, the installation toolkit performs a comparison of the versions of the installed packages with the versions of packages in the repository. In a mixed operating system cluster, the comparison is done with the package repository applicable for the operating system running on the respective nodes.

## Preparing to use the installation toolkit

Before using the installation toolkit, complete the following preparatory steps on all the nodes on which you plan to use the installation toolkit.

1. Ensure that the following requirements are met.

### Operating systems supported with the installation toolkit

The installation toolkit is supported on the following operating systems.

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.1, 7.2, 7.3, 7.4, 7.5, and 7.6 operating systems on x86\_64, PPC64, PPC64LE, and s390x architectures.
- SLES 12 and 15 operating systems on x86\_64 and s390x architectures.
- Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS operating systems on x86\_64 and s390x architectures.

For information about how the installation toolkit can be used in a cluster that has nodes with mixed operating systems, see “Mixed operating system support with the installation toolkit” on page 297.

### Note:

- The object protocol is not supported on SLES 12.
- SMB, NFS, and object protocols are not supported on the s390x architecture.
- SMB, NFS, and object protocols are not supported on SLES 15.

For latest information about supported operating systems, see IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

### Required packages for the installation toolkit

The installation toolkit requires following packages:

- python-2.7
- net-tools

**Note:** You might need to install Python 2.7 on Ubuntu 18.04 LTS nodes because it is not included by default in the base Ubuntu 18.04 LTS operating system. This can be done by installing either the dependency package python or the minimal python 2.7 environment python-minimal.

### Supported Chef versions



The installation toolkit bundles Chef packages of following versions:

Operating system and CPU architecture	Chef package version
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x on x86_64, PPC64, PPC64LE, and s390x</li><li>• Ubuntu 16.04 and 18.04 on x86_64 and s390x</li></ul>	chef-13.6.4-1
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• SLES 12 and 15 on x86_64</li></ul>	chef-12.1.2-1
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• SLES 12 and 15 on s390x</li></ul>	chef-12.0.3-1

The installation toolkit handles the Chef package as follows:

- The installation toolkit displays informational messages during prechecks if the Chef version is different from the supported versions.
- If the currently installed Chef version is the same as the version of Chef bundled in the previous version of the installation toolkit, then the Chef package is upgraded.
- On SLES 12 and 15, if the version is different from the supported version, you must uninstall Chef before using the installation toolkit.
- On Red Hat Enterprise Linux and Ubuntu:
  - If the Chef version is earlier than the supported version, then the installation toolkit prompts users to confirm whether to upgrade the Chef package to the supported version, or continue with the existing version, or abort.
  - If the Chef version is later than the supported version, then the installation toolkit displays a warning message that a non-certified Chef version is being run and then prompts users to confirm whether to continue or abort.

#### Root access for the installation toolkit

The installation toolkit must be run as the root user. On Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS, root login is disabled by default. To use the installation toolkit on Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS, you must enable the root login.

#### Call home information required for the installation toolkit

The installation toolkit requires call home data to work properly. You must have the *customer name*, the *customer id*, the *customer email*, and the *customer country code* available before installing and configuring call home with the installation toolkit.

#### Disable auto updates on Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS nodes

On Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS nodes, auto updates or unattended upgrades must be disabled, and kernel auto updates upon node reboot must also be disabled. This is to ensure that any updates that are not supported with the installation toolkit do not get installed.

#### Uninstall RPM Package Manager (RPM) on Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS nodes

To use the installation toolkit on Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS nodes, you must uninstall the RPM Package Manager (RPM) from these nodes.

For information on prerequisites for protocols and performance monitoring, see “Installation prerequisites” on page 246.

#### 2. Set up passwordless SSH as follows.

- From the admin node to the other nodes in the cluster.
- From protocol nodes to other nodes in the cluster.
- From every protocol node to rest of the protocol nodes in the cluster.

The installation toolkit performs verification during the precheck phase to ensure that passwordless SSH is set up correctly. This verification includes:

- Check whether passwordless SSH is set up between all admin nodes and all the other nodes in the cluster. If this check fails, a fatal error occurs.

- Check whether passwordless SSH is set up between all protocol nodes and all the other nodes in the cluster. If this check fails, a warning is displayed.
- Check whether passwordless SSH is set up between all protocol nodes in the cluster. If this check fails, a fatal error occurs.

**Note:** Passwordless SSH must be set up using the FQDN and the short name of the node.

### 3. Set up repositories depending on your operating system.

- These package managers must be set up depending on the operating system.
  - Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.1, 7.2, 7.3, 7.4, 7.5, 7.6: yum repository must be set up on all nodes in the cluster
  - SLES 12 and 15: zypper repository must be set up on all nodes in the cluster
  - Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS: apt repository must be set up on all nodes in the cluster
- Configure repositories depending on whether you have internet connection or not. However, ensure that base operating system packages are available and EPEL repositories are disabled.

### 4. Ensure that SELinux is disabled.

**Note:** If you cannot disable SELinux for some reason, it must be in the permissive mode. However, there are a lot of log entries that are generated in the permissive mode. Therefore, disabling SELinux is recommended.

### 5. Ensure that the ports required for installation are open.

**Note:** The installation toolkit checks if the firewall daemon is running and displays a warning if it is running. If the required ports are open, you can ignore the warning.

For information about the ports that need to be open, see *Securing the IBM Spectrum Scale system using firewall* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

### 6. Ensure that the required kernel packages are installed.

For more information, see “Software requirements” on page 150.

**Note:** You might have to force the installation of a specific version of these packages because a package of a version newer than the corresponding kernel might get picked up by default.

### 7. Ensure that networking is set up in one of the following ways.

- DNS is configured such that all host names, either short or long, are resolvable.
- All host names are resolvable in the `/etc/hosts` file. The host entries in the `/etc/hosts` file must be in the following order:  
`<IP address> <Fully qualified domain name> <Short name>`

### 8. Obtain the IBM Spectrum Scale self-extracting installation package from IBM Fix Central.

## Using the installation toolkit to perform installation tasks: Explanations and examples

Use these explanations and examples of installation toolkit options and tasks to perform installation and deployment by using the installation toolkit.

After you have determined how you want your own system to be configured, and after you have reviewed the **spectrumscale** command description in the *Command reference* section *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*, you can tailor these examples to do the following:

- Set up your install node.
- Add node and NSD specifications, file system information, and GPFS configuration properties to your cluster definition file, and then install GPFS and configure your cluster according to the information in that file.

- Specify environment details, identify which protocols are to be enabled, and define protocol-specific properties in the cluster definition file, and then deploy protocols on your system.

For information on using the installation toolkit for the installation and the deployment of protocol and client nodes in a cluster containing ESS, see “ESS awareness with the installation toolkit” on page 325.

Before using the installation toolkit for installation and deployment, ensure that the preparatory steps are completed. For more information, see “Preparing to use the installation toolkit” on page 298.

Using the installation toolkit to perform installation and deployment involves doing these tasks.

1. “Setting up the installer node”
2. “Defining the cluster topology for the installation toolkit” on page 302
3. “Installing GPFS and creating a GPFS cluster” on page 306
4. “Deploying protocols” on page 308
5. “Setting up authentication” on page 312

For more installation toolkit related information, see the following topics.

- “Installation of performance monitoring tool using the installation toolkit” on page 314
- “Enabling and configuring file audit logging using the installation toolkit” on page 317
- “Enabling and configuring call home using the installation toolkit” on page 319
- “Installing IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI by using the installation toolkit” on page 322
- “Logging and debugging for installation toolkit” on page 316

## Setting up the installer node

The first step in using the installation toolkit for installing IBM Spectrum Scale and deploying protocols is to configure your installer node.

A good candidate for your installer node is the GPFS admin node, because a prerequisite of this node is that it must be able to communicate with all other nodes without the need to provide a password. Also, SSH connections between the admin node and all other nodes must be set up to suppress prompting. Therefore, no prompts should exist when using ssh among any cluster nodes to and from each other, and to and from the server.

First, find the installation toolkit by changing directories to where it was extracted (the default extraction path for 5.0.3.x is as follows. This path varies depending on the code level).

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/installer
```

To configure the installer node, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale setup -s InstallNodeIP -i SSHIdentity
```

The **-s** argument identifies the IP that nodes will use to retrieve their configuration. This IP will be one associated with a device on the installer node. (This is automatically validated during the setup phase.)

Optionally, you can specify a private SSH key to be used to communicate with nodes in the cluster definition file, using the **-i** argument.

In an Elastic Storage Server (ESS) cluster, if you want to use the installation toolkit to install GPFS and deploy protocols you must specify the setup type as **ess** while setting up the installer node as follows.

```
./spectrumscale setup -s InstallNodeIP -i SSHIdentity -st ess
```

For more information, see “ESS awareness with the installation toolkit” on page 325.

As part of the setup process, the appropriate Chef packages will be deployed on the installer node.

## Defining the cluster topology for the installation toolkit

Use these instructions to set up the cluster definition file prior to installing GPFS and deploying protocols.

- “Adding node definitions to the cluster definition file”
- “Adding and configuring NSD server nodes in the cluster definition file” on page 303
- “Defining file systems” on page 305

## Adding node definitions to the cluster definition file

GPFS node definitions are added to the cluster definition file through the **spectrumscale node add** command.

1. If the install toolkit is being used from a location outside of any of the nodes to be installed, a GPFS Admin Node is required. The Admin Node is used to run GPFS cluster-wide commands.

To specify a GPFS Admin Node in the cluster definition file, use the **-a** argument:

```
./spectrumscale node add gpfsnode1 -a
```

If no GPFS Admin Node is specified in the cluster definition file, the node the install toolkit is running on is automatically designated as the Admin Node. If GUI nodes are to be installed, each GUI node must also be marked as an Admin node.

The role of an Admin node with regards to the installation toolkit is to serve as the coordinator of the installation, deployment, and upgrade. This node also acts as a central repository for all IBM Spectrum Scale packages. For larger clusters, it is important to have an Admin node with plenty of network bandwidth to all other nodes in the cluster.

2. To add GPFS Client nodes to the cluster definition file, provide no arguments:

```
./spectrumscale node add gpfsnode1
```

3. To add GPFS manager nodes to the cluster definition file, use the **-m** argument:

```
./spectrumscale node add gpfsnode2 -m
```

If no manager nodes are added to the cluster definition, the installation toolkit automatically designates manager nodes using the following algorithm:

- a. First, all protocol nodes in the cluster definition are designated as manager nodes.
  - b. If there are no protocol nodes, all NSD nodes in the cluster definition are designated as manager nodes.
  - c. If there are no NSD nodes, all nodes in the cluster definition are designated as manager nodes.
4. GPFS quorum nodes are added to the cluster definition using the **-q** argument.

```
./spectrumscale node add gpfsnode3 -q
```

If no quorum nodes are added to the cluster definition, the installation toolkit automatically designates quorum nodes using the following algorithm:

- a. If the number of nodes in the cluster definition is less than 4, all nodes are designated as quorum nodes.
- b. If the number of nodes in the cluster definition is between 4 and 9 inclusive, 3 nodes are designated as quorum nodes.
- c. If the number of nodes in the cluster definition is between 10 and 18 inclusive, 5 nodes are designated as quorum nodes.
- d. If the number of nodes in the cluster definition is greater than 18, 7 nodes are designated as quorum nodes.

This algorithm preferentially selects NSD nodes as quorum nodes. If the number of NSD nodes is less than the number of quorum nodes to be designated then any other nodes are selected until the number of quorum nodes is satisfied.

- GPFS NSD servers are added to the cluster definition using the **-n** argument.

```
./spectrumscale node add gpfsnode4 -n
```

- GPFS Graphical User Interface servers are added to the cluster definition using the **-g** argument.

```
./spectrumscale node add gpfsnode3 -g
```

A GUI server must also be an admin node. Use the **-a** flag:

```
./spectrumscale node add gpfsnode3 -a
```

If no nodes have been specified as management GUI servers, then the GUI is not installed. It is recommended to have at least 2 management GUI interface servers and a maximum of 3 for redundancy.

- To display a list of all nodes in the cluster definition file, use the **./spectrumscale node list** command. For example:

```
./spectrumscale node list
```

```
[ INFO ] List of nodes in current configuration:
[ INFO ] [Installer Node]
[ INFO ] 9.168.100.1
[ INFO ]
[ INFO ] [Cluster Name]
[ INFO ] gpfscluster01
[ INFO ]
[ INFO ] GPFS Node      Admin  Quorum  Manager  NSD Server  Protocol  GUI Server  OS      Arch
[ INFO ] gpfsnode1      X      X              X              X              rhe17  x86_64
[ INFO ] gpfsnode2              X              X              X              rhe17  x86_64
[ INFO ] gpfsnode3              X      X      X              rhe17  x86_64
[ INFO ] gpfsnode4              X      X      X              rhe17  x86_64
```

Starting with IBM Spectrum Scale release 4.2.2, the output of the **spectrumscale node list** command also includes CPU architecture and operating system of the nodes.

If you are upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale release 4.2.2 or later, ensure that the operating system and architecture fields in the cluster definition file are updated. These fields are automatically updated during the upgrade precheck. You can also update the operating system and CPU architecture fields in the cluster definition file by issuing the **spectrumscale config update** command. For more information, see “Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale components with the installation toolkit” on page 444.

- If you want to enable and configure call home by using the installation toolkit, you must add one of the nodes as the call home node as follows.

```
./spectrumscale node add -c CallHomeNode
```

- If you want to use the installation toolkit to install GPFS™ and deploy protocols in an Elastic Storage Server (ESS) cluster, you must add the EMS node of the ESS system as follows.

```
./spectrumscale node add -e EMSNode
```

For more information, see “ESS awareness with the installation toolkit” on page 325.

- For information on adding nodes to an existing installation, see “Adding nodes, NSDs, or file systems to an existing installation” on page 338.

## Adding and configuring NSD server nodes in the cluster definition file

**Note:** A CES shared root file system is required for protocols deployment with IBM Spectrum Scale.

- To configure NSDs, you must first add your NSD server nodes to the configuration:

```
./spectrumscale node add -n nsdserver1
./spectrumscale node add -n nsdserver2
./spectrumscale node add -n nsdserver3
```

- Once NSD server nodes are in the configuration, add NSDs to the configuration:

```
./spectrumscale nsd add /dev/sdb -p nsdserver1 -s nsdserver2,nsdserver3,...
```

- The installation toolkit supports standalone NSDs which connect to a single NSD server or shared NSDs which connect to both a primary and a secondary NSD server.

- When adding a standalone NSD, skip the secondary NSD server parameter.
- When adding a shared NSD, it is important to know the device name on the node which is to become the primary NSD server. It is not necessary to know the device name on the secondary NSD server because the device is looked up using its UUID.

**Note:** Although it is not necessary to know the device name on the secondary NSD server, it may be helpful to create a consistent mapping of device names if you are using multipath. For more information, see “NSD disk discovery” on page 25.

Here is an example of adding a shared NSD to the configuration by specifying the device name on the primary server along with the primary and secondary servers.

3. The name of the NSD is automatically generated based on the NSD server names. This can be changed after the NSD has been added by using the modify command and specifying a new name with the **-n** flag; the new name must be unique:

```
./spectrumscale nsd modify nsd_old_name -n nsd_new_name
```

4. It is possible to view all NSDs currently in the configuration using the list command:

```
./spectrumscale nsd list
```

5. To remove a single NSD from the configuration, supply the name of the NSD to the delete command:

```
./spectrumscale nsd delete nsd_name
```

6. To clear all NSDs and start from scratch, use the clear command:

```
./spectrumscale nsd clear
```

7. Where multiple devices are connected to the same pair of NSD servers, they can be added in bulk either by providing a list of all devices, or by using wild cards:

```
./spectrumscale nsd add -p nsdserver1 -s nsdserver2 /dev/dm-1 /dev/dm-2 /dev/dm-3
```

or

```
./spectrumscale nsd add -p nsdserver1 -s nsdserver2 "/dev/dm-*"
```

A connection is made to the primary server to expand any wild cards and check that all devices are present. When using wild cards, it is important to ensure that they are properly escaped, as otherwise they may be expanded locally by your shell. If any devices listed cannot be located on the primary server, a warning is displayed, but the command continues to add all other NSDs.

8. When adding NSDs, it is good practice to have them distributed such that each pair of NSD servers is equally loaded. This is usually done by using one server as a primary for half of the NSDs, and the other server as primary for the remainder. To simplify this process, it is possible to add all NSDs at once, then later use the balance command to switch the primary and secondary servers on some of the NSDs, as required. A connection is made to the original secondary server to look up device names on that node automatically. To automatically balance a pair of NSD servers, you must specify one of the nodes in that pair:

```
./spectrumscale nsd add "/dev/dm-*" -p serverA -s serverB
```

```
[ INFO ] Connecting to serverA to check devices and expand wildcards.
[ INFO ] Adding NSD serverA_serverB_1 on serverA using device /dev/dm-0.
[ INFO ] Adding NSD serverA_serverB_2 on serverA using device /dev/dm-1.
```

```
$ ./spectrumscale nsd list
```

```
[ INFO ] Name                               FS      Size(GB) Usage  FG Pool   Device   Servers
[ INFO ] serverA_serverB_1 Default 13      Default 1  Default /dev/dm-0 serverA,serverB
[ INFO ] serverA_serverB_2 Default 1        Default 1  Default /dev/dm-1 serverA,serverB
```

```
./spectrumscale nsd balance --node serverA
```

```
./spectrumscale nsd list
```

```
[ INFO ] Name                               FS      Size(GB) Usage  FG Pool   Device   Servers
[ INFO ] serverA_serverB_1 Default 13      Default 1  Default /dev/dm-0 serverB,serverA
[ INFO ] serverA_serverB_2 Default 1        Default 1  Default /dev/dm-1 serverA,serverB
```

9. Ordinarily a connection is made to the primary NSD server when adding an NSD. This is done to check device names and so that details such as the disk size can be determined, but is not vital. If it

is not feasible to have a connection to the nodes while adding NSDs to the configuration, these connections can be disabled using the **--no-check** flag. Extra care is needed to manually check the configuration when using this flag.

```
./spectrumscale nsd add /dev/sda -p nsdserver1 -s nsdserver2 --no-check
```

10. You can set the failure group, file system, pool, and usage of an NSD in two ways:

- using the add command to set them for multiple new NSDs at once
- using the modify command to modify one NSD at a time

```
./spectrumscale nsd add "/dev/dm-*" -p nsdserver1 -s nsdserver2 \  
-po pool1 -u dataOnly -fg 1 -fs filesystem_1  
./spectrumscale nsd modify nsd_name -u metadataOnly -fs filesystem_1
```

For information on adding NSDs to an existing installation, see “Adding nodes, NSDs, or file systems to an existing installation” on page 338.

## Defining file systems

File systems are defined implicitly with the NSD configuration and they are only created at the time of deployment, if there are NSDs assigned to them.

**Note:** Be aware that if you do not configure file systems, the installation toolkit automatically creates a file system named `scale0` mounted at `/ibm/scale0/`.

**Note:** A CES shared root file system is required for protocols deployment with IBM Spectrum Scale.

1. To specify a file system, use the **nsd add** or **nsd modify** command to set the file system property of the NSD:

```
./spectrumscale nsd add "/dev/dm-*" -p server1 -s server2 -fs filesystem_1  
[ INFO ] The installer will create the new file system filesystem_1 if it does not already exist.  
./spectrumscale nsd modify server1_server2_1 -fs filesystem_2  
[ INFO ] The installer will create the new file system filesystem_2 if it does not already exist.
```

2. To list all file systems that currently have NSDs assigned to them, use the **list** command. This also displays file system properties including the block size and mount point:

```
./spectrumscale filesystem list  
[ INFO ] Name      BlockSize  Mountpoint      NSDs Assigned  
[ INFO ] filesystem_1 Default    /ibm/filesystem_1 3  
[ INFO ] filesystem_2 Default    /ibm/filesystem_2 1
```

3. To alter the block size and mount point from their default values, use the modify command:

```
./spectrumscale filesystem modify filesystem_1 -B 1M -m /gpfs/gpfs0
```

**Important:** NSDs are created when the **./spectrumscale install** command is issued. The file system is created when the **./spectrumscale deploy** command is issued.

It is not possible to directly rename or delete a file system; this is instead done by reassigning the NSDs to a different file system using the **nsd modify** command.

At this point, the cluster definition file contains:

- Nodes and node types defined
- NSDs optionally defined
- File systems optionally defined

To proceed with the GPFS installation, go to the next step: “Installing GPFS and creating a GPFS cluster” on page 306.

For information on adding file systems to an existing installation, see “Adding nodes, NSDs, or file systems to an existing installation” on page 338.

## Installing GPFS and creating a GPFS cluster

After setting up your install node, you can use the installation toolkit to define nodes, NSDs, and file systems in the cluster definition file, and install GPFS according to the information in that file.

### Steps for installing GPFS using the installation toolkit

After defining nodes in the cluster definition file (see “Defining the cluster topology for the installation toolkit” on page 302), you can set additional GPFS configuration information in that file. You use the **spectrumscale config gpfs** command to do this.

1. To specify a cluster name in the cluster definition, use the **-c** argument:

```
./spectrumscale config gpfs -c gpfscluster01.my.domain.name.com
```

In this example, gpfscluster01.my.domain.name.com is the cluster name.

If no cluster name is specified, the GPFS Admin Node name is used as the cluster name. If the user-provided name contains periods, it is assumed to be a fully qualified domain name. If the cluster name is not a fully qualified domain name, the cluster name domain name will be inherited from the Admin Node domain name.

2. To specify a profile to be set on cluster creation in the cluster definition use the **-p** argument:

```
./spectrumscale config gpfs -p randomio
```

The valid values for **-p** option are default (for **gpfsProtocolDefaults** profile) and random I/O (for **gpfsProtocolRandomIO** profile). The profiles are based on workload type : sequential I/O (**gpfsProtocolDefaults**) or random I/O (**gpfsProtocolRandomIO**). The defined profiles above can be used to provide initial default tunables/settings for a cluster. If additional tunable changes are required, see **mmchconfig** command and the **mmcrcluster** command in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

If no profile is specified in the cluster definition, the **gpfsProtocolDefaults** profile will be automatically set on cluster creation.

3. To specify the remote shell binary to be used by GPFS, use the **-r** argument:

```
./spectrumscale config gpfs -r /usr/bin/ssh
```

If no remote shell is specified in the cluster definition, /usr/bin/ssh will be used as default.

4. To specify the remote file copy binary to be used by GPFS use the **-rc** argument:

```
./spectrumscale config gpfs -rc /usr/bin/scp
```

If no remote file copy binary is specified in the cluster definition, /usr/bin/scp will be used a default.

5. To specify an ephemeral port range to be set on all GPFS nodes use the **-e** argument:

```
./spectrumscale config gpfs -e 70000-80000
```

For information about the ephemeral port range, see *GPFS port usage* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

If no port range is specified in the cluster definition, 60000-61000 will be used as default.

6. To view the current GPFS configuration settings, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale config gpfs --list
```

```
[ INFO ] No changes made. Current settings are as follows:
[ INFO ] GPFS cluster name is gpfscluster01
[ INFO ] GPFS profile is default
[ INFO ] Remote shell command is /usr/bin/ssh
[ INFO ] Remote file copy command is /usr/bin/scp
[ INFO ] GPFS Daemon communication port range is 60000-61000
```

To perform environment checks prior to running the install, use **./spectrumscale install** with the **-pr** argument:

```
./spectrumscale install -pr
```

This is not required, however, as **install** with no arguments will also run this.



### Understanding what the installation toolkit does during a spectrumscale install

- If the installation toolkit is being used to install GPFS on all nodes, create a new GPFS cluster, and create NSDs, it will automatically perform the steps outlined below.
- If the installation toolkit is being used to add nodes to an existing GPFS cluster and/or create new NSDs, it will automatically perform the steps outlined below.
- If all nodes in the cluster definition file are in a cluster, then the installation toolkit will automatically perform the steps outlined below.

To add nodes to an existing GPFS cluster, at least one node in the cluster definition must belong to the cluster where the nodes not in a cluster are to be added. The GPFS cluster name in the cluster definition must also exactly match the cluster name outputted by **mmlscluster**.

Once the **spectrumscale install** command has been issued, the toolkit undergoes these flows:

#### To install GPFS on all nodes, create a new GPFS cluster, and create NSDs

- Run pre-install environment checks
- Install the GPFS packages on all nodes
- Build the GPFS portability layer on all nodes
- Install and configure performance monitoring tools
- Create a GPFS cluster
- Configure licenses
- Set ephemeral port range
- Create NSDs (if any are defined in the cluster definition)
- Run post-install environment checks

#### To add nodes to an existing GPFS cluster and create any new NSDs

- Run pre-install environment checks
- Install the GPFS packages on nodes to be added to the cluster
- Install and configure performance monitoring tools on nodes to be added to the cluster
- Add nodes to the GPFS cluster
- Configure licenses
- Create NSDs (if any new NSDs are defined in the cluster definition)
- Run post-install environment checks

#### If all nodes in the cluster definition are in a cluster

- Run pre-install environment checks
- Skip all steps until NSD creation
- Create NSDs (if any new NSDs are defined in the cluster definition)
- Run post-install environment checks

Although not part of GPFS, NTP configuration on every node is useful for cluster operation and future debugging. You can use the **./spectrumscale ntp** options for configuring NTP on all nodes at installation time. For example:

```
/usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/installer/spectrumscale config ntp -e on -s 198.51.100.2,198.51.100.4
[ WARN ] The NTP package must already be installed and full bidirectional access to the UDP
port 123 must be allowed.
[ WARN ] If NTP is already running on any of your nodes, NTP setup will be skipped.
To stop NTP run 'service ntpd stop'.
[ INFO ] Setting NTP to on
[ INFO ] Setting Upstream NTP Servers to 198.51.100.2,198.51.100.4
```

For more information, see **spectrumscale command** in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## What to do next

Upon completion of the installation, you will have an active GPFS cluster. Within the cluster, NSDs may have been created, performance monitoring will have been configured, and all product licenses will have been accepted. File systems will be fully created in the next step: deployment.

Install can be re-run in the future to:

- add NSD server nodes
- add GPFS client nodes
- add GUI nodes
- add NSDs
- define new file systems for use with deploy

## Deploying protocols

Use this information to deploy protocols in an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster using the installation toolkit.

Deployment of protocol services is performed on a subset of the cluster nodes that have been designated as protocol nodes using the **./spectrumscale node add node\_name -p** command. Protocol nodes have an additional set of packages installed that allow them to run the NFS, SMB and Object protocol services.

Data is served through these protocols from a pool of addresses designated as Export IP addresses or CES “public” IP addresses using **./spectrumscale config protocols -e IP1,IP2,IP3...** or added manually using the **mmces address add** command. The allocation of addresses in this pool is managed by the cluster, and IP addresses are automatically migrated to other available protocol nodes in the event of a node failure.

Before deploying protocols, there must be a GPFS cluster that has GPFS started and it has at least one file system for the CES shared root file system.

**Notes:** Here are a few considerations for deploying protocols.

1. All the protocol nodes must be running the supported operating systems, and the protocol nodes must be all Power (in big endian mode) or all Intel. Although the other nodes in the cluster could be on other platforms and operating systems.  
For information about supported operating systems for protocol nodes and their required minimum kernel levels, see IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html))
2. The packages for all protocols are installed on every node designated as a protocol node; this is done even if a service is not enabled in your configuration.
3. Services are enabled and disabled cluster wide; this means that every protocol node serves all enabled protocols.
4. If SMB is enabled, the number of protocol nodes is limited to 16 nodes.
5. If your protocol node has Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.3 installed, there might be an NFS service already running on the node that can cause issues with the installation of IBM Spectrum Scale NFS packages. To avoid these issues, before starting the deployment, you must do the following:
  - a. Stop the NFS service using the **systemctl stop nfs.service** command.
  - b. Disable the NFS service using the **systemctl disable nfs.service** command.  
This command ensures that this change is persistent after system reboot.
6. The installation toolkit does not support adding protocol nodes to an existing ESS cluster prior to ESS version 3.5.

Deploying protocols involves doing the following sub-tasks.

1. “Defining a shared file system for protocols” on page 309

2. "Adding protocol nodes to the cluster definition file"
3. "Enabling NFS and SMB"
4. "Configuring object" on page 310
5. "Adding export IPs" on page 311
6. "Running the spectrumscale deploy command" on page 312

## Defining a shared file system for protocols

To use protocol services, a shared file system (CES shared root file system) must be defined. If the installation toolkit is used to install GPFS, NSDs can be created at this time and, if associated with a file system, the file system is then be created during deployment. If GPFS has already been configured, the shared file system can be specified manually or by re-running the **spectrumscale install** command to assign an existing NSD to the file system. If re-running **spectrumscale install**, be sure that your NSD servers are compatible with the installation toolkit and contained within the `clusterdefinition.txt` file.

**Note:** Be aware that if you do not configure a protocol's shared file system, the installation toolkit automatically creates one for you named `ces_shared` mounted at `/ibm/ces_shared`. This works only if you have created at least one NSD and that NSD is not already assigned to a file system.

The **./spectrumscale config protocols** command can be used to define the shared file system (**-f**) and the shared file system mount point or path (**-m**):

```
usage: spectrumscale config protocols [-h] [-l] [-f FILESYSTEM]
                                     [-m MOUNTPOINT]
```

For example: **./spectrumscale config protocols -f ceshared -m /gpfs/cesshared.**

To view the current settings, issue this command:

```
$ ./spectrumscale config protocols --list
[ INFO ] No changes made. Current settings are as follows:
[ INFO ] Shared File System Name is ceshared
[ INFO ] Shared File System Mountpoint or Path is /gpfs/cesshared
```

## Adding protocol nodes to the cluster definition file

To deploy protocols on nodes in your cluster, they must be added to the cluster definition file as protocol nodes.

Issue the following command to designate a node as a protocol node:

```
./spectrumscale node add NODE_IP -p
```

## Enabling NFS and SMB

To enable or disable a set of protocols, the **./spectrumscale enable** and **./spectrumscale disable** commands should be used. For example:

```
./spectrumscale enable smb nfs
[ INFO ] Enabling SMB on all protocol nodes.
[ INFO ] Enabling NFS on all protocol nodes.
```

The current list of enabled protocols is shown as part of the **spectrumscale node list** command output; for example:

```
./spectrumscale node list
[ INFO ] List of nodes in current configuration:
[ INFO ] [Installer Node]
[ INFO ] 9.71.18.169
[ INFO ]
```

```

[ INFO ] [Cluster Name]
[ INFO ] ESDev1
[ INFO ]
[ INFO ] [Protocols]
[ INFO ] Object : Disabled
[ INFO ] SMB : Enabled
[ INFO ] NFS : Enabled
[ INFO ]
[ INFO ] GPFS Node      Admin  Quorum  Manager  NSD Server  Protocol  GUI Server  OS      Arch
[ INFO ] ESDev1-GPFS1    X      X      X          X          X          X          rhe17  x86_64
[ INFO ] ESDev1-GPFS2          X          X          X          X          X          rhe17  x86_64
[ INFO ] ESDev1-GPFS3          X          X          X          X          X          rhe17  x86_64
[ INFO ] ESDev1-GPFS4    X      X      X          X          X          X          rhe17  x86_64
[ INFO ] ESDev1-GPFS5    X      X      X          X          X          X          rhe17  x86_64

```

Starting with IBM Spectrum Scale release 4.2.2, the output of the **spectrumscale node list** command includes CPU architecture and operating system of the nodes.

If you are upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale release 4.2.2 or later, ensure that the operating system and architecture fields in the cluster definition file are updated. These fields are automatically updated during the upgrade precheck. You can also update the operating system and CPU architecture fields in the cluster definition file by issuing the **spectrumscale config update** command. For more information, see “Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale components with the installation toolkit” on page 444.

## Configuring object

If the object protocol is enabled, further protocol-specific configuration is required; these options are configured using the **spectrumscale config object** command, which has the following parameters:

```

usage: spectrumscale config object [-h] [-l] [-f FILESYSTEM] [-m MOUNTPPOINT]
                                   [-e ENDPOINT] [-o OBJECTBASE]
                                   [-i INODEALLOCATION] [-t ADMINTOKEN]
                                   [-au ADMINUSER] [-ap ADMINPASSWORD]
                                   [-su SWIFTUSER] [-sp SWIFTPASSWORD]
                                   [-dp DATABASEPASSWORD]
                                   [-mr MULTIREGION] [-rn REGIONNUMBER]
                                   [-s3 {on,off}]

```

The object protocol requires a dedicated fileset as its back-end storage; this fileset is defined using the **--filesystem (-f)**, **--mountpoint(-m)** and **--objectbase (-o)** flags to define the file system, mount point, and fileset respectively.

The **--endpoint(-e)** option specifies the host name that is used for access to the file store. This should be a round-robin DNS entry that maps to all CES IP addresses; this distributes the load of all keystone and object traffic that is routed to this host name. Therefore, the endpoint is an IP address in a DNS or in a load balancer that maps to a group of export IPs (that is, CES IPs that were assigned on the protocol nodes) .

The following user name and password options specify the credentials used for the creation of an admin user within Keystone for object and container access. The system prompts for these during **spectrumscale deploy** pre-check and **spectrumscale deploy** if they have not already been configured by **spectrumscale**. The following example shows how to configure these options to associate user names and passwords:  
**./spectrumscale config object -au -admin -ap -dp**

The **-ADMINUSER(-au)** option specifies the admin user name. This credential is for the Keystone administrator. This user can be local or on remote authentication server based on authentication type used.

The **-ADMINPASSWORD(-ap)** option specifies the password for the admin user.

**Note:** You are prompted to enter a Secret Encryption Key which is used to securely store the password. Choose a memorable pass phrase which you are prompted for each time you enter the password.

The **-SWIFTUSER(-su)** option specifies the Swift user name. The **-ADMINUSER(-au)** option specifies the admin user name. This credential is for the Swift services administrator. All Swift services are run in this user's context. This user can be local or on remote authentication server based on authentication type used.

The **-SWIFTPASSWORD(-sp)** option specifies the password for the Swift user.

**Note:** You are prompted to enter a Secret Encryption Key which is used to securely store the password. Choose a memorable pass phrase which you are prompted for each time you enter the password.

The **-DATABASEPASSWORD(-dp)** option specifies the password for the object database.

**Note:** You are prompted to enter a Secret Encryption Key which is used to securely store the password. Choose a memorable pass phrase which you are prompted for each time you enter the password.

The **-MULTIREGION(-mr)** option enables the multi-region object deployment feature. The **-REGIONNUMBER(-rn)** option specifies the region number.

The **-s3** option specifies whether the S3 (Amazon Simple Storage Service) API should be enabled.

**-t ADMINTOKEN** sets the `admin_token` property in the `keystone.conf` file which allows access to Keystone by token value rather than user/password. When installing with a local Keystone, by default the installer dynamically creates the `admin_token` used during initial configuration and deletes it when done. If set explicitly with **-t**, `admin_token` is not deleted from `keystone.conf` when done. The admin token can also be used when setting up a remote Keystone server if that server has `admin_token` defined.

**Attention:** If SELinux is disabled during installation of IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage, enabling SELinux after installation is not supported.

## Adding export IPs

**Note:** This is mandatory for protocol deployment.

Export IPs or CES “public” IPs are used to export data via the protocols (NFS, SMB, Object). File and Object clients use these public IPs to access data on GPFS file systems. Export IPs are shared between all protocols and are organized in a public IP pool (there can be fewer public IPs than protocol nodes).

**Note:** Export IPs must have an associated host name and reverse DNS lookup must be configured for each.

1. To add Export IPs to your cluster, issue either this command:

```
./spectrumscale config protocols --export-ip-pool EXPORT_IP_POOL
```

Or this command:

```
./spectrumscale config protocols -e EXPORT_IP_POOL
```

Within these commands, `EXPORT_IP_POOL` is a comma-separated list of IP addresses.

2. To view the current configuration, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale node list
```

To view the CES shared root and the IP pool, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale config protocols -l
```

To view the object configuration, run the following command:

```
./spectrumscale config object -l
```

## Running the spectrumscale deploy command

After adding the previously-described protocol-related definition and configuration information to the cluster definition file you can deploy the protocols specified in that file.

To perform deploy checks prior to deploying, use the **spectrumscale deploy** command with the **--pr** argument:

```
./spectrumscale deploy --pr
```

This is not required, however, because **spectrumscale deploy** with no argument also runs this.

You can also use the **mmnetverify** command to identify any network problems before doing the deployment. For more information, see *mmnetverify command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

Use the following command to deploy protocols:

```
spectrumscale deploy
```

**Note:** You are prompted for the Secret Encryption Key that you provided while configuring object and/or authentication unless you disabled prompting.

This does the following:

- Performs pre-deploy checks.
- Creates file systems and deploys protocols as specified in the cluster definition file.
- Performs post-deploy checks.

You can explicitly specify the **--precheck (-pr)** option to perform a dry run of pre-deploy checks without starting the deployment. Alternatively, you can specify the **--postcheck (-po)** option to perform a dry run of post-deploy checks without starting the deployment. These options are mutually exclusive.

After a successful deployment, you can verify the cluster and CES configuration by running this command:

```
$ /usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mmfscluster --ces
```

## What to do next

Upon completion of the tasks described in this topic, you have deployed additional functionality to an active GPFS cluster. This additional functionality may consist of file systems, protocol nodes, specific protocols, and authentication. Although authentication can be deployed at the same time as protocols, we have separated the instructions for conceptual purposes. Continue with the setting up authentication step if you have not yet set up authentication. See the topic “Setting up authentication” for instructions on how to set up authentication.

You can rerun the **spectrumscale deploy** command in the future to do the following:

- add file systems
- add protocol nodes
- enable additional protocols
- configure and enable authentication

## Setting up authentication

Use these instructions to set up authentication for protocols by using the installation toolkit.

## Setting authentication configuration settings in the cluster definition file

You need to set up authentication methods for both the file and object users. If the object protocol is enabled on the protocol nodes, the installer automatically sets up the default local object authentication for object access. If you plan to configure object authentication with an external Keystone server and you are using the installation toolkit, do not configure external Keystone with the installation toolkit. For more information, see *Configuring object authentication with external Keystone server* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*. To make any more changes for authentication, issue the **spectrumscale auth** command as shown in the following example:

```
./spectrumscale auth -h
usage: spectrumscale auth [-h] {commitsettings,file,object} ...
```

If the cluster has two separate servers that control different node groups, run this command separately for object and file. Run the **spectrumscale auth** command with the data access method that you want to use, either file or object, and the authentication type.

### Authentication prerequisites:

There are a few extra prerequisites that are needed if you wish to configure authentication.

The following packages must be installed on all protocol nodes before you run **./spectrumscale deploy**

If object authentication is required:

- openldap-clients

If file authentication is required:

- sssd
- ypbind
- openldap-clients

### To set up object authentication by using the installation toolkit:

**Note:** If you plan to configure object authentication with an external Keystone server and you are using the installation toolkit, do not configure external Keystone with the installation toolkit. For more information, see *Configuring object authentication with external Keystone server* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

Object authentication has an extra option to enable HTTP Secure (HTTPS). If you wish to set up HTTPS, you can include the option in the command and you are prompted in the next step to provide the paths to the certificates that are required.

1. To set up object authentication, run this command:

```
./spectrumscale auth object [-h] [--https] {local,external,ldap,ad}
```

This automatically opens a template file for you to fill with the required **auth** settings. For more information about these settings, see *mmuserauth command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

2. Save the file and close it, and the settings are automatically loaded for the installer to set up object authentication after protocols are enabled.

If this **auth** command is run, authentication is automatically enabled by the installer.

**Note:** Using unusual characters or white space in settings requires you to enter the setting in single quotes ( ' '). For example:

```
unixmap_domains = 'testdomain(1000-3000)'  
bind_username = 'My User'
```

3. If required, configure file authentication by following the steps that are provided in the next section.

4. Issue the **./spectrumscale deploy -pr** command to initiate a pre-check to make sure that the cluster is in a good state for deployment.
5. After the successful pre-check, issue the **./spectrumscale deploy** command to deploy the new authentication configuration.

#### To set up file authentication by using the installation toolkit:

1. To set up file authentication, run this command:  
**./spectrumscale auth file [-h] {ldap,ad,nis,none}**

This automatically opens a template file for you to fill with the required authentication settings. For more information about these settings, see *mmuserauth command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

2. Save the file and close it. The settings are automatically loaded for the installer to set up file authentication after protocols are enabled.

**Note:** Using unusual characters or white space in settings requires you to enter the setting in single quotes ( ' '). For example:

```
unixmap_domains = 'testdomain(1000-3000)'  
bind_username = 'My User'
```

3. If required, configure object authentication by following the steps that are explained in the previous section.
4. Issue the **./spectrumscale deploy -pr** command to initiate a pre-check to make sure that the cluster is in a good state for deployment.
5. After the successful pre-check, issue the **./spectrumscale deploy** command to deploy the new authentication configuration.

#### To clear authentication settings that are listed in the installation toolkit:

To clear authentication settings in the installation toolkit, run this command:

**./spectrumscale auth clear**

This does not clear or change a live and running authentication configuration. The **./spectrumscale auth clear** command just clears the authentication settings from the `clusterdefinition.txt` file that is used by the installation toolkit during the deployment.

**Note:** If the installation toolkit is used to set up object support and file support (especially SMB) with AD or LDAP Authentication, the authentication setup might cause a temporary monitoring failure and trigger an IP failover. This might lead to an error message similar to the this error message when you configure object: "mmcesobjcrbase: No CES IP addresses are assigned to this node."

If the **spectrumscale** installer failed because of this problem, perform the steps:

1. Check the cluster state by running the **mmclscluster --ces** command, and wait until the failed state of all nodes is cleared (`flags=none`).
2. Rebalance the IP addresses by issuing this command: **mmces address move --rebalance**
3. Rerun the installation toolkit to complete the object setup.

#### Installation of performance monitoring tool using the installation toolkit

By default, the performance monitoring tool gets installed when IBM Spectrum Scale is installed on the system using the **./spectrumscale install** command.

For more information on the performance monitoring tool, see *Using the performance monitoring tool* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

During the installation, deployment, and upgrade phases, the installation toolkit performs following performance monitoring related configuration changes.



## Installation

- Sets nodes to performance monitoring nodes (**mmchnode --perfmon -N Node1,Node2,Node3**)
- Installs pmsensor on any nodes that do not have the sensor.
- Installs pmcollector on 2 nodes. Preference is the GUI node first, followed by NSD nodes.
- Starts all sensors or collectors and activates all the default file system or node sensors.
- Resets GPFSDiskCap and GPFSFilesetQuota sensors to default values: 86400 and 3600 respectively and restricts them to the 1st collector node.

## Deployment

- Sets nodes to performance monitoring nodes (**mmchnode --perfmon -N Node1,Node2,Node3**)
- Installs pmsensor on any nodes that do not have the sensor.
- Installs pmcollector on 2 nodes. Preference is the GUI node first, followed by NSD nodes.
- Starts all sensors or collectors and activates all the default file system or node sensors.
- Resets GPFSDiskCap and GPFSFilesetQuota sensors to default values: 86400 and 3600 respectively and restricts them to the 1st collector node.
- Adds protocol sensors, corresponding to the activated protocols, to the active performance monitoring configuration and restricts them to protocol nodes. These sensors are NFSIO, SMBStats, SMBGlobalStats, CTDBStats, CTDBDBStats, SwiftAccount, SwiftContainer, SwiftObject, and SwiftProxy.

## Upgrade

- Upgrades pmsensor and pmcollector.
- Resets GPFSDiskCap and GPFSFilesetQuota sensors to default values: 86400 and 3600 respectively and restricts them to the 1st collector node.

**Note:** The installation toolkit does not set any NFSIO parameter related setting.

During the installation toolkit prechecks if it is found that the collector nodes require reconfiguring then the **./spectrumscale config perfmon -r on** command needs to be run to enable the installation toolkit to perform this reconfiguration.

**Note:** A reconfiguration results in the removal of an existing collector and it might move the collector to different nodes and reset sensor data. Custom sensors and data might be erased. To disable reconfiguration, run the **./spectrumscale config perfmon -r off** command.

If reconfiguration is disabled then the installation toolkit performs all installation tasks except for those related to performance monitoring and the management GUI, if GUI servers are specified.

After the installation or the deployment completes and sensors are added, the latest state of events of type TIPS might not get immediately refreshed. As a result, the output of the **mmhealth node show ces** command might contain messages such as the following for the CES component:

```
nfs_sensors_not_configured(NFSIO)
smb_sensors_not_configured(SMBGlobalStats, SMBStats)
```

To resolve this issue, run the **mmhealth node show --refresh** command.

For information on how to install the performance monitoring tool manually, see “Manually installing the performance monitoring tool” on page 273.

For information on performance monitoring related configuration in a cluster containing ESS, see “ESS awareness with the installation toolkit” on page 325.

For information on configuring the performance monitoring tool, see *Configuring the Performance Monitoring tool* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

## Logging and debugging for installation toolkit

The installation toolkit reports progress to the console, and certain options also log output to a file.

### Console output

The install toolkit reports progress to the console. By default only information level messages are displayed. If more verbose output is required the **-v** flag can be passed to the **spectrumscale** command.

**Note:** this flag must be the first argument passed to the **spectrumscale** command; for example:

```
./spectrumscale -v install --precheck
```

### Log files

In addition to console output, the **install** and **deploy** functions of the installation toolkit will log verbose output to the logs subdirectory of the toolkit (the full log path will be reported to the console when logging begins). The log file will always contain verbose output even if the **-v** flag is not specified on the command line.

### Install and deploy checks

The **install** and **deploy** functions each have a set of checks performed before and after their main action. These checks can be triggered separately by using either the **--precheck** or **--postcheck** flag.

It is safe to run the pre- and post-checks multiple times, as they will interrogate the cluster but will not make any changes.

Note that, as with the full **install** and **deploy** functions, the pre- and post-checks will create a detailed log file that can be used to provide further detail about errors encountered.

### Gathering support information

If an unresolvable error is encountered when using the toolkit, a support package can be gathered using the **installer.snap.py** script that is available in the same directory as the installation toolkit.

**Note:** The **installer.snap.py** script must be run from the toolkit directory.

The **installer.snap.py** script gathers information from each of the nodes defined in the configuration and packages it such that it is ready for submission to the IBM Support Center. It creates a tar file with the prefix **installer\_snap** in the **/tmp** directory.

The script gathers the following information:

- Cluster configuration file
- Install toolkit logs
- Information from the local node of the protocol services
- A GPFS snap file from each node defined in the configuration
- Basic environment information from the local node including:
  - Current OS and kernel version
  - System message log (dmesg)
  - File system usage
  - Network configuration
  - Current processes

## Collection of core dump data

For information about changing configuration to enable collection of core dump data from protocol nodes, see *Configuration changes required on protocol nodes to collect core dump data* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

## Enabling and configuring file audit logging using the installation toolkit

You can use the installation toolkit to enable and configure the file audit logging function in the cluster definition file. After enabling this function at the cluster level, you must enable it on file systems.

The file audit logging packages (`gpfs.kafka` and `gpfs.librdkafka`) are installed on all supported nodes in the cluster specified to the installation toolkit during the installation, even if file audit logging is not enabled in the cluster configuration. In a cluster containing an ESS system wherein the setup type is ESS or `ess` in the cluster definition file, the file audit logging packages are installed on protocol nodes and client nodes. They are not installed on ESS EMS and I/O server nodes. Based on the file audit logging configuration options specified in the cluster definition file using the installation toolkit, the function is enabled and configured in the cluster accordingly during the deployment.

For information on required packages for file audit logging, see “Requirements and limitations for file audit logging” on page 379 and “Installation prerequisites” on page 246.

Prerequisites for file audit logging include:

- If you have at least 3 or more protocol nodes defined in the installation toolkit, those nodes are configured by the installation toolkit as broker nodes for the message queue. If you do not have 3 protocol nodes, or if you want a subset of your protocol nodes to become broker nodes, use the following command to specify a node as a broker node.

```
./spectrumscale node add NodeName -b
```

**Note:** If the setup type is ESS or `ess` in the cluster definition file, the use of the `-b` flag is blocked. You must manually enable the message queue and the file audit logging function after the Kafka packages are installed on nodes other than the EMS and I/O server nodes in a cluster containing ESS. For more information, see *Manually installing file audit logging* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide*.

- A file system must be specified in the cluster definition file before you can enable file audit logging.

You can configure the file audit logging related options in the cluster definition file by using the installation toolkit as follows.

By default, file audit logging is disabled in the cluster definition file.

- To enable file audit logging in the cluster definition file, issue the following command before doing installation or deployment with the installation toolkit:

```
./spectrumscale fileauditlogging enable
```

- To disable file audit logging in the cluster definition file, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale fileauditlogging disable
```

- To list the file audit logging configuration in the cluster definition file, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale fileauditlogging list
```

You can verify whether file audit logging is enabled in the cluster definition file by viewing the output of the `./spectrumscale node list` command:

```
[ INFO ] List of nodes in current configuration:
[ INFO ] [Installer Node]
[ INFO ] 198.51.100.15
[ INFO ] Setup Type: SpectrumScale
[ INFO ]
[ INFO ] [Cluster Name]
```

```

[ INFO ] ESDev1
[ INFO ]
[ INFO ] [Protocols]
[ INFO ] Object : Disabled
[ INFO ] SMB : Enabled
[ INFO ] NFS : Enabled
[ INFO ]
[ INFO ] File Audit logging : Disabled
[ INFO ]
[ INFO ] GPFS Node      Admin  Quorum  Manager  NSD Server  Protocol  GUI Server  OS      Arch
[ INFO ] ESDev1-GPFS1    X      X      X      X      X      X      rhe17  x86_64
[ INFO ] ESDev1-GPFS2    X      X      X      X      X      X      rhe17  x86_64
[ INFO ] ESDev1-GPFS3    X      X      X      X      X      X      rhe17  x86_64
[ INFO ] ESDev1-GPFS4    X      X      X      X      X      X      rhe17  x86_64
[ INFO ] ESDev1-GPFS5    X      X      X      X      X      X      rhe17  x86_64

```

After enabling the file audit logging function in the cluster definition file, you must enable it on file systems on which you want to enable file audit logging.

- To enable file audit logging on a file system in the cluster definition file, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale filesystem modify --fileauditloggingenable FileSystemName
```

You can also specify the retention period and log fileset name with this command. For example, to specify a retention period of 180 days and to specify the log fileset name testlog, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale filesystem modify --fileauditloggingenable --retention 180 --logfileset testlog FileSystemName
```

- To enable file audit logging on a file system in the cluster definition file without many default performance enhancements, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale filesystem modify --fileauditloggingenable FileSystemName --degradedperformance
```

Using the **--degradedperformance** option reduces the amount of local disk space (10GB vs 20GB) that is required per broker node per file system enabled for file audit logging.

To disable the **--degradedperformance** option in the cluster definition file, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale filesystem modify --fileauditloggingenable FileSystemName --degradedperformancedisable
```

- To disable file audit logging on a file system in the cluster definition file, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale filesystem modify --fileauditloggingdisable FileSystemName
```

**Note:** These file audit logging configuration-related changes become effective after the deployment procedure, initiated with **./spectrumscale deploy**, is completed.

#### Related concepts:

“Manually installing file audit logging” on page 381

Use this information to manually install file audit logging on your system.

## Enabling and configuring watch folder using the installation toolkit

You can use the installation toolkit to enable and configure the watch folder function in the cluster definition file.

The watch folder packages (gpfs.kafka and gpfs.librdkafka) are installed on all supported nodes in the cluster specified to the installation toolkit during the installation, even if watch folder is not enabled in the cluster configuration. Based on the watch folder configuration options specified in the cluster definition file using the installation toolkit, the function is enabled and configured in the cluster accordingly during the deployment. For information about prerequisites for gpfs.kafka and gpfs.librdkafka packages, see “Requirements for watch folder” on page 383.

Considerations for the watch folder function include:

- If you have at least 3 protocol nodes defined, you can choose to have those used as broker nodes for the message queue. Otherwise, you need to specify at least 3 nodes that have the gpfs.kafka and

gpfs.librdkafka packages installed on them to act as broker nodes for the message queue. Use the following command to specify a node as a broker node.

```
./spectrumscale node add NodeName -b
```

- If watch folder is enabled, message queue is also enabled. However, individual watches need to be set up manually by using the **mmwatch** command.

You can configure the watch folder related options in the cluster definition file by using the installation toolkit as follows.

By default, watch folder is disabled in the cluster definition file.

- To enable watch folder in the cluster definition file, issue the following command before performing deployment with the installation toolkit:

```
./spectrumscale watchfolder enable
```

A sample output is as follows:

```
[ INFO ] Enabling watch folder in the cluster configuration file.
[ INFO ] The watch folder feature provides a new method of monitoring and performing actions on
[ INFO ] file system events in IBM Spectrum Scale. To complete the watch folder configuration please
[ INFO ] contact your IBM Client Technical Specialist (or send an email to scale@us.ibm.com)
[ INFO ] to review your use case and receive instructions to enable the feature in your environment.
[ INFO ] if you do not want to enable watch folder, you can run: ./spectrumscale watchfolder disable .
[ INFO ] Tip :If watch folder is enabled for the cluster, the message queue will be enabled.
[ INFO ] If you have at least 3 protocol nodes defined, you do not need to use the '-b' flag to designate
[ INFO ] a node as a broker node. Otherwise, you need to specify at least 3 nodes to have the Kafka packages
[ INFO ] installed on and act as broker nodes for the message queue. Use the following command to designate
[ INFO ] a node as a broker node: ./spectrumscale node add node_name -b .
```

- To disable watch folder in the cluster definition file, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale watchfolder disable
```

- To list the watch folder configuration in the cluster definition file, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale watchfolder list
```

**Note:** These watch folder configuration-related changes become effective after the deployment procedure, initiated with **./spectrumscale deploy**, is completed.

#### Related concepts:

Chapter 13, “Installing watch folder,” on page 383

The following topics describe the requirements, limitations, and steps to install watch folder.

“Introduction to watch folder” on page 133

Watch folder is an IBM Spectrum Scale feature that allows you to monitor folders, filesets, and inode spaces for file accesses.

## Enabling and configuring call home using the installation toolkit

You can use the installation toolkit to enable and configure the call home function in the cluster definition file.

Based on the call home configuration options specified in the cluster definition file using the installation toolkit, the call home function is enabled and configured in the cluster accordingly during the installation. By default, the call home function is enabled and the call home packages (gpfs.callhome and gpfs.callhome-ecc-client) are installed on all nodes in the cluster. If you plan to use the call home function, you must configure call home with the mandatory parameters by using the installation toolkit. For more information, see this command example.

The installation toolkit does not support all operating systems and platforms supported by call home. For example, the installation toolkit supports SLES and Ubuntu only on x86\_64 and s390x, while call home also supports SLES and Ubuntu on Power.

In an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster, a call home setup comprises a call home group that consists of a call home node and multiple call home child nodes. The call home node collects data from the call home child nodes and uploads it to the IBM Support Center. Multiple call home groups can be configured within a cluster. The data gathering and upload can be configured individually on each group. You can use the groups to reflect logical units in the cluster. For example, you can create a group for all protocol nodes and another group for all non-protocol nodes. Call home groups help in distributing the data-gather and data-upload workload to prevent bottlenecks. You can create groups of any size between one and the number of nodes in your cluster. The larger the group is the higher is the workload on the call home node. It is recommended to limit the group size to 128 nodes. Larger groups are also possible but it might result in performance issues.

The call home node needs to have network connectivity to the IBM Support Center because the call home node needs to upload data to IBM Support Center for all the child nodes in the call home group. The call home node must be able to reach <https://esupport.ibm.com> either directly or using the proxy, which is specified in the call home configuration.

For more information about the call home function, see *Monitoring the IBM Spectrum Scale system by using call home* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

You can specify the call home node using the installation toolkit by issuing the following command:

```
./spectrumscale node add -c CallHomeNode
```

**Note:** This step is not mandatory. If a call home node is not specified, the installation toolkit assigns one of the nodes in the cluster as the call home node.

You can specify more than one node with this command if you want to configure multiple call home groups.

To configure call home options in the cluster definition file by using the installation toolkit, use the **./spectrumscale callhome** command as follows.

- To enable the call home in the cluster definition file by using the installation toolkit, issue the following command.

```
./spectrumscale callhome enable
```

A sample output is as follows.

```
[ INFO ] Enabling the callhome.  
[ INFO ] Configuration updated.
```

**Note:** By default, call home is listed as enabled in the cluster definition file.

- To disable the call home in the cluster definition file by using the installation toolkit, issue the following command.

```
./spectrumscale callhome disable
```

A sample output is as follows.

```
[ INFO ] Disabling the callhome.  
[ INFO ] Configuration updated.
```

The call home function is enabled by default in the cluster definition file. If you disable it in the cluster definition file, when you issue the **./spectrumscale install** command, the call home packages are installed on the nodes but no configuration is done.

- To specify the call home configuration settings in the cluster definition file by using the installation toolkit, issue the **./spectrumscale callhome config** command. The following command example shows configuring the mandatory call home parameters:

```
./spectrumscale callhome config -n username -i 456123 -e username@example.com -cn US
```

A sample output is as follows.

```
[ INFO ] Setting Customer name to username
[ INFO ] Setting Customer id to 456123
[ INFO ] Setting Customer email to username@example.com
[ INFO ] Setting Customer country to US
```

You are then prompted to accept or decline the support information collection message.

By accepting this request, you agree to allow IBM and its subsidiaries to store and use your contact information and your support information anywhere they do business worldwide. For more information, please refer to the Program license agreement and documentation. If you agree, please respond with 'accept' for acceptance, else with 'not accepted' to decline: accept

If you accept, the following output is displayed.

```
[ INFO ] License is accepted so the call home will be configured, if it is enabled.
[ INFO ] Configuration is updated.
```

**Note:** You can specify the `-a` parameter with `./spectrumscale callhome config` to accept the support information collection message in advance.

- To clear the call home configuration specified in the cluster definition file by using the installation toolkit, issue the `./spectrumscale callhome clear` command. For example:

```
./spectrumscale callhome clear -i -e -cn
```

A sample output is as follows.

```
[ INFO ] Clearing Customer id
[ INFO ] Clearing Customer email
[ INFO ] Clearing Customer country
```

- To schedule the call home data collection in the cluster definition file by using the installation toolkit, issue the `./spectrumscale callhome schedule` command. For example:

```
./spectrumscale callhome schedule -d
```

A sample output is as follows.

```
[ INFO ] Setting scheduling to daily.
[ INFO ] Configuration is updated.
```

If call home data collection is scheduled daily, data uploads are by default executed at 02:xx AM each day. If call home data collection is scheduled weekly, data uploads are by default executed at 03:xx AM each Sunday. In both cases, xx is a random number from 00 to 59.

You can use the `./spectrumscale callhome schedule -c` command to clear the call home data collection schedule.

- To list the call home configuration settings in the cluster definition file by using the installation toolkit, issue the following command.

```
./spectrumscale callhome list
```

A sample output is as follows.

```
[ INFO ] Current settings are as follows:
[ INFO ] Callhome is enabled.
[ INFO ] Schedule is daily.
[ INFO ] Setting Customer name to username
[ INFO ] Setting Customer id to 456123
[ INFO ] Setting Customer email to username@example.com
[ INFO ] Setting Customer country to US
[ WARN ] No value for Proxy ip in clusterdefinition file.
[ WARN ] No value for Proxy port in clusterdefinition file.
[ WARN ] No value for Proxy user in clusterdefinition file.
[ WARN ] No value for Proxy password in clusterdefinition file.
```

**Note:** These call home configuration-related changes become effective after the installation procedure, initiated with `./spectrumscale install`, is completed.

For detailed information on the **./spectrumscale callhome** command options, see **spectrumscale command** in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## Installing IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI by using the installation toolkit

Use the following information for installing the IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI using the installation toolkit.

The IBM Spectrum Scale is only installed when nodes have been specified as GUI servers in the cluster definition with the -g option:

```
./spectrumscale node add gpfsnode3 -g
```

The IBM Spectrum Scale GUI requires passwordless ssh to all other nodes in the cluster. Therefore, the GUI server node must be added as an admin node using the -a flag:

```
./spectrumscale node add gpfsnode3 -a
```

If no nodes have been specified as GUI servers, then the GUI will not be installed. It is recommended to have at least 2 GUI interface servers and a maximum of 3 for redundancy.

The GUI will be installed on specified GUI servers when you run the **./spectrumscale install** command and on protocol nodes also specified as GUI servers during the **./spectrumscale deploy** command.

At the end of a successful GPFS installation or protocol deployment, you can access the GUI through a web browser with the following node address: <https://<GUI server IP or hostname>>.

| **Note:** After installing the system and GUI package, you need to create the first GUI user to log in to the  
| GUI. This user can create other GUI administrative users to perform system management and monitoring  
| tasks. When you launch the GUI for the first time after the installation, the GUI welcome page provides  
| options to create the first GUI user from the command-line prompt by using the following command:  
| `/usr/lpp/mmfs/gui/cli/mkuser <user_name> -g SecurityAdmin`

## Populating cluster definition file with current cluster state using the installation toolkit

You can use the installation toolkit to populate the cluster definition file with the current cluster state before proceeding with upgrade.

Before using this functionality, review its limitations. For more information, see “Limitations of config populate option of the installation toolkit” on page 323.

In the following scenarios, you might need to update the cluster definition file with the current cluster state:

- A manually created cluster in which you want to use the installation toolkit
- A cluster created using the installation toolkit in which manual changes were done

Use the installation toolkit to populate the cluster definition file as follows.

1. Define the installer node by issuing the **./spectrumscale setup -s InstallNode** command.
2. Repopulate the cluster definition file with the current cluster state by issuing the **./spectrumscale config populate --node Node** command.

**Note:** This command creates the backup of the existing cluster definition file and it creates a new cluster definition file from scratch.

- In a cluster containing ESS, you must specify the EMS node with the config populate command. For example:  

```
./spectrumscale config populate --node EMSNode
```



- You can also use this functionality to populate the cluster definition file with file audit logging and call home related information.

In case you are performing an upgrade, proceed with the rest of the upgrade steps. For more information, see “Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale components with the installation toolkit” on page 444.

## Limitations of config populate option of the installation toolkit

You can use the **config populate** option of the installation toolkit to populate the cluster definition file with the current cluster state.

This functionality has the following limitations.

*Table 44. Limitations of the config populate functionality*

Function	Description
CES Groups	The config populate functionality does not detect CES groups. This might cause issues with CES stretch clusters
Clusters larger than 16 nodes	The config populate functionality does not support more than 16 nodes. For more information, see “Limitations of the installation toolkit” on page 289.
Custom GPFS profiles	The config populate functionality does not detect custom profiles. This might not be an issue in most scenarios except when you plan to use the config populate functionality to back up a cluster's configuration for a future new installation.
FPO	The config populate functionality does not detect FPO NSD stanza information. However, the existing FPO NSD stanza information is not affected.
Greater than 3 GUI nodes	The config populate functionality adds in GUI nodes properly if the number of GUI nodes is less than or equal to 3. However, if there are more than 3 GUI nodes, the config populate functionality does not add them. This might leave you with GUI nodes that are not at the latest level of code that have to be manually upgraded, and other unexpected side effects.
Greater than 3 performance monitoring collector nodes	The config populate functionality does not support more than 3 performance monitoring collector nodes. If GUI nodes are detected, they are also assigned as the performance monitoring collector nodes.
Highly-available write cache (HAWC)	The config populate functionality does not detect HAWC information. However, the existing HAWC information is not affected.
Heterogeneous cluster	The config populate functionality cannot be used in a cluster that contains nodes with mixed CPU architectures or endianness. The installation toolkit can still be used in these type of clusters, but only on the subset of nodes that have the same CPU architecture and endianness.

Table 44. Limitations of the config populate functionality (continued)

Function	Description
IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management and IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE)	<p>The config populate functionality does not detect IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management and IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) information.</p> <p>The installation toolkit provides some DMAPI detection and gives recommendations on how to proceed in case issues are encountered. For example: DMAPI holds an FS open for one of these functions, thereby causing upgrades to fail. In this case, the installation toolkit shows a hint that identifies the node and that it might need to be rebooted to proceed with the upgrade.</p>
IBM Spectrum Scale release 4.2.0.2	<p>In the IBM Spectrum Scale release 4.2.0.2, although the config populate functionality can be used to populate the cluster definition file with the current cluster state, not all parameters are properly updated. For example, CES IPs are not properly detected and you might need to add them manually by using the following command:  <b>./spectrumscale config protocols -ces_ip1,ces_ip2,....</b>  Review your cluster configuration after running <b>./spectrumscale config populate</b> to ensure that all desired values are populated.</p>
Local read-only cache (LROC)	The config populate functionality does not detect LROC information. However, the existing LROC information is not affected.
Non-federated performance monitoring setup	The config populate functionality does not support non-federated performance monitoring setup. The installation toolkit converts all performance monitoring configuration to federated mode unless specified to ignore performance monitoring completely.
NSD SAN attachment	The config populate functionality does not support retrieval of the NSD information in case of an NSD SAN attachment.
Offline mode in upgrade configuration	The config populate functionality cannot be used if one or more nodes in the cluster are designated as offline in the upgrade configuration.
Transparent cloud tiering	The config populate functionality does not detect Transparent cloud tiering related information.
Windows, AIX	<p>The config populate functionality does not support these operating systems.</p> <p>If any of these operating systems are detected on a node and if that node has the same CPU architecture and endianness as the node from which the installation toolkit is running, the config populate functionality shows a warning, skips the node, and continues populating information from other supported nodes.</p>

#### Related concepts:

“Limitations of the installation toolkit” on page 289

Before using the installation toolkit to install IBM Spectrum Scale and deploy protocols, review the following limitations and workarounds, if any.

## ESS awareness with the installation toolkit

You can use the installation toolkit to install IBM Spectrum Scale and deploy protocols in a cluster containing Elastic Storage Server (ESS).

When using the installation toolkit in a cluster containing ESS, use the following high-level steps:

1. Add protocol nodes in the ESS cluster by issuing the following command.

```
./spectrumscale node add NodeName -p
```

You can add other types of nodes such as client nodes, NSD servers, and so on depending on your requirements. For more information, see “Defining the cluster topology for the installation toolkit” on page 302.

2. Specify one of the newly added protocol nodes as the installer node and specify the setup type by issuing the following command.

```
./spectrumscale setup -s NodeIP -i SSHIdentity -st ess
```

The installer node is the node on which the installation toolkit is extracted and from where the installation toolkit command, **spectrumscale**, is initiated.

3. Specify the EMS node of the ESS system to the installation toolkit by issuing the following command.

```
./spectrumscale node add NodeName -e
```

This node is also automatically specified as the admin node. The admin node, which must be the EMS node in an ESS configuration, is the node that has access to all other nodes to perform configuration during the installation.

You can use the config populate option of the installation toolkit to populate the cluster definition file with the current configuration of the EMS node, and the protocol and the client nodes in the cluster. In a cluster containing ESS, you must specify the EMS node with the config populate command. For example:

```
./spectrumscale config populate --node EMSNode
```

For more information, see “Populating cluster definition file with current cluster state using the installation toolkit” on page 322.

4. Proceed with specifying other configuration options, installing, and deploying by using the installation toolkit. For more information, see “Defining the cluster topology for the installation toolkit” on page 302, “Installing GPFS and creating a GPFS cluster” on page 306, and “Deploying protocols” on page 308.

Several validations are done when you use the installation toolkit in an ESS cluster to ensure that functions that are configured on ESS EMS and I/O server nodes are not affected. Additionally, some considerations apply when you are using the installation toolkit in an ESS cluster. These validations and considerations are as follows.

- Adding ESS EMS node and I/O server nodes as protocol nodes is not allowed.
- Adding GUI nodes in the ESS cluster by using the installation toolkit is not allowed. It is assumed that the EMS node is running a GUI setup and the ability to add more GUI nodes by using the installation toolkit is disabled to not affect the existing configuration. During upgrade, the installation toolkit does not alter an existing configuration that contains one or more GUI setups. The upgrade of any of these components is done outside of the ESS EMS and I/O server nodes, and their configuration is not changed.
- Adding I/O server nodes as NSD nodes by using the installation toolkit is not allowed.
- Creating NSDs and file systems from disks within the ESS I/O server nodes by using the installation toolkit is not allowed.
- Specifying a cluster name by using the installation toolkit is not allowed. The existing cluster name is detected and used by the toolkit.
- CES shared root file system must be mounted on all protocol nodes.

- The installation toolkit installs a Chef RPM on the ESS nodes but does no other configuration changes. The Chef RPM can be safely removed, if needed.
- Only performance monitoring sensor packages are installed on all nodes in an ESS cluster other than the ESS EMS and I/O server nodes. They are configured to point to the existing collector on the EMS node. Apart from package installation, the installation toolkit adds protocol-specific sensors to the overall cluster performance monitoring configuration during the installation and deployment phases. During upgrade, the installation toolkit does not alter an existing configuration that might have one or more collectors or sensors. The upgrade of any of these components is done outside of the ESS EMS and I/O server nodes, and their configuration is not changed.

#### **Related concepts:**

“Using the installation toolkit to perform installation tasks: Explanations and examples” on page 300  
Use these explanations and examples of installation toolkit options and tasks to perform installation and deployment by using the installation toolkit.

## **Configuration of an IBM Spectrum Scale stretch cluster in an export services environment: a sample use case**

This page describes a stretch cluster with NFS, SMB, and Object protocols that are enabled, installed, and deployed using the installation toolkit.

### **Overview of the stretch cluster use case**

A single GPFS cluster is defined over three geographically separate sites: two production sites and a tiebreaker site. One or more file systems are created, mounted, and accessed concurrently from the two active production sites that are connected over a reliable WAN network.

The data and metadata replication features of GPFS are used to maintain a secondary copy of each file system block, relying on the concept of disk failure groups to control the physical placement of the individual copies:

1. Separate the set of available disk volumes into two failure groups. Define one failure group at each of the active production sites.
2. Create a replicated file system. Specify a replication factor of 2 for both data and metadata.

With two copies of the data in separate locations, if one site has an unrecoverable disaster, you can recover from a single site with no data loss. Data from two separate sites can share namespace and be accessed by either site. CES groups are enabled to control traffic to the local site. For more information, see *Synchronous mirroring with GPFS replication* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

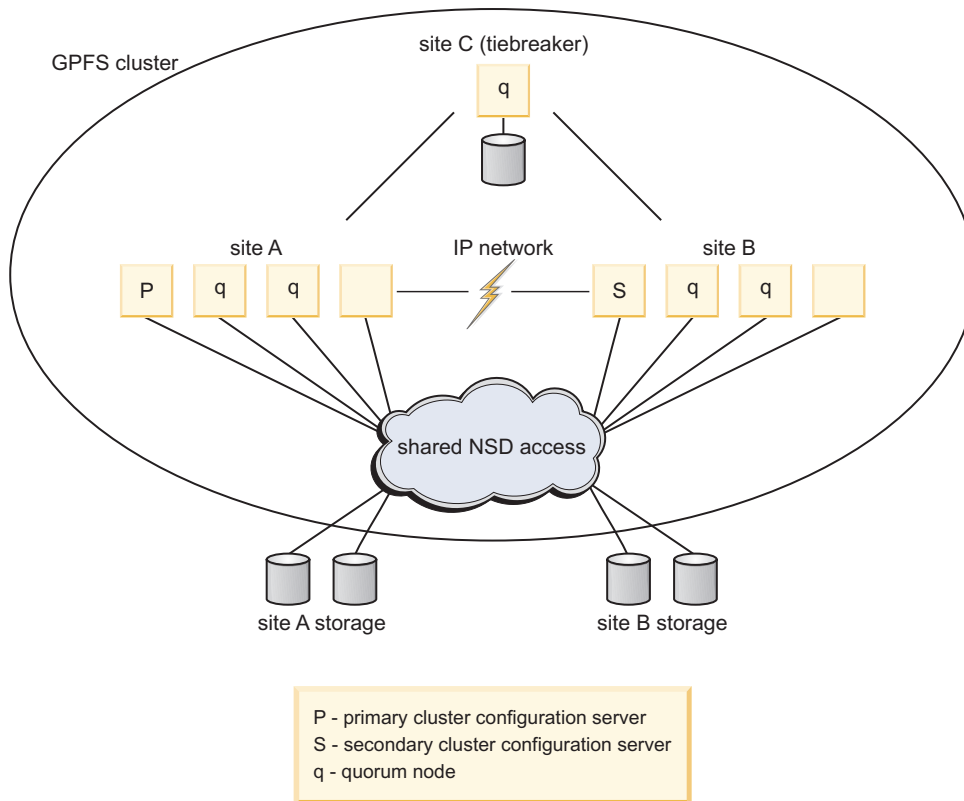


Figure 34. Synchronous mirroring with GPFS replication

## About the tested use case

The stretch cluster in this use case was configured as active-active, meaning that clients can read and write data from either site of the cluster. For more information, see *Synchronous mirroring with GPFS replication* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*. You can also configure an active-passive stretch cluster. For more information, see *An active-passive cluster* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*. You can replicate data with GPFS in two ways: synchronous replication and asynchronous replication with Active File Management (AFM). Because there are some differences between the two options, you need to understand both options in order to choose the solution that best fits your use case.

### Synchronous replication

Synchronous replication ensures that:

- your data is always available
- you can read and write in both locations
- you do not have to perform recovery actions from applications except for changing the IP address/hostname.

Because data is synchronously replicated, the application gets consistent data and no data is lost during failover or failback. Synchronous replication requires a reliable high-speed, low latency network between sites, and it has a performance impact on the application when the failback occurs.

### Asynchronous replication with AFM

Asynchronous replication with AFM can work on a high latency network. Because data is asynchronously replicated, all updates might not be replicated when a failure occurs. Therefore, the application needs to

be able to tolerate data loss and to run recovery operations to fail back. This setup is usually two separate GPFS clusters instead of one cluster at multiple geographical sites.

This use case covers the synchronous replication solution only. The use case shows how in an active-active stretch cluster when one site's storage is offline, you can still read from and write to a replica of the data to the site that is online.

**Note:** Stretch CES clusters with SMB must have low latencies. High latencies might result in performance degradation.

## Limitations of a stretch cluster that uses GPFS synchronous replication

Consider the following limitations of a stretch cluster with NFS, SMB, or Object for synchronously replicating data:

1. The IBM Spectrum Scale installation toolkit cannot deploy protocols if the CES networks across the two sites cannot communicate. For more information, see *Limitations* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Big Data and Analytics Guide*.
2. If the Object protocol and the CES networks are separate and cannot communicate across the two sites, then object can use only one site to read and write data. For guidance on setup, refer to *Configuration of object for isolated node and network groups* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
3. If your implementation requires you to set up Spectrum Scale IBM Spectrum Scale for object to one site, you will not have a seamless failover if you lose all of the protocol nodes on that site. You need to change the object ring configuration so that it points back to the CES Group that is available on the other site. For details, see *Configuration of object for isolated node and network groups* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
4. When you have object enabled on one site and that entire site goes down unexpectedly, you might have to recover your endpoints manually since you can no longer ping them. In this case, refer to the steps provided in the OpenStack documentation: <https://docs.openstack.org/keystone/pike/install/keystone-install-rdo.html>.

**Note:** A deployment has a high chance of failure if the CES networks at each site cannot communicate with each other. For more information, see *Limitations of the spectrumscale toolkit* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide*. For this use case, the cluster was deployed with protocols with separate VLAN'd networks on each site; however, those networks are able to communicate with each other.

## Using the spectrumscale installation toolkit to install a stretch cluster

When you set up a stretch cluster, it is important to understand the physical setup of the storage and how it maps from each site to each file system and failure group. Figure 2 shows the tested configuration where each site (A and B) has storage that is only seen by the NSD servers in that site.

## Local Site CES Group

The 10GbE GPFS network and the 10GbE CES network will use the same adapter, but different ports on the adapter as well as different vlans/subnets, so there will be no network contention here.

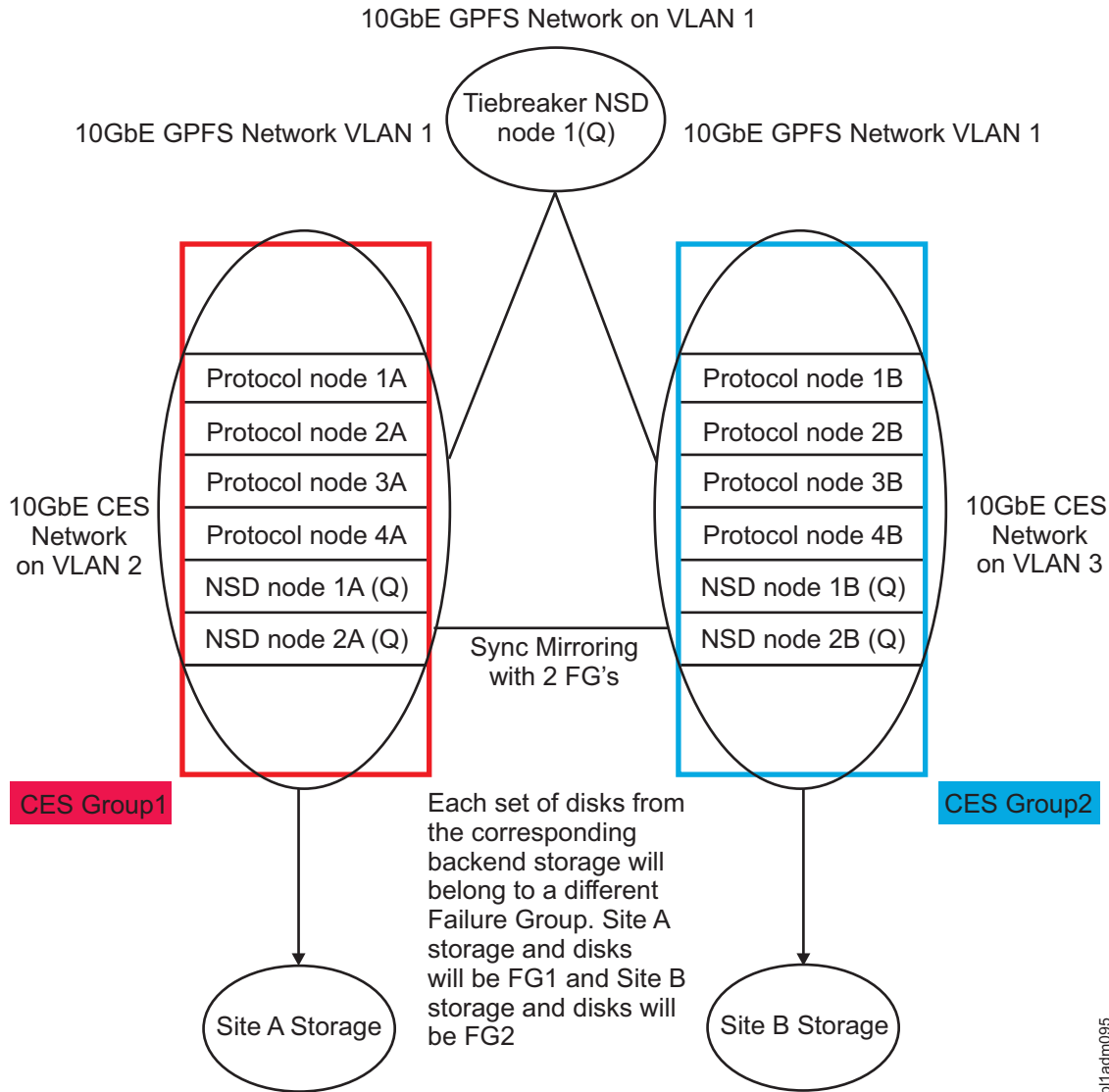


Figure 35. Local Site CES Group

For this use case example, the installation toolkit was used to install the IBM Spectrum Scale software. You can find the installation toolkit by changing directories to where it was extracted (the default 5.0.x.x extraction path follows. This path might vary depending on the code level).

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/installer
```

Use these instructions to install and deploy a stretch cluster.

1. Designate a setup node by issuing the following command:  
`./spectrumscale setup -s InstallNodeIP`

The setup node is used to run all of the toolkit commands and to specify the protocol and NSD nodes.

2. Specify the protocol and NSD nodes by issuing the following commands:

```
./spectrumscale node add protocol1A -a -p -g
./spectrumscale node add protocol2A -a -p -g
./spectrumscale node add protocol3A -p
./spectrumscale node add protocol4A -p
./spectrumscale node add protocol1B -p
./spectrumscale node add protocol2B -p
./spectrumscale node add protocol3B -p
./spectrumscale node add protocol4B -p
./spectrumscale node add nsd1A -n -q
./spectrumscale node add nsd2A -n -q
./spectrumscale node add nsd1B -n -q
./spectrumscale node add nsd2B -n -q
./spectrumscale node add nsd3C -n -q
```

The **-s** argument identifies the IP address that nodes use to retrieve their configuration. This IP address is one associated with a device on the installation node. (The IP address is automatically validated during the setup phase.)

The **-q** argument indicates the quorum nodes that are to be configured in the cluster. To keep the cluster accessible during a failure, configure most of the quorum nodes to have GPFS active. In this use case, there are five quorum nodes, therefore three must be active to keep the cluster accessible. These nodes were chosen specifically because they are the least likely to become inaccessible at the same time. Because nsd1A and nsd2A are at one site, nsd1B and nsd2B are at a second site, and nsd3C is at a third site, the likelihood of more than three going down at a time is minimal.

No manager nodes were specified with the **-m** argument, but by default, if no **-m** argument is specified, the installation toolkit automatically sets the protocol nodes to manager nodes, leaving an even balance across both sites.

The GUI node designations are specified with the **-g** argument to be on protocol nodes that reside on the same site, but you can choose to have a single GUI, two GUIs on one site, or two GUIs on different sites. In this case, two GUIs were tested on a single site.

3. Define NSD mappings to physical disks and assign those NSDs to failure groups and file systems. The following example NSDs are designated as dataAndMetadata; however, if you have the capacity (disk space and disk speed), set up Metadata disks on SSDs for the best performance.

```
./spectrumscale nsd add -p nsd1A -s nsd2A -u dataAndMetadata -fs ces -fg 2 /dev/mapper/lun_8
./spectrumscale nsd add -p nsd1B -s nsd2B -u dataAndMetadata -fs ces -fg 1 /dev/mapper/lun_1

./spectrumscale nsd add -p nsd1B -s nsd2B -u dataAndMetadata -fs gpfs0 -fg 2 /dev/mapper/lun_6
./spectrumscale nsd add -p nsd2B -s nsd1B -u dataAndMetadata -fs gpfs0 -fg 2 /dev/mapper/lun_4
./spectrumscale nsd add -p nsd1B -s nsd2B -u dataAndMetadata -fs gpfs0 -fg 2 /dev/mapper/lun_10
./spectrumscale nsd add -p nsd2B -s nsd1B -u dataAndMetadata -fs gpfs0 -fg 2 /dev/mapper/lun_24
./spectrumscale nsd add -p nsd2A -s nsd1A -u dataAndMetadata -fs gpfs0 -fg 1 /dev/mapper/lun_2
./spectrumscale nsd add -p nsd1A -s nsd2A -u dataAndMetadata -fs gpfs0 -fg 1 /dev/mapper/lun_3
./spectrumscale nsd add -p nsd2A -s nsd1A -u dataAndMetadata -fs gpfs0 -fg 1 /dev/mapper/lun_4
./spectrumscale nsd add -p nsd1A -s nsd2A -u dataAndMetadata -fs gpfs0 -fg 1 /dev/mapper/lun_5

./spectrumscale nsd add -p nsd3C -u descOnly -fs gpfs0 -fg 3 /dev/sda
./spectrumscale nsd add -p nsd3C -u descOnly -fs ces -fg 3 /dev/sdb
```

Each file system, ces or gpfs0, has multiple disks that have primary and secondary servers at each site. This ensures that the file system stays online when an entire site goes down. With multiple primary and secondary servers for each disk and failure group that is local to each site, the GPFS replication keeps the data up to date across both sites. A disk with a primary and secondary server on site A belongs to failure group 1, and a disk with a primary and secondary server on site B belongs to failure group 2. This enables the two-way replication across the failure groups, meaning that one replica of data is kept at each site. The nsd3C node is known as the tiebreaker node. The physical disks that reside on that node /dev/sda and /dev/sdb are designated as 'descOnly' disks and are local to that node and are their own failure group. The descOnly argument indicates



that the disk contains no file data or metadata. it is used solely to keep a copy of the file system descriptor. It is recommended to have that tiebreaker node in a separate geographical location than the other two sites.

4. Set up the file system characteristics for two-way replication on both the ces and gpfs0 file systems by issuing the following command:

```
./spectrumscale filesystem modify -r 2 -mr 2 ces
./spectrumscale filesystem modify -r 2 -mr 2 gpfs0
```

This sets the metadata and data replication to 2.

5. Designate file system paths for protocols and for object by issuing the following commands:

```
./spectrumscale config protocols -f ces -m /ibm/ces
./spectrumscale config object -f gpfs0 -m /ibm/gpfs0
```

6. Set the cluster name by issuing the following command:

```
./spectrumscale config gpfs -c gumby.tuc.stglabs.ibm.com
```

7. Install the stretch cluster by issuing the following command:

```
./spectrumscale install --precheck
./spectrumscale install
```

8. Set up the IP lists by issuing the following command:

```
./spectrumscale config protocols -e
10.18.52.30,10.18.52.31,10.18.52.32,10.18.52.33,10.18.60.30,10.18.60.31,10.18.60.32,10.18.60.33
./spectrumscale filesystem list
```

9. Enable the protocols by issuing the following commands:

```
./spectrumscale enable nfs
./spectrumscale enable smb
./spectrumscale enable object
```

10. Configure object by issuing the following commands:

```
./spectrumscale config object -o Object_Fileset
./spectrumscale config object --adminpassword
./spectrumscale config object --databasepassword
```

11. Configure authentication by issuing the following command:

```
./spectrumscale auth file ad
./spectrumscale node list
```

12. Deploy the stretch cluster by issuing the following commands:

```
./spectrumscale deploy --precheck
./spectrumscale deploy
```

13. After the deployment completes, check the AD setup and status.

For the use case, the same AD server was on both sites, but you can use any authentication type in a stretch cluster that is supported on a single-site IBM Spectrum Scale cluster. Note that because a stretch cluster is still one cluster, more than one authentication method per site is not supported.

To check the status of the cluster's authentication issue either of these commands **mmuserauth service list** or **mmuserauth service check --server-reachability**.

Issue the **mmuserauth service list** command. The system displays information similar to the following:

```
FILE access configuration : AD
PARAMETERS                VALUES
-----
ENABLE_NFS_KERBEROS       false
SERVERS                   10.18.2.1
USER_NAME                 Administrator
NETBIOS_NAME              stretch_cluster
IDMAP_ROLE                master
IDMAP_RANGE               10000-1000000
IDMAP_RANGE_SIZE          10000
UNIXMAP_DOMAINS           DOMAIN1(10000000-299999999)
LDAPMAP_DOMAINS           none
```

OBJECT access configuration : LOCAL	
PARAMETERS	VALUES
-----	
ENABLE_KS_SSL	false
ENABLE_KS_CASIGNING	false
KS_ADMIN_USER	admin

Issue the **mmuserauth service check --server-reachability** command. The system displays information similar to the following:

```
Userauth file check on node: protocol1A
  Checking nsswitch file: OK
AD servers status
  NETLOGON connection: OK
  Domain join status: OK
  Machine password status: OK
Service 'gpfs-winbind' status: OK

Userauth object check on node: protocol1A
  Checking keystone.conf: OK
  Checking wsgi-keystone.conf: OK
  Checking /etc/keystone/ssl/certs/signing_cert.pem: OK
  Checking /etc/keystone/ssl/private/signing_key.pem: OK
  Checking /etc/keystone/ssl/certs/signing_cacert.pem: OK

Service 'httpd' status: OK
```

## Possible steps to convert an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster to a stretch cluster

1. Add the nodes from the second and third sites to the original cluster either manually or by using the spectrumscale toolkit.
2. Create the tiebreaker disks on the third site.
3. If replicating an existing file system, use the **mmchfs** command to set the replicas of data and metadata blocks to 2. If you are creating a new file system, ensure that the replication factor is set to 2 when it is created. For details, see the section Using the spectrumscale installation toolkit to install a stretch cluster.
4. Restripe your file system by issuing the **mmrestripefs <filesystem> -R** command.
5. Enable CES on the protocol nodes that you have added to the configuration.
6. Create CES groups on both sites.

## Configuring the stretch cluster

1. Set up some basic tuning parameters.

For the use case, the following tuning parameters were used to improve the performance and reliability of the cluster. Tuning parameters will vary significantly depending on the hardware resources in your environment.

```
mmchconfig readReplicaPolicy=fastest
mmchconfig unmountOnDiskFail=yes -N nsd3
mmchconfig workerThreads=1024 -N cesNode
mmchconfig -ipagepool=43G -N protocol1A
mmchconfig -ipagepool=31G -N protocol2A
mmchconfig pagepool=48G -N protocol3A
mmchconfig pagepool=48G -N protocol4A
mmchconfig pagepool=48G -N protocol1B
mmchconfig pagepool=48G -N protocol2B
mmchconfig pagepool=48G -N protocol3B
mmchconfig pagepool=48G -N protocol4B
mmchconfig pagepool=12G -N nsd1A
mmchconfig pagepool=16G -N nsd1B
mmchconfig pagepool=12G -N nsd2B
mmchconfig pagepool=12G -N nsd3C
mmchconfig maxFilesToCache=2M
mmchconfig maxMBpS=5000 -N cesNodes
```

For details on each parameter, see *Parameters for performance tuning and optimization* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*. The use case was tested with `readReplicaPolicy=fastest` which is the recommended setting. A known limitation with `readReplicaPolicy=fastest` is that with networks that add ~3 ms latency (which are common in such installations) there is no substantial difference between local and remote disks (assuming the disk latency might be in the 40/50ms range). Thus, you might still read data from the remote site. Therefore, it is acceptable to use `readReplicaPolicy=local` to ensure the data is written/read on the local site as long as the local servers are on the same subnet as the clients and the remote servers are not. The `readReplicaPolicy=fastest` setting will work with either network topology, both sites on the same subnet or each site on its own subnet, as long as there is a measurable difference in the I/O access time.

2. Set up the CES nodes.

CES groups are needed when the CES networks on each site cannot communicate with each other. By having each site's local nodes in the same CES group, the administrator is able to control where the CES IPs failover to when there is an issue with a specific protocol node. If CES groups are not set up, a CES IP from Site A might attempt to failover to a node on Site B, and because there is no adapter for that IP to alias to on Site B (assuming different subnets), the failover will not succeed. CES groups make it easy to manage what CES nodes can host what CES IPs.

Set the CES nodes in the cluster to the corresponding groups by issuing the `mmchnode --ces-group` command (CES group names are not case-sensitive). For example:

```
mmchnode --ces-group SiteA -N protocol1A
mmchnode --ces-group SiteA -N protocol2A
mmchnode --ces-group SiteB -N protocol1B
mmchnode --ces-group SiteB -N protocol2B
```

In the example, protocol nodes `protocol1A` and `protocol2A` are set to the Site A CES group, protocol nodes `protocol1B` and `protocol2B` are set to the Site B CES group.

For detailed instructions, see *Setting up Cluster Export Services groups in an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

3. Assign CES IPs to the corresponding CES groups. This ensures that IPs that reside on nodes in Site A do not fail over to nodes that reside in Site B and vice versa. Issue the `mmces address change` command. For example:

```
mmces address change --ces-ip 10.18.52.30,10.18.52.31,10.18.52.32,10.18.52.33 --ces-group SiteA
mmces address change --ces-ip 10.18.60.30,10.18.60.31,10.18.60.32,10.18.60.33 --ces-group SiteB
```

4. To verify the CES groups your nodes belong to, issue the `mmces node list` command. The sample output is as follows:

Node Name	Node Flags	Node Groups
10 protocol1B	none	siteB
11 protocol2B	none	siteB
12 protocol3B	none	siteB
13 protocol4B	none	siteB
6 protocol1A	none	siteA
7 protocol2A	none	siteA
8 protocol3A	none	siteA
9 protocol4A	none	siteA

5. To verify the CES groups your CES IPs belong to, issue the `mmces address list` command. The sample output is as follows:

Address	Node	Group	Attribute
10.18.52.30	protocol1AsiteA	object_singleton_node,object_database_node	
10.18.52.31	protocol2AsiteA	none	
10.18.52.32	protocol3AsiteA	none	
10.18.52.33	protocol4AsiteA	none	
10.18.60.30	protocol1BsiteB	none	
10.18.60.31	protocol2BsiteB	none	
10.18.60.32	protocol3BsiteB	none	
10.18.60.33	protocol4BsiteB	none	

A load balancer is recommended for the protocol stack to cater to a site loss. The load balancer will ensure that you do not encounter issues if using DNS Round Robin when a site goes down and that the host name in the DNS server can resolve all of the IP addresses.

## Using NFS, SMB, and Object with a Stretch Cluster

Using NFS and SMB protocols is similar to using a Spectrum Scale cluster that is in one geographical location. All clients can read and write to either site and to any CES IP that they connect with depending on access. If a single protocol node fails at one site, a normal IP failover will still occur within the site, and the client seamlessly fails over with NFS I/O continuing. SMB clients, however, might need to be reconnected. On failures, clients can reconnect to another cluster node because the IP addresses of failing nodes are transferred to another healthy cluster node. Windows SMB clients automatically open a new connection without additional intervention, but the application that is running I/O may need to be restarted. Object has a few more limitations. See the section “Limitations regarding a Stretch Cluster using GPFS synchronous replication” for details. In summary, if your CES networks cannot communicate across sites, you must choose a single site and its CES group to configure with object. During a full site outage, you will need to make the manual fixes described in the Limitations section. A single protocol node failure will still work but you will need to retry after the CES IP moves to a new node within the CES group.

## Monitoring and administering a stretch cluster

Monitoring your stretch cluster is the same as monitoring a cluster in a single location, except for the disk setup, and knowing when your disks are down and what site is affected. You can see the disk status using the `mmfsdisk` command. The sample output is as follows:

disk name	driver type	sector size	failure group	holds metadata	holds data	status	storage availability pool
nsd22	nsd	512	2	Yes	Yes	ready	up system
nsd23	nsd	512	2	Yes	Yes	ready	up system
nsd24	nsd	512	2	Yes	Yes	ready	up system
nsd25	nsd	512	2	Yes	Yes	ready	up system
nsd26	nsd	512	1	Yes	Yes	ready	up system
nsd27	nsd	512	1	Yes	Yes	ready	up system
nsd28	nsd	512	1	Yes	Yes	ready	up system
nsd29	nsd	512	1	Yes	Yes	ready	up system
nsd30	nsd	512	1	Yes	Yes	ready	up system
nsd31	nsd	512	3	No	No	ready	up system

A healthy cluster shows all the disks that have a status of up. You can also verify the replication settings using the `mmfsfs -m -M -r -R` command. The sample output is as follows:

flag	value	description
-m	2	Default number of metadata replicas
-M	3	Maximum number of metadata replicas
-r	2	Default number of data replicas
-R	3	Maximum number of data replicas

If the default number of data and metadata replicas is set to two, this will indicate that you have no disk failures and that your data is being replicated across both failure groups.

Issue the `mmfsdisk ces` command. The sample output is as follows:

disk name	driver type	sector size	failure group	holds metadata	holds data	status	storage availability pool
nsd20	nsd	512	2	Yes	Yes	ready	up system
nsd21	nsd	512	1	Yes	Yes	ready	up system
nsd32	nsd	512	3	No	No	ready	up system

If you lose access to one site's storage due to maintenance, network issues, or hardware issues, the disks in the cluster are marked as down and the **mmhealth node show** command results shows them as down. This is acceptable because the stretch cluster can keep operating when an entire site goes down. There can be a negative impact on performance while one site is down, but that is expected.

To see the disk cluster status for the use case, issuing the **mm1sdisk gpfs0** command shows the following information:

disk name	driver type	sector size	failure group	holds metadata	holds data	status	storage availability pool
nsd22	nsd	512	2	Yes	Yes	ready	down system
nsd23	nsd	512	2	Yes	Yes	ready	down system
nsd24	nsd	512	2	Yes	Yes	ready	down system
nsd25	nsd	512	2	Yes	Yes	ready	down system
nsd26	nsd	512	1	Yes	Yes	ready	up system
nsd27	nsd	512	1	Yes	Yes	ready	up system
nsd28	nsd	512	1	Yes	Yes	ready	up system
nsd29	nsd	512	1	Yes	Yes	ready	up system
nsd30	nsd	512	1	Yes	Yes	ready	up system
nsd31	nsd	512	3	No	No	ready	up system

For the use case, the results of the **mmhealth node show -N nsd2B disk** command show three disks:

Node name: nsd2B  
Node status: FAILED  
Status Change: 17 min. ago

Component	Status	Status Change	Reasons
GPFS	FAILED	17 min. ago	gpfs_down, quorum_down
NETWORK	HEALTHY	10 days ago	-
FILESYSTEM	DEPEND	17 min. ago	unmounted_fs_check(gpfs1, ces, gpfs0)
DISK	DEPEND	17 min. ago	disk_down(nsd20, nsd22, nsd23)
PERFMON	HEALTHY	10 days ago	-

To see all of the failed disks, issue the **mmhealth node show nsd2B** command (without the -N attribute). For the use case, the system displays the following information:

Node name: nsd2B

Component	Status	Status Change	Reasons
DISK	DEPEND	18 min. ago	disk_down(nsd20, nsd22, nsd23)
nsd1	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd10	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd11	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd12	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd13	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd14	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd15	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd16	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd17	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd18	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd19	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd2	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd20	DEPEND	18 min. ago	disk_down
nsd22	DEPEND	18 min. ago	disk_down
nsd23	DEPEND	18 min. ago	disk_down
nsd24	DEPEND	18 min. ago	disk_down
nsd25	DEPEND	18 min. ago	disk_down
nsd3	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd4	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd5	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd6	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd7	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd8	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-
nsd9	DEPEND	18 min. ago	-

Event	Parameter	Severity	Active Since	Event Message
disk_down	nsd20	WARNING	16 min. ago	Disk nsd20 is reported as not up
disk_down	nsd22	WARNING	16 min. ago	Disk nsd22 is reported as not up
disk_down	nsd23	WARNING	16 min. ago	Disk nsd23 is reported as not up
disk_down	nsd24	WARNING	16 min. ago	Disk nsd24 is reported as not up
disk_down	nsd25	WARNING	16 min. ago	Disk nsd25 is reported as not up

After the issue is resolved, restart the disks and make sure that the data and metadata replicas are intact. First, ensure that GPFS is active on all nodes. Next, issue the **mmchdisk <filesystem> start-a** command. This informs GPFS to try to access the disks that are marked down and, if possible, to move them back into the up state. This is accomplished by first changing the disk availability from down to recovering. The file system metadata is then scanned and any missing updates (replicated data that was changed while the disk was down) are repaired. If this operation is successful, the availability is then changed to up. If the metadata scan fails, availability is changed to unrecovered. This could occur if too many disks are down. The metadata scan can be re-initiated later by issuing the **mmchdisk** command again. If more than one disk in the file system is down, all of the disks that are down must be started at the same time by issuing **mmchdisk <filesystem> start -a**. If you start them separately and metadata is stored on any disk that remains down, the **mmchdisk start** command fails.

```
mmnsddiscover: Attempting to rediscover the disks. This may take a while ...
```

```
mmnsddiscover: Finished.
```

```
nsd2A: Rediscovered nsd server access to nsd26.
```

```
nsd2A: Rediscovered nsd server access to nsd28.
```

```
nsd3C: Rediscovered nsd server access to nsd31.
```

```
sdn2B: Rediscovered nsd server access to nsd23.
```

```
nsd1B: Rediscovered nsd server access to nsd23.
```

```
nsd2B: Rediscovered nsd server access to nsd24.
```

```
nsd1B: Rediscovered nsd server access to nsd24.
```

```
nsd1A: Rediscovernsd server access to nsd29.
```

```
nsd2A: Rediscovered nsd server access to nsd30.
```

```
nsd2A: Rediscovered red nsd server access to nsd27.
```

```
nsd2B: Rediscovered nsd server access to nsd25.
```

```
nsd2B: Rediscovered nsd server access to nsd22.
```

```
nsd2A: Rediscovered nsd server access to nsd25.
```

```
nsd2A: Rediscovered nsd server access to nsd22.
```

```
Scanning file system metadata, phase 1 ...
```

```
33 % complete on Fri Feb 3 11:46:41 2017
```

```
66 % complete on Fri Feb 3 11:56:57 2017
```

```
100 % complete on Fri Feb 3 11:58:24 2017 Scan completed successfully.
```

```
Scanning file system metadata, phase 2 ...
```

```
Scan completed successfully.
```

```
Scanning file system metadata, phase 3 ...
```

```
8 % complete on Fri Feb 3 11:58:29 2017
```

```
16 % complete on Fri Feb 3 11:58:32 2017
```

```
23 % complete on Fri Feb 3 11:58:35 2017
```

```
...
```

```
91 % complete on Fri Feb 3 11:59:18 2017
```

```
95 % complete on Fri Feb 3 11:59:22 2017
```

```
98 % complete on Fri Feb 3 11:59:25 2017
```

```
100 % complete on Fri Feb 3 11:59:26 2017
```

```
Scan completed successfully.
```

```
Scanning file system metadata, phase 4 ...
```

```
Scan completed successfully.
```

```
Scanning user file metadata ...
```

```
2.37 % complete on Fri Feb 3 11:59:46 2017 ( 2473984 inodes with total 672770 MB data processed)
```

```
3.86 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:00:07 2017 ( 4734976 inodes with total 1094807 MB data processed)
```

```
4.59 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:00:27 2017 ( 7880704 inodes with total 1301307 MB data processed)
```

```
5.30 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:00:47 2017 ( 11003904 inodes with total 1501577 MB data processed)
```

```
6.01 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:01:07 2017 ( 14077952 inodes with total 1703928 MB data processed)
```

```
6.70 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:01:27 2017 ( 17154048 inodes with total 1896877 MB data processed)
```

```
7.36 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:01:47 2017 ( 20135936 inodes with total 2084748 MB data processed)
```

```

7.97 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:02:07 2017 ( 22512640 inodes with total 2257626 MB data processed)
8.21 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:02:27 2017 ( 23322624 inodes with total 2327269 MB data processed)
8.39 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:02:48 2017 ( 24182784 inodes with total 2377108 MB data processed)
8.52 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:03:09 2017 ( 25182208 inodes with total 2414040 MB data processed)
8.64 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:03:29 2017 ( 26166272 inodes with total 2447380 MB data processed)
...
96.58 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:36:40 2017 ( 198458880 inodes with total 27362407 MB data processed)
96.82 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:37:00 2017 ( 202438144 inodes with total 27430464 MB data processed)
97.06 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:37:20 2017 ( 206526720 inodes with total 27498158 MB data processed)
97.30 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:37:40 2017 ( 210588672 inodes with total 27567944 MB data processed)
97.46 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:38:00 2017 ( 266730496 inodes with total 27612826 MB data processed)
97.52 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:38:20 2017 ( 302344960 inodes with total 27629694 MB data processed)
97.59 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:38:40 2017 ( 330066432 inodes with total 27648547 MB data processed)
100.00 % complete on Fri Feb 3 12:38:52 2017 ( 394185216 inodes with total 27657707 MB data processed)
Scan completed successfully.

```

The recovery time for this command can vary depending on how much data was written while the disks were down. If the disks were down for a long time (greater than 24 hours) and a lot of data was written in that time, it is expected that the `mmchdisk` command could take quite a while to complete. The time needed to bring up the disks depends on the quantity of data changed during the time the disks were down. This command is run while the file data remains accessible to the applications so I/O clients can continue to operate.

## IBM Spectrum Scale stretch cluster use case conclusion

Each use case for a stretch cluster will vary. The sample use case represents one tested configuration. For more information see the following topics:

*Synchronous mirroring with GPFS replication in IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide.*

*Synchronous mirroring with GPFS replication in IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide.*

*An active-passive cluster in IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*

*Limitations in IBM Spectrum Scale: Big Data and Analytics Guide*

*Configuration of object for isolated node and network groups in IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*

<https://docs.openstack.org/keystone/pike/install/keystone-install-rdo.html>

*Parameters for performance tuning and optimization in IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*

*Setting up Cluster Export Services groups in an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster in IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*

## Performing additional tasks using the installation toolkit

Use this information for using the installation toolkit for tasks such as deploying protocols on existing clusters and adding nodes to an existing installation.

### Deploying protocols on an existing cluster

Use this information to deploy protocols on an existing cluster using the installation toolkit.

1. Instantiate your chef zero server using the following command.  
`./spectrumscale setup -s 192.168.0.1`
2. Designate protocol nodes in your environment to use for the deployment using the following command.  
`./spectrumscale node add FQDN -p`

3. Designate GUI nodes in your environment to use for the deployment using the following command.  
`./spectrumscale node add FQDN -g`
4. Configure protocols to point to a file system that will be used as a shared root using the following command.  
`./spectrumscale config protocols -f FS_Name -m FS_Mountpoint`
5. Configure a pool of export IPs using the following command.  
`./spectrumscale config protocols -e Comma_Separated_List_of_Exportpool_IPs`
6. Enable NFS on all protocol nodes using the following command.  
`./spectrumscale enable nfs`
7. Enable SMB on all protocol nodes using the following command.  
`./spectrumscale enable smb`
8. Enable Object on all protocol nodes using the following command.  
`./spectrumscale enable object`  
`./spectrumscale config object -au admin -ap -dp`  
`./spectrumscale config object -e FQDN`  
`./spectrumscale config object -f FS_Name -m FS_Mountpoint`  
`./spectrumscale config object -o Object_Fileset`
9. Review the configuration prior to deployment using the following command.  
`./spectrumscale config protocols`  
`./spectrumscale config object`  
`./spectrumscale node list`
10. Deploy protocols on your defined environment using the following command.  
`./spectrumscale deploy --precheck`  
`./spectrumscale deploy`

After deploying protocols on an existing cluster, deploy protocols authentication.

## Deploying protocols authentication on an existing cluster

Use this information to deploy protocols authentication on an existing cluster after deploying protocols using the installation toolkit.

1. Enable file authentication with AD server on all protocol nodes using the following command.  
`./spectrumscale auth file ad`  
 Fill out the template and save the information, and then issue the following commands.  
`./spectrumscale deploy --precheck`  
`./spectrumscale deploy`
2. Enable Object authentication with AD server on all protocol nodes using the following command.  
`./spectrumscale auth object ad`  
 Fill out the template and save the information, and then issue the following commands.  
`./spectrumscale deploy --precheck`  
`./spectrumscale deploy`

## Adding nodes, NSDs, or file systems to an existing installation

Use this information to add nodes, NSDs, or file systems to an installation process using the installation toolkit.

- To add nodes to an existing installation, do the following.
  1. Add one or more node types using the following commands.
    - Client nodes:  
`./spectrumscale node add FQDN`
    - NSD nodes:  
`./spectrumscale node add FQDN -n`
    - Protocol nodes:



- ```
./spectrumscale node add FQDN -p
```
- GUI nodes:

```
./spectrumscale node add FQDN -g -a
```

For the list of supported node types that can be added, see *spectrumscale command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

2. Install GPFS on the new nodes using the following commands.

```
./spectrumscale install --precheck
./spectrumscale install
```
3. If protocol nodes are being added, deploy protocols using the following commands.

```
./spectrumscale deploy --precheck
./spectrumscale deploy
```
- To add NSDs to an existing installation, do the following.
  1. Verify that the NSD server connecting this new disk runs an OS compatible with the installation toolkit and that the NSD server exists within the cluster.
  2. Add NSDs to the installation using the following command.

```
./spectrumscale nsd add -p FQDN_of_Primary_NSD_Server Path_to_Disk_Device_File
```
  3. Run the installation using the following commands.

```
./spectrumscale install --precheck
./spectrumscale install
```
- To add file systems to an existing installation, do the following.
  1. Verify that free NSDs exist and that they can be listed by the installation toolkit using the following commands.

```
mmfnsd
./spectrumscale nsd list
```
  2. Define the file system using the following command.

```
./spectrumscale nsd modify NSD -fs File_System_Name
```
  3. Deploy the file system using the following commands.

```
./spectrumscale deploy --precheck
./spectrumscale deploy
```

## Enabling another protocol on an existing cluster that has protocols enabled

Use this information to enable protocols on an existing cluster that has other protocols enabled using the installation toolkit.

1. Use one of the following steps depending on your configuration.
  - Enable NFS on all protocol nodes using the following command.

```
./spectrumscale enable nfs
```
  - Enable SMB on all protocol nodes using the following command.

```
./spectrumscale enable smb
```
  - Enable Object on all protocol nodes using the following commands.

```
./spectrumscale enable object
./spectrumscale config object -au Admin_User -ap Admin_Password -dp Database_Password
./spectrumscale config object -e FQDN
./spectrumscale config object -f FS_Name -m FS_Mountpoint
./spectrumscale config object -o Object_Fileset
```
2. Enable the new protocol using the following command.

```
./spectrumscale deploy --precheck
./spectrumscale deploy
```

## Diagnosing errors during installation, deployment, or upgrade

Use this information to diagnose errors during install, deploy, or upgrade using the installation toolkit.

1. Note the screen output indicating the error. This helps in narrowing down the general failure. When a failure occurs, the screen output also shows the log file containing the failure.
2. Open the log file in an editor such as **vi**.
3. Go to the end of the log file and search upwards for the text **FATAL**.
4. Find the topmost occurrence of **FATAL** (or first **FATAL** error that occurred) and look above and below this error for further indications of the failure.

For more information, see *Finding deployment related error messages more easily and using them for failure analysis* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

## Preparing a cluster that contains ESS for adding protocols

Use this information to prepare a cluster that contains ESS for adding functions such as NFS, SMB, Object, GUI, and Performance Monitoring.

Before adding protocols to a cluster that contains ESS, ensure the following:

- The cluster containing ESS is active and online.
  - RHEL 7.x is installed on nodes that are going to serve as protocol nodes.
  - RHEL 7.x base repository is set up on nodes that are going to serve as protocol nodes.
1. Use the ESS GUI or CLI to create a CES shared root file system.

**Note:** The CES shared root file system must be at least 4 GB in size and it must not be encrypted.

2. On all nodes that are going to serve as protocol nodes, download and extract the IBM Spectrum Scale protocols standard or advanced packages. For information on extracting packages, see “Extracting the IBM Spectrum Scale software on Linux nodes” on page 253.
3. On all nodes that are going to serve as protocol nodes, install core GPFS RPMs from the `/usr/lpp/mmfs/5.x.x.x/gpfs_rpms`.

**Attention:** Ensure that you do not install packages such as `perfmon`, `gui`, `callhome`, `java`, and `protocols` at this time. These components will be installed and configured with the protocols deployment.

The core GPFS RPMs that need to be installed include:

- `gpfs.base`
  - `gpfs.gpl`
  - `gpfs.license.xx`
  - `gpfs.gskit`
  - `gpfs.docs`
  - `gpfs.msg.en_US`
  - `gpfs.compression`
  - `gpfs.adv` (optional)
  - `gpfs.crypto` (optional)
4. Add the nodes that are going to serve as protocol nodes to the cluster using the **mmaddnode** command.
  5. Enable the Cluster Configuration Repository (CCR) on the cluster, if it is not enabled already.

**Attention:** If GPFS levels between protocol nodes and ESS differ significantly, ensure that the nodes with the newer code level of GPFS are designated as both quorum and manager nodes. For example, old ESS systems with GPFS 4.1.0-8 are incompatible with CES. These ESS systems can be a part of a cluster with protocols only if they are not designated as quorum and manager nodes.

This aspect requires careful planning and administration because:

- By default, ESS nodes are designated as quorum and manager nodes.

- In some cases, there might not be extra nodes outside of ESS to make sure that only nodes with the newer code level are designated as quorum and manager nodes.
- 6. Verify that passwordless SSH is working between all nodes in the cluster.
- 7. Verify that firewall ports are set correctly.
- 8. Verify that the CES shared root file system is mounted and that it is set to auto mount.
- 9. Set NFSv4 ACLs for file systems that are going to be used for protocol data, if they are not set already.
- 10. On one of the nodes that are going to serve as protocol nodes, run the installation toolkit to start deploying protocols.

**Note:**

- Designate only the nodes that you have planned to use as protocol nodes. Do not designate existing ESS nodes such as EMS or I/O nodes as protocol nodes.
- Point to existing file systems only. Do not attempt to create new file systems or NSDs for this purpose.

For information about deploying protocols in a cluster, see **spectrumscale command** in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference* and “Deploying protocols on an existing cluster” on page 337.

**Related concepts:**

“ESS awareness with the installation toolkit” on page 325

You can use the installation toolkit to install IBM Spectrum Scale and deploy protocols in a cluster containing Elastic Storage Server (ESS).

## **Adding an IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) node in an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster**

Use this information to add an IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) node in an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

1. Use the installation toolkit to install IBM Spectrum Scale and create a cluster.  
For more information, see “Using the installation toolkit to perform installation tasks: Explanations and examples” on page 300.
2. If the node on which IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) is going to be installed is running on RHEL 6.x, install IBM Spectrum Scale packages on that node manually using the RPMs from a protocol node.
3. Add the IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) node to your cluster at any time after the cluster is created.

For more information, see *Adding nodes to a GPFS cluster* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

4. Before installing IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE), enable Data Management API (DMAPI) on the file system to be used with IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE).
  - a. Unmount the file system to be used with IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE).

**Note:** If this file system is also used for protocols, you cannot unmount the file system unless you issue the **mmshutdown** command on all protocol nodes.

- b. Enable DMAPI using the **mmchfs Device -z yes** command.  
In this command example, *Device* is the device name of the file system.
  - c. Mount the file system again and issue the **mmstartup** on all protocol nodes if you used the **mmshutdown** command in a preceding step.
5. Install and configure IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE).

For detailed information on using IBM Spectrum Archive and IBM Spectrum Scale together, see Active Archive Implementation Guide with Spectrum Scale Object and IBM Spectrum Archive Redpaper. Chapters 2 and 3 of this document contain specific details about cluster configuration and how to add the IBM Spectrum Archive node to the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

---

## Installing IBM Spectrum Scale by using the graphical user interface (GUI)

You can use the GUI to install and configure IBM Spectrum Scale system. The installation GUI is used only for installing the system and a separate management GUI needs to be used for configuring and managing the system.

| **Note:** The installation GUI is deprecated and it will be removed in a future release.

### Prerequisites

The following are the prerequisites for installing IBM Spectrum Scale through installation GUI:

- On a cluster where the GUI is installed, other nodes in the cluster need to be able to send notifications to the GUI through HTTP requests. For this purpose, curl, a command line tool and library for transferring data with URLs is used. Therefore, it is necessary to make sure that all nodes in the cluster have curl installed and configured correctly so that it can send HTTP requests to the GUI node. Verify whether the curl is working properly by issuing `curl -k https://[GUI NODE NAME OR IP]:443` from the other cluster nodes, which should return the HTML code of the GUI.

If curl is not configured correctly or cannot send HTTP requests to the GUI node, the following error message appears in the `mmfs.log` of that node:

```
[E] An attempt to send notification to the GUI subsystem failed. response=curl: (28) connect() timed out! rc=28
```

- The Network Time Protocol (NTP) must be installed on all nodes on which the IBM Spectrum Scale is being installed through installation GUI.
- The prerequisites that are applicable for installing the IBM Spectrum Scale system through CLI is applicable for installation through the GUI as well. For more information on the prerequisites for installation, see “Installation prerequisites” on page 246.

The installation GUI requires port 9080 to be designated for http and port 9443 for https. That is, the installer GUI URL of the http and https connections are `http://<install server IP or host name>:9080` and `https://<install server IP or host name>:9443` respectively.

**Note:** To start the graphical installation, the IBM Spectrum Scale package must be extracted. By default, the installation images are extracted to the target directory `/usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x` depending on the release version.

By selecting different parameters of the **spectrumscale installgui** command, you can start, stop, and view the status of the installation GUI.

```
spectrumscale installgui [-h] {start,stop,status} ...
```

### Example:

To start the installation GUI, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale installgui start
```

To view the status of the processes that are running on the installation GUI, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale installgui status
```

The installation process through the GUI automatically stops when you exit the installation GUI. To stop installation process through the CLI, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale installgui stop
```

**Note:** The password to access the IBM Spectrum Scale installer GUI is `Passw0rd`.

In case the installation GUI fails to launch, you can use the logs located at the following location for debugging: `/usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/installer/gui/wlp/usr/servers/installgui/logs`

## Limitations of the installation GUI

The following are the limitations of the installation GUI:

- The scope of the installation GUI is to install the IBM Spectrum Scale software on cluster nodes, create an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster, and configure NTP. Other initial tasks like creating file systems, creating NSDs, setting up NFS and SMB protocols, object storage, or authentication of protocol users are out of scope of the installation GUI. You need to perform those tasks either through CLI or management GUI.
- It supports only a fresh installation of an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster. That is, it does not support to update the system from a previous release to the latest release.
- It does not support adding nodes to and removing nodes from the existing IBM Spectrum Scale cluster
- You cannot uninstall the existing IBM Spectrum Scale cluster through the GUI.

---

## Protocol node IP further configuration

The **mmces** commands for adding or moving IPs are as follows.

For more information, see **mmces command** in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## Checking that protocol IPs are currently configured

The **mmces address list** command shows all the currently configured protocol IPs.

**Note:** The term CES IP refers to the Cluster Export Services IP, or a protocol IP used specifically for NFS, SMB, and Object protocol access. All CES IPs must have an associated hostname and reverse DNS lookup must be configured for each. For more information, see *Adding export IPs* in “Deploying protocols” on page 308.

```
mmces address list
```

The system displays output similar to the following:

```
Address Node Group Attribute
```

```
-----  
10.0.0.101 prt001st001 none none  
10.0.0.102 prt002st001 none none  
10.0.0.103 prt003st001 none none  
10.0.0.104 prt004st001 none none  
10.0.0.105 prt005st001 none none  
10.0.0.106 prt006st001 none none
```

Additional IPs can be added to a node. In this example, IPs 10.0.0.108 and 10.0.0.109 are added to protocol node 5 (prt005st001).

```
mmces address add --ces-node prt005st001 --ces-ip 10.0.0.108,10.0.0.109  
mmces address list
```

The system displays output similar to the following:

```
Address Node Group Attribute
```

```
-----  
10.0.0.101 prt001st001 none none  
10.0.0.102 prt002st001 none none  
10.0.0.103 prt003st001 none none  
10.0.0.104 prt004st001 none none  
10.0.0.105 prt005st001 none none  
10.0.0.106 prt006st001 none none  
10.0.0.108 prt005st001 none none  
10.0.0.109 prt005st001 none none
```

IPs can also be moved among nodes manually. This is helpful if IP allocation becomes unbalanced among the nodes. Continuing from the prior example, prt005st001 now has three protocol IPs whereas all other nodes have a single protocol IP. To balance this out a bit better, 10.0.0.109 will be manually moved to node prt004st001.

```
mmces address move -ces-ip 10.0.0.109 --ces-node prt004st001
mmces address list
```

The system displays output similar to the following:

```
Address Node Group Attribute
```

```
-----
10.0.0.101 prt001st001 none none
10.0.0.102 prt002st001 none none
10.0.0.103 prt003st001 none none
10.0.0.104 prt004st001 none none
10.0.0.105 prt005st001 none none
10.0.0.106 prt006st001 none none
10.0.0.108 prt005st001 none none
10.0.0.109 prt004st001 none none
```

## List all protocol services enabled

Run the following command from any protocol node to list the running services on all protocol nodes:

```
mmces service list -a
```

The system displays output similar to the following:

```
Enabled services: SMB NFS OBJ
prt001st001: SMB is not running, NFS is not running, OBJ is running
prt002st001: SMB is running, NFS is running, OBJ is not running
prt003st001: SMB is running, NFS is running, OBJ is running
```

---

## Object protocol further configuration

If the Object protocol was enabled during installation, use the following information to verify the Object protocol configuration and to enable features such as unified file and object access and multi-region object deployment.

Object is currently set up, enabled, and configured by the installation toolkit, but a few additional steps are necessary to ready the Object protocol for use. Verify the Object protocol by running a few tests.

## Verifying the Object protocol portion of the installation

Perform the following simple example OpenStack client and unified file and object access commands to verify your installation. You should be able to list all users and projects (called accounts in unified file and object access), list the unified file and object access containers, upload a sample object to a container, and list that container and see the object. These commands should complete with no errors.

```
# source $HOME/openrc
# openstack user list
# openstack project list
# swift stat
# date > object1.txt
# swift upload test_container object1.txt
object1.txt
# swift list test_container
object1.txt
```

When the SELinux mode is Enforcing and a user on the protocol node needs to run Swift helper commands, the **runcon** command must be used. Otherwise, the system might generate SELinux failure logs. For example, the \*.recon files in the /var/cache/swift directory are updated by Swift helper services such as replicator and updater.

1. To run the helper command, type: `runcon -t swift_t -r system_r swift helper command`
2. To check if the SELinux context is correct, run the **matchpathcon** command: `matchpathcon -V /var/cache/swift/*`  
The system displays the following output:  
`/var/cache/swift/account.recon verified.`  
`/var/cache/swift/container.recon has context`  
`unconfined_u:object_r:var_t:s0, should be system_u:object_r:swift_var_cache_t:s0`  
`/var/cache/swift/object.recon verified.`
3. To fix the SELinux context in the file, run the **restorecon** command: `restorecon /var/cache/swift/container.recon`

For more information about SELinux consideration, see “SELinux considerations” on page 223.

## Enabling multi-region object deployment initially

For multi-region object deployment, each region is a separate cluster and on each cluster IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage is installed independently using the installer.

In a single cluster, the installer completely installs the object protocol on all the nodes within that cluster. However, in a multi-region object deployment environment, each cluster is installed independently and the object protocol on the independent clusters is linked together.

The object portion of the IBM Spectrum Scale installer contains an option to indicate if multi-region support is to be enabled. If it needs to be enabled, the installer determines if the cluster being installed is the first cluster or if the cluster is a subsequent one and it will be added to an existing environment. This information is passed to the **mmobj swift base** command that the installer runs to install the object protocol.

To set up an initial multi-region environment, issue the following command on the 1st cluster after it has been installed:

```
mmobj multiregion enable
```

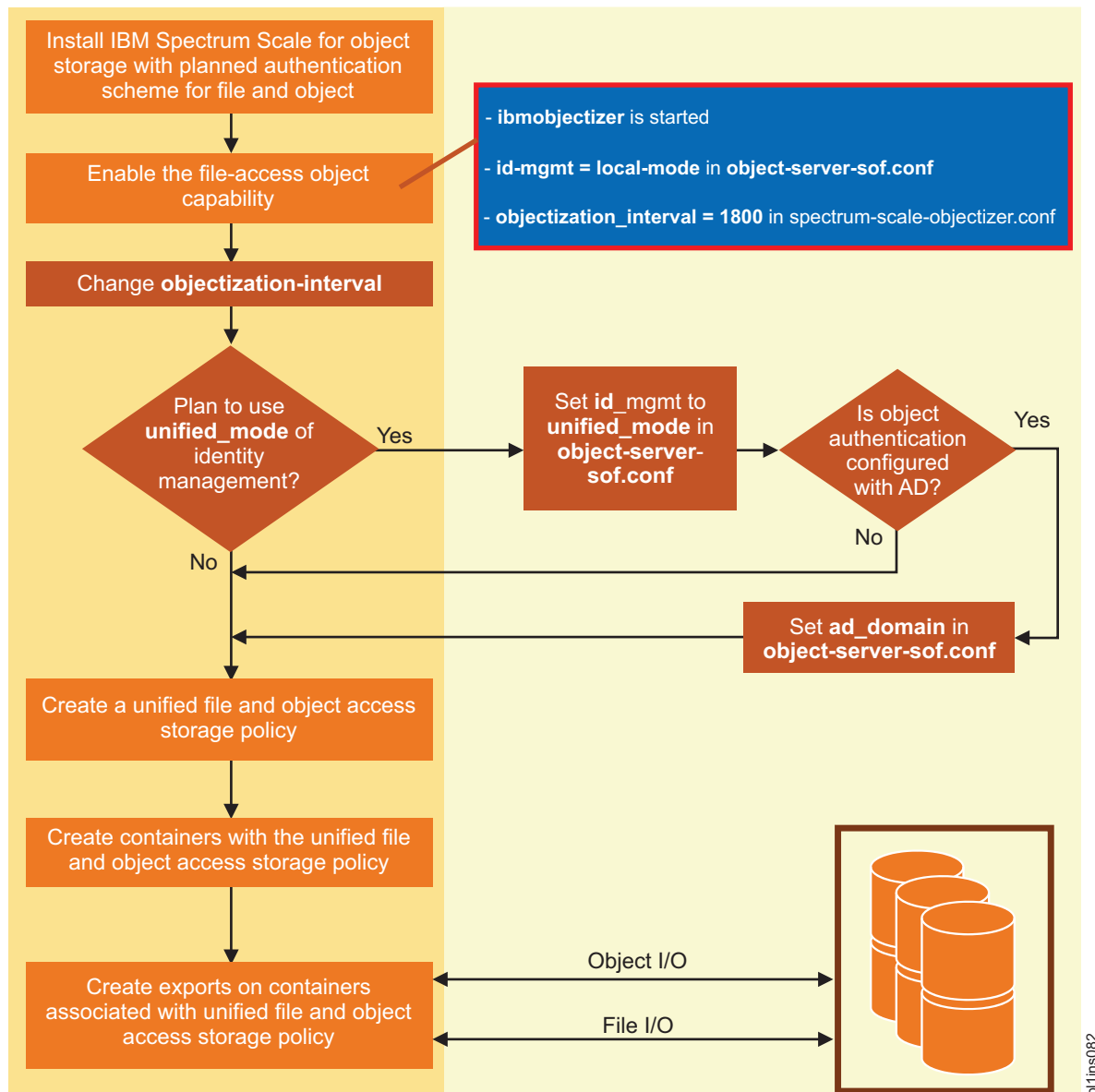
For information on adding a new region to a multi-region object deployment environment, see *Adding a region in a multi-region object deployment* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Installing and using unified file and object access

Unified file and object access gets installed when you install IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage in an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster. No additional steps are required for installing unified file and object access.

For information about managing and administering unified file and object access, see *Unified file and object access in IBM Spectrum Scale* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

The high-level flow of administering unified file and object access is shown in the following diagram. The flow of changing the identity management mode for unified file and object access with the **id\_mgmt** parameter is also shown.



For detailed steps, see *Administering unified file and object access in IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Enabling unified file and object access after upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2 or later to 4.2.2 or later

Use these steps to enable unified file and object access after upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale Version 4.2 or later to 4.2.2 or later.

1. Enable the file-access object capability.  
For detailed steps, see *Enabling the file-access object capability in IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
2. By default, the ibmobjectizer service interval is set to 30 minutes. Set the ibmobjectizer service interval to another value according to your requirement.  
For detailed steps, see *Setting up the objectizer service interval in IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.



3. By default, the identify management mode for unified file and object access is set to `local_mode`. Change the identity management mode according to your requirement.

For detailed steps, see *Configuring authentication and setting identity management modes for unified file and object access* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

For the other unified file and object access tasks that you can perform, see *Administering unified file and object access* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.



---

## Chapter 5. Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on AIX nodes

There are three steps for installing GPFS on AIX nodes.

Before you begin installation, read “Planning for GPFS” on page 149 and the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

Do not attempt to install GPFS if you do not have the prerequisites listed in “Hardware requirements” on page 149 and “Software requirements” on page 150.

Ensure that the **PATH** environment variable on each node includes **/usr/lpp/mmfs/bin**.

The installation process includes:

1. “Creating a file to ease the AIX installation process”
2. “Verifying the level of prerequisite software”
3. “Procedure for installing GPFS on AIX nodes” on page 350

---

### Creating a file to ease the AIX installation process

Creation of a file that contains all of the nodes in your GPFS cluster prior to the installation of GPFS, will be useful during the installation process. Using either host names or IP addresses when constructing the file will allow you to use this information when creating your cluster through the **mmcrcluster** command.

For example, create the file **/tmp/gpfs.allnodes**, listing the nodes one per line:

```
k145n01.dpd.ibm.com
k145n02.dpd.ibm.com
k145n03.dpd.ibm.com
k145n04.dpd.ibm.com
k145n05.dpd.ibm.com
k145n06.dpd.ibm.com
k145n07.dpd.ibm.com
k145n08.dpd.ibm.com
```

---

### Verifying the level of prerequisite software

Before you can install GPFS, verify that your system has the correct software levels installed.

If your system *does not* have the prerequisite AIX level, refer to the appropriate installation manual before proceeding with your GPFS installation. See the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)) for the latest software levels.

To verify the software version, run the command:

```
WCOLL=/tmp/gpfs.allnodes dsh "oslevel"
```

The system should display output similar to:

```
7.1.0.0
```

---

## Procedure for installing GPFS on AIX nodes

These installation procedures are generalized for all levels of GPFS. Ensure you substitute the correct numeric value for the modification (*m*) and fix (*f*) levels, where applicable. The modification and fix level are dependent upon the current level of program support.

Follow these steps to install the GPFS software using the **installp** command:

1. "Accepting the electronic license agreement"
2. "Creating the GPFS directory"
3. "Creating the GPFS installation table of contents file" on page 351
4. "Installing the GPFS man pages" on page 351
5. "Installing GPFS over a network" on page 351
6. "Verifying the GPFS installation" on page 351

### Accepting the electronic license agreement

The IBM Spectrum Scale software license agreement is shipped and viewable electronically. The electronic license agreement must be accepted before software installation can continue.

IBM Spectrum Scale has following editions based on functional levels:

- IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition
- IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition
- IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition
- IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition

For IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition and IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition installations, the installation cannot occur unless the appropriate license agreements are accepted.

When using the **installp** command, use the **-Y** flag to accept licenses and the **-E** flag to view license agreement files on the media.

GPFS license agreements are retained on the AIX system after installation completes. These license agreements can be viewed after installation in the following directories:

`/usr/swlag/GPFS_standard` (IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition)

`/usr/swlag/GPFS_advanced` (IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition)

### Creating the GPFS directory

To create the GPFS directory:

1. On any node create a temporary subdirectory where GPFS installation images will be extracted. For example:

```
mkdir /tmp/gpfs1pp
```

2. Copy the installation images from the CD-ROM to the new directory, by issuing:

```
bffcreate -qvX -t /tmp/gpfs1pp -d /dev/cd0/AIX all
```

This command places these GPFS installation files in the images directory:

```
gpfs.base  
gpfs.docs.data  
gpfs.msg.en_US  
gpfs.license.xx
```

```
gpfs.compression
gpfs.gskit
gpfs.ext
gpfs.crypto (IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management
Edition only)
gpfs.adv (IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management
Edition only)
```

## Creating the GPFS installation table of contents file

To create the GPFS installation table of contents file:

1. Make the new image directory the current directory:  

```
cd /tmp/gpfs1pp
```
2. Use the **inutoc** . command to create a **.toc** file. The **.toc** file is used by the **installp** command.  

```
inutoc .
```

## Installing the GPFS man pages

In order to use the GPFS man pages you must install the **gpfs.docs.data** image.

The GPFS manual pages will be located at **/usr/share/man/**.

**Installation consideration:** The **gpfs.docs.data** image need not be installed on all nodes if man pages are not desired or local file system space on the node is minimal.

## Installing GPFS over a network

Install GPFS according to these directions, where *localNode* is the name of the node on which you are running:

1. If you are installing on a shared file system network, ensure the directory where the GPFS images can be found is NFS exported to all of the nodes planned for your GPFS cluster (**/tmp/gpfs.allnodes**).
2. Ensure an acceptable directory or mountpoint is available on each target node, such as **/tmp/gpfs1pp**. If there is not, create one:  

```
WCOLL=/tmp/gpfs.allnodes mmdsh "mkdir /tmp/gpfs1pp"
```
3. If you are installing on a shared file system network, to place the GPFS images on each node in your network, issue:  

```
WCOLL=/tmp/gpfs.allnodes mmdsh "mount localNode:/tmp/gpfs1pp /tmp/gpfs1pp"
```

Otherwise, issue:

```
WCOLL=/tmp/gpfs.allnodes mmdsh "rcp localNode:/tmp/gpfs1pp/gpfs* /tmp/gpfs1pp"
WCOLL=/tmp/gpfs.allnodes mmdsh "rcp localNode:/tmp/gpfs1pp/.toc /tmp/gpfs1pp"
```

4. Install GPFS on each node:  

```
WCOLL=/tmp/gpfs.allnodes mmdsh "installp -agXYd /tmp/gpfs1pp gpfs"
```

For information about using **rcp** with IBM Spectrum Scale, see “Remote file copy command” on page 161.

## Verifying the GPFS installation

Verify that the installation procedure placed the required GPFS files on each node by running the **ls1pp** command on *each* node:

```
ls1pp -l gpfs\*
```

The system returns output similar to the following:

| Fileset                       | Level     | State Description                                     |
|-------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| -----                         |           |                                                       |
| Path: /usr/lib/objrepos       |           |                                                       |
| gpfs.adv                      | 5.0.3.x   | COMMITTED GPFS Advanced Features                      |
| gpfs.base                     | 5.0.3.x   | COMMITTED GPFS File Manager                           |
| gpfs.crypto                   | 5.0.3.x   | COMMITTED GPFS Cryptographic Subsystem                |
| gpfs.ext                      | 5.0.3.x   | COMMITTED GPFS Extended Features                      |
| gpfs.gskit                    | 8.0.50-86 | COMMITTED GPFS GSKit Cryptography Runtime             |
| gpfs.compression              | 5.0.3.x   | COMMITTED GPFS Compression Libraries                  |
| gpfs.msg.en_US                | 5.0.3.x   | COMMITTED GPFS Server Messages - U.S. English         |
| gpfs.license.std              | 5.0.3.x   | COMMITTED IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition License |
|                               |           |                                                       |
| Path: /etc/objrepos           |           |                                                       |
| gpfs.base                     | 5.0.3.x   | COMMITTED GPFS File Manager                           |
|                               |           |                                                       |
| Path: /usr/share/lib/objrepos |           |                                                       |
| gpfs.docs.data                | 5.0.3.x   | COMMITTED GPFS Server Manpages and Documentation      |

The output that is returned on your system can vary depending on the edition that you have installed (IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition).

**Note:** The path returned by `lspp -l` shows the location of the package control data used by **installp**. The listed path does not show GPFS file locations. To view GPFS file locations, use the `-f` flag.

---

## Chapter 6. Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Windows nodes

There are several steps for installing GPFS on Windows nodes. The information in this topic points you to the detailed steps.

Before you begin installation, read the following:

- “Planning for GPFS” on page 149
- The IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html))
- “GPFS for Windows overview” and all of its subtopics

Do not install GPFS unless you have the prerequisites listed in “Hardware requirements” on page 149 and “Software requirements” on page 150.

The installation process includes:

1. “Installing GPFS prerequisites” on page 358
2. “Procedure for installing GPFS on Windows nodes” on page 360
3. “Configuring a mixed Windows and UNIX cluster” on page 362

To install GPFS for Windows, first configure your Windows systems as described in “Installing GPFS prerequisites” on page 358. This includes steps such as joining an Active Directory domain and installing Cygwin from the Cygwin website ([www.cygwin.com](http://www.cygwin.com)), which provides a UNIX-like environment on Windows. GPFS installation is simple once the prerequisites are completed. Finally, if your system will be part of a cluster that includes UNIX nodes, follow the steps described in “Configuring a mixed Windows and UNIX cluster” on page 362. This includes creating the GPFS Administration service, installing OpenSSH, and other requirements. Complete this process before performing configuration steps common to all GPFS supported platforms.

**Note:** Throughout this information, UNIX file name conventions are used. For example, the GPFS cluster configuration data is stored in the `/var/mmfs/gen/mmsdrfs` file. On Windows, the UNIX namespace starts under the Cygwin installation directory, which by default is `%SystemDrive%\cygwin64`, so the GPFS cluster configuration data is stored in the `C:\cygwin64\var\mmfs\gen\mmsdrfs` file.

---

### GPFS for Windows overview

GPFS for Windows participates in a new or existing GPFS cluster in conjunction with AIX and Linux systems.

Support includes the following:

- Core GPFS parallel data services
- Windows file system semantics
- A broad complement of advanced GPFS features
- User identity mapping between Windows and UNIX
- Access to GPFS 3.4 and/or later file systems

Identity mapping between Windows and UNIX user accounts is a key feature. System administrators can explicitly match users and groups defined on UNIX with those defined on Windows. Users can maintain file ownership and access rights from either platform. System administrators are not required to define an identity map. GPFS automatically creates a mapping when one is not defined.

GPFS supports the unique semantic requirements posed by Windows. These requirements include case-insensitive names, NTFS-like file attributes, and Windows file locking. GPFS provides a bridge between a Windows and POSIX view of files, while not adversely affecting the functions provided on AIX and Linux.

GPFS for Windows provides the same core services to parallel and serial applications as are available on AIX and Linux. GPFS gives parallel applications simultaneous access to files from any node that has GPFS mounted, while managing a high level of control over all file system operations. System administrators and users have a consistent command interface on AIX, Linux, and Windows. With few exceptions, the commands supported on Windows are identical to those on other GPFS platforms. See “GPFS limitations on Windows” for a list of commands that Windows clients do not support.

## GPFS support for Windows

The IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)) lists the levels of the Windows operating system that are supported by GPFS.

Limited GPFS support for the Windows platform first appeared in GPFS 3.2.1. Subsequent GPFS releases have expanded the set of available functions and features so that now most GPFS capabilities supported on the UNIX platforms are also supported on Windows.

## GPFS limitations on Windows

GPFS for Windows supports most of the GPFS features that are available on AIX and Linux, but some limitations apply.

The following limitations apply to configuring and operating a file system on a Windows node:

- File systems must have been created with GPFS 3.1.2.5 or later.
- You cannot upgrade an existing file system that was created with GPFS 3.1 or earlier.

The remaining GPFS for Windows limitations apply only to the Windows nodes in a cluster:

- The following GPFS commands are not supported on Windows:
  - **mmafm\*** commands
  - **mmapplypolicy**
  - **mmaudit\*** commands
  - **mmbackup**
  - **mmbackupconfig**, **mmrestoreconfig**
  - **mmcall\*** commands
  - **mmcdp\*** commands
  - **mces\*** commands
  - **mmcheckquota**, **mmdefedquota**, **mmquota**, **mmquota**, **mmquota**, **mmrepquota**, **mmsetquota**
  - **mmclone**
  - **mmcloud\*** commands
  - **mmdeacl**, **mmeditacl**
  - **mmhadoop\*** commands
  - **mmhealth**
  - **mmimgbackup**, **mmimgrestore**
  - **mmkeyserv**
  - **mmnetverify**
  - **mmnfs\*** commands



- **mmperfmon**, **mmpmon**
  - **mmqosnice**
  - **mmsed**
  - **mmsmb\*** commands
  - **mmsnmp\*** commands
  - **mmsysmon\*** commands
  - **mmuserauth**
  - All **GNR** commands
- The GPFS Application Programming Interfaces (APIs) are not supported on Windows.
  - The native Windows backup utility is not supported.
  - Symbolic links that are created on UNIX-based nodes are specially handled by GPFS Windows nodes; they appear as regular files with a size of 0 and their contents cannot be accessed or modified.
  - GPFS on Windows nodes attempts to preserve data integrity between memory-mapped I/O and other forms of I/O on the same computation node. However, if the same file is memory mapped on more than one Windows node, data coherency is not guaranteed between the memory-mapped sections on these multiple nodes. In other words, GPFS on Windows does not provide distributed shared memory semantics. Therefore, applications that require data coherency between memory-mapped files on more than one node might not function as expected.
  - GPFS on Windows is not supported on the AFM cluster.

## File system name considerations

GPFS file system names should be no longer than 31 characters if the file system will be mounted on a Windows node. GPFS file system names are used as Windows file system labels, and Windows limits the length of these labels to 31 characters. Any attempt to mount a file system with a long name will fail.

You can rename a file system using a command like the following:

```
mmchfs gpfs_file_system_name_that_is_too_long -W gpfs_name_1
```

## File name considerations

File names created on UNIX-based GPFS nodes that are not valid on Windows are transformed into valid short names. A name may not be valid either because it is a reserved name like NUL or COM2, or because it has a disallowed character like colon (:) or question mark (?).

See the MSDN Library description of Naming Files, Paths, and Namespaces ([msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa365247\(VS.85\).aspx](https://msdn.microsoft.com/en-us/library/aa365247(VS.85).aspx)) for complete details.

Windows applications can use short names to access GPFS files with Windows file names that are not valid. GPFS generates unique short names using an internal algorithm. You can view these short names using **dir /x** in a DOS command prompt.

Table 45 shows an example:

*Table 45. Generating short names for Windows*

| UNIX           | Windows      |
|----------------|--------------|
| foo+bar.foobar | FO~23Q_Z.foo |
| foo   bar.-bar | FO~TD}C5._ba |
| f   bar.-bary  | F_AMJ5!._ba  |

## Case sensitivity

Native GPFS is case-sensitive; however, Windows applications can choose to use case-sensitive or case-insensitive names.

This means that case-sensitive applications, such as those using Windows support for POSIX interfaces, behave as expected. Native Win32 applications (such as Windows Explorer) have only case-aware semantics.

The case specified when a file is created is preserved, but in general, file names are case insensitive. For example, Windows Explorer allows you to create a file named **Hello.c**, but an attempt to create **hello.c** in the same folder will fail because the file already exists. If a Windows node accesses a folder that contains two files that are created on a UNIX node with names that differ only in case, Windows inability to distinguish between the two files might lead to unpredictable results.

## Antivirus software

If more than one GPFS Windows node is running antivirus software that scans directories and files, shared files only need to be scanned by one GPFS node. It is not necessary to scan shared files more than once.

When you run antivirus scans from more than one node, schedule the scans to run at different times to allow better performance of each scan, as well as to avoid any conflicts that might arise because of concurrent exclusive access attempts by the antivirus software from multiple nodes. Note that enabling real-time antivirus protection for GPFS volumes could significantly degrade GPFS performance and cause excessive resource consumption.

**Tip:** Consider using a single, designated Windows node to perform all virus scans.

Latest versions of Windows such as Windows 10 come with a built-in antivirus component known as Windows Defender®. While performing real-time scanning of files, Windows Defender might memory-map these files even when they are not in use by any user application. This memory-mapping of files on GPFS file systems by Windows Defender in the background, can result in performance degradation. Therefore, it is recommended that GPFS drives or volumes be excluded from Windows Defender scans all together. Another side effect of this background memory-mapping of GPFS files by antivirus programs is that an attempt to compress or uncompress GPFS files from these Windows nodes might fail. For more information, see *File compression and memory mapping* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Differences between GPFS and NTFS

GPFS differs from the Microsoft Windows NT File System (NTFS) in its degree of integration into the Windows administrative environment, Windows Explorer, and the desktop.

The differences are as follows:

- Manual refreshes are required to see any updates to the GPFS namespace.
- You cannot use the recycle bin.
- You cannot use distributed link tracking. This is a technique through which shell shortcuts and OLE links continue to work after the target file is renamed or moved. Distributed link tracking can help you locate the link sources in case the link source is renamed or moved to another folder on the same or different volume on the same computer, or moved to a folder on any computer in the same domain.
- You cannot use NTFS change journaling. This also means that you cannot use the Microsoft Indexing Service or Windows Search Service to index and search files and folders on GPFS file systems.

GPFS does not support the following NTFS features:

- File compression (on individual files or on all files within a folder)

- Encrypted directories
- Encrypted files (GPFS file encryption is administered through GPFS-specific commands. For more information, see *Encryption* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.)
- Quota management (GPFS quotas are administered through GPFS-specific commands)
- Reparse points
- Defragmentation and error-checking tools
- Alternate data streams
- Directory Change Notification
- The assignment of an access control list (ACL) for the entire drive
- A change journal for file activity
- The scanning of all files or directories that a particular SID owns (**FSCTL\_FIND\_FILES\_BY\_SID**)
- Generation of AUDIT and ALARM events specified in a System Access Control List (SACL). GPFS is capable of storing SACL content, but will not interpret it.
- Windows sparse files API
- Transactional NTFS (also known as TxF)

## Access control on GPFS file systems

GPFS provides support for the Windows access control model for file system objects.

Each GPFS file or directory has a Security Descriptor (SD) object associated with it and you can use the standard Windows interfaces for viewing and changing access permissions and object ownership (for example, Windows Explorer Security dialog panel). Internally, a Windows SD is converted to an NFS V4 access control list (ACL) object, which ensures that access control is performed consistently on other supported operating systems. GPFS supports all discretionary access control list (DACL) operations, including inheritance. GPFS is capable of storing system access control list (SACL) objects, but generation of AUDIT and ALARM events specified in SACL contents is not supported.

An important distinction between GPFS and Microsoft Windows NT File Systems (NTFS) is the default set of permissions for the root (top-level) directory on the file system. On a typical NTFS volume, the DACL for the top-level folder has several inheritable entries that grant full access to certain special accounts, as well as some level of access to nonprivileged users. For example, on a typical NTFS volume, the members of the local group **Users** would be able to create folders and files in the top-level folder. This approach differs substantially from the traditional UNIX convention where the root directory on any file system is only writable by the local **root** superuser by default. GPFS adheres to the latter convention; the root directory on a new file system is only writable by the UNIX user **root**, and does not have an extended ACL when the file system is created. This is to avoid impacting performance in UNIX-only environments, where the use of extended ACLs is not common.

When a new GPFS file system is accessed from a Windows client for the first time, a security descriptor object is created for the root directory automatically, and it will contain a noninheritable DACL that grants full access to the local **Administrators** group and read-only access to the local **Everyone** group. This allows only privileged Windows users to create new files and folders. Because the root directory DACL has no inheritable entries, new objects will be created with a default DACL that grants local **Administrators** and **SYSTEM** accounts full access. Optionally, the local system administrator could create a subdirectory structure for Windows users, and explicitly set DACLs on new directories as appropriate (for example, giving the necessary level of access to nonprivileged users).

**Note:** Some applications expect to find NTFS-style permissions on all file systems and they might not function properly when that is not the case. Running such an application in a GPFS folder where permissions have been set similar to NTFS defaults might correct this.

---

## Installing GPFS prerequisites

This topic provides details on configuring Windows systems prior to installing GPFS.

Perform the following steps:

1. “Configuring Windows”
  - a. “Assigning a static IP address”
  - b. “Joining an Active Directory domain”
  - c. “Disabling the Windows firewall”
  - d. “Installing the Tracefmt and Tracelog programs (optional)” on page 359
2. From here on, all GPFS installation steps must be executed as a special user with Administrator privileges. Further, all GPFS administrative operations (such as creating a cluster and file systems) must also be issued as the same user. This special user will depend on your cluster type. For Windows homogeneous clusters, run GPFS commands as a member of the **Domain Admins** group or as a domain account that is a member of the local **Administrators** group. For clusters with both Windows and UNIX nodes, run GPFS commands as **root**, a special domain user account described in “Creating the GPFS administrative account” on page 363.
3. “Installing Cygwin” on page 359

See the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)) for the latest:

- Software recommendations
- Configuration information

For additional requirements when setting up clusters that contain both Windows nodes and AIX or Linux nodes, see “Configuring a mixed Windows and UNIX cluster” on page 362.

## Configuring Windows

This topic provides some details on installing and configuring Windows on systems that will be added to a GPFS cluster.

The IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)) lists the versions of the Windows operating system that are supported by GPFS.

### Assigning a static IP address

GPFS communication requires invariant static IP addresses for each GPFS node.

### Joining an Active Directory domain

All Windows systems in the same GPFS cluster should be members of the same Active Directory domain. Join these systems to the Windows domain before adding them to a GPFS cluster.

GPFS expects that all Windows nodes in a cluster are members of the same domain. This gives domain users a consistent identity and consistent file access rights independent of the system they are using. The domain controllers, which run the Active Directory Domain Services, are not required to be members of the GPFS cluster.

Refer to your Windows Server documentation for information on how to install and administer Active Directory Domain Services.

### Disabling the Windows firewall

GPFS requires that you modify the default Windows Firewall settings.

The simplest change that will allow GPFS to operate properly is to disable the firewall. Open **Windows Firewall** in the Control Panel and click **Turn Windows firewall on or off**, and select **Off** under the General tab. For related information, see *GPFS port usage* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

### Installing the Tracefmt and Tracelog programs (optional)

GPFS diagnostic tracing (**mmtracectl**) on Windows uses the Microsoft programs called **tracefmt.exe** and **tracelog.exe**. These programs are not included with Windows but can be downloaded from Microsoft. The **tracefmt.exe** and **tracelog.exe** programs are only for tracing support and are not required for normal GPFS operations.

The **tracefmt.exe** and **tracelog.exe** programs are included with the Windows Driver Kit (WDK) as well as the Windows SDK. You can download either of these packages from the Microsoft Download Center ([www.microsoft.com/download](http://www.microsoft.com/download)).

To allow GPFS diagnostic tracing on Windows using the WDK, follow these steps:

1. Download the latest version of the Windows Driver Kit (WDK) from Microsoft.
2. Install the Tools feature of the WDK on some system to obtain a copy of **tracefmt.exe** and **tracelog.exe**.
3. Locate and copy **tracefmt.exe** and **tracelog.exe** to both the **/usr/lpp/mmfs/bin** and **/usr/lpp/mmfs/win** directories to ensure **mmtracectl** properly locates these programs.

For additional information about GPFS diagnostic tracing, see *The GPFS trace facility* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

### Installing Cygwin

Cygwin is a POSIX environment available for Windows and can be downloaded from the Cygwin website ([www.cygwin.com](http://www.cygwin.com)). GPFS uses this component to support many of its administrative scripts. System administrators have the option of using either the **GPFS Admin Command Prompt** or **GPFS Admin Korn Shell** to run GPFS commands.

Cygwin must be installed before installing GPFS. It is a software package that provides a Unix-like environment on Windows and provides runtime support for POSIX applications and includes programs such as **grep**, **ksh**, **ls**, and **ps**.

When running Cygwin setup, only the standard packages are installed by default. GPFS requires installation of additional packages, which are listed in “Installing the 64-bit version of Cygwin” on page 360.

**Note:** Starting with GPFS 4.1.1, the 32-bit version of Cygwin is no longer supported for Windows nodes running GPFS. Users that are running GPFS 4.1 with the 32-bit version of Cygwin installed must upgrade to the 64-bit version of Cygwin before installing GPFS 4.1.1. For more information, see “Upgrading from the 32-bit version of Cygwin to the 64-bit version of Cygwin.” For users on GPFS releases prior to 4.1 (SUA based), see “Upgrading from GPFS 3.5” on page 408.

### Upgrading from the 32-bit version of Cygwin to the 64-bit version of Cygwin

Follow these instructions to upgrade from the 32-bit version of Cygwin to the 64-bit version of Cygwin:

1. Uninstall GPFS 4.1 and reboot.
2. Uninstall IBM GSKit for GPFS and reboot.
3. Uninstall the GPFS 4.1 license.
4. Stop and delete any Cygwin 32-bit services, such as OpenSSH, that might have been configured.
5. Do *not* uninstall the 32-bit version of Cygwin yet, or you may lose GPFS configuration information.

6. Install the 64-bit version of Cygwin using the instructions in “Installing the 64-bit version of Cygwin.”
7. Install the GPFS 4.1.1 license for the appropriate edition; for example, `gpfs.ext-4.1.1-Windows-license.msi`.
8. Install the appropriate GPFS 4.1.1 edition; for example, `gpfs.ext-4.1.1.x-Windows.msi`.
9. Install IBM GSKit for GPFS.
10. Uninstall the 32-bit version of Cygwin completely.
11. Follow the procedures in “Installing and configuring OpenSSH on Windows nodes” on page 365.

## Installing the 64-bit version of Cygwin

To install the 64-bit version of Cygwin for Windows, follow these steps:

1. Logon to the Windows node as the account you will use for GPFS administrative operations.
2. Go to the Cygwin website ([www.cygwin.com](http://www.cygwin.com)), and click on the **Install Cygwin** link in the upper-left pane.
3. Download and start the installation of the **setup-x86\_64.exe** file.
4. Follow the prompts to continue with the install. The default settings are recommended until the Select Packages dialog is displayed. Then, select the following packages (use the Search field to quickly find these packages):
  - `diffutils`: A GNU collection of diff utilities
  - `flip`: Convert text file line endings between Unix and DOS formats
  - `m4`: GNU implementation of the traditional Unix macro processor
  - `mksh`: MirBSD Korn Shell
  - `perl`: Perl programming language interpreter
  - `procps`: System and process monitoring utilities
  - `openssh`: The OpenSSH server and client programs (only required if you plan on mixing Linux, AIX and Windows nodes in the same cluster)
5. Click the **Next** button, and continue to follow the prompts to complete the installation.
6. If you are using a mixed cluster environment (Windows and Linux/AIX), follow the steps in “Installing and configuring OpenSSH on Windows nodes” on page 365.

---

## Procedure for installing GPFS on Windows nodes

IBM provides GPFS as Windows Installer packages (MSI), which allow both interactive and unattended installations. Perform the GPFS installation steps as the **Administrator** or some other member of the **Administrators** group.

Before installing GPFS on Windows nodes, verify that all the installation prerequisites have been met. For more information, see “Installing GPFS prerequisites” on page 358.

To install GPFS on a Windows node, follow these steps:

1. Run the following license installation package from the product media and accept the license:  
`gpfs.ext-5.0.x.x-Windows-license.msi` (IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition)  
 Rebooting is normally not required.
2. Download and install the latest service level of GPFS from the IBM Support Portal: Downloads for General Parallel File System ([www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Downloads/Software/Cluster\\_software/General\\_Parallel\\_File\\_System](http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Downloads/Software/Cluster_software/General_Parallel_File_System)). The GPFS package name includes the GPFS version (for example, `gpfs.ext-5.0.x.x-Windows.msi`). For the latest information on the supported Windows

operating system versions, see the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

Under some circumstances, the installation process will prompt you to reboot the systems when it is required. You do not need to install the GPFS 5.0.x.x package included on the media before installing the latest update.

3. Download and install the latest level of IBM GSKit for GPFS. GSKit (**gpfs.gskit-x.x.x.x.msi**) comes as a single package that works with the IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition.

**Note:** For this release, the IBM GSKit version must be at least 8.0.50-86 or higher.

To upgrade GPFS, do the following:

1. Uninstall your current GPFS packages (for example, `gpfs.base-4.x.x.0-Windows.msi`, `gpfs.ext-4.x.x.0-Windows.msi`, and `gpfs.gskit-8.0.50.x.msi`).
2. Reboot.
3. Install the latest PTF packages (for example, `gpfs.ext-5.0.x.x-Windows.msi`).

When upgrading, you do not need to uninstall and reinstall the license package unless you are explicitly instructed to do so by IBM. In addition, **gpfs.gskit** only needs to be upgraded if the update (zip file) contains a newer version.

For more information, refer to Chapter 3, “Steps for establishing and starting your IBM Spectrum Scale cluster,” on page 243.

The GPFS installation package provides some options that you can select by installing GPFS from a Command Prompt. Property values control the options. The command line syntax is:

```
msiexec.exe /package <Package> [Optional Parameters] [Property=Value]
```

The following property values are available:

#### **AgreeToLicense=yes**

This property applies to the license package `gpfs.ext-5.0.x-Windows-license.msi`. It allows GPFS to support an installation procedure that does not require user input. IBM recommends that you perform at least one interactive installation on a typical system before attempting an unattended installation. This will help identify any system configuration issues that could cause the installation to fail.

The following command installs GPFS without prompting you for input or generating any error dialog boxes:

```
msiexec /package gpfs.ext-5.0.x-Windows-license.msi /passive AgreeToLicense=yes
```

The **msiexec.exe** executable file supports display options other than **/passive**. See **msiexec** documentation for details.

#### **RemoteShell=no**

This property applies to the product package (for example, `gpfs.ext-5.0.x-Windows-license.msi`). It is equivalent to running **mmwinervctl set -remote-shell no**, but performs this configuration change before **mmwinerv** initially starts. This option is available to satisfy security policies that restrict network communication protocols.

You can verify that GPFS is installed correctly by opening the **Programs and Features** control panel. **IBM Spectrum Scale** should be included in the list of installed programs. The program's version should match the version of the update package.

The GPFS software license agreement is shipped and is viewable electronically. The license agreement will remain available in the %SystemDrive%\Program Files\IBM\GPFS\5.0.3.x\license directory for future access.

---

## Running GPFS commands

Once GPFS is installed, the account you use for GPFS administrative operations (such as creating a cluster and file systems) will depend on your cluster type.

For Windows clusters, run GPFS commands as a member of the **Domain Admins** group or as a domain account that is part of the local **Administrators** group. For clusters with both Windows and UNIX nodes, run GPFS commands as **root**, a special domain user account described in “Creating the GPFS administrative account” on page 363.

You must run all GPFS commands from either a **GPFS Admin Command Prompt** or a **GPFS Admin Korn Shell**. The GPFS administrative commands may not work properly if issued from the Cygwin Terminal. Open a new **GPFS Admin Command Prompt** or **GPFS Admin Korn Shell** after installing GPFS so that it uses the updated **PATH** environment variable required to execute GPFS commands.

**GPFS Admin Command Prompt** and **GPFS Admin Korn Shell** can be accessed using their desktop shortcuts or from under the **IBM GPFS** Start menu group. Each of these program links starts its respective shell using the **Run as Administrator** option.

---

## Configuring a mixed Windows and UNIX cluster

For GPFS clusters that include both Windows and UNIX nodes, this topic describes the additional configuration steps needed beyond those described in “Installing GPFS prerequisites” on page 358.

For mixed clusters, perform the following steps:

1. Optionally, install and configure identity mapping on your Active Directory domain controller (see “Identity Mapping for Unix (IDMU) / RFC 2307 Attributes”).
2. Create the root administrative account (see “Creating the GPFS administrative account” on page 363).
3. Edit the Domain Group Policy to give root the right to log on as a service (see “Allowing the GPFS administrative account to run as a service” on page 363).
4. Configure the GPFS Administration service (**mmwinserv**) to run as root (see “Configuring the GPFS Administration service” on page 364).
5. Install and configure OpenSSH (see “Installing and configuring OpenSSH on Windows nodes” on page 365).

Complete this process before performing configuration steps common to all GPFS supported platforms.

### Identity Mapping for Unix (IDMU) / RFC 2307 Attributes

- | GPFS can exploit a Windows Server feature called RFC 2307 attributes to provide consistent identities among all nodes in a cluster.

GPFS expects that all Windows nodes in a cluster are members of the same Active Directory domain. This gives domain users a consistent identity and consistent file access rights independent of the system they are using.

- | GPFS can exploit the RFC 2307 attributes for mapping users and groups between Windows and UNIX.
- | These attributes can be administered by using Identity Mapping for Unix (IDMU) from Microsoft in Windows Server versions up to and including Windows Server 2012 R2. Beginning with Windows Server 2016 (since the IDMU MMC-snap-in has been removed) you can specify these RFC 2307 attributes by using the Active Directory Users and Computers MMC Snap-in or the Active Directory Administrative



| Center. For more information, see *Configuring ID mappings in Active Directory Users and Computers for Active Directory Users and Computers (ADUC)* for instructions on editing RFC 2307 attributes in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

| The only way to achieve Windows-Unix user-mapping in GPFS is with RFC 2307 attributes. These attributes can be administered by using Identity Mapping for Unix (IMU) from Microsoft in Windows Server versions up to and including Windows Server 2012 R2. Beginning Windows Server 2016, these RFC 2307 attributes can be specified by using the Active Directory Users and Computers (ADUC) MMC Snap-in.

For more information, see *Identity management on Windows / RFC 2307 Attributes* instructions on editing IDMU or RFC 2307 attributes in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

| GPFS uses RFC 2307 attributes, specifically uidNumber, to map users and gidNumber to map groups between Windows and Unix. From the perspective of GPFS, IDMU is synonymous with RFC 2307 attributes. This means that any references to IDMU in the documentation should be interpreted as RFC 2307 attributes.

For IDMU or ADUC installation and configuration information, see *Configuring ID mappings in Active Directory Users and Computers for Active Directory Users and Computers (ADUC)* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

## Creating the GPFS administrative account

GPFS uses an administrative account in the Active Directory domain named **root** in order to interoperate with UNIX nodes in the cluster. Create this administrative account as follows:

1. Create a domain user with the logon name **root**.
2. Add user **root** to the **Domain Admins** group or to the local **Administrators** group on each Windows node.
3. In **root Properties/Profile/Home/LocalPath**, define a **HOME** directory such as **C:\Users\root\home** that does not include spaces in the path name and is not the same as the profile path.
4. Give **root** the right to log on as a service as described in “Allowing the GPFS administrative account to run as a service.”

Step 3 is required for the Cygwin environment (described in “Installing Cygwin” on page 359) to operate correctly. Avoid using a path that contains a space character in any of the path names. Also avoid using **root**'s profile path (for example, **C:\User\root**). OpenSSH requires specific permissions on this directory, which can interfere with some Windows applications.

You may need to create the **HOME** directory on each node in your GPFS cluster. Make sure that **root** owns this directory.

## Allowing the GPFS administrative account to run as a service

Clusters that depend on a **root** account to interoperate with UNIX nodes in a cluster will need to configure the GPFS Administrative Service (**mmwinsserv**) to run as the **root** account. For this, **root** needs to be assigned the right to log on as a service. See “Configuring the GPFS Administration service” on page 364 for details.

The right to log on as a service is controlled by the Local Security Policy of each Windows node. You can use the Domain Group Policy to set the Local Security Policy on all Windows nodes in a GPFS cluster.

The following procedure assigns the *log on as a service* right to an account when the domain controller is running on Windows Server 2008:

1. Open **Group Policy Management** (available under **Administrative Tools**).

2. In the console tree, expand *Forest name/Domains/Domain name/Group Policy Objects*.
3. Right click **Default Domain Policy** and select **Edit**.
4. In the console tree of the Group Policy Management Editor, expand down to **Computer Configuration/Policies/Windows Settings/Security Settings/Local Policies/User Rights Assignment**.
5. Double click the **Log on as a service policy**.
6. Check **Define these policy settings if necessary**.
7. Use **Add User or Group...** to include the *DomainName\root* account in the policy, then click **OK**.

Refer to your *Windows Server* documentation for a full explanation of Local Security Policy and Group Policy Management.

## Configuring the GPFS Administration service

GPFS for Windows includes a service called **mmwinserv**. In the Windows Services management console, this service has the name GPFS Administration. **mmwinserv** supports GPFS operations such as **autoload** and remote command execution in Windows GPFS clusters. The Linux and AIX versions of GPFS do not have a similar component. The **mmwinserv** service is used on all Windows nodes starting with GPFS 3.3.

The GPFS installation package configures **mmwinserv** to run using the default **LocalSystem** account. This account supports Windows GPFS clusters. For clusters that include both Windows and UNIX nodes, you must configure **mmwinserv** to run as **root**, the GPFS administrative account. Unlike **LocalSystem**, **root** can access the IDMU service and can access other GPFS nodes as required by some cluster configurations.

For IDMU installation and configuration information, see *Identity management on Windows* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*. For information on supporting administrative access to GPFS nodes, see the *Requirements for administering a GPFS file system* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

Before configuring **mmwinserv** to run as **root**, you must first grant **root** the right to run as a service. For details, see “Allowing the GPFS administrative account to run as a service” on page 363.

Use the GPFS command **mmwinservctl** to set and maintain the GPFS Administration service's log on account. **mmwinservctl** must be run on a Windows node. You can run **mmwinservctl** to set the service account before adding Windows nodes to a cluster. You can also use this command to change or update the account on nodes that are already in a cluster. GPFS can be running or stopped when executing **mmwinservctl**, however, refrain from running other GPFS administrative commands at the same time.

In this example, **mmwinservctl** configures three nodes before they are added to a GPFS cluster containing both Windows and UNIX:

```
mmwinservctl set -N node1,node2,node3 --account mydomain/root --password mypwd --remote-shell no
```

Whenever **root**'s password changes, the **mmwinserv** logon information needs to be updated to use the new password. The following command updates on all Windows nodes in a cluster with a new password:

```
mmwinservctl set -N all --password mynewpwd
```

As long as **mmwinserv** is running, the service will not be affected by an expired or changed password and GPFS will continue to function normally. However, GPFS will not start after a system reboot when **mmwinserv** is configured with an invalid password. If for any reason the Windows domain or root password changes, then **mmwinservctl** should be used to update the domain and password. The domain and password can also be updated on a per node basis by choosing **Administrative Tools > Computer Management > Services and Applications > Services**, and selecting **GPFS Administration**. Choose **File > Properties > Logon** and update the *<domain>\username* and the password.

For more information, see **mmwinservctl** command in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

## Installing and configuring OpenSSH on Windows nodes

If using a mixed cluster, OpenSSH must be configured on the Windows nodes. Refer to the Cygwin FAQ ([www.cygwin.com/faq.html](http://www.cygwin.com/faq.html)) and documentation on how to setup **sshd**. Replace the usage of the account **cyg\_server** in the Cygwin documentation with **root** when setting up a privileged account for **sshd**.

The following are some guidelines in addition to the Cygwin instructions on setting up **sshd**:

1. Verify that all nodes can be pinged among themselves by host name, Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN) and IP address.
2. If not using IPv6, disable it. For more information, see How to disable IPv6 or its components in Windows ([support.microsoft.com/kb/929852](http://support.microsoft.com/kb/929852)).
3. Check that **passwd** contains the privileged user that you plan to use for GPFS operations, as well as its correct home path:

```
$ cat /etc/passwd | grep "root"
```

```
root:unused:11103:10513:U-WINGPFS\root,S-1-5-21-3330551852-1995197583-3793546845-1103:/cygdrive/c/home/root:/bin/bash
```

If the user is not listed, rebuild your **passwd**:

```
mkpasswd -l -d wingpfs > /etc/passwd
```

4. From the Cygwin shell, run **/usr/bin/ssh-host-config** and respond **yes** to the prompts. When prompted to enter the value of CYGWIN for the daemon, enter **ntsec**. Specify **root** in response to the query for the new user name. You may receive the following warning:

```
***Warning: The specified account 'root' does not have the
***Warning: required permissions or group memberships. This may
***Warning: cause problems if not corrected; continuing...
```

As long as the account (in this case, **root**) is in the local Administrators group, you can ignore this warning.

5. When the installation is complete, enter the following:

```
$ net start sshd
```

```
The CYGWIN sshd service is starting.
```

```
The CYGWIN sshd service was started successfully.
```

**Note:** The OpenSSH READMEs are available at **/usr/share/doc/openssh**. Also see the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

Once OpenSSH is installed, the GPFS administrative account **root** needs to be configured so that it can issue **ssh** and **scp** commands without requiring a password and without producing any extraneous messages. This kind of passwordless access is required from any node used for GPFS administration to all other nodes in the cluster.

For additional information, see *Requirements for administering a GPFS file system* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide* and *Troubleshooting Windows problems* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

---

## Configuring the Windows HPC server

In order for Windows HPC Server to function with GPFS, disable dynamic hosts file and re-enable dynamic DNS updates by doing the following

1. On all nodes in the Windows HPC cluster, open the hosts file **%systemroot%\system32\drivers\etc\hosts** and change **ManageFile = true** to **ManageFile = false**.

2. On the HPC head node, execute the following from HPC PowerShell, assuming all nodes are part of the head node's Active Directory domain.

Go to **Start > All Programs > Microsoft HPC Pack > HPC PowerShell** and execute:

**Set-HpcNetwork -EnterpriseDnsRegistrationType WithConnectionDnsSuffix**

---

## Chapter 7. Installing Cloud services on IBM Spectrum Scale nodes

The Cloud services installation is not included in the IBM Spectrum Scale installation toolkit workflow. It needs to be installed separately on top of the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster. However, the Cloud services RPMs are available with the IBM Spectrum Scale package.

Before you begin, ensure that you have created a node class. For more information, see the *Creating a node class* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*. Also, ensure that your server meets the required prerequisites. For more information, see “Software requirements for Cloud services” on page 228

---

### Creating a user-defined node class for Transparent cloud tiering or Cloud data sharing

This topic provides step-by-step instructions for creating and configuring the required node class to specify which IBM Spectrum Scale nodes are used for Cloud services.

**Note:** You need to run this command only once on any node on the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

You can install Cloud services on a maximum of four nodes per node group (any combination of NSD or CES nodes) on the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster (which can have a maximum of four node groups). Before you install Cloud services, you need to create a node class that specifies the IP addresses (or fully qualified host names) of the nodes where the server packages are going to be installed. You can use any host name that the `-N` option accepts. For details, see *mmcrnodeclass command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

You can enable and manage independent groups of Cloud services nodes in different node classes for use with different network configurations per node class. Nodes are mutually exclusive to each node class and cannot be shared with another node class that has Cloud services nodes. For example, the node class `TCTNodeClass1` has `node1` and `node2` and the node class `TCTNodeClass2` has `node3` and `node4`. All nodes are Cloud services enabled nodes. In this case, the node class `TCTNodeClass2` cannot enable `node1` as a Cloud services node under the `TCTNodeClass2` node class because it is already marked for Cloud services usage under the `TCTNodeClass1` node class. Additionally, each group of Cloud services enabled nodes under a node class cannot share file system with Cloud services enabled nodes from a different node class. And each Cloud services enabled node under a node class is limited to use only one common file system with each node in that node class. Therefore, you must manage each group of Cloud services nodes within a node class as a pool of nodes that require a single common file system.

**Note:** It is recommended that you set up at least two nodes so that you have good availability for the service if a node were to go down. Ensure to use the GPFS cluster IP address that gets displayed when you run the `mmfsccluster` command.

To create a node class, issue a command according to this syntax:

```
mmcrnodeclass ClassName -N {Node[,Node...] | NodeFile | NodeClass}
```

For example, to create a node class called `TCTNodeClass` by using three nodes 10.10.10.10, 11.11.11.11, and 12.12.12.12, issue this command:

```
mmcrnodeclass TCTNodeClass -N 10.10.10.10,11.11.11.11,12.12.12.12
```

To verify that the node class is created, issue this command:

```
mmnlsnodeclass
```

The system displays output similar to this output:

```
Node Class Name Members
```

```
-----  
TCTNodeClass node10,node11,node12
```

**Next step:** “Installation steps”

---

## Installation steps

This topic describes the procedure for installing Cloud services on IBM Spectrum Scale nodes.

Cloud services creates the following folders after installation:

- /var/MCStore
- <filesystem>/.mcstore
- /opt/ibm/MCStore

Do not make any changes to these folders in order to avoid any undesired results.

| The Cloud services RPMs are available with the Advanced Edition, Data Management Edition, or IBM  
| Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition. You can verify this by issuing this command: **rpm -qa | grep**  
**gpfs.adv**. Depending on the target Linux distribution, the RPMs are available in the following paths  
where \*\_rpms or \*\_debs is the component specific directory:

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/\*\_rpms/rhel7
- Ubuntu 16.04 LTS: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/\*\_debs/ubuntu16
- SLES 12: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/\*\_rpms/sles12

With each build of IBM Spectrum Scale, two RPMs are available for Cloud services:

- gpfs.tct.server-x.x.x.x86\_64.rpm. This is the server package that is installed on the Cloud services nodes. These nodes must have outbound WAN connectivity to be able to support data migration between IBM  
| Spectrum Scale cluster and the cloud object storage. When installed on non-cloud gateway nodes, files  
| are recalled locally without routing the requests through the gateway nodes. To enable the  
| client-assisted recall, you must run **mmcloudgateway clientassist enable**.
- gpfs.tct.client-x.x.x.x86\_64.rpm. This is the client package that contains the Cloud services binary files (specifically the data manager commands). This package must be installed on all remaining cluster nodes to activate ILM-based file migration or file recall that is initiated from that node (every node in the cluster is safe). The client RPM is not required on the nodes where the server package is installed.

**Note:** It is important to install the client package on every node so that files that are deleted from the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster are deleted efficiently from the cloud storage tier. If this package is not installed, files are deleted less aggressively and only as a result of running the reconcile service.

**Note:** For policy-based migrations, it is recommended that the file system manager node (rather all nodes with manager roles) is installed at least with the client RPM. This ensures that if any migration request goes to the file system manager node that is not a Transparent cloud tiering node, the request is forwarded to one of the server nodes in the node class, and the migration seamlessly takes place. If the RPM is not there on the file system manager, then migration fails. Transparent cloud tiering is needed on all clients (not just for migration requests) or transparent recall does not work properly and delete processing is not handled efficiently for files transferred to the cloud.

1. Copy the server RPMs to the desired nodes.
- | 2. Install Cloud services package on each node by issuing the following command depending on your  
| architecture: **rpm -ivh gpfs.tct.server-x.x.x.x86\_64.rpm**

| **Note:** By default, the Cloud services is installed under the /opt/ibm/MCStore directory.

3. Install the client package on the desired nodes by issuing the following command depending on your OS and architecture:
  - For SLES or Red Hat Enterprise Linux: `rpm -ivh gpfs.tct.client-x.x.x.<arch>.rpm`
  - For Ubuntu Linux: `dpkg -i gpfs.tct.client-x.x.x.<arch>.deb`

---

## Setting up a Cloud services cluster

This topic provides step-by-step instructions for quickly setting up a Cloud services node class that can support Transparent cloud tiering or Cloud data sharing on the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

In the multi-node setup, a maximum of 4 of any combination of CES or NSD nodes are supported as a Cloud services node group -- a minimum of two are recommended for high availability. Data migration or recall workload is shared across all the nodes. During a transparent recall or migration, the ILM policy gathers a list of files to be migrated, and the list is divided equally among all the nodes.

**Note:** Once a multi-node setup is up and running, the Transparent cloud tiering GUI components are available on the IBM Spectrum Scale GUI.

The **mtime** attribute on the IBM Spectrum Scale file system indicates when a file is updated. For a Cloud services-managed file system, ensure that **mtime** parameter is set to "yes", so that when Cloud services internally invokes *stat()* or *fstat()* calls during migration, file system reports exact **mtime** value for a file. If **mtime** parameter is set to "no", there is a potential data loss situation, when a modified / updated co-resident file does not get migrated as a new version to the cloud. You can check the **mtime** status by using the `mmfsfs <file system> -E` command.

Perform the following steps for setting up a Cloud services cluster:

1. Install the Cloud services RPMs on the required IBM Spectrum Scale nodes. For more information, see Chapter 7, "Installing Cloud services on IBM Spectrum Scale nodes," on page 367.
2. Designate the nodes where you installed the RPMs as Cloud services nodes. For more information, see the *Designating the transparent cloud tiering nodes* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
3. Start Cloud services on all nodes. For more information, see the *Starting the Cloud services* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
4. Create a cloud account. For simpler configurations, use the built-in key manager that comes with Cloud services. Use KLM when KLM is already running on Spectrum Scale (for other reasons) or if specific security requirements that drive its usage. For more information, see the *Creating a cloud storage account* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
5. Define cloud storage access points (CSAP). For more information, see the *Defining cloud storage access points (CSAP)* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
6. Create a Cloud services. For more information, see the *Creating a Cloud services* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
7. Configure a key manager. For more information, see the *Creating a key manager* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
8. Create a container pair set and test your configuration. For more information, see the *Creating a container pair set* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
9. Make sure you back up your configuration and your key manager. For more information, see the *Backing up the Cloud services configuration* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

If you are doing Transparent cloud tiering, do the following steps to verify that the cluster is ready for transparent recall/migration based on an ILM policy:

- Create a sample policy, *migrate.policy*, and apply this policy by using the Cloud services nodes by with the command: **mmapplypolicy gpfs -P migrate.policy -N FirstCloud**

**Note:** If you administer the defaultHelperNodes settings, you do not need to specify the -N parameter to distribute workload here.

You can confirm that data migration is happening across multiple nodes by looking at the following events:

- Each Transparent cloud tiering node has policy files under /tmp.
- Each Transparent cloud tiering node starts reflecting the migration metrics for the amount of data that is passed through it.

Cloud services run maintenance automatically in maintenance windows in the background. Do not forget to review the maintenance windows and adjust them appropriately. For more information, see the Setting up maintenance tasks topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

**Note:** If you change the IP address or network settings of any of the Cloud services nodes once it is operational, do the following steps:

1. Stop the Cloud services (by using the **mmcloudgateway service stop** command), the way it is mandated to stop IBM Spectrum Scale services while you change the node IP address.
2. To change the IP address, it is recommended to follow the steps that are provided in the *Changing IP addresses and host names* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

For more information, see *Configuring and tuning your system for Cloud services* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

---

## Adding a Cloud services node to an existing Cloud services cluster

This topic describes the procedure for adding a Cloud services client or a server to an existing Cloud services cluster.

1. Add the new node to the existing node class by using the **mmchnodeclass add** command. For example, `mmchnodeclass TCTNodeClass1 add -N node5`
2. Install the Cloud services RPMs (either client or server) on the node that is added. For more information, see “Installation steps” on page 368.
3. Designate the node as Cloud services node.  
`mmchnode --cloud-gateway-enable -N node5 --cloud-gateway-nodeclass TCTNodeClass1`

For more information, see the Designating the Cloud services nodes topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

4. Start the Cloud services software on the new node by using the **mmcloudgateway service start** command.  
`mmcloudgateway service start -N node5`



---

## Chapter 8. Installing and configuring IBM Spectrum Scale management API

The IBM Spectrum Scale management API implementation is based on the IBM Spectrum Scale GUI stack. Installation and configuration of GUI sets up the API infrastructure. That is, you do not need to perform any API-specific deployment procedures.

Ensure that the following tasks are completed to start using the IBM Spectrum Scale management API to monitor and manage the IBM Spectrum Scale system:

1. Install the GUI server. Use any of the following options to install the GUI:
  - a. *Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI in IBM Spectrum Scale: Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide*
  - b. *Installing IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI by using the spectrumscale installation toolkit in IBM Spectrum Scale: Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide*
2. Initialize the GUI either by accessing the GUI through the browser or by using the `/usr/lpp/mmfs/gui/cli/initgui` command.
3. After installing the system and GUI package, you need to create the first GUI user to log in to the GUI. This user can create other GUI administrative users to perform system management and monitoring tasks. When you launch the GUI for the first time after the installation, the GUI welcome page provides options to create the first GUI user from the command-line prompt by using the following command: `/usr/lpp/mmfs/gui/cli/mkuser <user_name> -g SecurityAdmin`
4. Create new users and provide the required permissions. You can either use the **Access > GUI Users** GUI page or the `usr/lpp/mmfs/gui/cli/mkuser` command to create new users and assign roles. For more information on how to create GUI users and assigning user roles, see *Managing GUI users* section in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

Every API call to the IBM Spectrum Scale needs a valid GUI user and password. For example, `curl -k -u admin:admin001 -XGET -H content-type:application/json "https://<IP address>:443/scalemgmt/v2/info"`. The user roles assigned to the user determine actions that can be performed.

### Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale management API from 4.2.2 to 4.2.3.x

The API Version 1 was introduced in the IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.2 release and the API Version 2 is introduced in the 4.2.3 release. You cannot upgrade the IBM Spectrum Scale management API from 4.2.2 to 4.2.3 or later as the architecture and syntax are entirely different in these versions. If you are already using API in 4.2.2, uninstall the scalemgmt rpm and then install the 4.2.3 GUI rpms to start using API Version 2.



---

## Chapter 9. Installation of Active File Management (AFM)

Consider the following while installing Active File Management (AFM).

The home and cache are two separate operational clusters separated from each other through LAN or WAN. There are no special considerations on the cluster setup for using AFM functions. AFM functions are available in all editions of IBM Spectrum Scale.

The home cluster can be a legacy NAS or a cluster running GPFS version 3.5 or earlier, or IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1 or later. The cache cluster can run GPFS 3.5, or IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1 or later. User-extended attributes, ACLs and sparse files are not supported on a home cluster that is running GPFS version 3.5 or earlier, if home is a legacy NFS export.

The NFS v3 or GPFS protocol can be used for communication. The GPFS protocol can be used only if the home is a cluster running GPFS or IBM Spectrum Scale.

Nodes must be identified at the cache cluster that can act as gateway nodes. Gateway nodes should preferably be configured in the cache cluster before creating filesets and starting applications.

Nodes must be identified at the home cluster that can act as NFS servers. If the GPFS protocol is planned to be used, the home filesystem must be remote mounted on all the gateway nodes in the cache cluster. Gateway nodes and NFS servers must preferably be configured in the cache and home clusters before creating filesets and starting applications.



---

## Chapter 10. Installing and upgrading AFM-based Disaster Recovery

The primary and the secondary are two separate operational clusters separated from each other through LAN or WAN. AFM DR functions are available in Advanced Edition, Data Management Edition, or IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition. All nodes in both the primary and secondary clusters must be running the Advanced Edition, Data Management Edition, or Erasure Code Edition.

The NFS v3 or GPFS protocol can be used for communication. Similar to AFM filesets, gateway nodes and NFS servers must be planned on the primary and secondary clusters. Gateway nodes and NFS servers must preferably be configured in the primary and secondary clusters before creating filesets and starting applications. If you are planning to use GPFS protocol, the primary filesystem must be remote mounted on all the gateway nodes in the secondary cluster.

**Note:** While upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.2 or later, the primary cluster must be upgraded before considering upgrade of the secondary cluster.



---

## Chapter 11. Installing call home

The call home feature collects files, logs, traces, and details of certain system health events from different nodes and services. These details are shared with the IBM support center for monitoring and problem determination.

### Prerequisites for installing call home

The following criteria must be met to use the call home functionality on your GPFS cluster:

- | • Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.x, Ubuntu 16.04 LTS, SLES 12, and SLES 15 nodes are supported.
- | • Intel x86\_64, PowerPC LE/BE and IBM Z are supported.
- GPFS CCR (Clustered Configuration Repository) must be enabled.
- The call home node must be able to access the following IP addresses and ports. In the configurations with a proxy, these IP addresses and ports should be accessible over the proxy connection.
  - Host name: esupport.ibm.com
  - IP address: 129.42.56.189, 129.42.60.189, 129.42.54.189
  - Port number: 443

The recommendation is to open 129.42.0.0/18.

- The call home node needs to have at least 1 GB free space under the data package directory in the dataStructureDump directory. It is preferable to have 2 - 3 GB of free space. The current dataStructureDump directory can be determined using the following command:

```
mmdiag --config | grep "dataStructureDump "
```

and is tmp/mmfs by default. You can change the default value of the dataStructureDump directory using the **mmchconfig** command.

The call home node needs to have 1 GB free space under the data package directory (2 - 3 GB preferred).

- There must not be multiple nodes with the same short host name within the GPFS cluster.
- Only GPFS clusters where scp is configured as the file transfer method are supported. The file transfer method that is currently configured can be detected by running the `mmclscluster | grep "Remote file copy"` command:

```
[root@g4240-51 ~]# mmclscluster | grep "Remote file copy"
Remote file copy command: /usr/bin/scp
```

**Note:** Call home is not supported in a sudo wrapper environment.

### Steps for installing call home

The installation toolkit can be used for installing and upgrading call home RPMs, and for enabling and configuring the call home feature. For more information, see “Enabling and configuring call home using the installation toolkit” on page 319.

For information on configuring call home manually, see the *Monitoring the IBM Spectrum Scale system by using call home* section in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

- | **Note:** You must install the packages on all the nodes from which you want to upload data. The IBM
- | Spectrum Scale cluster nodes that are unsupported or not a part of a call home group do not influence
- | the call home capabilities. The GPFS cluster nodes that are unsupported, unconfigured, or do not have
- | call home installed, do not influence the call home capabilities.

- | Install the call home RPMs in the following order:
- | **Important:** If you are using Ubuntu, use the corresponding \*.deb files.
- | 1. gpfs.java-5.0.3-x.x86\_64.rpm
- | 2. gpfs.callhome-ecc-client-5.0.3-x.noarch.rpm
- | 3. gpfs.callhome-5.0.3-x
  - | a. For RHEL: gpfs.callhome-5.0.3-x.el7.noarch.rpm
  - | b. For SLES: gpfs.callhome-5.0.3-x.sles.noarch.rpm



---

## Chapter 12. Installing file audit logging

The following topics describe the requirements, limitations, and steps to install file audit logging.

For more information about enabling file audit logging, see *Configuring file audit logging* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

---

### Requirements and limitations for file audit logging

Use this information to understand the requirements and limitations for installing file audit logging.

#### RPM and package requirements

Every node that is capable of hosting any combination of brokers, ZooKeepers, producers, and consumers must have the following packages installed:

- GPFS Java (gpfs.java rpm/package)
- For RHEL, the librdkafka package requires the openssl-devel and cyrus-sasl-devel packages
- For Ubuntu, the librdkafka package requires the libssl-dev and libsasl2-dev packages
- librdkafka (gpfs.librdkafka rpm/package)
- Kafka (gpfs.kafka rpm/package)

#### OS and hardware requirements

**Note:** Not all of these requirements apply to the support of remotely mounted file systems.

- RHEL 7.x on x86, Power8 Little Endian, and Linux on IBM Z, Ubuntu 16.04 or 18.04 on x86 and Linux on IBM Z.
- Linux Kernel on all platforms must be greater than or equal to RHEL 7.0 3.10.0-123.
- Minimum of three Linux quorum nodes running on approved OS and hardware (ZooKeepers).
- Minimum of three nodes to act as message queue servers (brokers) running on approved OS and hardware.

**Note:** The nodes acting as ZooKeepers and brokers can be the same nodes (for example, a node acting as a ZooKeeper can also take on the broker role and vice versa).

- As part of the performance improvements that have come with file audit logging in the 5.0.2 release, new local disk space requirements have been implemented. There is now a 20 GB local disk space requirement (40 GB of local disk space is recommended) for all file systems enabled for file audit logging. By making this increase in local disk space required for the message queue (broker) nodes, more parallelism and therefore better performance are achieved for file audit logging.
  - When enabling file audit logging with the **mmaudit** command, it might now suggest to enable file audit logging in degraded mode if there is at least 10 GB of local disk space available, but not the required 20 GB of local disk space available on all message queue (broker) nodes. By enabling file audit logging on a file system with the **--degraded** flag, you are reducing some of the parallelism that was added to improve performance. If local disk space availability on the message queue (broker) nodes is a high commodity and the file system enabled for file audit logging will not have an extremely high amount of activity, this is a potential option for the user. One can always change to the increased amount of parallelism once local disk space is freed up on the message queue (broker) nodes. This can be accomplished by disabling file audit logging and then re-enabling it for the file system that was previously enabled with the degraded option. For more information about the **--degraded** option, see the *mmaudit* command in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

### Security requirements and limitations

- SELinux in enforcing mode is not supported. For more information about support for SELinux in IBM Spectrum Scale, see the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)) and the IBM Spectrum Scale Wiki ([www.ibm.com/developerworks/community/wikis/home/wiki/General Parallel File System \(GPFS\)](http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/community/wikis/home/wiki/General%20Parallel%20File%20System%20(GPFS))).
- Root authority is required to run **mmmsgqueue** and **mmaudit**.
- The following TCP ports must be open on all nodes in the cluster:
  - 2181, 9092, and 9093 along with the range 2888:3888
- If the message queue is disabled and then enabled again, a new set of passwords is generated to use between the message queue servers, producers, and consumers. While the producer is fetching the new password during the first IO on the given node, some file system activity might not be audited for a small window of time.

### Restrictions imposed by mixed environments and protocols

- Events generated on non-Linux nodes will not be audited.
- Events generated on SLES Linux nodes will not be audited.
- IBM Spectrum Scale file audit logging has full support for the following protocols (support for all other protocols should be considered limited):
  - NFS ganesha
  - SMB
  - Native UNIX file access
- Events are not generated at or below the `cesSharedRoot` path.

### File audit logging attributes availability and limitations

- For more information about the availability and limitations of the file audit logging attributes, see the “JSON attributes in file audit logging” on page 130 topic.

### GPFS file system requirements and limitations

- File audit logging can be enabled only for file systems that have been created or upgraded to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.0 or later.
- Space provisioning must be considered to store the generated events in the `.audit_log` fileset.
- The `.audit_log` fileset is protected from tampering. It cannot be easily deleted to free up space in the file system. This is done by creating the fileset in the IAM noncompliant mode, which allows expiration dates to be set on the files containing the audit records within the fileset.
- Events are not generated for file system activity within the file audit logging fileset itself.

### GPFS and spectrumscale functional limitations

- The **mmrestorefs** command is not supported when restoring to a file system that contains a file audit Logging fileset.
- Conversion of a file audit logging fileset to AFM DR is not supported.

### Miscellaneous requirements

- File audit logging is available in the IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition, IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition, or IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition.

---

## Requirements for using file audit logging with remotely mounted file systems

Use this information to determine the requirements for using file audit logging with remotely mounted file systems.

All clusters that own or access file systems that are being audited by file audit logging through remote mounts must meet the following requirements:

- All clusters must be at IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.2 or later.
  - For any cluster that has been upgraded to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.2 or later, the **mmchconfig release=LATEST** command must be executed.
  - Any file system that will be audited must be at IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.2 or later. If upgraded, the **mmchfs -V full** command must be run after the cluster has been installed at or upgraded to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.2 or later.
  - The message queue must be enabled on the cluster that owns the file system. In addition, the **mmmsgqueue** command can only be run on clusters that own file systems with file audit logging enabled.
  - The **mmaudit** command can only be run on the cluster that owns the file system with file audit logging enabled.
- | • Clusters that are remotely mounting file systems with file audit logging enabled must be upgraded before the owning cluster.

| **Note:** If events from nodes that have the audited file system remotely mounted are not being received and all clusters and file systems are at the required levels, run the following command on the cluster that owns the file system with file audit logging enabled:

| `mmaudit all upgradePolicies`

---

## Manually installing file audit logging

Use this information to manually install file audit logging on your system.

If you do not have three protocol nodes, you do not want to use protocol nodes as your message queue servers, or you want the flexibility of using the file audit logging CLI commands, the following steps can be performed to provide access to the most customizable setup.

**Important:** Before you can install file audit logging, you must have the required packages for IBM Spectrum Scale installed on the node.

1. Ensure that the following two software packages (based on your OS) are installed on every node in the cluster that acts as a broker, ZooKeeper, producer, or any combination of the three.

- For Red Hat Enterprise Linux:
  - `gpfs.kafka-5.0*.rpm`
  - `gpfs.librdkafka-5.0*.rpm`

These packages are available in `/usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_rpms/rhel7`.

- For Ubuntu Linux:
  - `gpfs.kafka-5.0*.deb`
  - `gpfs.librdkafka-5.0*.deb`

These packages are available in `/usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_debs/ubuntu16`.

**Note:**

- For more information, see “Requirements and limitations for file audit logging” on page 379.
  - If you are only installing the packages for file audit logging on existing IBM Spectrum Scale nodes and this is not part of a cluster installation or upgrade, you must shut down and then restart the daemon in order for the producer to be able to load the required library.
2. Use the **mmmsgqueue enable -N <Nodes>** command where **<Nodes>** is one of the following options:
    - A comma-separated list of at least three qualifying nodes.
    - The full path to a file that contains at least three qualifying nodes with each node on a separate line.

- An existing node class that contains at least three qualifying nodes.

**Note:** This step will make the message queue use eligible Linux quorum nodes as ZooKeepers and the nodes specified by the **-N** option as message queue servers/brokers.

3. After the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is available and the file systems are mounted, use the **mmaudit** command for each file system that you want to enable for file audit logging.

**Note:** By using the CLI command versus the installation toolkit, you have more options including the ability to choose different devices to host the audit fileset.

For more information about enabling file audit logging, see *Configuring file audit logging* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

Once you have enabled file audit logging for the desired file systems, the audit information is written to the defined audit filesets as described in the “Introduction to file audit logging” on page 127.

If you would prefer to use the installation toolkit instead, see “Enabling and configuring file audit logging using the installation toolkit” on page 317.

---

## Reinstalling file audit logging

Use this information to ensure a clean reinstall of file audit logging.

These steps assume that you have a working IBM Spectrum Scale cluster running 5.0.1 or later, that file audit logging is enabled, and that you have access to the installation RPMs (for example, `gpfs.kafka-5.0.x-x.ppc64le.rpm` and `gpfs.librdkafka-5.0.x-x.ppc64le.rpm`) because you will not be able to run file audit logging with the directories removed unless you do a complete reinstall of the RPMs.

### Note:

- The listed RPMs are examples for the PPC LE platform. The package names are slightly different for other operating systems and platforms.
  - Performing the following steps will remove the configuration and logs entirely.
1. Run the following command for all file systems that are enabled for file audit logging. Substitute the file system name in the command:  
`mmaudit <file system> disable`
  2. Run the following command to disable the message queue and remove the configuration:  
`mmmsgqueue config --remove`
  3. Run the following command:  
`mmdsh -N all rm -rf /opt/kafka`
  4. Remove the `gpfs.librdkafka` and `gpfs.kafka` packages from all nodes in the cluster.
  5. You are now ready to install file audit logging. For more information, see “Manually installing file audit logging” on page 381 or “Enabling and configuring file audit logging using the installation toolkit” on page 317.

---

## Chapter 13. Installing watch folder

The following topics describe the requirements, limitations, and steps to install watch folder.

---

### Requirements for watch folder

Use this information to understand the requirements for watch folder.

#### RPM and package requirements

Every node that is capable of hosting any combination of brokers, ZooKeepers, producers, and consumers must have the following packages installed:

- GPFS Java (gpfs.java rpm/package)
- For RHEL, the librdkafka package requires the openssl-devel and cyrus-sasl-devel packages
- For Ubuntu, the librdkafka package requires the libssl-dev and libsasl2-dev packages
- librdkafka (gpfs.librdkafka rpm/package)
- Kafka (gpfs.kafka rpm/package)

#### OS and hardware requirements

- RHEL 7.x on x86, Power8 Little Endian, and Linux on IBM Z, Ubuntu 16.04/16.04.1 or 18.04/18.04.1 on x86 and Linux on IBM Z.
- Linux Kernel on all platforms must be greater than or equal to RHEL 7.0 3.10.0-123.
- A minimum of three Linux quorum nodes running on approved OS and hardware (ZooKeepers).
- A minimum of three nodes to act as message queue servers (brokers) running on approved OS and hardware.

**Note:** The nodes acting as ZooKeepers and brokers can be the same nodes (for example, a node acting as a ZooKeeper can also take on the broker role and vice versa).

#### Security requirements and limitations

- SELinux in enforcing mode is not supported. For more information about support for SELinux in IBM Spectrum Scale, see the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)) and the IBM Spectrum Scale Wiki ([www.ibm.com/developerworks/community/wikis/home/wiki/General Parallel File System \(GPFS\)](http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/community/wikis/home/wiki/General%20Parallel%20File%20System%20(GPFS))).
- Root authority is required to run **mmmsgqueue** and **mmwatch**.
- The following TCP ports must be open on all nodes in the cluster:
  - 2181, 9092, and 9093 along with the range 2888:3888

#### GPFS file system requirements and limitations

- Watch folder can be enabled only for file systems that have been created or upgraded to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.2 or later with a file system version on 20.01.

#### Miscellaneous requirements

- Watch folder is available in the IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition, IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition, or IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition.

---

## Watch folder limitations

Use this information to learn about watch folder's limitations.

Watch folder has the following limitations:

- A watch can only be setup on a file system that belongs to the owning cluster.
- A maximum of 25 watches per file system and 100 per cluster are permitted.
- Watches on NFSv3 are not supported.
- There is limited support for NFSv4. Due to the internal workings of NFS, consistent events cannot be provided. For instance, you might not see **IN\_CLOSE\_WRITE**, **IN\_CLOSE\_NOWRITE**, **IN\_OPEN**, or **IN\_ACCESS** events consistently.
- Event delivery is not guaranteed. In case of a node failure, daemon failure, or broker failures, events might be lost. This is not an all-inclusive list.
- For **IN\_ATTRIB**, an event is only generated if file attributes change. For instance, you will receive an event when you use **chmod** to change the attributes of a file, but no events if the attributes do not change.
- Integration of the **mmhealth** command with watch folder is not supported.
- To enable watch folder on an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster that was upgraded to 5.0.2 from 5.0.1.x with the message queue enabled, you will have to disable then re-enable the message queue after the completed upgrade to finish the configuration. To disable then re-enable the message queue, you will have to disable file audit logging on all file systems. Take note of what your file audit logging configuration is with **mmaudit all list** then proceed to run **mmaudit <device> disable** for each of the audited file systems. Then run the **mmmsgqueue disable** command followed by the **mmmsgqueue enable <device> enable** command using the configuration parameters you previously gathered.
- Watch folder does not support the Object protocol.
- Running a watch while also having Transparent cloud tiering enabled on a folder might produce inconsistent events for the watch. Running Transparent cloud tiering and watch folder on the same folder, filesets, or inodespaces is not supported.

### SMB and watch folder behavior

The SMB protocol is supported with watch folder; however, when using SMB clients, the events might not always reflect what the user is doing. Due to the nature of SMB client applications such as directory browsers (Windows Explorer or Mac Finder), antivirus tools, and photo tools that generate thumbnails and previews, SMB requests could result in unexpected watch folder events. There could be more **IN\_ISDIR**, **IN\_OPEN**, **IN\_CLOSE\_NOWRITE**, and **IN\_ISDIR**. Using a **tcpdump**, you can see that there are many more requests and responses from the Windows client itself:

```
# tshark -r tcpdump.pcap smb2
Running as user "root" and group "root". This could be dangerous.
1 0 1.1.1.1 -> 2.2.2.2 SMB2 212 Create Request File: ?
2 0 2.2.2.2 -> 1.1.1.1 SMB2 244 Create Response File:
3 0 1.1.1.1 -> 2.2.2.2 SMB2 277 GetInfo Request FS_INFO/SMB2_FS_INFO_01 File:
;GetInfo Request FS_INFO/SMB2_FS_INFO_05 File:
4 0 2.2.2.2 -> 1.1.1.1 SMB2 252 GetInfo Response;GetInfo Response
5 0 1.1.1.1 -> 2.2.2.2 SMB2 148 Close Request File:
6 0 2.2.2.2 -> 1.1.1.1 SMB2 184 Close Response
8 2 1.1.1.1 -> 2.2.2.2 SMB2 276 Create Request File: New Text Document.txt
9 2 2.2.2.2 -> 1.1.1.1 SMB2 133 Create Response, Error: STATUS_OBJECT_NAME_NOT_FOUND
10 2 1.1.1.1 -> 2.2.2.2 SMB2 332 Create Request File: New Text Document.txt
12 2 2.2.2.2 -> 1.1.1.1 SMB2 300 Create Response File: New Text Document.txt
13 2 2.2.2.2 -> 1.1.1.1 SMB2 133 Notify Response, Error: STATUS_NOTIFY_ENUM_DIR
15 2 1.1.1.1 -> 2.2.2.2 SMB2 156 Notify Request
17 2 2.2.2.2 -> 1.1.1.1 SMB2 133 Notify Response, Error: STATUS_PENDING
18 2 1.1.1.1 -> 2.2.2.2 SMB2 262 Find Request SMB2_FIND_ID_BOTH_DIRECTORY_INFO Pattern:
*;Find Request SMB2_FIND_ID_BOTH_DIRECTORY_INFO Pattern: *
19 2 2.2.2.2 -> 1.1.1.1 SMB2 2292 Find Response SMB2_FIND_ID_BOTH_DIRECTORY_INFO Pattern:
*;Find Response, Error: STATUS_NO_MORE_FILES SMB2_FIND_ID_BOTH_DIRECTORY_INFO Pattern: *
21 6 1.1.1.1 -> 2.2.2.2 SMB2 340 Create Request File: New Text Document (2).txt
```

```

22 6 2.2.2.2 -> 1.1.1.1 SMB2 300 Create Response File: New Text Document (2).txt
23 6 2.2.2.2 -> 1.1.1.1 SMB2 133 Notify Response, Error: STATUS_NOTIFY_ENUM_DIR
25 6 1.1.1.1 -> 2.2.2.2 SMB2 156 Notify Request
26 6 2.2.2.2 -> 1.1.1.1 SMB2 133 Notify Response, Error: STATUS_PENDING
27 6 1.1.1.1 -> 2.2.2.2 SMB2 262 Find Request SMB2_FIND_ID_BOTH_DIRECTORY_INFO Pattern:
    *;Find Request SMB2_FIND_ID_BOTH_DIRECTORY_INFO Pattern: *
28 6 2.2.2.2 -> 1.1.1.1 SMB2 2452 Find Response SMB2_FIND_ID_BOTH_DIRECTORY_INFO Pattern:
    *;Find Response, Error: STATUS_NO_MORE_FILES SMB2_FIND_ID_BOTH_DIRECTORY_INFO Pattern: *

```

The client issues a **CREATE** to create a file. That triggers a **NOTIFY** back to the client, which in turn triggers a directory listing (to find the request in the trace). This behavior will not affect events like **IN\_CLOSE\_WRITE**, **IN\_DELETE**, or **IN\_MODIFY**. Those will still have a one-to-one expected relationship.

### NFS and watch folder behavior

NFS-Ganesha uses three kinds of open file descriptors:

- Global file descriptors: Lifetime of global file descriptors depend on cache settings. These global file descriptors should be closed by a reaper thread after 90 seconds.
- Temporary file descriptors: Lifetime of a temporary file descriptor is short, usually after one write/read.
- State file descriptors: State file descriptors are opened because of an open request and are closed when an application closes the file. This is only used in NFSv4 protocol.

When a client opens a file, NFS-Ganesha might open more than one file descriptor. For example, Ganesha might open a state file descriptor and a global file descriptor for non-state related operations. In some cases, you might see more if a temporary file descriptor is used.

The following example is of running the NFSv4 IO:

```

1 create, 100 write, 1 delete:
WRITE: 100, READ: 0, MOVE: 0, CREATE: 1, CHMOD: 0, REMOVE: 1
Actual IN_ATTRIB events do match expected!
Actual: 1, Expected: 1
Actual IN_CLOSE_NOWRITE events do match expected!
Actual: 0, Expected: 0
Actual IN_CLOSE_WRITE events do match expected!
Actual: 101, Expected: 101
Actual IN_CREATE events do match expected!
Actual: 1, Expected: 1
Actual IN_DELETE events do match expected!
Actual: 1, Expected: 1
Actual IN_MODIFY events do match expected!
Actual: 101, Expected: 101
Actual IN_OPEN events do not match expected!
Actual: 202, Expected: 101

```

There were 202 **IN\_OPEN** events as a result of the open calls made for the different file descriptors.

This behavior will lead to inconsistencies with file opens versus file closes, but the inconsistencies will correlate to the **IN\_CLOSE\_NOWRITE** event rather than the **IN\_CLOSE\_WRITE** event. Due to NFS client caching, the watch folder feature will not capture all read (**IN\_ACCESS**) events performed on a file. Disabling attribute caching (**noac**) on the NFS mount will not solve the issue. To avoid this issue, applications can open their files with the **O\_DIRECT** flag to disable data caching entirely. Not utilizing data caching might affect performance.

---

## Manually installing watch folder

Use this information to manually install watch folder.

Watch folder uses Kafka to collect file access events from across IBM Spectrum Scale nodes. Therefore, you will need to install the Kafka packages and set up the message queue.

Perform the following steps to manually install the Kafka packages to enable the message queue for watch folder:

**Note:** In this example, the RPMs are being installed, but a similar process would be followed to install the DEB packages for Ubuntu.

1. Go to `/usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.0/gpfs_rpms/rhel7` to install the packages.
2. Install the following Kafka packages using the **yum install** command:

```
gpfs.librdkafka-5.0.3-*.x86_64.rpm  
gpfs.kafka-5.0.3-*.x86_64.rpm
```

3. Run the following command to set up the message queue:

```
mmmsgqueue enable -N <node1, node2, node3>
```

**Note:** You must pass in three or more nodes.

4. Check the status of the message queue with the following command:  

```
mmmsgqueue status
```
5. To test watch folder, go to `/usr/lpp/mmfs/samples/util` and locate the `tswf.C` program.

**Note:** This is a sample program that IBM has provided to set up watches on a single file system.

6. To build the code, run the **make** command while inside the `/usr/lpp/mmfs/samples/util` directory. See the following example:

```
# ./tswf
```

Use the following command:

```
tswf {path [-w i|f|d]} [-e <event>] [-n num] [-o output-file]
```

Where **i** is inode space, **f** is filesset, and **d** is directory, and where **<event>** can be one or more of the following options:

```
IN_ACCESS, IN_ATTRIB, IN_CLOSE_NOWRITE, IN_CLOSE_WRITE,  
IN_CREATE, IN_DELETE, IN_DELETE_SELF  
IN_MODIFY, IN_MOVE_SELF, IN_MOVED_FROM  
IN_MOVED_TO, IN_OPEN,
```

For more information, see *Performing a watch with watch folder* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.



---

## Chapter 14. Installing clustered watch

The following topics describe the requirements, limitations, and steps to install clustered watch.

For more information about clustered watch, see “Introduction to clustered watch” on page 133.

---

### Requirements and limitations for clustered watch

Use this information to understand the requirements and limitations for installing clustered watch.

#### RPM and package requirements

Every node that is capable of hosting any combination of brokers, ZooKeepers, producers, and conduit consumers must have the following packages installed:

- GPFS™ Java™ (gpfs.java rpm/package).
- For RHEL, the librdkafka package requires the openssl-devel and cyrus-sasl-devel packages.
- For Ubuntu, the librdkafka package requires the libssl-dev and libsasl2-dev packages.
- librdkafka (gpfs.librdkafka rpm/package).
- Kafka (gpfs.kafka rpm/package).

#### OS and hardware requirements

**Note:** Not all of these requirements apply to the support of remotely mounted file systems.

- RHEL 7.x on x86, Power8 Little Endian, and Linux on IBM® Z, Ubuntu 16.04 or 18.04 on x86 and Linux on IBM Z.
- A minimum of three Linux quorum nodes running on approved OS and hardware (ZooKeepers).
- A minimum of three nodes to act as message queue servers (brokers) running on approved OS and hardware.

**Note:**

- Five nodes to act as the message queue servers (brokers) is recommended.
- The nodes that act as ZooKeepers and brokers can be the same nodes (for example, a node acting as a ZooKeeper can also take on the broker role and vice versa).
- There is now a 20 GB local disk space requirement (40 GB of local disk space is recommended) for all message queue (broker) nodes per clustered watch that is enabled.
- When enabling a clustered watch with the **mmwatch** command, it might suggest that you enable clustered watch in degraded mode if there is at least 10 GB of local disk space available, but not the required 20 GB of local disk space available on all message queue (broker) nodes. By enabling a clustered watch with the **--degraded** flag, you are reducing some of the parallelism that provides improved performance. In addition, by providing less local disk space for the Kafka logs and the subsequent performance degradation, there is increased risk that notifications might be dropped before they are committed to the message queue. If local disk space availability on the message queue (broker) nodes is a high commodity and the file system associated with the clustered watch will not have an extremely high amount of activity, this is a potential option for the user. You can always change to the increased amount of parallelism once local disk space is freed up on the message queue (broker) nodes. This can be accomplished by disabling the clustered watch and then re-enabling it without the **--degraded** option. For more information about the **--degraded** option, see the *mmwatch* command in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

#### Security requirements and limitations

- SELinux in enforcing mode is not supported. For more information about support for SELinux in IBM Spectrum Scale, see the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)) and the IBM Spectrum Scale Wiki ([www.ibm.com/developerworks/community/wikis/home/wiki/General Parallel File System \(GPFS\)](http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/community/wikis/home/wiki/General%20Parallel%20File%20System%20(GPFS))).
- Root authority is required to run **mmmsgqueue** and **mmwatch**.
- The following TCP ports must be open on all nodes in the cluster:
  - 2181, 9092, and 9093 along with the range 2888:3888
- If the message queue is disabled and then enabled again, a new set of passwords is generated to use between the message queue servers, producers, and conduit consumers. While the producer is fetching the new password during the first IO on the given node, some file system activity might not generate events for a small window of time.

#### **Restrictions imposed by mixed environments and protocols**

- Events will not be generated on non-Linux nodes.
- Events will not be generated on SLES Linux nodes.
- IBM Spectrum Scale clustered watch has full support for the following protocols (support for all other protocols should be considered limited):
  - NFS-Ganesha
  - SMB
  - Native UNIX file access

#### **Clustered watch attributes**

For more information about the availability and limitations of the clustered watch attributes, see “JSON attributes in clustered watch” on page 137.

#### **GPFS file system requirements and limitations**

- Clustered watch can be enabled only for file systems that have been created or upgraded to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.2 or later.
- When resuming a suspended clustered watch, the watch might send duplicate events for file accesses that happened while the watch was suspended. External consumers should be able to handle duplicate events.

#### **Miscellaneous requirements, limitations, and recommendations**

- Clustered watch is available in the IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition, IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition, or IBM Spectrum Scale Erasure Code Edition.
- Only five cluster watches are supported per cluster.
- A minimum of 6 GB RAM must be available per clustered watch per message queue (broker) node.

**Note:** IBM Spectrum Scale will not verify that your nodes meet this requirement. You must know if your nodes have sufficient RAM before enabling clustered watch. If there is an insufficient amount of RAM, the message queue performance might degrade and cause notifications to be dropped.

- Watches encompassing file audit logging or CES filesets and Transparent cloud tiering directory will generate events when the components write to their corresponding logs. For example, if a file system watch is set up for a file system with file audit logging enabled, then the watch will generate events for file audit logging events in the audit fileset.
- It is recommended that the external Kafka sink have as many brokers as your IBM Spectrum Scale message queue.

**Note:**

- For more information about setting up a basic external sink to push events to, see <https://kafka.apache.org/quickstart>.
- If you want to use a specific network interface for the brokers in the external Kafka sink, specify the **advertised.listeners** configuration parameter for the brokers with the IP address on the specified network interface card.

---

## Requirements for using clustered watch with remotely mounted file systems

Use this information to determine the requirements for using clustered watch with remotely mounted file systems.

All clusters that own or access file systems that are utilizing clustered watch through remote mounts must meet the following requirements:

- All clusters must be at IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.3 or later.
- For any cluster that has been upgraded to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.3 or later, the **mmchconfig release=LATEST** command must be executed.
- Any file system that will be watched must be at IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.2 or later. If upgraded, the **mmchfs -V** full command must be run after the cluster has been installed at or upgraded to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.3 or later.
- The message queue must be enabled on the cluster that owns the file system. In addition, the **mmmsgqueue** command can only be run on clusters that own file systems with file audit logging enabled.
- The **mmwatch** command can only be run on the cluster that owns the file system that is utilizing clustered watch.
- Clusters that are remotely mounting file systems that are utilizing clustered watch must be upgraded before the owning cluster.

---

## Manually installing clustered watch

Use this information to manually install clustered watch on your system.

If you do not have three protocol nodes, you do not want to use protocol nodes as your message queue servers, or you want the flexibility of using the clustered watch CLI commands, the following steps can be performed to provide access to the most customizable setup.

**Important:** Before you can install clustered watch, you must have the required packages for IBM Spectrum Scale installed on the node.

Ensure that the following two software packages (based on your OS) are installed on every node in the cluster that acts as a broker, ZooKeeper, producer, or any combination of the three.

- For Red Hat Enterprise Linux:
  - `gpfs.kafka-5.0.3*.rpm`
  - `gpfs.librdkafka-5.0.3*.rpm`

**Note:** These packages are available in `/usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/gpfs_rpms/rhel7`.

- For Ubuntu Linux:
  - `gpfs.kafka-5.0.3*.deb`
  - `gpfs.librdkafka-5.0.3*.deb`

**Note:** These packages are available in `/usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/gpfs_debs/ubuntu16`.

**Note:** For more information, see “Requirements and limitations for clustered watch” on page 387.

- | 1. If you are only installing the packages for clustered watch on existing IBM Spectrum Scale nodes and this is not part of a cluster installation or upgrade, you must shut down and then restart the daemon in order for the producer to be able to load the required library.
  - | 2. Use the **mmmsgqueue enable -N <Nodes>** command where **<Nodes>** is one of the following options:
    - | • A comma-separated list of at least three qualifying nodes.
    - | • The full path to a file that contains at least three qualifying nodes with each node on a separate line.
    - | • An existing node class that contains at least three qualifying nodes.
- | **Note:** This step will make the message queue use eligible Linux quorum nodes as ZooKeepers and the nodes specified by the **-N** option as message queue servers (brokers).
- | 3. After the IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is available and the file systems are mounted, use the **mmwatch** command for each file system that you want to enable for file audit logging.
- | **Note:** For more information about enabling a clustered watch, see the *mmwatch command* in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

---

## Chapter 15. Steps to permanently uninstall GPFS

GPFS maintains a number of files that contain configuration and file system related data. Since these files are critical for the proper functioning of GPFS and must be preserved across releases, they are not automatically removed when you uninstall GPFS.

Follow these steps if you do not intend to use GPFS on any of the nodes in your cluster and you want to remove all traces of GPFS:

**Attention:** After following these steps and manually removing the configuration and file system related information, you will permanently lose access to all of your current GPFS data.

1. Unmount all GPFS file systems on all nodes by issuing the **mmumount all -a** command.
2. Issue the **mmdeifs** command for each file system in the cluster to remove GPFS file systems.
3. Issue the **mmdeinsd** command for each NSD in the cluster to remove the NSD volume ID from the device.

If the NSD volume ID is not removed and the disk is again used with GPFS at a later time, you receive an error message when you specify the **mmcrnsd** command. For more information, see *NSD creation fails with a message referring to an existing NSD* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

4. Issue the **mmshutdown -a** command to shutdown GPFS on all nodes.
5. Uninstall GPFS from each node:
  - For your Linux nodes, run the de-installation program to remove GPFS for the correct version of the packages for your hardware platform and Linux distribution. For example, on SLES and Red Hat Enterprise Linux nodes:

```
rpm -e gpfs.crypto (IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data
Management Edition only)
rpm -e gpfs.adv (IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data
Management Edition only)
rpm -e gpfs.gpl
rpm -e gpfs.license.xx
rpm -e gpfs.msg.en_US
rpm -e gpfs.compression
rpm -e gpfs.base
rpm -e gpfs.docs
rpm -e gpfs.gskit
```

On Ubuntu Linux nodes:

```
dpkg -P gpfs.crypto (IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data
Management Edition only)
dpkg -P gpfs.adv (IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data
Management Edition only)
dpkg -P gpfs.gpl
dpkg -P gpfs.license.xx
dpkg -P gpfs.msg.en-us
dpkg -P gpfs.compression
dpkg -P gpfs.base
dpkg -P gpfs.docs
```

```
dpkg -P gpfs.gskit
```

- For your AIX nodes:

```
installp -u gpfs
```
- For your Windows nodes, follow these steps:
  - a. Open **Programs and Features** in the Control Panel.
  - b. Uninstall **IBM General Parallel File System**.
  - c. Reboot the system.
  - d. From a Command Prompt, run the following command:

```
sc.exe delete mmwinserv
```

6. Remove the **/var/mmfs** and **/usr/lpp/mmfs** directories.
7. Remove all files that start with **mm** from the **/var/adm/ras** directory.
8. Remove **/tmp/mmfs** directory and its content, if present.

---

## Cleanup procedures required if reinstalling with the installation toolkit

Before you can reinstall with the installation toolkit, you must perform some cleanup procedures first.

You can use the following procedures to clean up various stages of the previous GPFS installation and protocols deployment.

### Starting the cleanup process

1. Clean up the installer directory by issuing the following command:

```
mmsh -N NodeList rm -rf /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x
```

**Note:** The installer directory in this command depends upon the release version.

2. Check **/etc/resolv.conf** for any changes that pointed the authentication directory to DNS, and remove them.
3. If the object protocol was enabled and storage policies were created, use the **mmobj policy list -v** command and save the output list before you execute the **mmces service disable OBJ** command.

### Cleaning up the authentication configurations

Use these commands to completely remove the current authentication configuration for all protocols, NFS/SMB only, or Object only. Be aware that doing so may cause loss of access to previously written data.

1. Remove the configurations. To do so, issue the following commands:

```
mmuserauth service remove --data-access-method file  
mmuserauth service remove --data-access-method object
```

2. Delete the ID mapping information when authentication was configured with AD. To do so, use the following command.

**Note:** Once this ID mapping information is deleted, you might not be able to access existing files (or you might experience other unforeseen access issues), so do this only if you do not need access to existing data.

```
mmuserauth service remove --data-access-method file --idmapdelete
```

### Disabling CES

Disable CES on every node *nodeNameX*. To do so, issue the following command:

```
mmchnode -N nodeNameX --ces-disable
```

## Protocol cleanup steps

1. Use the following steps to clean up some of the object state on the system:

```
mmdsh -N cesNodes systemctl stop postgresql-obj
rm -rf path_to_cesSharedRoot/object/keystone
```

Delete the objectization temp directory. In the following example, the temp directory was created in filesystem fs1 at /ibm/fs1/ibmobjectizer/tmp:

```
rm -rf /ibm/fs1/ibmobjectizer/tmp
```

2. Remove the fileset created for object.

In the following example, the configured fileset object\_fileset in file system fs1 was linked at /gpfs/fs1.

```
mmfsfileset fs1
mmunlinkfileset fs1 object_fileset
mmdelfileset fs1 object_fileset -f
```

3. Remove any fileset created for an object storage policy.

Run the **mmobj policy list -v** command. If for some reason **mmobj policy list -v** cannot be executed (For example, if the Object Protocol or CES was already disabled) or you cannot detect which filesets are used for object storage policies, contact the IBM Support Center.

For example:

If the **mmobj policy list** returned the following and the filesets got created in file system fs1:

| Index       | Name         | Deprecated | Fileset         | Fileset Path                       | Functions              | Function Details |
|-------------|--------------|------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------|
| 0           | SwiftDefault |            | object_fileset  | /ibm/cesSharedRoot/object_fileset  |                        |                  |
| 11751509160 | sof-policy1  |            | obj_sof-policy1 | /ibm/cesSharedRoot/obj_sof-policy1 | file-and-object-access | regions="1"      |
| 11751509230 | mysofpolicy  |            | obj_mysofpolicy | /ibm/cesSharedRoot/obj_mysofpolicy | file-and-object-access | regions="1"      |
| 11751510260 | Test19       |            | obj_Test19      | /ibm/cesSharedRoot/obj_Test19      |                        | regions="1"      |

Use the following commands for each row except the first:

```
mmunlinkfileset fs1 sof-policy1
mmdelfileset fs1 sof-policy1 -f
```

4. Clean up installer remnants. To do so, issue the following command:

```
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /root/.chef
```

5. Clear the **cesSharedRoot** configuration by issuing the following command:

```
mmchconfig cesSharedRoot=DEFAULT
```

6. Check your recent package installs to determine which packages need to be removed by issuing the following commands:

### RHEL 7.x and SLES 12

```
rpm -qa --last|more
```

### Ubuntu 16.04 and 18.04

```
dpkg -l
```

Once you have determined which packages need to be removed, do so by issuing the following commands, as needed:

### RHEL 7.x and SLES 12

```
mmdsh -N NodeList yum erase gpfs.smb nfs-ganesha-mount \
nfs-ganesha-vfs PyQt4 nfs-ganesha-utils phonon-backend-gstreamer phonon sip qt-x11 kde-filesystem \
qt qt-settings libmng nfs-ganesha-proxy nfs-ganesha-nullfs nfs-ganesha-gpfs nfs-ganesha chef -y
```

```
mmdsh -N NodeList yum erase python-webob MySQL-python mariadb-server perl-DBD-MySQL mariadb \
python-futures python-warlock python-jsonpatch python-jjsonschema python-jsonpointer python-cmd2 \
python-cliff pyparsing memcached python-oslo-utils python-oslo-serialization python-oslo-il8n \
python-babel babel python-keyring python-stevedore python-pytablewriter python-pbr python-oslo-config \
python-netaddr python-iso8601 python-dnspython python-urllib3 python-six python-requests python-paste-deploy \
python-tempita python-paste python-netifaces python-simplejson python-greenlet python-eventlet -y
```

```
mmdsh -N NodeList yum erase gpfs.smb gpfs.smb-debuginfo sssd-ipa sssd python-sssdconfig sssd-proxy \
sssd-ldap sssd-krb5 libipa_hbac sssd-krb5-common sssd-common-pac sssd-ad sssd-common cyrus-sasl-gssapi c-ares \
libsss_idmap libdhash yp-tools ypbind -y
```

```

mmdsh -N NodeList yum erase python-routes python-repoze-lru python-oauthlib python-crypto \
python-qpid-common python-qpid python-dogpile-cache python-fixtures python-dogpile-core python-testtools \
python-extras python-oslo-context python-kombu python-anyjson python-amqp python-mimeparse \
python-markupsafe PyYAML python-passlib libyaml python-ibm-db-sa python-ibm-db python-sqlparse \
python-memcached python-webob python-posix_ipc python-sqlalchemy python-pbr python-greenlet -y

mmdsh -N NodeList yum erase nfs-ganesha gpfs.gss.pmsensors gpfs.gss.pmcollector gpfs.pm-ganesha boost-regex -y

mmdsh -N NodeList yum erase gpfs.smb python-oslo-il8n openstack-utils qt-settings nfs-ganesha-gpfs nfs-ganesha -y

mmdsh -N NodeList yum erase python-ordereddict python-routes python-passlib python-amqp python-crypto -y

mmdsh -N NodeList yum erase mariadb-libs -y

mmdsh -N NodeList yum erase pmswift nfs-ganesha-gpfs nfs-ganesha gpfs.smb -y

mmdsh -N NodeList yum erase python-cryptography python-enum34 swift3 python-pyeclib liberasurecode \
openstack-utils crudini python-msgpack python-wsgiref python-extras python-pycparser python-ply python-cffi \
python-ibm-db openstack-selinux xmlsec1 python-pyasnl python-mimeparse python-retrying \
postgresql-server postgresql python-psycopg2 python-repoze-who jerasure gf-complete python-zope-interface \
postgresql-libs pytz python-oslo-context python-webob python-six nfs-ganesha-gpfs nfs-ganesha -y

mmdsh -N NodeList yum erase spectrum-scale-object spectrum-scale-object-selinux \
openstack-swift openstack-swift-account openstack-swift-container openstack-swift-object openstack-swift-proxy \
python-swiftclient swift3 swiftonfile keystonemiddleware openstack-keystone python-keystone python-keystoneauth1 \
python-cinderclient python-glanceclient python-keystoneclient python-neutronclient python-novaclient \
python-openstackclient python-swiftclient -y

```

## Ubuntu 16.04 and 18.04

```

mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P gpfs.smb nfs-ganesha-mount nfs-ganesha-vfs \
PyQt4 nfs-ganesha-utils phonon-backend-gstreamer phonon sip qt-x11 kde-filesystem qt qt-settings libmng \
nfs-ganesha-proxy nfs-ganesha-nullfs gpfs.nfs-ganesha-gpfs gpfs.nfs-ganesha chef -y

mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P python-webob MySQL-python mariadb-server perl-DBD-MySQL mariadb \
python-futures python-warlock python-jsonpatch python-jsonschema python-jsonpointer python-cmd2 \
python-cliff pyparsing memcached python-oslo-utils python-oslo-serialization python-oslo-il8n python-babel \
babel python-keyring python-stevedore python-prettytable python-pbr python-oslo-config python-netaddr \
python-iso8601 python-dnspython python-urllib3 python-six python-requests python-paste-deploy \
python-tempita python-paste python-netifaces python-simplejson python-greenlet python-eventlet -y

mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P gpfs.smb gpfs.smb-debuginfo sssd-ipa sssd python-sssdconfig \
sssd-proxy sssd-ldap sssd-krb5 libipa_hbac sssd-krb5-common sssd-common-pac sssd-ad sssd-common \
cyrus-sasl-gssapi c-ares libsss_idmap libhash yb-tools ypbind -y

mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P python-routes python-repoze-lru python-oauthlib python-crypto \
python-qpid-common python-qpid python-dogpile-cache python-fixtures python-dogpile-core python-testtools \
python-extras python-oslo-context python-kombu python-anyjson python-amqp python-mimeparse \
python-markupsafe PyYAML python-passlib libyaml python-ibm-db-sa python-ibm-db python-sqlparse \
python-memcached python-webob python-posix_ipc python-sqlalchemy python-pbr python-greenlet -y

mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P gpfs.nfs-ganesha gpfs.gss.pmsensors gpfs.gss.pmcollector gpfs.pm-ganesha boost-regex -y

mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P gpfs.smb python-oslo-il8n openstack-utils qt-settings gpfs.gpfs.nfs-ganesha-gpfs gpfs.nfs-ganesha -y

mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P python-ordereddict python-routes python-passlib python-amqp python-crypto -y

mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P mariadb-libs -y

mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P pmswift gpfs.nfs-ganesha-gpfs gpfs.nfs-ganesha gpfs.smb -y

mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P python-cryptography python-enum34 swift3 python-pyeclib liberasurecode \
openstack-utils crudini python-msgpack python-wsgiref python-extras python-pycparser python-ply python-cffi \
python-ibm-db openstack-selinux xmlsec1 python-pyasnl python-mimeparse python-retrying postgresql-server \
postgresql python-psycopg2 python-repoze-who jerasure gf-complete python-zope-interface postgresql-libs \
pytz python-oslo-context python-webob python-six gpfs.nfs-ganesha-gpfs gpfs.nfs-ganesha -y

mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P spectrum-scale-object spectrum-scale-object-selinux \
openstack-swift openstack-swift-account openstack-swift-container openstack-swift-object openstack-swift-proxy \
python-swiftclient swift3 swiftonfile keystonemiddleware openstack-keystone python-keystone python-keystoneauth1 \
python-cinderclient python-glanceclient python-keystoneclient python-neutronclient python-novaclient \
python-openstackclient python-swiftclient -y

```



7. Issue `rpm -qa --last|more` or `dpkg -l` on all nodes again, as the preceding list does not contain everything in the new builds.

If the `pmswift` package still exists, remove it as follows:

#### **RHEL 7.x and SLES 12**

```
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -e pmswift-5.0.3-x.noarch --noscripts
```

#### **Ubuntu 16.04 and 18.04**

```
mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P pmswift-5.0.3-x.noarch --noscripts
```

You might also need to remove `gpfs.smb`.

8. Clean up additional chef files. To do so, issue the following commands:

```
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /var/chef
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /etc/chef
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /opt/chef
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /root/.chef
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /root/.berksshelf
```

9. Clean up performance monitoring tool files. To do so, issue the following commands:

```
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /opt/IBM/zimon*
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /usr/IBM/zimon*
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /var/log/cnlog/zimon*
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /var/lib/yum/repos/x86_64/7Server/*zimon*
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /var/lib/yum/repos/ppc64/7Server/*zimon*
```

10. Clean up CTDB. To do so, issue the following commands:

```
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /var/lib/ctdb
```

11. Clean up Swift files. To do so, issue the following commands:

```
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /etc/swift
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /var/lib/mysql
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /etc/keystone
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /var/lib/keystone
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /root/openrc
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /var/cache/yum/x86_64/7Server/*
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /var/cache/yum/ppc64/7Server/*
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /var/log/maria*
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /usr/share/pixmaps/comps/maria*
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /var/log/keystone
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /var/spool/cron/keystone
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /usr/lib/python2.7/site-packages/sos/plugins/openstack_keystone*
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /tmp/keystone-signing-swift
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /usr/lib/python2.7/site-packages/sos/plugins/*
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /var/lib/yum/repos/x86_64/7Server/icm_openstack
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -f /usr/lib/python2.7/site-packages/swiftonfile-2.5.0_0-py2.7.egg*
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -f /usr/bin/*objectizer*.pyc
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -f /usr/bin/generate_dbmap.pyc
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-keystone.service
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-swift-container-updater.service
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-swift-container-update
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-swift-object-updater.service
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-swift-container-auditor.service
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-swift-container-replicator.service
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-swift-container.service
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-swift-object-replicator.service
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-swift-object.service
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-keystone.service
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-swift-account-reaper.service
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-swift-account-auditor.service
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-swift-account-replicator.service
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-swift-account.service
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-swift-proxy.service
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-swift-object-auditor.service
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-swift-object-expirer.service
mmdsh -N NodeList systemctl disable openstack-swift-container-reconciler.service
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf
/var/lib/yum/yumdb/o/0b01eb65826df92befd8c161798cb842fa3c941e-openstack-utils-2015.1-201502031913.ibm.e17.7-noarch
```

12. Reboot the nodes. To do so, issue the following command:

```
mmdsh -N NodeList shutdown -r now
```

If some nodes do not fully come up, do the following:

- a. Power off that node.
- b. Wait one minute, then power the node back on.

**Note:** Some nodes might need to be powered off and on more than once.

13. Clean up Yum on all nodes. To do so, issue the following commands:

```
mmdsh -N NodeList yum clean all
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /etc/yum.repos.d/gpfs.repo /etc/yum.repos.d/icm* /etc/yum.repos.d/ces.repo
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /etc/yum.repos.d/epel* /etc/yum.repos.d/rdo*
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /var/lib/yum/repos/x86_64/7Server/*
mmdsh -N NodeList rm -rf /var/lib/yum/repos/ppc64/7Server/*
```

14. Remove GPFS.

**Notes:**

- This step is not required if you know that GPFS has not changed between old and new builds.
- This step is not required if you prefer to perform an upgrade of GPFS.
- This step is not required if you would like to keep the base GPFS installation intact and merely rerun the protocols deployment.
- (To permanently remove GPFS, see Chapter 15, “Steps to permanently uninstall GPFS,” on page 391.)

- a. Check which GPFS packages are on each node by issuing the following command:

**RHEL 7.x and SLES 12**

```
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -qa|grep gpfs
```

**Ubuntu 16.04 and 18.04**

```
mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -l|grep gpfs
```

The system displays output similar to the following:

```
gpfs.msg.en_US-5.0.3-x.noarch
gpfs.gskit-8.0.50-86.x86_64
gpfs.license.xx-5.0.3-x.x86_64
gpfs.crypto-5.0.3-x.x86_64
gpfs.adv-5.0.3-x.x86_64
gpfs.docs-5.0.3-x.noarch
gpfs.base-5.0.3-x.x86_64
gpfs.gpl-5.0.3-x.noarch
```

- b. Before removing anything, make sure that GPFS is shut down on all nodes. To do so, issue the following command:

```
mmshutdown -a
```

- c. Remove the packages by issuing the following commands *in the order shown*.

**Note:** When you remove `gpfs.base`, you will lose **mmdsh** access.

Therefore, be sure to remove `gpfs.base` last, as shown here.

**RHEL 7.x and SLES 12**

```
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -e gpfs.base-debuginfo-5.0.3-x.x86_64
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -e gpfs.crypto-5.0.3-x.x86_64
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -e gpfs.adv-5.0.3-x.x86_64
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -e gpfs.msg.en_US-5.0.3-x.noarch
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -e gpfs.gskit-8.0.50-86.x86_64
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -e gpfs.compression-5.0.3-x.x86_64
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -e gpfs.license.xx-5.0.3-x.x86_64
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -e gpfs.docs-5.0.3-x.noarch
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -e gpfs.gpl-5.0.3-x.noarch
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -e gpfs.callhome-5.0.3-x.000.e17.noarch
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -e gpfs.base-5.0.3-x.x86_64
```

**Ubuntu 16.04 and 18.04**

```

mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P gpfs.base-debuginfo_5.0.3-x.x86_64
mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P gpfs.crypto_5.0.3-x.x86_64
mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P gpfs.adv_5.0.3-x.x86_64
mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P gpfs.msg.en-us_5.0.3-x.all
mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P gpfs.gskit_8.0.50-86.x86_64
mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P gpfs.compression_5.0.3-x.x86_64
mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P gpfs.license.xx_5.0.3-x.x86_64
mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P gpfs.docs_5.0.3-x.noarch
mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P gpfs.gpl_5.0.3-x.noarch
mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -P gpfs.base_5.0.3-x.x86_64

```

**Note:** In the preceding commands, the package name `gpfs.license.xx` needs to be changed depending on the IBM Spectrum Scale product edition.

15. Reinstall GPFS.
16. Proceed to “Installation prerequisites” on page 246 and “Using the installation toolkit to perform installation tasks: Explanations and examples” on page 300.

**Note:** If you wish to remove all cluster configurations, you can also apply the **mmdelnnode -f** command to each node; however, if you choose to do so, you will also have to remake `cluster/nsds/filesystems`.

---

## Uninstalling the performance monitoring tool

You can uninstall the performance monitoring tool by running the following commands on all nodes that have monitoring enabled on it.

RHEL or SLES nodes:

- To uninstall the sensor on the node, use the **rpm -evh gpfs.gss.pmsensors** command.
- To uninstall the collector on the node, use the **rpm -evh gpfs.gss.pmcollector** command.
- To uninstall the object proxy on the node, use the **rpm -evh pmswift** command.
- To uninstall the NFS proxy on the node, use the **rpm -evh gpfs.pm-ganesha** command.

Ubuntu nodes:

- To uninstall the sensor on the node, use the **dpkg -r gpfs.gss.pmsensors** command.
- To uninstall the collector on the node, use the **dpkg -r gpfs.gss.pmcollector** command.
- To uninstall the object proxy on the node, use the **dpkg -r pmswift** command.
- To uninstall the NFS proxy on the node, use the **dpkg -r gpfs.pm-ganesha** command.

For reinstalling sensors and the collector, see “Manually installing the performance monitoring tool” on page 273.

---

## Uninstalling the IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI

Do the following to uninstall management GUI and remove the performance monitoring components that are installed for the GUI:

1. Issue the **systemctl stop** command as shown in the following example:  

```
systemctl stop gpfsgui
```
2. If the GUI runs on an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster where sudo wrapper is enabled, export the name of the user that was configured as the file system administrator as an environment variable by issuing the following command:  

```
export SUDO_USER=gpfsadmin
```

In this example, the name of the sudo user is `gpfsadmin`. Exporting the environment variable is necessary so that the uninstall process get to know which user name must be used to run the administrative file system commands that are necessary while uninstalling the GUI. For more

information on how to configure the IBM Spectrum Scale GUI to use sudo wrapper, see *Configuring IBM Spectrum Scale(tm) GUI to use sudo wrapper* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

3. Issue the following command to clean up the GUI database:

```
psql postgres postgres -c "drop schema fscc cascade"
```

4. Issue one of the following commands depending on the platform to remove the GUI package.

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux and SLES

```
rpm -e gpfs.gui-5.0.3-x.noarch
```

- Ubuntu

```
dpkg -r gpfs.gui_5.0.3-x_all.deb
```

## Removing nodes from management GUI-related node class

If you are reinstalling IBM Spectrum Scale, in some scenarios you might need to remove some nodes from the node classes that are used by the management GUI.

For information about these node classes, see “Node classes used for the management GUI” on page 282.

If you want to remove the GUI designation of a node, you must remove it from the GUI\_MGT\_SERVERS node class. After you remove a node from this node class, it is no longer designated as a GUI node and GUI services are not started on this node after reinstalling IBM Spectrum Scale. To remove a node from the GUI\_MGT\_SERVERS node class, use the **mmchnodeclass** command only when the GUI services are not running.

On the node that you want to remove from the GUI\_MGT\_SERVERS node class, run the following commands:

```
systemctl stop gpfsGUI
mmchnodeclass GUI_MGMT_SERVERS delete -N guinode
```

These commands stop the GUI services and remove the GUI node from the GUI\_MGT\_SERVERS node class.

**Note:** If you use **mmchnodeclass** to change the GUI\_MGT\_SERVERS node class while the GUI services are running, the management GUI adds the removed node to the GUI\_MGT\_SERVERS node class again.

---

## Permanently uninstall Cloud services and clean up the environment

Before setting up a fresh multi-node, you must clean up the environment.

Perform the following steps to do a cleanup of the environment and be able to create a fresh multi-node setup.

1. Recall any data that is migrated to the cloud storage by Transparent cloud tiering. For more information, see the *Recalling files from the cloud storage tier* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

2. Delete the container pair set by issuing a command similar to this:

```
mmcloudgateway containerpairset delete --cloud-nodeclass cloud1 --container-pair-set-name vm206
```

For more information, see *Creating a container pair set* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

3. Delete the Cloud services by issuing a command similar to this:

```
mmcloudgateway cloudservice delete --cloud-nodeclass cloud --cloud-service-name newServ
```

For more information, see *Creating a Cloud services* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

4. Delete the CSAP by issuing a command similar to this:

```
mmcloudgateway cloudStorageAccessPoint delete --cloud-nodeclass cloud --cloud-storage-access-point-name csap1
```

For more information, see *Defining cloud storage access points* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

5. Delete the cloud storage account by issuing a command similar to this:

```
mmcloudgateway account delete --cloud-nodeclass cloud --account-name new
```

For more information, see the *Managing a cloud storage account* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

6. Stop the Cloud services on all nodes by issuing a command similar to this:

```
mmcloudgateway service stop -N cloud1
```

For more information, see the *Stopping the Transparent cloud tiering* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

7. Disable Cloud services nodes on the node group by issuing a command similar to this:

```
mmchnode --cloud-gateway-disable -N vm1,vm2 --cloud-gateway-nodeclass cloud1
```

For more information, see the *Designating the Transparent cloud tiering nodes* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

8. Delete the node class if required. For more information, see the **mmdelnodeclass** command in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*
9. Uninstall the Cloud services RPMs (both server and client) from all the nodes by issuing the following command:
  - `rpm -e gpfs.tct.server-x.x.x.x86_64`
  - `rpm -e gpfs.tct.client-x.x.x.x86_64.rpm`



---

## Chapter 16. Upgrading

To upgrade to a newer version of IBM Spectrum Scale, first consider the version that you are upgrading from and then consider coexistence and compatibility issues.

IBM Spectrum Scale supports a limited form of backward compatibility between two adjacent releases. Limited backward compatibility allows you to temporarily operate with a mixture of IBM Spectrum Scale nodes running on the newer version and nodes running an earlier version:

- Within a cluster this enables you to perform an online upgrade to the new IBM Spectrum Scale version of the code provided upgrade from your current version to the newer version is supported.
- In a multicluster environment this allows the individual clusters to be upgraded on their own schedules. Access to the file system data can be preserved even though some of the clusters might still be running at an earlier version.
- In multicluster environments, it is recommended to upgrade the accessing clusters before the owning cluster especially if file audit logging, watch folder, clustered watch, and AFM functions are being used.

**Note:** Nodes with Cluster Export Services (CES) do not allow backwards compatibility. All CES nodes must be at the same version prior to returning client access.

**Online upgrades** allow you to install new IBM Spectrum Scale code one node at a time while maintaining access to the file systems without shutting down IBM Spectrum Scale on other nodes. However, you must upgrade all nodes within a short time. The time dependency exists because some IBM Spectrum Scale features in the newer version become available on each node as soon as the node is upgraded, while other features will not become available until you upgrade all participating nodes.

You can also perform **offline upgrades**, if you can shut down the entire cluster. An offline upgrade is similar to the online upgrade procedure. However, due to the entire cluster being offline, it is possible to jump straight to the latest code level instead of hopping to an intermediate level, as may be required during an online upgrade. For information about an offline upgrade procedure, see “Offline upgrade, complete cluster shutdown” on page 412.

For information about the upgrade process flow used by the installation toolkit, see “Upgrade process flow” on page 446. You can use this process flow as a reference for doing manual upgrades on Linux nodes.

After all nodes are upgraded to the new code, you must finalize the upgrade by running the commands **mmchconfig release=LATEST** and **mmchfs -V full** (or **mmchfs -V compat**). Also, certain new features might require you to run the **mmigratefs** command to enable them. For more information, see “Completing the upgrade to a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale” on page 464.

For the latest information on upgrade, coexistence, and compatibility, see the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

IBM Spectrum Scale upgrade consists of these topics:

- “IBM Spectrum Scale supported upgrade paths” on page 402
- “Upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.x from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.y or later” on page 403
- “Upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.y from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.x” on page 404
- “Upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.1.x from GPFS V4.1.0.x” on page 406
- “Upgrading from GPFS 3.5” on page 408
- “Online upgrade support for protocols and performance monitoring” on page 413

- “Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale non-protocol Linux nodes” on page 414
- “Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale protocol nodes” on page 417
- “Upgrading AFM and AFM DR” on page 420
- “Upgrading call home” on page 426
- “Upgrading object packages” on page 423
- “Upgrading SMB packages” on page 424
- “Upgrading NFS packages” on page 425
- “Manually upgrading pmswift” on page 428
- “Manually upgrading the performance monitoring tool” on page 427
- “Manually upgrading the IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI” on page 430
- “Upgrading Cloud services” on page 431
- “Upgrading to IBM Cloud Object Storage software level 3.7.2 and above” on page 442
- “Manually upgrading file audit logging authentication” on page 442
- “Upgrading watch folder callbacks” on page 443
- “Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale components with the installation toolkit” on page 444
- “Changing the IBM Spectrum Scale product edition” on page 459
- “Completing the upgrade to a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale” on page 464
- “Reverting to the previous level of IBM Spectrum Scale” on page 468
- “Coexistence considerations” on page 469
- “Compatibility considerations” on page 470
- “Considerations for IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management” on page 470
- “GUI user role considerations” on page 470
- “Applying maintenance to your GPFS system” on page 470

## IBM Spectrum Scale supported upgrade paths

Use this information to understand the supported upgrade paths for IBM Spectrum Scale.

The following table lists the supported online upgrade paths for IBM Spectrum Scale.

*Table 46. IBM Spectrum Scale supported online upgrade paths*

| Upgrading from: | To: 3.5 | To: 4.1.0.x | To: 4.1.1.x | To: 4.2.0.x | To: 4.2.1.x | To: 4.2.2.x | To: 4.2.3.x | To: 5.0.0.x    | To: 5.0.1.x | To: 5.0.2.x | To: 5.0.3.x |
|-----------------|---------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|----------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 3.5             | ✓       | ✓           | ✓           | X           | X           | X           | X           | X              | X           | X           | X           |
| 4.1.0.x         | --      | ✓           | ✓           | ✓           | ✓           | ✓           | ✓           | X              | X           | X           | X           |
| 4.1.1.x         | --      | --          | ✓           | ✓           | ✓           | ✓           | ✓           | X              | X           | X           | X           |
| 4.2.0.x         | --      | --          | --          | ✓           | ✓           | ✓           | ✓           | ✓              | ✓           | ✓           | ✓           |
| 4.2.1.x         | --      | --          | --          | --          | ✓           | ✓           | ✓           | ✓              | ✓           | ✓           | ✓           |
| 4.2.2.x         | --      | --          | --          | --          | --          | ✓           | ✓           | ✓              | ✓           | ✓           | ✓           |
| 4.2.3.x         | --      | --          | --          | --          | --          | --          | ✓           | ✓ <sup>1</sup> | ✓           | ✓           | ✓           |
| 5.0.0.x         | --      | --          | --          | --          | --          | --          | --          | ✓              | ✓           | ✓           | ✓           |
| 5.0.1.x         | --      | --          | --          | --          | --          | --          | --          | --             | ✓           | ✓           | ✓           |
| 5.0.2.x         | --      | --          | --          | --          | --          | --          | --          | --             | --          | ✓           | ✓           |
| 5.0.3.x         | --      | --          | --          | --          | --          | --          | --          | --             | --          | --          | ✓           |

- ✓: Supported



- X: Not supported
- --: Not applicable

**Note:** <sup>1</sup> Upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.3.9 or later to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.0.x is not supported. You must upgrade to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.1.x or later, if you are upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.3.9 to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.x.x.x. For more information, see this IBM Support technote.

**Remember:**

- Online upgrade support for protocol nodes depends on which services have been enabled and deployed. Different protocol services have different levels of online upgrade support. For more information, see “Online upgrade support for protocols and performance monitoring” on page 413.
- Offline upgrade can be performed from all supported versions to all supported versions.
- IBM Spectrum Scale installation toolkit can be used for upgrades from version 4.1.1.x onwards.

**Upgrade scenario 1:** Direct online upgrades from IBM Spectrum Scale version 4.1.1.x to 5.0.x.x cannot be done. Perform an online upgrade to version 4.2.x (4.2.0.x, 4.2.1.x, 4.2.2.x, or 4.2.3.x) and then do another online upgrade to version 5.0.x.x. However, offline upgrade from version 4.1.1.x to 5.0.x.x can be done.

**Upgrade scenario 2:** Online upgrade from IBM Spectrum Scale version 4.2.x to 5.0.x.x can be done.

**Related information:**

-  IBM Spectrum Scale Software Version Recommendation Preventive Service Planning
-  ESS supported upgrade paths

---

## Upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.x from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.y or later

IBM Spectrum Scale version 5.0.x supports node-at-a-time upgrade if the nodes in the cluster are currently running IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.y or later. Nodes that are running IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.y or later can coexist with nodes that are running IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.x, with the exception of the features of performance monitoring, SMB, and object. However, new functions that depend on file system format changes are not available until all the nodes in the cluster have been upgraded. The following procedure can also be used to upgrade from IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.y to 5.0.z, for example from IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.0 to 5.0.1.

To upgrade a cluster to IBM Spectrum Scale version 5.0.x from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.y or later, perform the following steps for each node in the cluster.

- For information on upgrading non-protocol Linux nodes, see “Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale non-protocol Linux nodes” on page 414.
  - For information on upgrading protocol nodes, see “Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale protocol nodes” on page 417.
1. Stop all user activity in the file systems on the node that you are upgrading.
  2. If the call home service is enabled on the cluster, issue the following command to disable it:  
mmcallhome capability disable
  - 3.

**Important:** Back up your file systems to ensure that your data is protected.

4. If file systems are mounted on the node, issue the **mmumount** command to unmount them. Do not use the **-f** option of the **mmumount** command.
5. Shut down IBM Spectrum Scale on the node by issuing the following command:  
mmshutdown

**Note:** You do not need to close `mmccrmonitor` and other `mm` processes because they are handled by IBM Spectrum Scale upgrade post-install scripts.

6. Upgrade the node to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.x. The steps for upgrading depend on the operating system that is installed on the node:

**Attention:** Starting with release 4.2.3, IBM Spectrum Scale Express Edition is no longer available. For information on upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale Express Edition 4.2.2.x or earlier to IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition 4.2.3.x or later, see “Changing Express Edition to Standard Edition” on page 463.

- **Instructions for upgrading AIX nodes:**

- When you upgrade from 4.2.x or later to 5.0.y.z, you must first upgrade to 5.0.y.0 and then upgrade to 5.0.y.z.
- Copy the installation images and install the IBM Spectrum Scale licensed programs as described in the Chapter 5, “Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on AIX nodes,” on page 349 section.

- **Instructions for upgrading Windows nodes:**

- a. Open the **Programs and Features** window and remove **IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition 4.2.y** or **IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition 5.0.z**.
  - 1) Uninstall IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.y or IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.z and reboot the system.
  - 2) Uninstall IBM GPFS GSKit 8.0.x.x and reboot the system.
  - 3) Uninstall the IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.y or the IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.z license.
- b. Copy the installation images and install the IBM Spectrum Scale licensed program as described in Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Windows nodes.

**Important:** For Windows upgrades, you must issue all the IBM Spectrum Scale administration commands from the 5.0.x node.

- **Instructions for upgrading Hadoop:**

- To upgrade the IBM Spectrum Scale Hadoop Connector through Ambari, see *Upgrading HDFS Transparency* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Big Data and Analytics Guide*.
- To upgrade the IBM Spectrum Scale Hadoop Connector manually, see *Upgrading the HDFS Transparency cluster* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Big Data and Analytics Guide*.

7. Start IBM Spectrum Scale on the node by issuing the following command:

```
mmstartup
```

8. Mount any file systems that are not mounted automatically when the IBM Spectrum Scale daemon starts.

When all the nodes in the cluster are successfully upgraded to the new level, the next step is to complete the upgrade. For more information, see “Completing the upgrade to a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale” on page 464.

---

## Upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.y from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.x

IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2 release supports node-at-a-time upgrade if the previous nodes in the cluster are running IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.x release. IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.x nodes can coexist and interoperate with nodes that are running IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2. However, new functions that depend on format changes will not be available until all nodes have been upgraded. The following procedure can also be used to upgrade from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.y to 4.2.z, for example from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.2 to 4.2.3.

**Note:** If you have protocols in use, to upgrade to the IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.y release, you must have the IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2 release installed and running on the system. Before proceeding with the upgrade, see the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

To upgrade a cluster to IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.y release from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.x release, perform the following steps:

1. Stop all user activity in the file systems on the designated node.  
For information about how to stop and unmount NFS running over IBM Spectrum Scale file systems, see *Unmounting a file system after NFS export* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
2. Cleanly unmount the mounted IBM Spectrum Scale file system. Do not use force to unmount the designated node.
3. Follow any local administrative backup procedures to ensure protection of your file system data in the event of a failure.
4. Stop IBM Spectrum Scale on the node to be upgraded in the cluster using the **mmshutdown** command.  
For example: **mmshutdown -N k164n04**, where k164n04 is the designated node.
5. Upgrade to IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2 release depending on the operating system:

**For Linux nodes:**

- Extract the IBM Spectrum Scale software as described in the “Extracting the IBM Spectrum Scale software on Linux nodes” on page 253 topic.

The installable images will be extracted to the following location: `/usr/lpp/mmfs/4.2.*`

For SLES and Red Hat Enterprise Linux nodes:

- For IBM All Spectrum Scale Editions: **rpm -Fvh /usr/lpp/mmfs/4.2.\*/gpfs\*.rpm**
- For IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition:  
**rpm -ivh gpfs.adv-4.2.\*.rpm** - This must be installed to use the Async disaster recovery feature.  
**rpm -ivh gpfs.crypto-4.2.\*.rpm**

- For IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition and IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition:

To optionally install the call home feature, see *Monitoring the IBM Spectrum Scale system by using call home* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

To optionally install the Performance Monitoring tool, see the “Manually installing the performance monitoring tool” on page 273 topic.

To optionally install the IBM Spectrum Scale GUI, see the “Manually installing IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI” on page 276 topic.

**Note:** When upgrading to the IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2 from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.1, RHEL7 users can refer to the “Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale components with the installation toolkit” on page 444 topic for more information on deploying protocols using the installation toolkit.

- For Debian and Ubuntu Linux users:
  - For IBM Spectrum Scale Express Edition, run the following command:  
**dpkg -i gpfs.base\*deb gpfs.gpl\*deb gpfs.gskit\*deb  
gpfs.msg\*deb gpfs.doc\*deb**
  - For IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition, run the following command:  
**dpkg -i gpfs.base\*deb gpfs.gpl\*deb gpfs.gskit\*deb  
gpfs.msg\*deb gpfs.doc\*deb gpfs.ext\*deb**
  - For IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition, run the following command:  
**dpkg -i gpfs.base\*deb gpfs.gpl\*deb gpfs.gskit\*deb gpfs.msg\*deb  
gpfs.doc\*deb gpfs.ext\*deb gpfs.adv\*deb gpfs.crypto\*deb**
  - To optionally install the Performance Monitoring tool on Debian 7, run the following command:  
**dpkg -i gpfs.gss.pmcollector\_4.2.\*.D7\*deb  
gpfs.gss.pmsensors\_4.2.\*D7\*.deb**
  - To optionally install the Performance Monitoring tool on Ubuntu 14, run the following command:

```
dpkg -i gpfs.gss.pmsensors_4.2.*.U14.*.deb
gpfs.gss.pmcollector_4.2.*.U14.*.deb
```

- After successful upgrade, you must rebuild the GPL layer. For more information, see the “Building the GPFS portability layer on Linux nodes” on page 261 topic.

For Hadoop users:

To upgrade the IBM Spectrum Scale Hadoop Connector through Ambari, see *Upgrading HDFS Transparency in IBM Spectrum Scale: Big Data and Analytics Guide*.

To upgrade the IBM Spectrum Scale Hadoop Connector manually, see *Upgrading the HDFS Transparency cluster in IBM Spectrum Scale: Big Data and Analytics Guide*.

**For AIX nodes:**

**Note:** Specific to AIX, when upgrading from 4.1.x to 4.2.y.z, you must upgrade to 4.2.y.0 first and then you can upgrade to 4.2.y.z.

- Copy the installation images and install the IBM Spectrum Scale licensed programs as described in the Chapter 5, “Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on AIX nodes,” on page 349 section.

**Note:** If you use SMIT to upgrade IBM Spectrum Scale on AIX, IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition users must install `gpfs.adv`.

**For Windows nodes**

- a. Open the **Programs and Features** control panel and remove **IBM Spectrum Scale Express Edition 4.1.x** or **IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition 4.1.x**.
  - 1) Uninstall IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.1 and reboot.
  - 2) Uninstall IBM GPFS GSKit 8.0.x.x and reboot.
  - 3) Uninstall the IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.1 license.
- b. Copy the installation images and install the IBM Spectrum Scale licensed program as described in Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Windows nodes.

**Note:** For Windows upgrades, it is required that all IBM Spectrum Scale administration commands are executed from the 4.2 node.

6. Start IBM Spectrum Scale on the designated node in the cluster using the `mmstartup` command. For example: `mmstartup -N k164n04`, where k164n04 is the designated node.
7. Mount the file systems if this is not done automatically when the IBM Spectrum Scale daemon starts.

When all nodes in the cluster have been successfully upgraded to the new IBM Spectrum Scale level, proceed to the “Completing the upgrade to a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale” on page 464 topic.

---

## Upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.1.x from GPFS V4.1.0.x

Use the following information to upgrade from V4.1.0.x to V4.1.1.x.

**For Linux:**

1. Prior to upgrading GPFS on a node, all applications that depend on GPFS (For example, DB2®) must be stopped. Any GPFS file systems that are NFS exported must be unexported prior to unmounting GPFS file systems.
2. Stop GPFS on the node. Verify that the GPFS daemon has terminated and that the kernel extensions have been unloaded (`mmfsenv -u`). If the command `mmfsenv -u` reports that it cannot unload the kernel extensions because they are “busy”, then the install can proceed, but the node must be rebooted after the install. By “busy” this means that some process has a “current directory” in some GPFS file system directory or has an open file descriptor. The freeware program `lsdf` can identify the process and the process can then be killed. Retry `mmfsenv -u` and if that succeeds then a reboot of the node can be avoided.

3. Upgrade GPFS using the RPM command as follows (make sure you are in the same directory as the files) :

For SLES or RHEL systems

```
rpm -Fvh gpfs*.rpm
```

For Debian systems

```
dpkg -i gpfs*.deb
```

4. You can verify the installation of the GPFS SLES or RHEL Linux RPMs on each node. To check that the software has been successfully installed, use the **rpm** command:

```
rpm -qa | grep gpfs
```

The system should return output similar to the following:

```
gpfs.gpl-4.1.1-1
gpfs.docs-4.1.1-1
gpfs.msg.en_US-4.1.1-1
gpfs.base-4.1.1-1
gpfs.gskit-8.0.50-40
```

If you have the GPFS Standard Edition or the GPFS Advanced Edition installed, you should also see the following line in the output:

```
gpfs.ext-4.1.1-1
```

If you have the GPFS Advanced Edition installed, you should also see the following line in the output:

```
gpfs.crypto-4.1.1-1
```

5. You can verify the installation of the GPFS Debian Linux packages on each node. To check that the software has been successfully installed, use the **dpkg** command:

```
dpkg -l | grep gpfs
```

The system should return output similar to the following:

```
ii gpfs.base 4.1.1-1      GPFS File Manager
ii gpfs.docs 4.1.1-1      GPFS Server Manpages and Documentation
ii gpfs.gpl  4.1.1-1      GPFS Open Source Modules
ii gpfs.gskit 8.0.50-40    GPFS GSKit Cryptography Runtime
ii gpfs.msg.en-us 4.1.1-1 GPFS Server Messages - U.S. English
```

If you have the GPFS Standard Edition or the GPFS Advanced Edition installed, you should also see the following line in the output:

```
ii gpfs.ext 4.1.1-1      GPFS Extended Features
```

If you have the GPFS Advanced Edition installed, you should also see the following line in the output:

```
ii gpfs.crypto 4.1.1-1    GPFS Cryptographic Subsystem
```

6. Recompile any GPFS portability layer modules you may have previously compiled using the **mmbuildgpl** command.

## For AIX:

1. Prior to upgrading GPFS on a node, all applications that depend on GPFS (For example, DB2) must be stopped. Any GPFS file systems that are NFS exported must be unexported prior to unmounting GPFS file systems.
2. To upgrade directly from 4.1.0.x to 4.1.1.x, you must put all Unnnnnn.gpfs\*.bff images from 4.1.1.0 and 4.1.1.x in the same directory prior to running the **installp** command or SMIT.
3. Stop GPFS on the node. Verify that the GPFS daemon has terminated and that the kernel extensions have been unloaded (**mmfsenv -u**). If the command **mmfsenv -u** reports that it cannot unload the kernel extensions because they are "busy", then the install can proceed, but the node must be rebooted

after the install. By "busy" this means that some process has a "current directory" in some GPFS filesystem directory or has an open file descriptor. The freeware program **lsdf** can identify the process and the process can then be killed. Retry **mmfsenv -u** and if that succeeds then a reboot of the node can be avoided.

4. Upgrade GPFS using the **installp** command or via SMIT on the node. If you are in the same directory as the install packages, an example command might be:

```
installp -agXYd . gpfs
```

5. You can verify that the installation procedure placed the required GPFS files on each node by running the **lslpp** command

```
lslpp -l gpfs\*
```

The system should return output similar to the following:

| Fileset                       | Level     | State     | Description                            |
|-------------------------------|-----------|-----------|----------------------------------------|
| -----                         |           |           |                                        |
| Path: /usr/lib/objrepos       |           |           |                                        |
| gpfs.base                     | 4.1.1-1   | COMMITTED | GPFS File Manager                      |
| gpfs.crypto                   | 4.1.1-1   | COMMITTED | GPFS Cryptographic Subsystem           |
| gpfs.ext                      | 4.1.1-1   | COMMITTED | GPFS Extended Features                 |
| gpfs.gskit                    | 8.0.50.40 | COMMITTED | GPFS GSKit Cryptography Runtime        |
| gpfs.msg.en_US                | 4.1.1-1   | COMMITTED | GPFS Server Messages - U.S. English    |
| Path: /etc/objrepos           |           |           |                                        |
| gpfs.base                     | 4.1.1-1   | COMMITTED | GPFS File Manager                      |
| Path: /usr/share/lib/objrepos |           |           |                                        |
| gpfs.docs.data                | 4.1.1-1   | COMMITTED | GPFS Server Manpages and Documentation |

The output that is returned on your system can vary depending on if you have the GPFS Express Edition, GPFS Standard Edition, or GPFS Advanced Edition installed.

## For Windows:

1. Downloaded the GPFS 4.1.1-x update package into any directory on your system.

**Note:** This update requires a prior level of GPFS version 4.1.x on your system. In such a case, you need to simply uninstall the previous 4.1.x level and proceed with installing this upgrade. Upgrading from a prior 4.1 level does not require installing the GPFS license package again. However if you are upgrading directly from version 3.5 or prior (any level), or installing version 4.1 for the first time on your system, you must first install the GPFS license package (gpfs.base-4.1-Windows-license.msi) before installing this update.

2. Extract the contents of the ZIP archive so that the .msi file it includes is directly accessible to your system.
3. Uninstall the system's current version of GPFS using the Programs and Features control panel. If prompted to reboot the system, do this before installing the update package.

---

## Upgrading from GPFS 3.5

If you are upgrading from GPFS 3.5, you can choose between the following upgrade options.

- "Online upgrade, most functionality remains available" on page 409
- "Offline upgrade, complete cluster shutdown" on page 412

### Note:

- Given the age of GPFS 3.5, you might need to upgrade your operating system to a version supported by the latest release of IBM Spectrum Scale (GPFS). Operating system upgrades must be done before upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale (GPFS) on each node. For more information, see "Operating system upgrades while upgrading from GPFS 3.5" on page 409.

For the list of supported operating system levels for respective IBM Spectrum Scale versions, see IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

- For Linux systems that are on IBM Spectrum Scale (GPFS) version 4.1 or later, when the operating system is updated and the new GPFS RPMs are installed, you need to use the `mmbuildgpl` command to rebuild the GPFS kernel modules. If you need to rebuild the GPFS portability after upgrading operating system on GPFS 3.5 systems, see Building the GPFS portability nodes.

## Operating system upgrades while upgrading from GPFS 3.5

If you want to upgrade the operating system while upgrading from GPFS 3.5, use the following steps.

1. Disable the GPFS autoload setting that causes GPFS to be started whenever the operating system reboots by issuing the following command.  
`mmchconfig autoload=no -N NodeName`  
*NodeName* is the name of the node on which the operating system upgrade will be done.
2. Unmount GPFS file systems on the node by issuing the following command.  
`mmumount all -N NodeName`
3. Stop GPFS on the node by issuing the following command.  
`mmshutdown -N NodeName`
4. Upgrade the operating system according to the instructions supplied by the operating system vendor.
5. After the operating system is upgraded and any required reboots are complete, follow the steps for upgrading GPFS.
6. Re-enable the GPFS autoload setting by issuing the following command.  
`mmchconfig autoload=yes -N NodeName`

## Online upgrade, most functionality remains available

Upgrading to the 5.0.z version of IBM Spectrum Scale (GPFS) from version 3.5 requires three separate online upgrade procedures.

1. The first procedure is to upgrade to IBM Spectrum Scale (GPFS) 4.1.1.x.
2. The second procedure is to upgrade to IBM Spectrum Scale (GPFS) 4.2.y from 4.1.1.x.
3. The third procedure is to upgrade to IBM Spectrum Scale (GPFS) 5.0.z from 4.2.y.

The upgrade can be done directly to IBM Spectrum Scale (GPFS) 5.0.z only if the entire GPFS cluster is shut down and all nodes are fully upgraded before restarting the cluster.

For each node in the cluster, do the following steps.

1. Perform any necessary operating system upgrades.
2. If you did not need to do operating system upgrade, unmount GPFS file systems and shut down GPFS.
3. Extract the IBM Spectrum Scale installation image so that all installation files (rpm, deb, bff, msi, and so on) are available.
4. Run the necessary platform-specific commands to upgrade GPFS.

- SLES and RHEL:

```
rpm -Fvh /usr/lpp/mmfs/4.1.1/gpfs_rpms/{gpfs.base.*.rpm,gpfs.crypto.*.rpm,\
gpfs.docs.*.rpm,gpfs.gpl.*.rpm,gpfs.gskit.*.rpm,gpfs.msg.*.rpm}
```

```
rpm -Fvh /usr/lpp/mmfs/4.1.1/zimon_rpms/{gpfs.gss.pmsensors*.rpm,gpfs.gss.pmcollector*.rpm}
```

**Note:** The `gpfs-crypto` package is available only with IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition.

- Debian Linux or Ubuntu:

```
dpkg -i /usr/lpp/mmfs/4.1.1/{gpfs.base.*.deb,gpfs.crypto.*.deb,gpfs.docs.*.deb,\
gpfs.gpl.*.deb,gpfs.gskit.*.deb,gpfs.msg.*.deb}
```

- AIX:

```
installp -agXYd . gpfs
```

- Windows:
  - a. Uninstall GPFS 3.5 and reboot.
  - b. Uninstall the GPFS 3.5 license.
  - c. Uninstall Open Secure Shell for GPFS 3.5 on Windows, if applicable.
  - d. Disable any SUA daemon, such as OpenSSH, that might have been configured. Do *not* uninstall SUA yet, or you may lose GPFS configuration information.
  - e. Install the 64-bit version of Cygwin. For more information, see “Installing Cygwin” on page 359.
  - f. Install `gpfs.ext-4.1.1.x-Windows-license.msi`.
  - g. Install `gpfs.ext-4.1.1.x-Windows.msi`.
  - h. Install IBM® GSKit for GPFS.
  - i. Uninstall SUA completely.
  - j. Configure passwordless SSH in Cygwin for mixed (Linux, AIX, Windows) clusters or use `mmwinservctl` on a Windows only cluster.
- 5. On Linux systems, rebuild the GPFS portability layer (GPL) with the `mmbuildgp1` command. For more information, see “Building the GPFS portability layer on Linux nodes” on page 261.
- 6. Restart GPFS by issuing the `mmstartup` command and remount file systems by issuing the `mmmout` command, if necessary.

Repeat the preceding steps on each node in the cluster one by one after restarting GPFS.

After all the nodes in the cluster are upgraded to 4.1.1.x, repeat this sequence of steps (1 to 6) on all nodes in the cluster one by one for upgrading from **4.1.1.x to 4.2.y**. For this upgrade path, use the following platform-specific commands instead of those listed in Step 4:

- SLES and RHEL:

```
rpm -Fvh /usr/lpp/mmfs/4.2.y.z/gpfs_rpms/<OS>/{gpfs.adv.*.rpm,gpfs.base.*.rpm,gpfs.crypto.*.rpm,\
gpfs.docs.*.rpm,gpfs.gpl.*.rpm,gpfs.gskit.*.rpm,gpfs.msg.*.rpm,\
gpfs.callhome*.rpm,gpfs.license.XX*.rpm}

rpm -Fvh /usr/lpp/mmfs/4.2.y.z/zimon_rpms/<OS>{gpfs.gss.pmsensors*.rpm,gpfs.gss.pmcollector*.rpm}
```

Where <OS> is the operating system specific directory such as `rhel7` or `sles12`.

**Note:**

- The `gpfs-adv` package is available only with IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition.
- Depending on the IBM Spectrum Scale edition that you are installing, install the appropriate `gpfs.license` package.

- Debian Linux or Ubuntu:

```
dpkg -i /usr/lpp/mmfs/4.2.y.z/gpfs_debs/<OS>/{gpfs.adv.*.deb,gpfs.base.*.deb,gpfs.crypto.*.deb,\
gpfs.docs.*.deb,gpfs.gpl.*.deb,gpfs.gskit.*.deb,gpfs.msg.*.deb,\
gpfs.callhome*.deb,gpfs.license.XX*.deb}

dpkg -i /usr/lpp/mmfs/4.2.y.z/zimon_debs/<OS>{gpfs.gss.pmsensors*.deb,gpfs.gss.pmcollector*.deb}
```

Where <OS> is the operating system specific directory such as `ubuntu16`.

**Note:** Depending on the IBM Spectrum Scale edition that you are installing, install the appropriate `gpfs.license` package.

- AIX:

```
installp -agXYd . gpfs
```

- Windows:

- a. Uninstall GPFS 4.1 and reboot.
- b. Uninstall the GPFS 4.1 license.



- c. Uninstall IBM GSKit for GPFS.
- d. Install the 64-bit version of Cygwin. For more information, see “Installing Cygwin” on page 359.
- e. Install `gpfs.ext-4.2.x.x-Windows-license.msi`.
- f. Install `gpfs.ext-4.2.x.x-Windows.msi`.
- g. Install IBM® GSKit for GPFS.
- h. Configure passwordless SSH in Cygwin for mixed (Linux, AIX, Windows) clusters or use `mmwinservctl` on a Windows only cluster.

Repeat the preceding steps on each node in the cluster one by one after restarting GPFS.

After all the nodes in the cluster are upgraded to 4.2.y, repeat this sequence of steps (1 to 6) on all nodes in the cluster one by one for upgrading from 4.2.y to 5.0.z. For this upgrade path, use the following platform-specific commands instead of those listed in Step 4:

- SLES and RHEL:

```
rpm -Fvh /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.y.z/gpfs_rpms/<OS>{gpfs.adv.*.rpm,gpfs.base.*.rpm,gpfs.crypto.*.rpm,\
gpfs.docs.*.rpm,gpfs.gpl.*.rpm,gpfs.gskit.*.rpm,gpfs.msg.*.rpm,gpfs.callhome.*.rpm,\
gpfs.license.XX*.rpm,gpfs.compression*.rpm}
```

```
rpm -Fvh /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.y.z/zimon_rpms/<OS>{gpfs.gss.pmsensors*.rpm,gpfs.gss.pmc collector*.rpm}
```

Where `<OS>` is the operating system specific directory such as `rhel7` or `sles12`.

**Note:**

- The `gpfs-adv` package is available only with IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition.
- Depending on the IBM Spectrum Scale edition that you are installing, install the appropriate `gpfs.license` package.

- Ubuntu:

```
dpkg -i /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.y.z/gpfs_debs/<OS>{gpfs.adv.*.deb,gpfs.base.*.deb,gpfs.crypto.*.deb,\
gpfs.docs.*.deb,gpfs.gpl.*.deb,gpfs.gskit.*.deb,gpfs.msg.*.deb,gpfs.callhome.*.deb,\
gpfs.license.XX*.deb,gpfs.compression*.deb}
```

```
dpkg -i /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.y.z/zimon_debs/<OS>{gpfs.gss.pmsensors*.deb,gpfs.gss.pmc collector*.deb}
```

Where `<OS>` is the operating system specific directory such as `ubuntu16`.

**Note:** Depending on the IBM Spectrum Scale edition that you are installing, install the appropriate `gpfs.license` package.

- AIX:

```
installp -agXYd . gpfs
```

- Windows:

- a. Uninstall GPFS 4.2.y and reboot.
- b. Uninstall the GPFS 4.2.y license.
- c. Uninstall IBM GSKit for GPFS.
- d. Install the 64-bit version of Cygwin. For more information, see “Installing Cygwin” on page 359.
- e. Install `gpfs.ext-5.0.x.x-Windows-license.msi`.
- f. Install `gpfs.ext-5.0.x.x-Windows.msi`.
- g. Install IBM® GSKit for GPFS.
- h. Configure passwordless SSH in Cygwin for mixed (Linux, AIX, Windows) clusters or use `mmwinservctl` on a Windows only cluster.

**Note:** At this point, the code is at the upgraded level, but the cluster is not upgraded and new functions cannot be configured until the upgrade is completed.

7. Complete the upgrade as documented in “Completing the upgrade to a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale” on page 464.

The 5.0.z code level is now applied on the whole cluster and all file systems. For GPFS-only configurations, the process is now complete.

## Offline upgrade, complete cluster shutdown

This scenario is applicable if you can shut down the entire cluster and perform the upgrade. The steps in this procedure are similar to the steps in the online upgrade procedure. However, due to the entire cluster being offline, it is possible to jump straight to the latest code level instead of hopping to an intermediate level, as required during an online upgrade.

1. Perform any necessary operating system upgrades. Confirm that the upgraded operating system level is one that is supported by the version of IBM Spectrum Scale to which the system is being upgraded.
2. If you did not need to do operating system upgrade, unmount GPFS file systems and shut down GPFS.
3. Extract the IBM Spectrum Scale installation image so that all installation files (rpm, deb, bff, msi, and so on) are available.
4. Run the necessary platform-specific commands to upgrade GPFS.

- SLES and RHEL Linux:

```
rpm -Fvh /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.y.z/gpfs_rpms/<OS>{gpfs.adv.*.rpm,gpfs.base.*.rpm,gpfs.crypto.*.rpm,\
gpfs.docs.*.rpm,gpfs.gpl.*.rpm,gpfs.gskit.*.rpm,gpfs.msg.*.rpm,gpfs.callhome*.rpm,\
gpfs.license.XX*.rpm,gpfs.compression*.rpm}
rpm -Fvh /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.y.z/zimon_rpms/<OS>{gpfs.gss.pmsensors*.rpm,gpfs.gss.pmcollector*.rpm}
```

Where <OS> is the operating system specific directory such as `rhel7` or `sles12`.

### Note:

- The `gpfs-crypto` and the `gpfs-adv` packages are available only with IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition.
- Depending on the IBM Spectrum Scale edition that you are installing, install the appropriate `gpfs.license` package.

- Ubuntu:

```
dpkg -i /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.y.z/gpfs_debs/<OS>{gpfs.adv.*.deb,gpfs.base.*.deb,gpfs.crypto.*.deb,\
gpfs.docs.*.deb,gpfs.gpl.*.deb,gpfs.gskit.*.deb,gpfs.msg.*.deb,gpfs.callhome*.deb,\
gpfs.license.XX*.deb,gpfs.compression*.deb}
```

```
dpkg -i /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.y.z/zimon_debs/<OS>{gpfs.gss.pmsensors*.deb,gpfs.gss.pmcollector*.deb}
```

Where <OS> is the operating system specific directory such as `ubuntu16`.

**Note:** Depending on the IBM Spectrum Scale edition that you are installing, install the appropriate `gpfs.license` package.

- AIX:

```
installp -agXYd . gpfs
```

- Windows:

- a. Uninstall GPFS 3.5 and reboot.
- b. Uninstall the GPFS 3.5 license.
- c. Uninstall Open Secure Shell for GPFS 3.5 on Windows, if applicable.
- d. Disable any SUA daemon, such as OpenSSH, that might have been configured. Do *not* uninstall SUA yet, or you may lose GPFS configuration information.
- e. Install the 64-bit version of Cygwin. For more information, see “Installing Cygwin” on page 359.
- f. Install `gpfs.ext-5.0.x.x-Windows-license.msi`.

- g. Install `gpfs.ext-5.0.x.x-Windows.msi`.
  - h. Install IBM® GSKit for GPFS.
  - i. Uninstall SUA completely.
  - j. Configure passwordless SSH in Cygwin for mixed (Linux, AIX, Windows) clusters or use `mmwinservctl` on a Windows only cluster.
5. On Linux systems, rebuild the GPFS portability layer (GPL) with the `mmbuildgpl` command. For more information, see “Building the GPFS portability layer on Linux nodes” on page 261.
  6. Restart GPFS by issuing the `mmstartup` command and remount file systems by issuing the `mmmout` command, as necessary.

At this point all code is at the upgraded level, but the cluster is not upgraded and new functions cannot be configured until the upgrade is completed.

**Note:** At this point, all code is at the upgraded level, but the cluster is not upgraded and new functions cannot be configured until the upgrade is completed.

7. Complete the upgrade as documented in “Completing the upgrade to a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale” on page 464.

The 5.0.z code level is now applied on the whole cluster and all file systems. For GPFS-only configurations, the process is now complete.

At this point, you can use the installation toolkit for installation or deployment of new functions and for future upgrades. Alternatively, you can perform function additions and upgrades manually.

**Attention:** Regardless of which method you are using, if you want to install and configure CES protocols after upgrading to the latest level, you must create a CES shared root file system of size 4 GB or greater. This file system is used for CES protocol state data and it must remain mounted and up on all protocol nodes for the protocols to function. You can also create this file system from multiple NSDs, each of which are replicated to help with redundancy. For more information, see *Setting up Cluster Export Services shared root file system* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

- If you want to add new functions manually, see “Manually installing the IBM Spectrum Scale software packages on Linux nodes” on page 256.
- If you want to add new functions using the installation toolkit, see “Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Linux nodes with the installation toolkit” on page 283.

---

## Online upgrade support for protocols and performance monitoring

Use this information to understand the online upgrade support for protocols and performance monitoring in IBM Spectrum Scale.

Online upgrade support for protocol nodes depends on which services have been enabled and deployed. Different protocol services have different levels of online upgrade support.

- NFS: Having different versions of NFS on protocol nodes in the cluster during the course of a node-at-a-time online upgrade can be tolerated.
- SMB: All protocol nodes running the SMB service must have the same version installed at any time. In addition to a brief outage of the SMB service, this also requires a brief outage of the NFS service in case Active Directory (AD) authentication is being used. SMB upgrade in an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is done in two phases. The protocol nodes in the cluster are divided in two halves and SMB is upgraded on each half one by one.
- Object: Because object operations interact with all nodes, all object nodes must be at the same level. Therefore, object services need to be stopped across the cluster for the duration of the upgrade. Other protocol services can continue to be run.

- Performance monitoring: Having two different versions on collector nodes will result in a loss of communication and could potentially result in missing performance metrics until collector versions match. This limitation is not applicable if the source and the target versions are later than 5.0.1.

## Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale non-protocol Linux nodes

Use these steps to upgrade non-protocol nodes that are running on Linux distributions in an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

Perform the following steps for each non-protocol node in the cluster.

1. Stop all user activity in the file systems on the node that you are upgrading.
2. If the call home service is enabled on the cluster, issue the following command to disable it:  
`mmcallhome capability disable`

**Important:** Back up your file systems to ensure that your data is protected.

3. If file systems are mounted on the node, issue the following command to unmount them:  
`mmumount all`

Do not use the `-f` option of the `mmumount` command.

4. Shut down IBM Spectrum Scale on the node by issuing the following command:  
`mmshutdown`

**Note:** You do not need to close `mmccrmonitor` and other `mm` processes because they are handled by IBM Spectrum Scale upgrade post-install scripts.

**Attention:** Starting with release 4.2.3, IBM Spectrum Scale Express Edition is no longer available. For information on upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale Express Edition 4.2.2.x or earlier to IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition 4.2.3.x or later, see “Changing Express Edition to Standard Edition” on page 463.

5. Extract the IBM Spectrum Scale software packages as described in the topic “Extracting the IBM Spectrum Scale software on Linux nodes” on page 253. For information about the location of extracted packages, see “Location of extracted packages” on page 259.
6. Change to the directory that contains the IBM Spectrum Scale package files.
  - If Red Hat Enterprise Linux or SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) is installed on the node, issue the following command:  
`cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/<x.x.x.x>/gpfs_rpms`
  - If Ubuntu Linux is installed on the node, issue the following command:  
`cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/<x.x.x.x>/gpfs_debs`

where `<x.x.x.x>` is the version level of IBM Spectrum Scale that you are upgrading to.

7. Upgrade the node using one of the following set of steps for depending on the operating system and the product edition that is installed on the node.

**Tip:** To determine the currently installed edition, issue the following command:

`mmlicense -L`

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux:

- If IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition is installed on the node, issue the following command. The entire command must be on one line:

```
rpm -Fvh ./gpfs.gskit*.rpm ./gpfs.gpl*.rpm ./gpfs.docs*.rpm ./gpfs.compression*.rpm
./gpfs.callhome-ecc-client*.rpm ./gpfs.base*.rpm ./gpfs.msg.en_US*.rpm
./gpfs.java*.rpm ./rhel7/python-subprocess32*.rpm
./rhel7/gpfs.librdkafka*.rpm ./rhel7/gpfs.kafka*.rpm ./rhel7/gpfs.callhome*.rpm
```

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux PPC64 nodes, issue the following command.

```
rpm -Fvh ./gpfs.gskit*.rpm ./gpfs.gpl*.rpm ./gpfs.docs*.rpm ./gpfs.compression*.rpm
./gpfs.callhome-ecc-client*.rpm ./gpfs.base*.rpm ./gpfs.msg.en_US*.rpm
./gpfs.java*.rpm ./rhel7/gpfs.callhome*.rpm
```

- If IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition is installed on the node, issue the following command. The entire command must be on one line:

```
rpm -Fvh ./gpfs.msg.en_US*.rpm ./gpfs.java*.rpm ./gpfs.gskit*.rpm
./gpfs.gpl*.rpm ./gpfs.docs*.rpm ./gpfs.crypto*.rpm ./gpfs.compression*.rpm
./gpfs.callhome-ecc-client*.rpm ./gpfs.base*.rpm ./gpfs.adv*.rpm
./rhel7/python-subprocess32*.rpm ./rhel7/gpfs.librdkafka*.rpm ./rhel7/gpfs.kafka*.rpm
./rhel7/gpfs.callhome*.rpm
```

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux PPC64 nodes, issue the following command.

```
rpm -Fvh ./gpfs.msg.en_US*.rpm ./gpfs.java*.rpm ./gpfs.gskit*.rpm
./gpfs.gpl*.rpm ./gpfs.docs*.rpm ./gpfs.crypto*.rpm ./gpfs.compression*.rpm
./gpfs.callhome-ecc-client*.rpm ./gpfs.base*.rpm ./gpfs.adv*.rpm
./rhel7/gpfs.callhome*.rpm
```

- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES):

- If IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition is installed on the node, issue the following command. The entire command must be on one line:

```
rpm -Fvh ./gpfs.gskit*.rpm ./gpfs.gpl*.rpm ./gpfs.docs*.rpm ./gpfs.compression*.rpm
./gpfs.callhome-ecc-client*.rpm ./gpfs.base*.rpm ./gpfs.msg.en_US*.rpm
./gpfs.java*.rpm ./sles12/python-subprocess32*.rpm ./sles12/gpfs.callhome*.rpm
```

- If IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition is installed on the node, issue the following command. The entire command must be on one line:

```
rpm -Fvh ./gpfs.msg.en_US*.rpm ./gpfs.java*.rpm ./gpfs.gskit*.rpm
./gpfs.gpl*.rpm ./gpfs.docs*.rpm ./gpfs.crypto*.rpm ./gpfs.compression*.rpm
./gpfs.callhome-ecc-client*.rpm ./gpfs.base*.rpm ./gpfs.adv*.rpm
./sles12/python-subprocess32*.rpm ./sles12/gpfs.callhome*.rpm
```

- Ubuntu Linux:

- If IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition is installed on the node, issue the following command. The entire command must be on one line:

```
apt-get install --only-upgrade ./gpfs.gskit_8.0.50*.deb ./gpfs.gpl_5.0*.deb
./gpfs.docs_5.0*.deb ./gpfs.compression_5.0*.deb ./gpfs.callhome-ecc-client_5.0*.deb
./gpfs.base_5.0*.deb ./gpfs.msg.en-us_5.0*.deb
./gpfs.java_5.0*.deb ./ubuntu16/gpfs.librdkafka_5.0*.deb ./ubuntu16/gpfs.kafka_5.0*.deb
./ubuntu16/gpfs.callhome_5.0*.deb
```

- If IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition is installed on the node, issue the following command. The entire command must be on one line:

```
apt-get install --only-upgrade ./gpfs.gskit_8.0.50*.deb ./gpfs.gpl_5.0*.deb
./gpfs.docs_5.0*.deb ./gpfs.crypto_5.0*.deb ./gpfs.compression_5.0*.deb
./gpfs.callhome-ecc-client_5.0*.deb ./gpfs.base_5.0*.deb ./gpfs.adv_5.0*.deb
./gpfs.msg.en-us_5.0*.deb ./gpfs.java_5.0*.deb
./ubuntu16/gpfs.librdkafka_5.0*.deb ./ubuntu16/gpfs.kafka_5.0*.deb
./ubuntu16/gpfs.callhome_5.0*.deb
```

## 8. Install the following packages if needed.

- For all editions, if you are upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.3.x or earlier, install the gpfs.compression package:

- If Red Hat Enterprise Linux or SUSE Linux Enterprise Server Linux is installed on the node, issue the following command from the gpfs\_rpms directory:

```
rpm -ivh gpfs.compression*.rpm
```

- If Ubuntu Linux is installed on the node, issue the following command from the gpfs\_debs directory:

```
apt-get install gpfs.compression*.deb
```

- For all editions, for the gpfs.ext package:

- If you are upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.1 or earlier, ensure that you upgrade the gpfs.ext package.

- In versions 5.0.2 and later, you do not need to upgrade the `gpfs.ext` package. The package is not present because its functionality is merged into other packages.

**Attention:** On Ubuntu Linux nodes, in version 5.0.2 and later, you might see an older version of the `gpfs.ext` package. You can safely remove this package by issuing the following command:

```
dpkg -P gpfs.ext
```

- c. For IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition and IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition, if you plan to use the AFM-based Asynchronous Disaster Recovery (AFM DR) feature, the file encryption feature, or the Transparent cloud tiering feature, you must install the following packages:

- `gpfs.adv`
- `gpfs.crypto`

9. After a successful upgrade, rebuild the GPFS portability layer (GPL). For more information, see “Building the GPFS portability layer on Linux nodes” on page 261.
10. Upgrade performance monitoring packages. For more information, see “Manually upgrading the performance monitoring tool” on page 427 and “Manually upgrading pmswift” on page 428.

**Note:** After you upgrade from release 4.2.y to 5.0.x, you might see the error message `pmcollector service critical error` on GUI nodes. In this problem occurs, restart the `pmcollector` service by issuing the following command on all GUI nodes:

```
systemctl restart pmcollector
```

11. Upgrade management GUI packages. For more information, see “Manually upgrading the IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI” on page 430.

12. Start IBM Spectrum Scale on the node by issuing the following command:

```
mmstartup
```

13. Mount any file systems that are not mounted automatically when the IBM Spectrum Scale daemon starts.

14. If you disabled the call home service in a preceding step, issue the following command to enable it:

```
mmcallhome capability enable accept
```

15. Upgrade the license package corresponding to the installed IBM Spectrum Scale product edition on all nodes in the cluster.

- For Red Hat Enterprise Linux and SLES:

```
mmdash -N NodeList rpm -Fvh /usr/lpp/mmfs/N.N.N.N/gpfs_rpms/gpfs.license-xxx*.rpm
```

- For Ubuntu:

```
mmdash -N NodeList apt-get install --only-upgrade /usr/lpp/mmfs/N.N.N.N/gpfs_debs/gpfs.license-xxx*.deb
```

- `NodeList` is the list of all nodes in the cluster.
- `N.N.N.N` is the product version. For example: 5.0.2.0.
- `xxx` is the indicator of the product edition:
  - da: Data Access Edition
  - dm: Data Management Edition
  - std: Standard Edition
  - adv: Advanced Edition

16. If the product edition is Advanced or Data Management and if watch folder or file audit logging is enabled in the cluster, update the message queue configuration at the cluster level by issuing this command from one of the nodes.

```
mmmsgqueue config --wf-upgrade --skip-wf-enabled-check
```

When all the nodes in the cluster are successfully upgraded to the new level, the next step is to complete the upgrade. For more information, see “Completing the upgrade to a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale” on page 464.

---

## Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale protocol nodes

Use these steps to upgrade protocol nodes in an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

Perform the following steps for each protocol node in the cluster.

1. Stop all user activity in the file systems on the node that you are upgrading.
2. Stop any protocol services that are running on the node:
  - a. Issue the following command to suspend Cluster Export Services (CES) and stop the protocol services on the node:

```
mmces node suspend --stop
```

If you are upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale version 5.0.2.0 or earlier, issue the following commands to suspend the protocol node and stop protocol services:

```
mmces node suspend  
mmces service stop Protocol
```
  - b. If you are upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale version 5.0.1.2 or earlier to version 5.0.2 or later, issue the following command to ensure that the **mmumount** of the CES file system completes successfully:

```
mmcesmonitor stop
```
3. If the call home service is enabled on the cluster, issue the following command to disable it:

```
mmcallhome capability disable
```

**Important:** Back up your file systems to ensure that your data is protected.

4. If file systems are mounted on the node, issue the following command to unmount them:

```
mmumount all
```

Do not use the **-f** option of the **mmumount** command.

5. Shut down IBM Spectrum Scale on the node by issuing the following command:

```
mmshutdown
```

**Note:** You do not need to close **mmccrmonitor** and other **mm** processes because they are handled by IBM Spectrum Scale upgrade post-install scripts.

**Attention:** Starting with release 4.2.3, IBM Spectrum Scale Express Edition is no longer available. For information on upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale Express Edition 4.2.2.x or earlier to IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition 4.2.3.x or later, see “Changing Express Edition to Standard Edition” on page 463.

6. Extract the IBM Spectrum Scale software packages as described in the topic “Extracting the IBM Spectrum Scale software on Linux nodes” on page 253. For information about the location of extracted packages, see “Location of extracted packages” on page 259.
7. Change to the directory that contains the IBM Spectrum Scale package files.
  - If Red Hat Enterprise Linux or SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES) is installed on the node, issue the following command:

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/<x.x.x.x>/gpfs_rpms
```
  - If Ubuntu Linux is installed on the node, issue the following command:

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/<x.x.x.x>/gpfs_debs
```

Where **<x.x.x.x>** is the version level of IBM Spectrum Scale that you are upgrading to.

8. Upgrade the protocol node by using one of the following set of steps for depending on the operating system and the product edition that is installed on the node.

**Tip:** To determine the currently installed edition, issue the following command:

```
mmlicense -L
```

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux:

- If IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition is installed on the node, issue the following command. The entire command must be on one line:

```
rpm -Fvh ./gpfs.gskit*.rpm ./gpfs.gpl*.rpm ./gpfs.docs*.rpm ./gpfs.compression*.rpm
./gpfs.callhome-ecc-client*.rpm ./gpfs.base*.rpm ./gpfs.msg.en_US*.rpm
./gpfs.java*.rpm ./rhel7/python-subprocess32*.rpm
./rhel7/gpfs.librdkafka*.rpm ./rhel7/gpfs.kafka*.rpm ./rhel7/gpfs.callhome*.rpm
```

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux PPC64 nodes, issue the following command.

```
rpm -Fvh ./gpfs.gskit*.rpm ./gpfs.gpl*.rpm ./gpfs.docs*.rpm ./gpfs.compression*.rpm
./gpfs.callhome-ecc-client*.rpm ./gpfs.base*.rpm ./gpfs.msg.en_US*.rpm
./gpfs.java*.rpm ./rhel7/gpfs.callhome*.rpm
```

- If IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition is installed on the node, issue the following command. The entire command must be on one line:

```
rpm -Fvh ./gpfs.msg.en_US*.rpm ./gpfs.java*.rpm ./gpfs.gskit*.rpm
./gpfs.gpl*.rpm ./gpfs.docs*.rpm ./gpfs.crypto*.rpm ./gpfs.compression*.rpm
./gpfs.callhome-ecc-client*.rpm ./gpfs.base*.rpm ./gpfs.adv*.rpm
./rhel7/python-subprocess32*.rpm ./rhel7/gpfs.librdkafka*.rpm ./rhel7/gpfs.kafka*.rpm
./rhel7/gpfs.callhome*.rpm
```

For Red Hat Enterprise Linux PPC64 nodes, issue the following command.

```
rpm -Fvh ./gpfs.msg.en_US*.rpm ./gpfs.java*.rpm ./gpfs.gskit*.rpm
./gpfs.gpl*.rpm ./gpfs.docs*.rpm ./gpfs.crypto*.rpm ./gpfs.compression*.rpm
./gpfs.callhome-ecc-client*.rpm ./gpfs.base*.rpm ./gpfs.adv*.rpm
./rhel7/gpfs.callhome*.rpm
```

- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server (SLES):

- If IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition is installed on the node, issue the following command. The entire command must be on one line:

```
rpm -Fvh ./gpfs.gskit*.rpm ./gpfs.gpl*.rpm ./gpfs.docs*.rpm ./gpfs.compression*.rpm
./gpfs.callhome-ecc-client*.rpm ./gpfs.base*.rpm ./gpfs.msg.en_US*.rpm
./gpfs.java*.rpm ./sles12/python-subprocess32*.rpm ./sles12/gpfs.callhome*.rpm
```

- If IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition is installed on the node, issue the following command. The entire command must be on one line:

```
rpm -Fvh ./gpfs.msg.en_US*.rpm ./gpfs.java*.rpm ./gpfs.gskit*.rpm
./gpfs.gpl*.rpm ./gpfs.docs*.rpm ./gpfs.crypto*.rpm ./gpfs.compression*.rpm
./gpfs.callhome-ecc-client*.rpm ./gpfs.base*.rpm ./gpfs.adv*.rpm
./sles12/python-subprocess32*.rpm ./sles12/gpfs.callhome*.rpm
```

- Ubuntu Linux:

- If IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition is installed on the node, issue the following command. The entire command must be on one line:

```
apt-get install --only-upgrade ./gpfs.gskit_8.0.50*.deb ./gpfs.gpl_5.0*.deb
./gpfs.docs_5.0*.deb ./gpfs.compression_5.0*.deb ./gpfs.callhome-ecc-client_5.0*.deb
./gpfs.base_5.0*.deb ./gpfs.msg.en-us_5.0*.deb
./gpfs.callhome-ecc-client_5.0*.deb ./ubuntu16/gpfs.librdkafka_5.0*.deb ./ubuntu16/gpfs.kafka_5.0*.deb
./ubuntu16/gpfs.callhome_5.0*.deb
```

- If IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition is installed on the node, issue the following command. The entire command must be on one line:

```
apt-get install --only-upgrade ./gpfs.gskit_8.0.50*.deb ./gpfs.gpl_5.0*.deb
./gpfs.docs_5.0*.deb ./gpfs.crypto_5.0*.deb ./gpfs.compression_5.0*.deb
./gpfs.callhome-ecc-client_5.0*.deb ./gpfs.base_5.0*.deb ./gpfs.adv_5.0*.deb
./gpfs.msg.en-us_5.0*.deb ./gpfs.java_5.0*.deb
./ubuntu16/gpfs.librdkafka_5.0*.deb ./ubuntu16/gpfs.kafka_5.0*.deb
./ubuntu16/gpfs.callhome_5.0*.deb
```

## 9. If needed, install the following packages.

- a. For all editions, if you are upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.3.x or earlier, install the gpfs.compression package:

- If Red Hat Enterprise Linux or SUSE Linux Enterprise Server Linux is installed on the node, issue the following command from the gpfs\_rpms directory:



```
| rpm -ivh gpfs.compression*.rpm
```

- | • If Ubuntu Linux is installed on the node, issue the following command from the gpfs\_debs directory:
- | apt-get install gpfs.compression\*.deb

- | b. For all editions, for the gpfs.ext package:
  - | • If you are upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.1 or earlier, ensure that you upgrade the gpfs.ext package.
  - | • In versions 5.0.2 and later, you do not need to upgrade the gpfs.ext package. The package is not present because its functionality is merged into other packages.

| **Attention:** On Ubuntu Linux nodes, in version 5.0.2 and later, you might see an older version of the gpfs.ext package. You can safely remove this package by issuing the following command:

```
| dpkg -P gpfs.ext
```
- | c. For IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition and IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition, if you plan to use the AFM-based Asynchronous Disaster Recovery feature, the file encryption feature, or the Transparent cloud tiering feature, you must install the following packages:
  - | • gpfs.adv
  - | • gpfs.crypto

- | 10. After a successful upgrade, rebuild the GPFS portability layer (GPL). For more information, see “Building the GPFS portability layer on Linux nodes” on page 261.
- | 11. Upgrade object packages on the protocol node. For more information, see “Upgrading object packages” on page 423.
- | 12. Upgrade performance monitoring packages. For more information, see “Manually upgrading the performance monitoring tool” on page 427 and “Manually upgrading pmswift” on page 428.

| **Note:** After you upgrade from release 4.2.y to 5.0.x, you might see the error message pmcollector service critical error on GUI nodes. In this problem occurs, restart the pmcollector service by issuing the following command on all GUI nodes:

```
| systemctl restart pmcollector
```

- | 13. Upgrade management GUI packages. For more information, see “Manually upgrading the IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI” on page 430.
- | 14. Start IBM Spectrum Scale on the node by issuing the following command:
 

```
| mmstartup
```
- | 15. Mount any file systems that are not mounted automatically when the IBM Spectrum Scale daemon starts.
- | 16. Upgrade NFS packages on the protocol node. For more information, see “Upgrading NFS packages” on page 425.
- | 17. If you disabled the call home service in a preceding step, issue the following command to enable it:
 

```
| mmcallhome capability enable accept
```
- | 18. If you suspended CES in a preceding step, issue the following command to resume CES and start protocol services on the node.
 

```
| mmces node resume --start
```

| If you are upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale version 5.0.2.0 or earlier, issue the following commands to resume the protocol node and start the protocol services:

```
| mmces node resume
| mmces service start Protocol
```

| Repeat the preceding steps on all protocol nodes in the cluster. After these steps are done for all protocol nodes in the cluster, proceed with the following steps.

19. Do object version sync and start object on all protocol nodes. For more information, see “Upgrading object packages” on page 423.
  20. Upgrade SMB packages on all protocol nodes. For more information, see “Upgrading SMB packages” on page 424.
  21. Upgrade the CES package on all protocol nodes in the cluster.
    - For Red Hat Enterprise Linux and SLES:
 

```
mmdsh -N ProtocolNodeList rpm -Fvh /usr/lpp/mmfs/N.N.N.N/gpfs_rpms/gpfs.protocols-support*.rpm
```
    - For Ubuntu (The entire command must be on one line):
 

```
mmdsh -N ProtocolNodeList apt-get install --only-upgrade /usr/lpp/mmfs/N.N.N.N/gpfs_debs/gpfs.protocols-support*.deb
```

      - *ProtocolNodeList* is the list of all protocol nodes in the cluster.
      - *N.N.N.N* is the product version. For example: 5.0.2.0.

If the AD authentication is configured, set LDAPMAP\_DOMAINS to none in the cluster configuration repository (CCR) by issuing the following commands from one of the protocol nodes.

```
usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mmccr fget authccr /tmp/authccr
echo LDAPMAP_DOMAINS=none >> /tmp/authccr
/usr/lpp/mmfs/bin/mmccr fput authccr /tmp/authccr
```

**Note:** The **mmccr** command is an IBM Spectrum Scale internal component and it must be used only under the guidance of IBM Support. If the **mmccr** command is used incorrectly, the cluster can become nonoperational.

  - 22. Upgrade the license package corresponding to the installed IBM Spectrum Scale product edition on all nodes in the cluster.
    - For Red Hat Enterprise Linux and SLES:
 

```
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -Fvh /usr/lpp/mmfs/N.N.N.N/gpfs_rpms/gpfs.license-xxx*.rpm
```
    - For Ubuntu:
 

```
mmdsh -N NodeList apt-get install --only-upgrade /usr/lpp/mmfs/N.N.N.N/gpfs_debs/gpfs.license-xxx*.deb
```

      - *NodeList* is the list of all nodes in the cluster.
      - *N.N.N.N* is the product version. For example: 5.0.2.0.
      - *xxx* is the indicator of the product edition:
        - da: Data Access Edition
        - dm: Data Management Edition
        - std: Standard Edition
        - adv: Advanced Edition
  - 23. If the product edition is Advanced or Data Management and if watch folder or file audit logging is enabled in the cluster, update the message queue configuration at the cluster level by issuing this command from one of the nodes.
 

```
mmmsgqueue config --wf-upgrade --skip-wf-enabled-check
```
- When all the nodes in the cluster are successfully upgraded to the new level, the next step is to complete the upgrade. For more information, see “Completing the upgrade to a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale” on page 464.

---

## Upgrading AFM and AFM DR

Consider the following while upgrading Active File Management (AFM) or Active File Management - DR (AFM DR).

Before upgrading to a newer version of IBM Spectrum Scale, consider the version from which you are upgrading. IBM Spectrum Scale supports a limited form of backward compatibility between two adjacent releases and hence, coexistence and compatibility measures are required. For details, see “IBM Spectrum

Scale supported upgrade paths” on page 402. Limited backward compatibility allows you to temporarily operate with some IBM Spectrum Scale nodes running on the newer version, and some nodes running an earlier version. Within a cluster this enables you to perform a rolling upgrade to the new IBM Spectrum Scale version, if upgrade from your current version to the newer version is supported.

In AFM and multi-cluster environment individual clusters can be upgraded at different schedules. Access to the file system data can be preserved even though some of the clusters might still be running on an earlier version. Home or the cache cluster must be upgraded independent of the other.

During a regular upgrade, the IBM Spectrum Scale service is interrupted. For a regular upgrade, you must shut down the cluster and suspend the application workload of the cluster. During a rolling upgrade, IBM Spectrum Scale service is not interrupted. In a rolling upgrade, the system is upgraded node-by-node or failure group-by-failure group. During the upgrade, IBM Spectrum Scale runs on a subset of nodes. You can also perform offline upgrades, if you can shut down the entire cluster. An offline upgrade is similar to the online upgrade procedure. As the entire cluster is offline, it is possible to upgrade to the latest code level instead of upgrading to an intermediate level, as might be required during an online upgrade.

Before you consider a rolling upgrade of the home or cache, ensure that:

- the cluster is healthy and operational.
- IBM Spectrum Scale is running on all nodes defined in the cluster definition file.
- all protocols defined on the protocol node are running, if the protocol is initially enabled.
- you provision adequate storage at cache during home upgrade, if cache is used for storage management by using quotas.

After you are ready to upgrade, see “Completing the upgrade to a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale” on page 464. To know upgrade support for protocols and performance monitoring, see “Online upgrade support for protocols and performance monitoring” on page 413.

**Cache cluster** - In multiple gateway environment, gateway nodes can be upgraded one-by-one. In these cases, filesets associated with the gateway node to upgrade, are transferred to another gateway node, and any write-class operation triggers recovery feature that builds the queue on associated gateway node to continue processing the operations to home. Thus, cache to home are not disconnected, but some performance degradation can be seen due to another gateway node working for the connect for those filesets hosted on the upgrade node previously. In heavy load systems, transferring the filesets to another gateway node might have a performance impact. Its advised to choose a time for such upgrades where the load on the system or the amount of data transfers is minimal.

Parallel data transfers enabled with GW mappings - In multiple gateway environment, where parallel data transfers is enabled with multiple gateways, upgrading any of these mapped nodes results in a normal data transfer path.

**Note:** Fileset gateway relation or mapping might remain intact after upgrade, depending on the afmHashing version in use.

**Home cluster** - Cluster Export Services (CES) provides highly available file and object services to an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster by using Network File System (NFS), Object, or Server Message Block (SMB) protocols. With CES environment the exports at home can be seen from cache by using the CES IP addresses. These IP addresses can align to protocol nodes when the CES node which already holds the CES IP address is shut down for an upgrade. The IP addresses alignment is according to the CES IP address distribution policies. Cache might see a short disruption at the time of CES failover at home but cache filesets continue to operate.

In a non-CES or NFS Server at Home environments, home to cache disconnects until the upgrade of NFS home server is complete. In a disconnected mode, cache builds up the queue for application operations. After Home is available, these operations are pushed to Home.

- | **Note:** You must shut down the NFS server before you issue the **mmshutdown** command on home nodes.
- | When the IBM Spectrum Scale system upgrade is complete and the node mounts the file system, you can
- | start the NFS server.

**Note:** **mmclone** is not supported on cache for AFM and primary for AFM DR. Clones created at home or secondary are replicated as different files. While upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.2 or later, the cache cluster must be upgraded before considering upgrade of the home cluster.

## Using stop and start replication to upgrade AFM and AFM DR

You can use replication stop and start method to assist an upgrade. Replication must be stopped on all filesets of a gateway node you want to upgrade. After stopping replication, you can shut down the gateway node for an upgrade. Local data availability is not affected as the filesets can be accessed by other nodes. However, replication activity stops during upgrade. You must ensure that replication is re-started after the gateway node is upgraded.

Complete the following steps:

1. Prepare to upgrade to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.2.
2. Run **mmafmctl <fsname> getstate |grep <GatewayNode>** to identify filesets that belong to the gateway node you want to upgrade.
3. Before upgrade, check if any messages are left in queue. Wait till all pending messages are completed.
4. Run **mmafmctl <fsname> stop -j <filesetname>** to stop replication of the filesets.
5. Before upgrading the gateway node, run **mmafmctl <fsname> getstate** to verify that replication has stopped.
6. Unmount the fileset and shutdown GPFS on the gateway node.
7. Upgrade the gateway node.
8. Run **mmstartup** to start the gateway node daemon.
9. Check the node state by running **mmgetstate**.
10. After the node is active, mount the file systems and run **mmafmctl <fsname> start -j <filesetname>**.

Recovery is initiated and replication starts.

**Note:** Synchronization of data between home and cache stops during the upgrade process. Recovery is run after you start replication to ensure that data at home and cache is synchronized.

---

## Upgrading object packages

Use these steps to upgrade IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage packages from 4.2.x or later to 5.0.x.

### Attention:

- All protocol nodes must also be upgraded to the newer code level along with base GPFS.
  - The object storage packages on all protocol nodes must be upgraded to the same level at the same time.
  - Online upgrade of the object protocol is not supported due to changes that make it incompatible with servers that are running on the previous level. The upgrade must be scheduled at a time when downtime is appropriate.
1. From one of the protocol nodes, issue the following command to stop all object services on all protocol nodes:  

```
mmces service stop obj -a
```
  2. On all protocol nodes, update the `spectrum-scale-object` package to the newer version by using one of the following sets of steps depending on the operating system of protocol nodes.
    - Use the **yum** command to update `spectrum-scale-object` on Red Hat Enterprise Linux.
      - a. If required, set up a yum repository for object packages by creating a new file in `/etc/yum.repos.d`, such as `/etc/yum.repos.d/gpfs_object.repo`, with the following content:

```
[gpfs_object]
name=gpfs_object
baseurl=file:///usr/lpp/mmfs/VERSION/object_rpms/rhel7
enabled=1
gpgcheck=0
```

Make sure that the path in the `baseurl` property corresponds to the path to the newer object packages on the system.
      - b. After the repository is set up, issue the following command to update the `spectrum-scale-object` package:

```
yum upgrade -y spectrum-scale-object
```
      - c. Repeat these steps on each protocol node to update the `spectrum-scale-object` package on all protocol nodes to the newer version.
      - d. If a repository file in `/etc/yum.repos.d` was created in a preceding step, remove the file after the upgrade completes.
    - Use the **apt-get** command to update `spectrum-scale-object` on Ubuntu.
      - a. Set up a temporary repository for the object packages by creating the new file `/etc/apt/sources.list.d/object.list` with the following contents:

```
deb [trusted=yes] file:/usr/lpp/mmfs/VERSION/object_debs/ubuntu16 ./
```

Make sure that the path specified corresponds to the path to the newer object packages on the system.
      - b. Issue the following command to update the package listing:

```
apt-get clean ; apt-get update
```
      - c. Issue the following command to update the `spectrum-scale-object` package:

```
apt-get install --only-upgrade spectrum-scale-object
```
      - d. Remove the temporary repository file created earlier:

```
rm /etc/apt/sources.list.d/object.list ; apt-get clean ; apt-get update
```
      - e. Repeat these steps on each protocol node to update the `spectrum-scale-object` package on all protocol nodes to the newer version.

Migrate the existing object protocol configuration to be consistent with the level of installed packages after you upgrade all protocol nodes to the newer version of the `spectrum-scale-object` package.

**Note:** The list of configured protocol nodes can be found by using the following command:

```
mmisnode -N cesnodes
```

3. From one of the protocol nodes, issue the following command:

```
mmobj config manage --version-sync
```

Issue this command in the cluster to update the configuration on all protocol nodes:

4. Issue the following command to start object protocol related services on all protocol nodes:

```
mmces service start obj -a
```

---

## Upgrading SMB packages

Use these steps to upgrade IBM Spectrum Scale SMB packages.

**Attention:** All protocols must also be upgraded to the newer code level along with base GPFS.

SMB package update in an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster is done in two phases to minimize the downtime of the SMB service. The protocol nodes in the cluster are divided in two halves and SMB is updated on each half one by one. In the following steps, *NodeList1* is the comma-separated list of nodes in the first half of the cluster and *NodeList2* is the comma-separated list of nodes in the second half of the cluster.

**Note:** All protocol nodes that are running the SMB service must have the same version of `gpfs.smb` installed at any time. A brief outage of the SMB service is required to upgrade `gpfs.smb` to the newer version across all protocol nodes. The procedure that is outlined here is intended to reduce the outage to a minimum.

1. On the first half of the protocol nodes, do the following steps.

- a. Issue the following command to suspend the nodes and stop all the protocol services that are running on these nodes.

```
mmces node suspend -N NodeList1 --stop
```

**Note:** Suspending nodes triggers IP address reassignment and client failover. For more information, see “SMB fail-over scenarios and upgrade” on page 217.

- b. On each node in the first half of protocol nodes, issue one of the following commands, depending on the operating system, to upgrade the SMB package.

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux or SLES 12

```
rpm -Uvh gpfs.smb*.rpm
```

- Ubuntu 16.04 LTS or 18.04 LTS

```
apt install ./gpfs.smb_*.deb
```

The name of the IBM Spectrum Scale SMB package for Ubuntu 16.04 LTS is in this format:  
`gpfs.smb_version_string_architecture.deb`.

The name of the IBM Spectrum Scale SMB package for Ubuntu 18.04 LTS is in this format:  
`gpfs.smb_version_string~bionic_architecture.deb`.

**Note:** If you upgraded the operating system on the protocol nodes from Ubuntu 16.04 to Ubuntu 18.04, uninstall any obsolete packages by issuing the following command on each of these nodes.

```
apt-get autoremove
```

2. On the second half of the protocol nodes, do the following steps.

- a. Issue the following command to suspend the nodes and stop all the protocol services that are running on these nodes.

```
mmces node suspend -N NodeList2 --stop
```

**Note:** Suspending nodes triggers IP address reassignment and client failover. For more information, see “SMB fail-over scenarios and upgrade” on page 217.

3. On the first half of the protocol nodes, issue the following command to resume the nodes and start all the protocol services that are enabled on these nodes.

```
mmces node resume -N NodeList1 --start
```

For information on viewing the health status of a node, and detailed information about the health status and potential corrective actions, see *System health monitoring use cases and Events* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

4. On the second half of the protocol nodes, do the following steps.
  - a. On each node in the second half of protocol nodes, issue one of the following commands, depending on the operating system, to upgrade the SMB package.

- Red Hat Enterprise Linux or SLES 12

```
rpm -Uvh gpfs.smb*.rpm
```

- Ubuntu 16.04 LTS or 18.04 LTS

```
apt install ./gpfs.smb_*.deb
```

The name of the IBM Spectrum Scale SMB package for Ubuntu 16.04 LTS is in this format: `gpfs.smb_version_string_architecture.deb`.

The name of the IBM Spectrum Scale SMB package for Ubuntu 18.04 LTS is in this format: `gpfs.smb_version_string~bionic_architecture.deb`.

**Note:** If you upgraded the operating system on the protocol nodes from Ubuntu 16.04 to Ubuntu 18.04, uninstall any obsolete packages by issuing the following command on each of these nodes.

```
apt-get autoremove
```

- b. Issue the following command to resume the nodes and start all the protocol services that are enabled on these nodes.

```
mmces node resume -N NodeList2 --start
```

For information on viewing the health status of a node, and detailed information about the health status and potential corrective actions, see *System health monitoring use cases and Events* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

## Upgrading the SMB package after upgrading OS to Ubuntu 18.04

If you have upgraded the operating system on your protocol nodes from Ubuntu 16.04 to Ubuntu 18.04, ensure that the SMB package is upgraded to the version required for Ubuntu 18.04.

After upgrading the operating system and rebuilding the GPFS portability layer (GPL), upgrade to the SMB package that is specific to Ubuntu 18.04 by using this upgrade procedure.

The name of the SMB package for Ubuntu 18.04 is in this format: `gpfs.smb_version_string~bionic_architecture.deb`.

---

## Upgrading NFS packages

Use these steps on each protocol node one by one to upgrade IBM Spectrum Scale NFS packages.

### Attention:

- All protocols must also be upgraded to the newer code level along with base GPFS.
- After you upgrade from an earlier version to the current version, it might be necessary to unmount and mount the file system on the NFS clients to ensure continued access.

1. Suspend the node by issuing the following command.

```
mmces node suspend --stop
```

**Note:** Suspending nodes triggers IP address reassignment and client failover.

2. Upgrade NFS packages on the node by issuing one of the following commands depending on the operating system.
  - For Red Hat Enterprise Linux and SLES, issue the following command.  
**rpm -Uvh NFS\_Package\_Name1 NFS\_Package\_Name2 ... NFS\_Package\_NameN**
  - For Ubuntu, issue the following command.  
**apt-get install ./NFS\_Package\_Name1 ./NFS\_Package\_Name2 ... ./NFS\_Package\_NameN**For a list of packages for the current IBM Spectrum Scale release, see “Manually installing the IBM Spectrum Scale software packages on Linux nodes” on page 256.
3. Resume the node by issuing the following command.  
**mmces node resume --start**  
For information on viewing the health status of a node, and detailed information about the health status and potential corrective actions, see *System health monitoring use cases and Events* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

For information on migrating from CNFS to CES NFS, see *Migration of CNFS clusters to CES clusters* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

---

## Upgrading call home

If you are upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale releases 4.2.0 or 4.2.1 to release 5.0.x, call home related configuration changes are needed.

For information about upgrading call home packages while upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale, see “Upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.x from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.y or later” on page 403.

## Call home configuration changes to be made while upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.x from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.1

When you upgrade from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.1 to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.0 or later, the existing group configuration will be incompatible with the new format.

Follow one of the given methods to deploy the existing group configuration after an upgrade:

- If the existing call home groups do not need to be saved, you can use the **mmcallhome group auto --force** command to automatically delete all the current groups, and create new groups with the necessary configuration.
- If you want to save the existing call home group configuration, follow the given steps:
  1. Find the current call home group configuration using the **mmcallhome group list** command.
  2. Delete all listed call home groups using the **mmcallhome group delete <groupName>** command.
  3. Add all the call home groups that were listed in step 1, using the following command:  
**mmcallhome group add GroupName server [--node {all | ChildNode[,ChildNode...]}]**
  4. Set the new groups to track the global settings.
    - a. Run the **mmcallhome capability list**, **mmcallhome proxy list**, or **mmcallhome schedule list** commands to view the current global settings and default settings for the new groups.

The system displays output similar to this:

```
[root@g5001-21 ~]# mmcallhome capability list
group      callHomeNode      status
-----
global     ---                enabled
g1         g5001-21.localnet.com disabled
g2         g5001-22.localnet.com disabled
```



- b. For each group, execute the **mmcallhome capability**, **mmcallhome proxy**, the **mmcallhome schedule** commands to configure the system with the existing settings available in the global field.

After each change for each group, the corresponding group entry will disappear from the list command output. Therefore, the new group uses the global value for their setting. The system displays output similar to this:

```
[root@g5001-21 ~]# mmcallhome capability list
group      callHomeNode      status
-----
global     ---               enabled
g1         g5001-21.localnet.com disabled
g2         g5001-22.localnet.com disabled
```

Change the capability to enabled for the group g1. The g1 group is set to use the global value, and is not listed in the output of the **mmcallhome capability list** command anymore, as shown in the sample output:

```
[root@g5001-21 ~]# mmcallhome capability enable accept
Call home enabled has been set to true
```

Additional messages:

License acceptance specified on command line. Callhome enabled.

```
[root@g5001-21 ~]# mmcallhome capability list
group      callHomeNode      status
-----
global     ---               enabled
g2         g5001-22.localnet.com disabled
```

After this procedure is successfully completed, the **mmcallhome capability list**, **mmcallhome proxy list**, and **mmcallhome schedule list** commands must list only one global set of values.

## Call home configuration changes to be made while upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.1 from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.0

The existing call home configurations will be lost while upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.0 to IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.1 or later versions.

If you want to deploy the existing configuration after an upgrade, follow the given steps:

1. Query and save your existing configuration prior to the upgrade, using the following commands:

```
# mmcallhome group list
# mmcallhome capability list
# mmcallhome info list
# mmcallhome proxy list
# mmcallhome schedule list
# cat /usr/lpp/mmfs/data/callhome/etc/ENmain.properties | grep 'CustomerId\|Email\|CountryCode'
# cat /usr/lpp/mmfs/data/callhome/etc/ENlocation.properties | grep CustomerName
```

2. Execute the upgrade.
3. Reconfigure call home with the configuration that has been saved in step 1, using the **mmcallhome** command. For more information on how to configure call home, see the *Configuring call home to enable manual and automated data upload* section in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

---

## Manually upgrading the performance monitoring tool

Use these steps to upgrade performance monitoring packages.

### Prerequisites:

- Before uninstalling, make sure that you stop sensors and the collector. For more information see, *Starting and stopping the performance monitoring tool* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.
- For information on uninstalling, see “Uninstalling the performance monitoring tool” on page 397.

- For information on manual installation, see “Manually installing the performance monitoring tool” on page 273.
- If federation is used for performance monitoring, the collectors participating in a federation must have the same version number.

To upgrade the performance monitoring tool, you must upgrade the `gpfs.gss.pmsensors` and `gpfs.gss.pmcollector` packages:

1. Upgrade to the new version of the performance monitoring tool by using the operating system native package upgrade mechanism as shown:  
`rpm -Uvh gpfs.gss.pmsensors-version-release.el7.x86_64.rpm.`

**Note:** Make sure that `pmsensors` and `pmcollector` are updated using the appropriate RPM packages for the platform.

2. Restart the sensors on the protocol nodes.
3. Restart the collector on the node that previously ran the collector.

**Note:** If multiple collectors are used, make sure that they all have the same version.

4. Verify that the collector and the sensor are running on the node by issuing the `systemctl status pmcollector` or `systemctl status pmsensors` command.

**Note:** If you use additional sensor packages such as `pmswift` or `gpfs.pm-ganesha`, upgrade these packages as well.

For more information about the performance monitoring tool, see *Configuring the Performance Monitoring tool* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

## Upgrading the performance monitoring packages after upgrading OS to Ubuntu 18.04

If you have upgraded the operating system on your IBM Spectrum Scale nodes from Ubuntu 16.04 LTS to Ubuntu 18.04 LTS, additional steps are required to ensure that performance monitoring packages are upgraded to the version required for Ubuntu 18.04 LTS.

After upgrading the operating system and rebuilding the GPFS portability layer (GPL), upgrade to the performance monitoring packages that are specific to Ubuntu 18.04 by using this upgrade procedure.

For performance monitoring package names for Ubuntu 18.04, see “Manually installing the IBM Spectrum Scale software packages on Linux nodes” on page 256.

---

### Manually upgrading pmswift

To upgrade `pmswift` you can either uninstall and reinstall the `pmswift rpm` or use the native `rpm` upgrade command: `rpm -Uvh pmswift-version-release.noarch.rpm`. After upgrading, restart the service using the following command: `systemctl restart pmswiftd.service`.

#### Uninstall pmswift-version-release.noarch.rpm

1. Stop the `pmsensors.service` using the following command:  
`systemctl stop pmsensors.service`
2. If uninstalling `pmswift-4.1.1-4` or later, stop the `pmswiftd.service` using the following command:  
`systemctl stop pmswiftd.service`

If uninstalling `pmswift-4.1.1-3`, stop the `pmprovider.service` using the following command:  
`systemctl stop pmprovider.service`

3. Uninstall the `pmswift rpm` using the following command:

```
rpm -evh --nodeps pmswift
```

If you are uninstalling pmswift-4.1.1-3, it should edit the Object configuration files for all Object servers and remove the entries created at the time of installation. The Object configuration files in /etc/swift/ directory are:

- account - \*.conf
- container - \*.conf
- object - \*.conf
- proxy - \*.conf

This should also edit the sensors configuration file, /opt/IBM/zimon/ZIMonSensors.cfg, to remove the Object related sensors entries created at the time of installation. If you are uninstalling pmswift-4.1.1-4 or later these files will be left alone.

4. Ensure that following directories/files are removed. If they are not removed, you can, remove them manually.
  - a. /usr/local/swiftmon directory or /usr/local/pmswift directory
  - b. /var/log/swiftmon directory or /var/log/pmswift directory
  - c. /var/run/swiftmon directory or /var/run/pmswift.pid file
  - d. For pmswift-4.1.1-4 and later remove /etc/rc.d/init.d/pmswift file and for pmswift-4.1.1-3 remove /etc/rc.d/init.d/pmprovider file
  - e. For pmswift-4.1.1-3 SwiftAccount.cfg, SwiftContainer.cfg, SwiftObject.cfg and SwiftProxy.cfg files from within the Performance Monitoring tool's installation directory, /opt/IBM/zimon/.
5. Ensure that for pmswift-4.1.1-3 the pmprovider.service and for pmswift-4.1.1-4 and later the pmswiftd.service is not available anymore by running the following command:  
systemctl daemon-reload

## Install pmswift-version-release.noarch.rpm

1. Install the pmswift rpm using the following command:  
rpm -ivh pmswift-version-release.noarch.rpm
2. Ensure that following directories/files have been created:
  - a. /usr/local/pmswift directory
  - b. /var/log/pmswift directory
  - c. /etc/logrotate.d/pmswift file
  - d. /etc/rc.d/init.d/pmswiftd file
  - e. SwiftAccount.cfg, SwiftContainer.cfg, SwiftObject.cfg and SwiftProxy.cfg files in the Performance Monitoring tool's installation directory, /opt/IBM/zimon/.
3. Edit the Object configuration files for all Object servers that reside in CCR, using the /usr/local/pmswift/bin/pmswift-config-swift set command. CCR will then propagate modified configuration files to /etc/swift/ directory on all the protocol nodes within the cluster. The modified configuration files are:
  - account - \*.conf
  - container - \*.conf
  - object - \*.conf
  - proxy - \*.conf
4. Edit the sensors configuration file information stored in the CCR using the /usr/local/pmswift/bin/pmswift-config-zimon set command to add the following Object related sensors entries:

```
{
  # SwiftAccount operational metrics
  name = "SwiftAccount"
  period = 1
  type = "generic"
```

```

    restrict= "cesNodes"
  },
  {
    # SwiftContainer operational metrics
    name = "SwiftContainer"
    period = 1
    type = "generic"
    restrict= "cesNodes"
  },
  {
    # SwiftObject operational metrics
    name = "SwiftObject"
    period = 1
    type = "generic"
    restrict= "cesNodes"
  },
  {
    # SwiftProxy operational metrics
    name = "SwiftProxy"
    period = 1
    type = "generic"
    restrict= "cesNodes"
  },
},

```

These entries are then automatically propagated to the ZIMonSensors.cfg file in /opt/IBM/zimon on all the nodes in the cluster.

5. Start the pmswiftd.service using the following command:  
systemctl start pmswiftd.service
6. Start the pmsensors.service using the following command:  
systemctl start pmsensors.service

---

## Manually upgrading the IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI

You can upgrade the IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI to the latest version to get the latest features. You can upgrade one GUI node at a time without shutting down IBM Spectrum Scale on other nodes to ensure high availability.

### Prerequisite

Ensure that you are aware of the following details before you start the upgrade process:

- The management GUI package must be upgraded after all other required IBM Spectrum Scale components such as gpfs.base, gpfs.java, or gpfs.gss.pmcollector have been successfully updated.
- If you are upgrading from 5.0.0 or earlier versions and you store your LDAP or AD or GUI SSL configuration in /opt/ibm/wlp/usr/servers/gpfsGUI/server.xml then you need to back up your settings. After the upgrade, recreate your configuration with **mkldap** for LDAP or AD and with **sethttpskeystore** for GUI SSL certificates. For more information, see *Managing GUI users in an external AD or LDAP server* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
- Local users, user groups, user roles, and snapshot rules are not affected with an upgrade, because they exist in the cluster configure repository (CCR).
- Data in the postgres database is retained.
- All IBM Spectrum Scale packages must be of the same release on the GUI node. For example, do not mix the 4.2.3 GUI rpm with a 4.2.2 base rpm. However, GUI PTFs and fixes can usually be applied without having to install the corresponding PTF or fix of the base package. This method is helpful if you just want to resolve a GUI issue without changing anything on the base layer
- Release levels can be different in GUI nodes and other nodes of the cluster. However, the minimum release level of the cluster must be 4.2.0.0 or later for the GUI to function.

- The user ID `scalemgmt` must not be already used as the GUI requires this user ID to run IBM Spectrum Scale GUI Websphere Java process.
- The ports 80, 443, 474080, and 47443 must not be already used by other processes.
- You can directly upgrade the IBM Spectrum Scale GUI from 4.2.0.0 or later to the latest version.

Perform the following steps to manually upgrade the management GUI:

1. Upgrade the GUI package.

For upgrading the previously installed package, use **rpm -Fvh** or **rpm -Uvh** options on RHEL or SLES. The **rpm -Fvh** is used for upgrading the existing installed package and **rpm -Uvh** is used for installing the package and upgrading the package as well.

For upgrading on Ubuntu, use **dpkg -i**. By issuing the **dpkg -s gpfs.gui** command, you can check additional properties about your management GUI installation. If the status in the command output is `install ok installed` then the upgrade has been performed successfully.

- On RHEL or SLES, issue the following command:

```
rpm -Fvh gpfs.gui-5.0.3-x.noarch.rpm
```

- On Ubuntu, issue the following command:

```
dpkg -i gpfs.gui_5.0.3-x_all.deb
```

2. After installing the packages, you can configure the performance monitoring tools by using the management GUI, if it is required. For more information, see “Enabling performance tools in management GUI” on page 279.
3. If the minimum release level set for IBM Spectrum Scale is not same as the GUI version, change the release level by issuing the **mmchconfig release=LATEST** command. As changing the minimum release level affects the cluster behavior, refer the **mmchconfig** command man page and other related topics before you make this configuration change. For more information, see “Completing the upgrade to a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale” on page 464.
4. Issue the **systemctl status gpfsdgui** command to verify the GUI service status.
5. Issue the **systemctl status pmcollector** and **systemctl status pmsensors** commands to verify the status of the performance tool.

---

## Upgrading Cloud services

To upgrade to a newer version of Cloud services, first consider the version that you are migrating from and then consider coexistence and compatibility issues.

You can migrate from one Cloud services version to another. Cloud services metrics too are upgraded. For more information, see *List of metrics for Cloud services* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

**Note:** Before performing any migration, ensure that you back up the configuration files. For more information, see the *Backing up the Cloud services configuration* topic in the *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.

Cloud services migration consists of these topics:

- “Upgrading to Transparent cloud tiering 1.1.2 from Transparent cloud tiering 1.1.0 or 1.1.1” on page 432
- “Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.2.1 from 1.1.2” on page 432
- “Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.3 from 1.1.2” on page 433
- “Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.3 from 1.1.0 and 1.1.1” on page 433
- “Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.4 from 1.1.2.x” on page 434
- “Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.4 from 1.1.3” on page 435

## Upgrading to Transparent cloud tiering 1.1.2 from Transparent cloud tiering 1.1.0 or 1.1.1

This topic describes the procedure for upgrading to Transparent cloud tiering 1.1.2 from Transparent cloud tiering 1.1.0 or 1.1.1.

Ensure the following before you start the upgrade the process:

- Transparent cloud tiering service is stopped on all the server nodes by using the **mmcloudgateway service stop** command.
- IBM Spectrum Scale is at release 4.2.2. Migration might fail if your IBM Spectrum Scale release is different.
- No data migration or recall is in progress.

Perform the following steps:

1. Copy the `gpfs.tct.server-1.1.2.x86_64.rpm` file to each of the nodes that is specified as Transparent cloud tiering server nodes.

2. Run this command:

```
rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.server-1.1.2.x86_64.rpm
```

**Note:** Transparent cloud tiering statistics on the IBM Spectrum Scale GUI is enabled only when the `ENABLE_MCSTORE` parameter in the `/usr/lpp/mmfs/gui/conf/gpfsgui.properties` is set to "true". During upgrade from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.1.1 to 4.2.2, this parameter is reset to "false", even though its original value is "true", and the Transparent cloud tiering statistics does not show up on the IBM Spectrum Scale GUI. Therefore, it is recommended to manually set the value of the property to "true" after an upgrade. To activate this change, you must restart the `gpfsgui.service`. All other configurations will be intact after the upgrade, and you can continue to perform data migration seamlessly as before.

3. To upgrade the client packages, issue the following command:

```
rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.client-1.1.2.1.rpm
```

4. To upgrade the Debian package, issue the following command:

```
sudo dpkg -i gpfs.tct.client*.deb
```

5. To verify the version after upgrade, issue the following command:

```
mmcloudgateway service version
```

## Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.2.1 from 1.1.2

This topic describes the procedure for upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.2.1 from 1.1.2.

Ensure the following before you start the upgrade the process:

- Transparent cloud tiering service is stopped on all the server nodes by using the **mmcloudgateway service stop** command.
- IBM Spectrum Scale is at release 4.2.2.1. Migration might fail if your IBM Spectrum Scale release is different.
- No data migration or recall is in progress.

Perform the following steps:

1. Copy the `gpfs.tct.server-1.1.2.1.x86_64.rpm` file to each of the nodes that is specified as Transparent cloud tiering server nodes.

2. Run this command:

```
rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.server-1.1.2.1.x86_64.rpm
```

**Note:** Transparent cloud tiering statistics on the IBM Spectrum Scale GUI is enabled only when the `ENABLE_MCSTORE` parameter in the `/usr/lpp/mmfs/gui/conf/gpfsgui.properties` is set to "true". During

upgrade from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.2 to 4.2.2.1, this parameter is reset to "false", even though its original value is "true", and the Transparent cloud tiering statistics does not show up on the IBM Spectrum Scale GUI. Therefore, it is recommended to manually set the value of the property to "true" after an upgrade. To activate this change, you must restart the `gpfsogui.service`. All other configurations will be intact after the upgrade, and you can continue to perform data migration seamlessly as before.

3. For upgrading the client systems, issue this command:  
`rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.client-1.1.2.1.rpm`
4. For upgrading the Debian package, issue this command:  
`sudo dpkg -i gpfs.tct.client-1.1.3*.deb`

## Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.3 from 1.1.2

This topic describes the procedure for upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.3 from 1.1.2.

Ensure the following before you start the upgrade the process:

- Transparent cloud tiering service is stopped on all the server nodes by using the **mmcloudgateway service stop** command.
- IBM Spectrum Scale is at release 4.2.3. Migration might fail if your IBM Spectrum Scale release is different.
- No data migration or recall is in progress.

Perform the following steps:

1. Copy the `gpfs.tct.server-1.1.3.x86_64.rpm` file to each of the nodes that is specified as Transparent cloud tiering server nodes.
2. Run this command:  
`rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.server-1.1.3.x86_64.rpm`
3. To upgrade the client nodes, issue this command:  
`rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.client-1.1.3*.rpm`
4. To upgrade the Debian package, issue this command:  
`sudo dpkg -i gpfs.tct.client-1.1.3*.deb`
5. Verify the version by using the **mmcloudgateway service version** command. The system displays output similar to this:  

```
Cluster minReleaseLevel: 4.2.2.0
```

| Node | Daemon node name               | TCT Type | TCT Version | Equivalent Product Version |
|------|--------------------------------|----------|-------------|----------------------------|
| 1    | c350f1u1b7.pok.stglabs.ibm.com | Server   | 1.1.3       | 4.2.3                      |

**Note:** This upgrade takes longer than others because of the database schema change. The larger the database of migrated files, the longer this upgrade will take.

## Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.3 from 1.1.0 and 1.1.1

This topic describes the procedure for upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.3 from 1.1.0 or 1.1.1.

Ensure the following before you start the upgrade the process:

- Transparent cloud tiering service is stopped on all the server nodes by using the **mmcloudgateway service stop** command.
- IBM Spectrum Scale is at release 4.2.3. Migration might fail if your IBM Spectrum Scale release is different.
- No data migration or recall is in progress.

Perform the following steps:

1. Copy the `gpfs.tct.server-1.1.3.x86_64.rpm` file to each of the nodes that is specified as Transparent cloud tiering server nodes.
2. Run this command:  
`rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.server-1.1.3.x86_64.rpm`
3. To upgrade the client nodes, issue the following command:  
`rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.client-1.1.3*.rpm`
4. To upgrade the Debian package, issue the following command:  
`sudo dpkg -i gpfs.tct.client-1.1.3*.deb`
5. Verify the version by using the **mmcloudgateway service version** command. The system displays output similar to this:  
Cluster minReleaseLevel: 4.2.2.0

| Node | Daemon node name               | TCT Type | TCT Version | Equivalent Product Version |
|------|--------------------------------|----------|-------------|----------------------------|
| 1    | c350f1u1b7.pok.stglabs.ibm.com | Server   | 1.1.3       | 4.2.3                      |

## Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.4 from 1.1.2.x

This topic describes the procedure for upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.4 from 1.1.2.x

Ensure the following before you start the upgrade the process:

- Uninstalling the old rpm (**rpm -e** command) and then installing the new rpm (**rpm -i**) will not work. The upgrade must be done with the **rpm -Uvh** command only.
- Transparent cloud tiering service is stopped on all the server nodes by using the **mmcloudgateway service stop** command.
- IBM Spectrum Scale is at release 5.0.0. Upgrade might fail if your IBM Spectrum Scale release is different.
- File system version is upgraded to the latest (18.00 and beyond) by using the **mmchfs** command, to leverage the default transparent recall policy. If file system version is not upgraded to a given level prior to Cloud services rpm upgrade, enabling transparent recalls for a container that is created with earlier Cloud services versions will fail. If file system version is upgraded to 18.00 and beyond after upgrading the Cloud services rpms, you must restart Cloud services by using the **mmcloudgateway service** command to be able to effectuate transparent recalls for containers.
- No data migration or recall is in progress.

Perform the following steps:

1. Copy the `gpfs.tct.server-1.1.4.x86_64.rpm` file to each of the nodes that is specified as Transparent cloud tiering server nodes.
2. Run this command:  
`rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.server-1.1.4.x86_64.rpm`
3. To upgrade the client nodes, issue this command:  
`rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.client-1.1.4*.rpm`
4. To upgrade the Debian package, issue this command:  
`sudo dpkg -i gpfs.tct.client-1.1.4*.deb`
5. Verify the version by using the **mmcloudgateway service version** command. The system displays output similar to this:  
Cluster minReleaseLevel: 5.0.0.0

| Node | Daemon node name               | TCT Type | TCT Version | Equivalent Product Version |
|------|--------------------------------|----------|-------------|----------------------------|
| 1    | c350f1u1b7.pok.stglabs.ibm.com | Server   | 1.1.4       | 5.0.0                      |



**Note:** This upgrade takes longer than others because of the database schema change. The larger the database of migrated files, the longer this upgrade will take.

**Note:**

- After the upgrade, the previous sensors are no more valid and Cloud services performance monitoring will fail on the GUI. Therefore, you must remove the old sensors and populate new ones. For more information, see “Upgrading the Cloud services sensors” on page 438.
- After the upgrade, do not use any transparent recall policy that was applied in IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.x and earlier releases. You might experience hangs during transparent recalls if the old policies are reused. Therefore, you must remove the older policy (which was applied before upgrade using **mmchpolicy <file-system> -P Default**) and enable the transparent recall for the container using the **mmcloudgateway containerpairset update** command, after the upgrade.

**Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.4 from 1.1.3**

This topic describes the procedure for upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.4 from 1.1.3.

Ensure the following before you start the upgrade the process:

- Uninstalling the old rpm (**rpm -e** command) and then installing the new rpm (**rpm -i**) will not work. The upgrade must be done with the **rpm -Uvh** command only.
- Transparent cloud tiering service is stopped on all the server nodes by using the **mmcloudgateway service stop** command.
- IBM Spectrum Scale is at release 5.0.0. Migration might fail if your IBM Spectrum Scale release is different.
- File system version is upgraded to the latest (18.00 and beyond) by using the **mmchfs** command, to leverage the default transparent recall policy. If file system version is not upgraded to a given level prior to Cloud services rpm upgrade, enabling transparent recalls for a container that is created with earlier Cloud services versions will fail. If file system version is upgraded to 18.00 and beyond after upgrading the Cloud services rpms, you must restart Cloud services by using the **mmcloudgateway service** command to be able to effectuate transparent recalls for containers.
- No data migration or recall is in progress.

Perform the following steps:

1. Copy the **gpfs.tct.server-1.1.4.x86\_64.rpm** file to each of the nodes that is specified as Transparent cloud tiering server nodes.
2. Run this command:  
`rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.server-1.1.4.x86_64.rpm`
3. To upgrade the client nodes, issue this command:  
`rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.client-1.1.4*.rpm`
4. To upgrade the Debian package, issue this command:  
`sudo dpkg -i gpfs.tct.client-1.1.4*.deb`
5. To upgrade the SLES package, issue this command:  
`rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.server-1.1.4*.rpm`
6. Verify the version by using the **mmcloudgateway service version** command. The system displays output similar to this:  
`Cluster minReleaseLevel: 5.0.0.0`

| Node | Daemon node name               | TCT Type | TCT Version | Equivalent Product Version |
|------|--------------------------------|----------|-------------|----------------------------|
| 1    | c350f1u1b7.pok.stglabs.ibm.com | Server   | 1.1.4       | 5.0.0                      |

**Note:** This upgrade takes longer than others because of the database schema change. The larger the database of migrated files, the longer this upgrade will take.

- After the upgrade, the previous sensors are no more valid and Cloud services performance monitoring will fail on the GUI. Therefore, you must remove the old sensors and populate new ones. For more information, see “Upgrading the Cloud services sensors” on page 438.
- After the upgrade, do not use any transparent recall policy that was applied in IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.x and earlier releases. You might experience hangs during transparent recalls if the old policies are reused. Therefore, you must remove the older policy (which was applied before upgrade using **mmchpolicy <file-system> -P Default**) and enable the transparent recall for the container using the **mmcloudgateway containerpairset update** command, after the upgrade.

After the upgrade, the previous sensors are no more valid and Cloud services performance monitoring will fail on the GUI. Therefore, you must remove the old sensors and populate new ones. For more information, see “Upgrading the Cloud services sensors” on page 438.

## Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.5 from 1.1.4

This topic describes the procedure for upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.5 from 1.1.4.

Ensure the following before you start the upgrade the process:

- Uninstalling the old rpm (**rpm -e** command) and then installing the new rpm (**rpm -i**) will not work. The upgrade must be done with the **rpm -Uvh** command only.
- Transparent cloud tiering service is stopped on all the server nodes by using the **mmcloudgateway service stop** command.
- IBM Spectrum Scale is at release 5.0.0. Migration might fail if your IBM Spectrum Scale release is different.
- File system version is upgraded to the latest (18.00 and beyond) by using the **mmchfs** command, to leverage the default transparent recall policy. If file system version is not upgraded to a given level prior to Cloud services rpm upgrade, enabling transparent recalls for a container that is created with earlier Cloud services versions will fail. If file system version is upgraded to 18.00 and beyond after upgrading the Cloud services rpms, you must restart Cloud services by using the **mmcloudgateway service** command to be able to effectuate transparent recalls for containers.
- No data migration or recall is in progress.

**Note:** Ensure that you uninstall transparent recall policy as you need to use transparent recall-enabled flag in place of the transparent recall policy.

Perform the following steps:

1. Copy the `gpfs.tct.server-1.1.5.x86_64.rpm` file to each of the nodes that is specified as Transparent cloud tiering server nodes.
2. Run this command:  
`rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.server-1.1.5.x86_64.rpm`
3. To upgrade the client nodes, issue this command:  
`rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.client-1.1.5*.rpm`
4. To upgrade the Debian package, issue this command:  
`sudo dpkg -i gpfs.tct.client-1.1.5*.deb`
5. To upgrade the SLES package, issue this command:  
`rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.server-1.1.5*.rpm`
6. Verify the version by using the **mmcloudgateway service version** command. The system displays output similar to this:  
`Cluster minReleaseLevel: 5.0.1`

| Node | Daemon node name               | TCT Type | TCT Version | Equivalent Product Version |
|------|--------------------------------|----------|-------------|----------------------------|
| 1    | c350f1u1b7.pok.stglabs.ibm.com | Server   | 1.1.5       | 5.0.1                      |

**Note:** This upgrade takes longer than others because of the database schema change. The larger the database of migrated files, the longer this upgrade will take.

After the upgrade, the previous sensors are no more valid and Cloud services performance monitoring will fail on the GUI. Therefore, you must remove the old sensors and populate new ones. For more information, see “Upgrading the Cloud services sensors” on page 438.

## Upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.6 from 1.1.5

This topic describes the procedure for upgrading to Cloud services 1.1.6 from 1.1.5.

Ensure the following before you start the upgrade the process:

- Uninstalling the old rpm (**rpm -e** command) and then installing the new rpm (**rpm -i**) will not work. The upgrade must be done with the **rpm -Uvh** command only.
- Transparent cloud tiering service is stopped on all the server nodes by using the **mmcloudgateway service stop** command.
- IBM Spectrum Scale is at release 5.0.2. Migration might fail if your IBM Spectrum Scale release is different.
- File system version is upgraded to the latest (18.00 and beyond) by using the **mmchfs** command, to leverage the default transparent recall policy. If file system version is not upgraded to a given level prior to Cloud services rpm upgrade, enabling transparent recalls for a container that is created with earlier Cloud services versions will fail. If file system version is upgraded to 18.00 and beyond after upgrading the Cloud services rpms, you must restart Cloud services by using the **mmcloudgateway service** command to be able to effectuate transparent recalls for containers.
- No data migration or recall is in progress.

Perform the following steps:

1. Copy the `gpfs.tct.server-1.1.6.x86_64.rpm` file to each of the nodes that is specified as Transparent cloud tiering server nodes.
2. Run this command:  
`rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.server-1.1.6.x86_64.rpm`
3. To upgrade the client nodes, issue this command:  
`rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.client-1.1.6*.rpm`
4. To upgrade the Debian package, issue this command:  
`sudo dpkg -i gpfs.tct.client-1.1.6*.deb`
5. To upgrade the SLES package, issue this command:  
`rpm -Uvh gpfs.tct.server-1.1.6*.rpm`
6. Verify the version by using the **mmcloudgateway service version** command. The system displays output similar to this:  
Cluster minReleaseLevel: 5.0.2

| Node | Daemon node name               | TCT Type | TCT Version | Equivalent Product Version |
|------|--------------------------------|----------|-------------|----------------------------|
| 1    | c350f1u1b7.pok.stglabs.ibm.com | Server   | 1.1.6       | 5.0.2                      |

**Note:** This upgrade takes longer than others because of the database schema change. The larger the database of migrated files, the longer this upgrade will take.

After the upgrade, the previous sensors are no more valid and Cloud services performance monitoring will fail on the GUI. Therefore, you must remove the old sensors and populate new ones. For more information, see “Upgrading the Cloud services sensors” on page 438.

## Upgrading the Cloud services sensors

The sensors in earlier versions of the Cloud services are no longer valid in the 1.1.4 version. Therefore you must change the sensors after upgrading to Cloud services version 1.1.4 from either 1.1.3.x or 1.1.2.x version as described below.

You must know which sensors are configured and active.

Perform the following steps to upgrade the sensors:

1. Remove configuration of the old sensors by issuing the following commands:
  - `mmperfmon config delete --sensors MCStoreGPFSSStats`
  - `mmperfmon config delete --sensors MCStoreIcstoreStats`
  - `mmperfmon config delete --sensors MCStoreLWESStats`
2. Remove the old sensors files from the `/opt/IBM/zimon` folder of every Cloud services node:
  - `rm MCStoreGPFSSStats.cfg`
  - `rm MCStoreIcstoreStats.cfg`
  - `rm MCStoreLWESStats.cfg`
3. Copy the following sensor files from the `/opt/ibm/MCStore/config/` folder to the `/opt/IBM/zimon` folder:
  - `TCTDebugDbStats.cfg`
  - `TCTDebugLweDestroyStats.cfg`
  - `TCTFsetGpfsConnectorStats.cfg`
  - `TCTFsetIcstoreStats.cfg`
  - `TCTFsGpfsConnectorStats.cfg`
  - `TCTFsIcstoreStats.cfg`
4. On each Cloud services server node, create a new `MCStore-sensor-definition.cfg` file under `/opt/IBM/zimon/` and copy the following sensors text into it:

```
sensors=
{
  #Transparent cloud tiering statistics
  name = "TCTDebugDbStats"
  period = 10
  type = "Generic"
},
{
  #Transparent cloud tiering statistics
  name = "TCTDebugLweDestroyStats"
  period = 10
  type = "Generic"
},
{
  #Transparent cloud tiering statistics
  name = "TCTFsetGpfsConnectorStats"
  period = 10
  type = "Generic"
},
{
  #Transparent cloud tiering statistics
  name = "TCTFsetIcstoreStats"
  period = 10
  type = "Generic"
},
{
  #Transparent cloud tiering statistics
  name = "TCTFsGpfsConnectorStats"
  period = 10
  type = "Generic"
}
```

```

    },
    {
        #Transparent cloud tiering statistics
        name = "TCTFsIcstoreStats"
        period = 10
        type = "Generic"
    }
}

```

5. Specify the following command to register the sensors:

```
mmperfmon config add --sensors MCStore-sensor-definition.cfg
```

6. Specify the following command to verify that all the sensors are added:

```
mmperfmon config show
```

The system displays output similar to this:

```

# This file has been generated automatically and SHOULD NOT
# be edited manually. It may be overwritten at any point
# in time.

```

```

cephMon = "/opt/IBM/zimon/CephMonProxy"
cephRados = "/opt/IBM/zimon/CephRadosProxy"
colCandidates = "jupiter-vm856.pok.stglabs.ibm.com", "jupiter-vm934.pok.stglabs.ibm.com"
colRedundancy = 2
collectors = {
    host = ""
    port = "4739"
}
config = "/opt/IBM/zimon/ZIMonSensors.cfg"
ctdbstat = ""
daemonize = T
hostname = ""
ipfixinterface = "0.0.0.0"
logfile = "/var/log/zimon/ZIMonSensors.log"
loglevel = "info"
mmcmd = "/opt/IBM/zimon/MMCmdProxy"
mmdfcmd = "/opt/IBM/zimon/MMDFProxy"
mmpmon = "/opt/IBM/zimon/MmpmonSockProxy"
piddir = "/var/run"
release = "5.0.3-x"
sensors = {
    name = "CPU"
    period = 1
},
{
    name = "Load"
    period = 1
},
{
    name = "Memory"
    period = 1
},
{
    name = "Network"
    period = 1
},
{
    name = "Netstat"
    period = 10
},
{
    name = "Diskstat"
    period = 0
},
{
    name = "DiskFree"
    period = 600
}

```

```

},
{
  name = "Infiniband"
  period = 0
},
{
  name = "GPFSDisk"
  period = 0
},
{
  name = "GPFSFilesystem"
  period = 10
},
{
  name = "GPFSNSDDisk"
  period = 10
  restrict = "nsdNodes"
},
{
  name = "GPFSPoolIO"
  period = 0
},
{
  name = "GPFSVFS"
  period = 10
},
{
  name = "GPFSIOC"
  period = 0
},
{
  name = "GPFSVIO64"
  period = 0
},
{
  name = "GPFSPPDisk"
  period = 10
  restrict = "nsdNodes"
},
{
  name = "GPFSvFLUSH"
  period = 0
},
{
  name = "GPFSNode"
  period = 10
},
{
  name = "GPFSNodeAPI"
  period = 10
},
{
  name = "GPFSFilesystemAPI"
  period = 10
},
{
  name = "GPFSLROC"
  period = 0
},
{
  name = "GPFSCHMS"
  period = 0
},
{
  name = "GPFSAFM"
  period = 0
},
},

```

```

{
  name = "GPFSAFMFS"
  period = 0
},
{
  name = "GPFSAFMFSET"
  period = 0
},
{
  name = "GPFSRPCS"
  period = 10
},
{
  name = "GPFSWaiters"
  period = 10
},
{
  name = "GPFSFilesetQuota"
  period = 3600
  restrict = "jupiter-vm856.pok.stglabs.ibm.com"
},
{
  name = "GPFSFileset"
  period = 300
  restrict = "jupiter-vm934.pok.stglabs.ibm.com"
},
{
  name = "GPFSPool"
  period = 300
  restrict = "jupiter-vm934.pok.stglabs.ibm.com"
},
{
  name = "GPFSDiskCap"
  period = 86400
  restrict = "jupiter-vm856.pok.stglabs.ibm.com"
},
{
  name = "TCTDebugDbStats"
  period = 10
  type = "Generic"
},
{
  name = "TCTDebugLweDestroyStats"
  period = 10
  type = "Generic"
},
{
  name = "TCTFsetGpfsConnectorStats"
  period = 10
  type = "Generic"
},
{
  name = "TCTFsetIcstoreStats"
  period = 10
  type = "Generic"
},
{
  name = "TCTFsGpfsConnectorStats"
  period = 10
  type = "Generic"
},
{
  name = "TCTFsIcstoreStats"
  period = 10
  type = "Generic"
}
}
smbstat = ""

```

7. Specify the following commands to restart your pmsensors and pmcollector on the nodes:
  - `service pmsensors restart`
  - `service pmcollector restart`
8. Verify the status of your pmsensors and pmcollector on the nodes:
  - `service pmsensors status`
  - `service pmcollector status`

---

## Upgrading to IBM Cloud Object Storage software level 3.7.2 and above

If you have used IBM Cloud Object Storage software level system (3.7.x and below) as the cloud storage tier for some time and then upgraded to IBM Cloud Object Storage software level 3.7.2 or above, you must perform certain configurations. This is required because of a change in computation of the entity tag (ETag) in IBM Cloud Object Storage software level 3.7.2.

Do the following steps to upgrade to IBM Cloud Object Storage software level 3.7.2 and above:

1. To display the configured cloud account, issue this command: **mmcloudgateway account list**
2. Edit `/var/MCStore/.mcstore_settings` and change the configuration property "`<cloudname>.provider=cleversafe`" to "`<cloudname>.provider=cleversafe-new`".
3. Restart the Transparent cloud tiering service by issuing this command: **mmcloudgateway service restart**

---

## Upgrading file audit logging authentication

Use the following topics to upgrade file audit logging authentication on your system.

### Manually upgrading file audit logging authentication

Use the following information to manually upgrade file audit logging if it is already in use on your system.

After all of the nodes in the cluster have been upgraded (including the `gpfs.kafka` and `gpfs.librdkafka` packages for file audit logging) and the **mmchconfig release=LATEST** command has completed successfully, perform the following steps:

**Note:** For more information about performing the following steps using an automated method, see “Upgrading file audit logging authentication using the **mmmsgqueue** command” on page 443.

1. Run **mmaudit all list** and record the configuration information for all of the file systems where file audit logging is enabled.
2. Quiesce IOs to the file systems that have file audit logging enabled.

**Note:** This step is recommended, but it is not required. If you do not quiesce IOs to those file systems, file audit logs will not be recorded for these events while file audit logging is disabled.

3. Run **mmaudit Device disable** to disable file audit logging on all file systems that are enabled with it.
4. Run **mmmsgqueue status** and record all of the nodes that contain brokers.
5. Run **mmmsgqueue config --remove**.
6. Run **mmmsgqueue enable -N <list of broker nodes>** where **<list of broker nodes>** is a comma-separated list of the nodes that were recorded in step 4.
7. Run **mmaudit Device enable** to enable file audit logging using the configuration information that was recorded in step 1. Adjust the file audit logging fileset name, device, or retention time as needed:  
`mmaudit Device enable { --log-fileset FilesetName [--log-fileset-device Device] | --retention Days} [-q]`
8. If you quiesced IOs in step 2, restart the IOs to those file systems.



## Upgrading file audit logging authentication using the `mmmsgqueue` command

Use the following information to automatically upgrade file audit logging if it is already in use on your system.

After all of the nodes in the cluster have been upgraded (including the `gpfs.kafka` and `gpfs.librdkafka` packages for file audit logging) and the `mmchconfig release=LATEST` command has completed successfully, perform the following steps:

1. Run `mmaudit all list` and record the configuration information for all of the file systems where file audit logging is enabled.
2. Quiesce IOs to the file systems that have file audit logging enabled.

**Note:** This step is recommended, but it is not required. If you do not quiesce IOs to those file systems, file audit logs will not be recorded for these events while file audit logging is disabled.

3. Run `mmmsgqueue config --upgrade-auth`.

### Note:

- During step 3, the following actions will be performed one at a time for each file system that has file audit logging enabled: File audit logging will be disabled, the message queue will be removed, and file audit logging will be re-enabled.
- This command might take a long time if you have many file systems that are enabled with file audit logging.

4. Run `mmmsgqueue config --update-broker-settings`.

**Important:** If you are using file audit logging or watch folder, you must run this command after every upgrade.

5. Run `mmaudit all list` to verify that the output is the same as what was recorded in step 1.
6. If you quiesced IOs in step 2, restart the IOs to those file systems.

## Upgrading file audit logging in remote cluster environments

Use the following information to upgrade file audit logging in remote cluster environments.

1. Ensure that your system meets the requirements for using file audit logging with remotely mounted file systems. For more information, see “Requirements for using file audit logging with remotely mounted file systems” on page 380.
2. Ensure that your system meets the requirements for watch folder. For more information see, “Requirements for watch folder” on page 383.
3. To avoid version conflicts, it is required that you upgrade the accessing clusters before upgrading the owning cluster.

**Note:** Unexpected errors will occur on the remotely mounted file systems if the remote cluster is at IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.1 or lower if you upgraded the owning cluster first.

---

## Upgrading watch folder callbacks

After manually upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.x to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.3 with the message queue enabled, you will need to set up the callbacks for watch folder.

Run the following command to set up the callbacks that are needed for watch folder:

```
mmmsgqueue config --wf-upgrade
```

### Note:

- You only need to run this command on one broker node in the cluster.
- If you upgraded from IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.0.x to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.3 with file audit logging enabled and you want to enable watch folder, you will need to run the following commands in this order:

```
mmmsgqueue config --auth-upgrade
```

```
mmmsgqueue config --wf-upgrade
```

---

## Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale components with the installation toolkit

You can use the installation toolkit to do an online upgrade of core GPFS, NFS, SMB, object, management GUI, and performance monitoring from the current version of IBM Spectrum Scale to the next higher version.

For example, you can use the installation toolkit to do an online upgrade from IBM Spectrum Scale release 4.2.x to release 5.0.x. However, offline upgrades can be done from release 4.1.x to release 5.0.x.

For information on the upgrade phases and the flow of the upgrade procedure that is done by using the installation toolkit, see “Upgrade process flow” on page 446.

### Important:

- Protocol upgrades are non-concurrent and they cause brief outages to user access. Schedule an outage window for the duration of the upgrade, which is approximately 20 minutes per protocol node.
  - For NFS, it is recommended to quiesce all I/O for the duration of the upgrade. NFS experiences I/O pauses, and depending upon the client, mounts and disconnects during the upgrade.
  - SMB requires quiescing all I/O for the duration of the upgrade. Due to the SMB clustering functionality, differing SMB levels cannot co-exist within a cluster at the same time. This requires a full outage of SMB during the upgrade.
  - For object, it is recommended to quiesce all I/O for the duration of the upgrade. Object service will be down or interrupted at multiple times during the upgrade process. Clients might experience errors or they might be unable to connect during this time. They must retry as appropriate.
- Before proceeding with the IBM Spectrum Scale upgrade, ensure that Transparent cloud tiering is not active on the cluster. If it is active, shut down Transparent cloud tiering services on all nodes by issuing the **mmcloudgateway service stop** command. If Transparent cloud tiering is active, the IBM Spectrum Scale upgrade might fail.
- The installation toolkit does not support upgrading a cluster containing manually installed protocols, if the entire protocols stack was not originally installed in the cluster. To upgrade these clusters, use the manual procedures. For more information, see Chapter 16, “Upgrading,” on page 401.
- Starting with the IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.3 release, the installation toolkit supports the installation, deployment, and upgrade of Advanced (gpfs.adv) and Crypto (gpfs.crypto) packages. The upgrade of these packages is handled by the installation toolkit according to your IBM Spectrum Scale product edition.
  - For IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition, if the gpfs.adv and gpfs.crypto packages are installed on the system that you are upgrading, these packages are also upgraded.
  - For IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition, if the gpfs.adv and gpfs.crypto packages are not installed on the system that you are upgrading, these packages are installed.
  - These packages are not available with IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition.

If you have IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition version 4.2.2.x installed, you can use the installation toolkit to upgrade to IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition version 4.2.3 or later. In this scenario, you must apply the license for the applicable edition.

- During an upgrade to IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.2 or later, the packages for file audit logging and watch folder functions, `gpfs.kafka` and `gpfs.librdkafka`, are installed on the supported nodes specified to the installation toolkit in the cluster definition. This is done even if file audit logging and watch folder functions are disabled in the cluster and the corresponding packages do not exist on nodes in the cluster. However, in this case, the installation toolkit does not configure or start any file audit logging and watch folder related services on upgrade. To use these functions after upgrade, you must enable these functions in the cluster definition and then perform the installation toolkit deployment procedure.

Before proceeding with upgrade using the installation toolkit, ensure the following:

- The prerequisite steps for using the installation toolkit are done. This is particularly important if you are using the installation toolkit to upgrade a cluster that was created manually. For more information, see “Preparing to use the installation toolkit” on page 298.
- Review limitations of the installation toolkit related to upgrade. For more information, see “Limitations of the installation toolkit” on page 289.

For performing an upgrade by using the installation toolkit, a key requirement is the cluster definition file that you can obtain by using one of the following ways:

1. Use the `./spectrumscale config populate` command to retrieve the cluster configuration and populate it in the cluster definition file.
2. Use an existing cluster definition file if it exists in the current version installer configuration directory.

For information about obtaining the current cluster configuration, see Step 4 of “Performing online upgrade by using the installation toolkit” on page 451.

## Performing the upgrade by using the installation toolkit

- For information about doing an online upgrade, see “Performing online upgrade by using the installation toolkit” on page 451.
- For information about doing an offline upgrade or excluding nodes from an upgrade run, see “Performing offline upgrade or excluding nodes from upgrade using installation toolkit” on page 454.
- For information about doing IBM Spectrum Scale upgrade on IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes, see “Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale on IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes using the installation toolkit” on page 458.

## Installing new functions after upgrade

You can use the installation toolkit to install new functions that are available in the new version that you have upgraded to and that are supported by the installation toolkit. Use the following steps to do so:

1. Enable the functions in the cluster definition file using the installation toolkit.
2. Issue the `./spectrumscale install` or the `./spectrumscale deploy` command.

## Failure recovery

If a failure occurs during an upgrade, examine the log at the location provided in the output from the installation toolkit to determine the cause. More information on each error is provided in the output from the installation toolkit.

Certain failures will cause the upgrade process to stop. In this case, the cause of the failure must be addressed on the node on which it occurred. Once the problem has been addressed, the upgrade command can be run again. This does not affect any nodes that were upgraded successfully and the upgrade process continues from the point of failure.

An example of a failure during upgrade is:

**A protocol is enabled in the configuration file, but is not running on a node.**

Using the `mmces service list` command on the node that failed highlights which process is not running (the output from the installation toolkit also reports which component failed). Make sure the component is started on all nodes with `mmces service start nfs | smb | obj`, or alternatively disable the protocol in the configuration using `spectrumscale disable nfs | smb | object` if the component has been intentionally stopped.

**CAUTION:**

**When a protocol is disabled, the protocol is stopped on all protocol nodes in the cluster and all protocol-specific configuration data is removed.**

For information on troubleshooting installation, deployment, and upgrade related issues, see *Resolving most frequent problems related to installation, deployment, and upgrade in IBM Spectrum Scale: Problem Determination Guide*.

## Upgrade process flow

The upgrade procedure by using the installation toolkit is done in several phases. If you are doing manual upgrade, you can use this process flow as a reference.

### | Upgrade phases

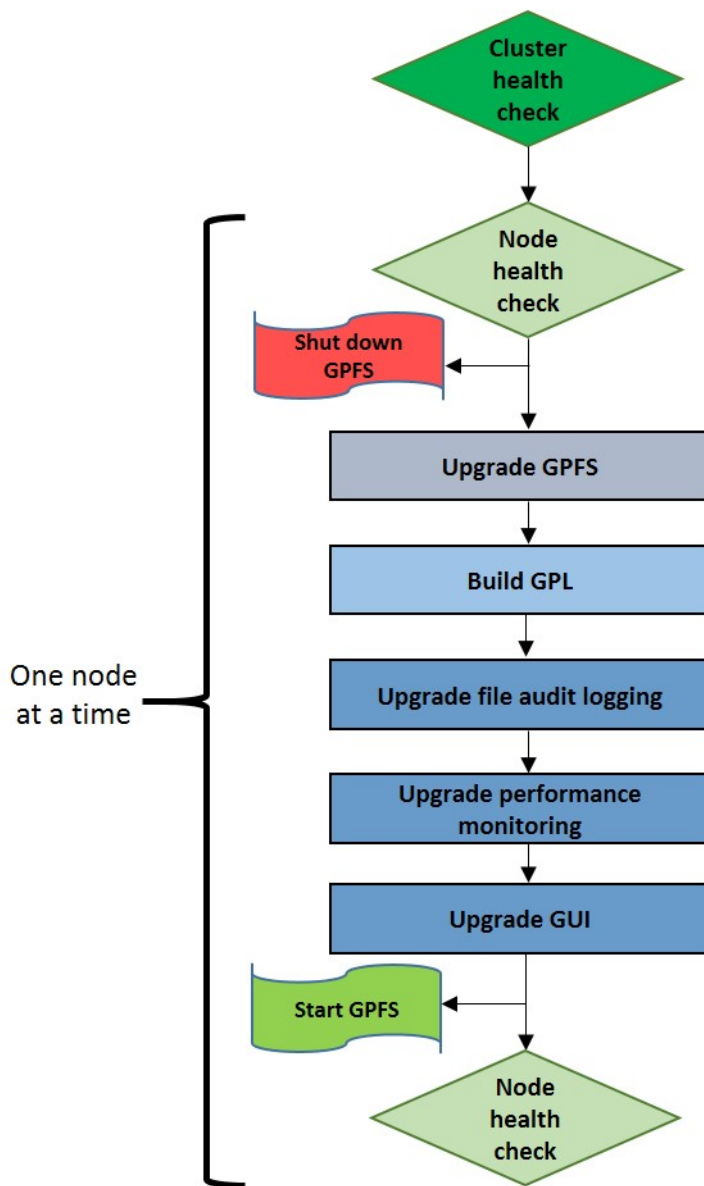
- | • Upgrade precheck
- | • “Phase 1” on page 447: Upgrade of all non-protocol nodes
- | • “Phase 2” on page 448: Upgrade of protocol nodes (except SMB and CES components)
- | • “Phase 3” on page 450: Object version sync, SMB upgrade, and CES upgrade on protocol nodes; License package upgrade on all nodes; and File audit logging message queue enabling at cluster level.
- | • Upgrade post-check

### | Upgrade precheck

- | **Important:** It is highly recommended to run the upgrade precheck while you are planning to upgrade, before the actual upgrade procedure. Doing this allows you adequate time to address any issues flagged during the upgrade precheck.

- | As part of the upgrade precheck, the following tasks are performed by the installation toolkit.
- | • Determine the installed IBM Spectrum Scale packages across the cluster on all nodes.
- | • Compare the versions of the installed packages with the versions in the repository of the packages you want to upgrade to.
- | In a mixed operating system cluster, the comparison is done with the package repository applicable for the operating system running on the respective nodes.
- | • Determine which packages need to be upgraded on each node.
- | • For every package that needs to be upgraded or installed, dependency check is done to ensure that all dependencies are met. The upgrade procedure throws an error and exits, if any dependency is not met.

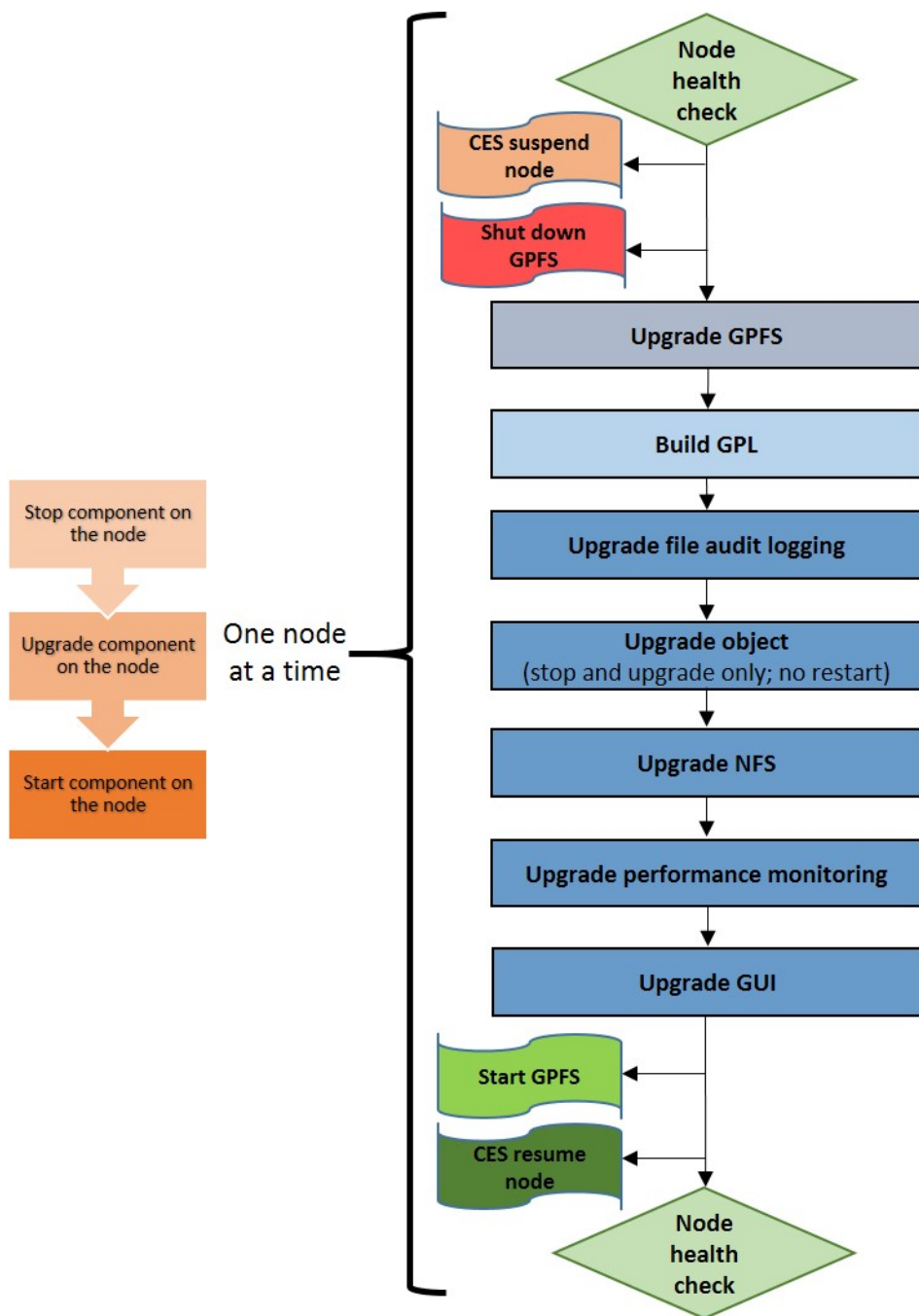
## Phase 1



|          |                                                                                                                      |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> | Check the cluster health.                                                                                            |
|          | <b>Perform following steps on each non-protocol node, one node at a time.</b>                                        |
| <b>2</b> | Check the node health.                                                                                               |
| <b>3</b> | Unmount file systems and shut down GPFS.<br><b>Attention:</b> At this point, I/O from this node stops.               |
| <b>4</b> | Upgrade core GPFS.                                                                                                   |
| <b>5</b> | Build GPFS portability layer (GPL).                                                                                  |
| <b>6</b> | Upgrade file audit logging. Install if file audit logging is enabled in the cluster configuration but not installed. |
| <b>7</b> | Upgrade performance monitoring.                                                                                      |
| <b>8</b> | Upgrade GUI.                                                                                                         |

|           |                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>9</b>  | Start up GPFS and mount the file systems.<br><br><b>Attention:</b> At this point, I/O from this node resumes.                                            |
| <b>10</b> | Check the node health.                                                                                                                                   |
|           | These steps are repeated on the remaining non-protocol nodes, one node at a time. After all of the non-protocol nodes are upgraded, phase 1 is complete. |

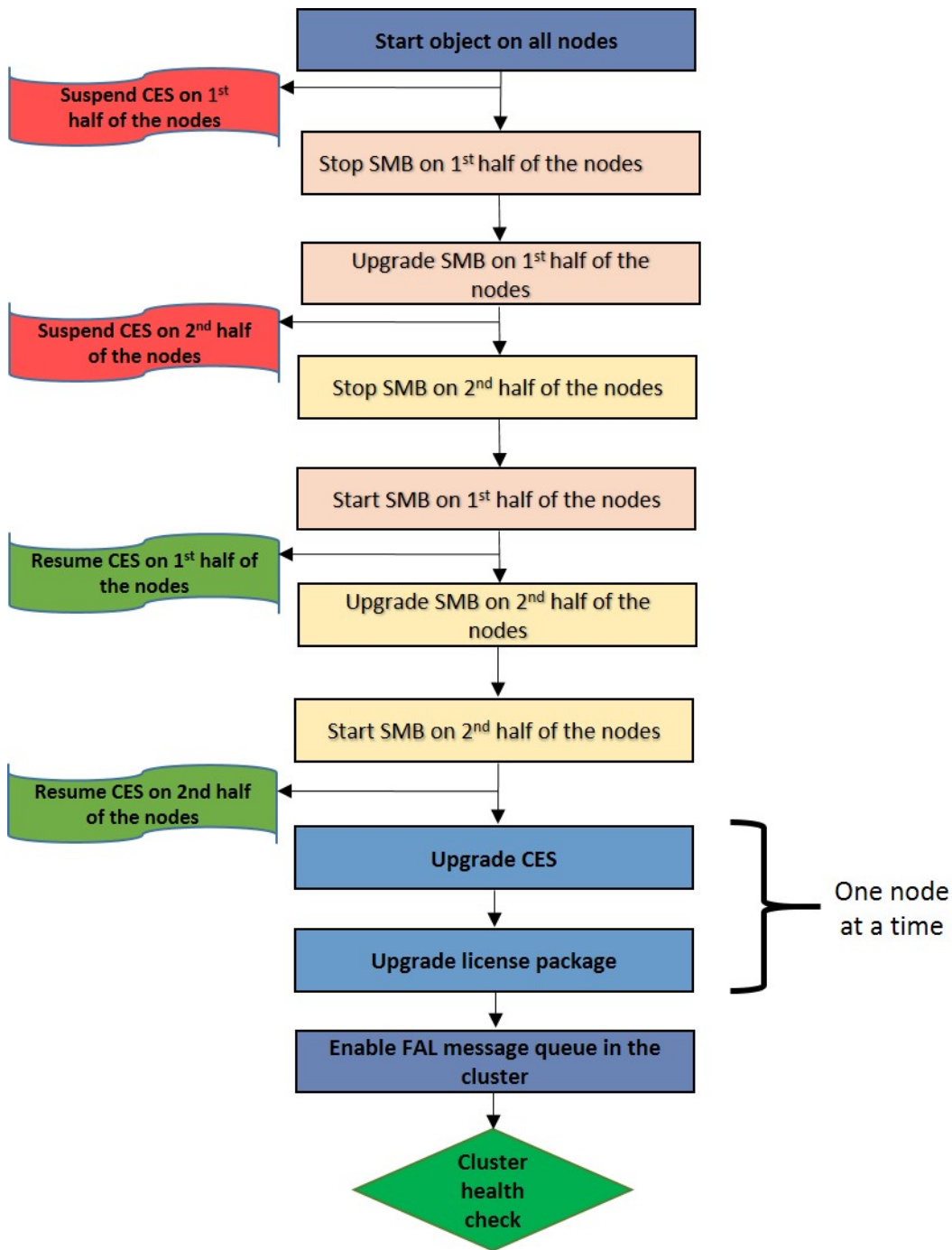
## Phase 2



|  |                                                                    |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | Perform following steps on each protocol node, one node at a time. |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------------------|

|           |                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b>  | Check the node health.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>2</b>  | Suspend CES on the node.<br><br><b>Attention:</b> At this point, protocol I/O from this node stops.                                                                                                     |
| <b>3</b>  | Unmount file systems and shut down GPFS.<br><br><b>Attention:</b> At this point, I/O from this node stops.                                                                                              |
| <b>4</b>  | Upgrade core GPFS.                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>5</b>  | Build GPFS portability layer (GPL).                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>6</b>  | Upgrade file audit logging. Install if file audit logging is enabled in the cluster configuration but not installed.                                                                                    |
| <b>7</b>  | Upgrade object.<br><b>Note:</b> Object services are stopped on the node and all object packages are upgraded on the node. Object services are started on all nodes in phase 3 of the upgrade procedure. |
| <b>8</b>  | Upgrade NFS.                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>9</b>  | Upgrade performance monitoring.                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>10</b> | Upgrade GUI.                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>11</b> | Start up GPFS and mount the file systems.<br><br><b>Attention:</b> At this point, I/O from this node resumes.                                                                                           |
| <b>12</b> | Resume CES on the node.<br><br><b>Attention:</b> At this point, protocol I/O from this node resumes.                                                                                                    |
| <b>13</b> | Check the node health.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|           | <b>These steps are repeated on the remaining protocol nodes, one node at a time. After all of the protocol nodes are upgraded, phase 2 is complete.</b>                                                 |

### Phase 3



|          |                                                                                                             |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> | Perform object version sync from one of the protocol nodes and start object services on all protocol nodes. |
| <b>2</b> | Suspend CES on the first half of nodes.                                                                     |



|           |                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>3</b>  | Stop SMB on the 1st half of nodes.<br><br><b>Attention:</b> At this point, SMB I/O on this half of nodes stops and CES IPs on these nodes are migrated to the nodes in the other half. |
| <b>4</b>  | Upgrade SMB on the 1st half of nodes.                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>5</b>  | Suspend CES on the 2nd half of nodes.<br><br><b>Attention:</b> At this point, SMB I/O stops on the whole cluster for a brief period.                                                   |
| <b>6</b>  | Stop SMB on the 2nd half of nodes.                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>7</b>  | Start SMB on the 1st half of nodes.                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>8</b>  | Resume CES on the 1st half of nodes.<br><br><b>Attention:</b> At this point, SMB I/O resumes on this half of nodes.                                                                    |
| <b>9</b>  | Upgrade SMB on the 2nd half of nodes.                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>10</b> | Start SMB on the 2nd half of nodes.                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>11</b> | Resume CES on the 2nd half of nodes.<br><br><b>Attention:</b> At this point, SMB I/O resumes in the whole cluster.                                                                     |
| <b>12</b> | Upgrade CES on all protocol nodes, one node at a time.                                                                                                                                 |
| <b>13</b> | Upgrade license package on all nodes, one node at a time.                                                                                                                              |
| <b>14</b> | Enable file audit logging message queue on the cluster.                                                                                                                                |
| <b>15</b> | Check the cluster health.                                                                                                                                                              |
|           | <b>After these steps are done, the installation toolkit automatically runs upgrade post-check.</b>                                                                                     |

## Upgrade post-check

As part of the upgrade post-check, the following tasks are performed by the installation toolkit.

- Check the health of the nodes.
- Compare the versions of the installed packages with the versions in the package repository.  
In a mixed operating system cluster, the comparison is done with the package repository applicable for the operating system running on the respective nodes.
- If any package is not upgraded, the installation toolkit prompts you to rerun the upgrade procedure.

You must complete the upgrade to the new code level to take advantage of the new functionality. For more information, see “Completing the upgrade to a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale” on page 464.

## Performing online upgrade by using the installation toolkit

Use the following procedure to do an online upgrade of IBM Spectrum Scale by using the installation toolkit

1. Download the new IBM Spectrum Scale self-extracting package using the sub-steps and then place it on the installer node.
  - a. Go to the IBM Spectrum Scale page on Fix Central, select the new **spectrumscale** package and then click **Continue**.
  - b. Choose the download option **Download using Download Director** to download the new **spectrumscale** package and place it in the wanted location on the install node.

**Note:** Although it is not recommended but if you must use the download option **Download using your browser (HTTPS)**, instead of clicking the down arrow to the left of the package name, you must right-click on the package name and select the **Save Link As..** option. If you click the download arrow, the browser might hang.

2. Extract the new IBM Spectrum Scale self-extracting package by using the package name (for example, /tmp/Spectrum\_Scale\_Standard-5.0.3.x\_x86\_64-Linux\_install).

This creates a new directory structure (/usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/).

3. Accept the license agreement. After the self-extracting package extraction is done several next steps and instructions are displayed on the screen including:

- cluster installation and protocol deployment
- upgrading an existing cluster using the installation toolkit
- adding nodes to an existing cluster using the installation toolkit
- adding NSDs or file systems to an existing cluster using the installation toolkit

4. Depending on your setup, do one of the following to obtain the current cluster configuration through the cluster definition file:

- If you are upgrading an IBM Spectrum Scale cluster that was created by using the installation toolkit, do these steps to upgrade by using the installation toolkit.

**Note:** If you have used the installation toolkit for the initial installation and deployment, it is assumed that the prerequisites are already in place.

- a. If you want to change the installer node before the upgrade, issue the `spectrumscale setup -s InstallNodeIP` command to set up the new installer node.

- b. Create a backup of the cluster definition file present in the installer configuration directory of the target version. For example: /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/installer/configuration

This backup can be used in case the config populate command fails.

- c. From the installer directory of the target version that you are upgrading to, populate the cluster definition file with the current cluster state by issuing the **./spectrumscale config populate** command. For more information, see “Populating cluster definition file with current cluster state using the installation toolkit” on page 322 and “Limitations of config populate option of the installation toolkit” on page 323.

If the config populate command fails, before proceeding with the upgrade, do the following.

- 1) Copy the cluster definition file from the /usr/lpp/mmfs/*PreviousVersionDir*/installer/configuration directory to the /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.3.x/installer/configuration directory.

Where *PreviousVersionDir* is the directory that is named according to the version that you are upgrading from. For example, 4.2.3.10 or 5.0.1.1.

- 2) Update the cluster definition file with the cluster state change operations that were done after the initial installation and deployment by using the **./spectrumscale** commands. These cluster state change operations include:

- Node-related changes such as adding nodes
- NSD-related changes such as adding or modifying NSDs
- File system changes such as creating or modifying file systems
- Protocols-related changes such as enabling or disabling protocols

- If you are upgrading a manually created IBM Spectrum Scale cluster, do these steps to upgrade by using the installation toolkit.

- a. Ensure that the prerequisite steps for using the installation toolkit are completed. For more information, see “Preparing to use the installation toolkit” on page 298.

- b. Configure your cluster definition file as explained in the following topics:

- “Setting up the installer node” on page 301
- “Defining the cluster topology for the installation toolkit” on page 302

- c. From the installer directory of the target version that you are upgrading to, populate the cluster definition file with the current cluster state by issuing the **./spectrumscale config populate** command. For more information, see “Populating cluster definition file with current cluster state using the installation toolkit” on page 322 and “Limitations of config populate option of the installation toolkit” on page 323.

If the config populate command fails, before proceeding with the upgrade, update the cluster definition file with the cluster state change operations that were done after the initial installation and deployment by using the **./spectrumscale** commands. These cluster state change operations include:

- Node-related changes such as adding nodes
- NSD-related changes such as adding or modifying NSDs
- File system changes such as creating or modifying file systems
- Protocols-related changes such as enabling or disabling protocols

5. Ensure that the cluster definition file is accurate and reflects the current state of your IBM Spectrum Scale cluster.

**Note:** If you are upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale release 4.2.1 or earlier, ensure that the operating system and architecture fields in the output of the **./spectrumscale node list** command are updated. These fields are automatically updated when you perform the upgrade precheck with **./spectrumscale upgrade precheck** or you can update these fields by issuing the **./spectrumscale config update** command.

If you want to upgrade IBM Spectrum Scale on IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes using the installation toolkit, you must perform some additional steps to manage IBM Spectrum Archive components. For more information, see “Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale on IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes using the installation toolkit” on page 458.

6. Run the upgrade precheck using the **./spectrumscale upgrade precheck** command.

**Important:** It is highly recommended to run the upgrade precheck while you are planning to upgrade, before the actual upgrade procedure. Doing this allows you adequate time to address any issues flagged during the upgrade precheck.

For any cluster with existing performance monitoring collectors, the upgrade prechecks might find that a reconfiguration is required. To enable the installation toolkit to perform the reconfiguration, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale config perfmon -r on
```

To keep your existing algorithms, issue the following command:

```
./spectrumscale config perfmon -r off
```

If you are upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale version 4.2.2 or later, the operating system and architecture fields in the cluster definition file must be updated. The upgrade precheck updates the operating system and CPU architecture fields in the cluster definition file. Alternatively, you can issue the **spectrumscale config update** command to update the operating system and CPU architecture fields in the cluster definition file.

To perform an offline upgrade based on the findings in the precheck results, do the steps in “Designating nodes as offline in the upgrade configuration” on page 455.

7. Run the upgrade process using the **./spectrumscale upgrade run** command.

**Note:**

- Accept the warnings for system impact and interruption during the upgrade.
- If you are upgrading to IBM Spectrum Scale release 4.2.2.1 or later on SLES 12 nodes, ignore the following warning generated by the local zypper repository created by the installation toolkit:  
WARN: Chef::Config[:zypper\_check\_gpg] was not set.  
All packages will be installed without gpg signature checks. This is a security hazard.

- | **Note:** On Ubuntu 16.04 LTS systems, if the call home capability is enabled, after upgrading the call home packages to version 5.0.1 or later, issue the following commands from one of the nodes that is a part of a call home group.
- | `mmcallhome capability disable`  
| `mmcallhome capability enable accept`
- | After the upgrade is completed, the installation toolkit automatically runs the upgrade post checks. You can manually run the upgrade post checks by issuing the `./spectrumscale upgrade postcheck` command.
- | 8. Do an upgrade rerun as required if the fresh upgrade is not successful. For more information, see “Upgrade rerun after an upgrade failure” on page 457.
- | 9. After the upgrade process is done, complete the upgrade to the new code level to take advantage of the new functionality. For more information, see “Completing the upgrade to a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale” on page 464.

## Performing offline upgrade or excluding nodes from upgrade using installation toolkit

Starting in the IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.2 release, the installation toolkit can upgrade and tolerate nodes being in an offline state, and it can exclude some nodes from the upgrade.

**Note:** Online upgrades can be done only from release 4.2.x to release 5.0.x . However, you can use offline upgrades to upgrade directly from release 4.1.x to release 5.0.x.

### Upgrade when nodes are unhealthy

By using the IBM Spectrum Scale offline upgrade, you can upgrade your cluster even if one or more nodes are unhealthy. A node is called unhealthy when the services are down but it is reachable through ping commands.

When you designate a node as offline in the cluster configuration, during the upgrade run, the installation toolkit upgrades all installed packages. However, there is no attempt made to stop or restart the respective services. You must manually restart the previously offline services by using these commands: `mmces service start` for protocol components and `mmstartup` for GPFS daemon.

For example, you try to upgrade a 5-node cluster whose nodes are *node1*, *node2*, *node3*, *node4*, and *node5* (protocol node).

On upgrade precheck, you notice the following issues:

- node3 is reachable but NFS is down
- node5 is reachable but SMB is down
- node2 is reachable but all services including GPFS are down

Here, you can do the following:

- Designate node3 as offline. This means that, during or after the upgrade, the installation toolkit does not restart any services including NFS on this node, but all installed packages including NFS (GPFS, SMB, and OBJ, and others) are upgraded on node3.
- Designate node5 as offline. This means that, during or after the upgrade, the installation toolkit does not restart any services including SMB on this node, but all installed packages including SMB (GPFS, NFS, SMB, OBJ, and others) are upgraded on node5.
- Designate node2 as offline. This means that all installed packages are upgraded, but none of the services are tried to be restarted.

**Note:**

- If you designate all nodes in a cluster as offline, then a full offline upgrade is performed on all nodes, leading to an upgrade of all installed packages without any services being started or stopped.
- If you try to designate a node that is already excluded as offline, then the exclude designation of the node will be cleared, and the offline designation will be added. For example,
 

```
./spectrumscale upgrade config offline -N vm1
[ INFO ] The node vm1.ibm.com was added in excluded list previously. Clearing this from excluded list.
[ INFO ] Adding vm1.ibm.com as smb offline
```
- After an offline upgrade, you must ensure that all unhealthy services are manually started (using **mmces service start** for protocol components, **mmstartup** for GPFS) .

## Designating nodes as offline in the upgrade configuration

- To designate a node as offline, issue this command:

```
./spectrumscale upgrade config offline -N nodename
```

An offline upgrade is performed on this node, which means that all installed packages are upgraded without any services being restarted.

**Important:** Before designating a node as offline, you must ensure that none of the components are active and if the node is a protocol node, then it must be suspended.

- To check the status of the GPFS daemon, issue the **mmgetstate** command.
- To stop the GPFS daemon, issue the **mmshutdown** command.
- To check the status of protocol components, issue the **mmces service list** command.
- To suspend the protocol node and stop the protocol services, issue the **mmces node suspend --stop** command.

If you are upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale version 5.0.2.0 or earlier, issue the following commands to suspend the protocol node and stop protocol services:

```
mmces node suspend
mmces service stop Protocol
```

- To check the status of the GUI service, issue the **systemctl status gpfsGUI** command.
- To stop the GUI service, issue the **systemctl stop gpfsGUI** command.
- To designate all nodes as offline and do a full offline upgrade across the cluster, issue this command:
 

```
./spectrumscale upgrade config offline -N node1,node2,node3.....,noden
```

All installed packages are upgraded on all the nodes in the cluster, but no services are restarted on any of the nodes.

- Clearing the offline designations
  - To clear all offline designations from a specific node, issue this command:
 

```
./spectrumscale upgrade config offline -N nodename --clear
```
  - To clear all the offline designations from all the nodes, issue this command:
 

```
./spectrumscale upgrade config offline --clear
```
- To clear both the offline and exclude configurations, issue this command:
 

```
./spectrumscale upgrade config clear
```
- To view all configurations that are done for offline upgrade, issue this command:
 

```
./spectrumscale upgrade config list
```

This includes the nodes that are excluded and the nodes where the components are designated as offline. An offline upgrade is initiated based on this configuration. For example,

```
#!/spectrumscale upgrade config list
[ INFO ] GPFS Node SMB NFS OBJ GPFS
[ INFO ]
[ INFO ] Phase1: Non Protocol Nodes Upgrade
[ INFO ] nsd001st001 - - -
```

```
[ INFO ] nsd002st001 - - -
[ INFO ] nsd003st001 - - -
[ INFO ] nsd004st001 - - -
[ INFO ]
[ INFO ] Phase2: Protocol Nodes Upgrade
[ INFO ] prt002st001
[ INFO ] prt003st001
[ INFO ] prt004st001
[ INFO ] prt006st001
[ INFO ] prt008st001
[ INFO ] prt009st001
[ INFO ] prt011st001
[ INFO ]
[ INFO ] Excluded Nodes : prt007st001,prt001st001,prt010st001,prt005st001
[ INFO ]
```

## Upgrade when nodes are not reachable

You can exclude one or more nodes from the current upgrade run, if the nodes are unreachable or if you want to upgrade them at a later time. When you exclude a node from the upgrade configuration, no action is performed on this node during the upgrade.

### Note:

- It is not recommended to exclude a subset of protocol nodes. For example, if you have 3 protocol nodes, then you must exclude all 3 nodes together. It is not recommended to exclude only a subset (1 or 2) of nodes. For example,  

```
./spectrumscale upgrade config exclude -N vm1
[ INFO ] Adding node vm1.ibm.com in excluded list.
[ WARN ] Protocol nodes should all be upgraded together if possible, since mixed versions
of the code are not allowed in CES components (SMB/OBJ). You may add the remaining protocol
node(s) : vm2.ibm.com in the excluded list or clear node(s): vm1.ibm.com with the
./spectrumscale config exclude --clear option so that no protocol nodes are excluded.
```
- Ensure that not all admin nodes are excluded and that at least one admin node is available in the non-excluded list. For example, if you have 3 admin nodes in a cluster that you want to upgrade, then you can exclude a maximum of 2 admin nodes only. If you have only one admin node, then it must not be excluded.

## Excluding nodes from the upgrade configuration

- To exclude one or more nodes from the upgrade configuration, issue this command:  

```
./spectrumscale upgrade config exclude -N node1,node2
```

This ensures that the installation toolkit does not perform any action on node1 and node2 during upgrade.

- Clearing the exclude designations
  - To clear the exclude configuration from specific nodes, issue this command:  

```
./spectrumscale upgrade config exclude -N node1,node2 --clear
```

**Note:** It is not recommended to clear only a subset of the protocol nodes that are designated as offline.

- To clear the exclude configuration from all nodes, issue this command:  

```
./spectrumscale upgrade config exclude --clear
```

## Upgrading the excluded nodes or offline designated nodes

1. Ensure that the nodes on which you want to perform offline upgrade are reachable through ping commands.
2. For nodes that are designated as excluded, clear the exclude designation of the nodes in the cluster definition file by using this command:

```
./spectrumscale upgrade config offline -N node1,node2 --clear
```

3. For nodes that were earlier designated as excluded, designate them as offline if all the required services are not running by using this command:

```
./spectrumscale upgrade config offline -N node1,node2
```

4. Run the upgrade procedure on the offline designated nodes by using this command:

```
./spectrumscale upgrade run
```

The installation toolkit upgrades the packages and restarts the services only for an online upgrade. For an offline upgrade, the installation toolkit only upgrades the packages that are currently installed on the offline designated nodes.

5. After the upgrade procedure is completed, do the following:

- Restart the GPFS daemon by using the **mmstartup** command on each offline designated node.
- If the object protocol is configured, perform the post-upgrade object configuration by using the following command from one of the protocol nodes.

```
mmobj config manage --version-sync
```

- Resume the protocol node and restart the protocol services by using the **mmces node resume --start** command for every offline designated node that is a protocol node.

If you are upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale version 5.0.2.0 or earlier, issue the following commands to resume the protocol node and start the protocol services:

```
mmces node resume
```

```
mmces service start Protocol
```

## Populating cluster configuration when nodes are designated as offline in the upgrade configuration

You cannot use the config populate functionality if one or more nodes in the cluster are designated as offline in the upgrade configuration. Use the following steps to populate the cluster configuration in scenarios in which you plan to designate one or more nodes as offline in the upgrade configuration.

1. Extract the installation image that you want to use for doing the upgrade.
2. Use the **./spectrumscale config populate** command or copy the old cluster definition file or create a cluster definition file using the **./spectrumscale** command.
3. Shut down the node(s).
4. Use the **./spectrumscale upgrade config** command to designate the node(s) as offline in the upgrade configuration.

## Limitations

- You cannot exclude a node if SMB service is running on it. This is not applicable for NFS or OBJ. For example,

```
./spectrumscale upgrade config exclude -N vm1
```

```
[ FATAL ] In order to exclude a protocol node running SMB from the current upgrade, the SMB service must first be stopped on that node. Please stop SMB using the mmces command and retry.
```

## Upgrade rerun after an upgrade failure

Starting from IBM Spectrum Scale 5.0.2 release, the installation toolkit supports upgrade rerun if fresh upgrade fails.

Do an upgrade rerun if the fresh upgrade fails due to the following reasons:

- Some component stopped during the upgrade process and it becomes unhealthy
- Network issue during the upgrade
- Chef process hangs
- Mixed mode packages

You can do a rerun by using the regular upgrade ( `./spectrumscale upgrade run`) command. The installation toolkit automatically identifies whether this command is run for a fresh upgrade or for a rerun. During a rerun, the installation toolkit performs an upgrade by ignoring all fatal errors that you received during the fresh upgrade.

By performing a rerun,

- The installation toolkit tries to do the upgrade even if some components become unhealthy.
- The installation toolkit displays warnings instead of fatal messages if some components are not healthy on a node.
- The installation toolkit does not try to stop the services if they are already stopped. If the services are already running, then the installation toolkit will not try to start the services again.
- The installation toolkit tries to start the services if they are stopped.
- The installation toolkit does not try to start/stop services on nodes where the services are designated as offline and on the nodes that are designated as excluded.

## Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale on IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes using the installation toolkit

On an IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) node, if you want to upgrade IBM Spectrum Scale, some steps need to be taken before and after the upgrade to manage the IBM Spectrum Archive related components.

Use this information to upgrade IBM Spectrum Scale on IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes by using the installation toolkit.

**Note:** For latest information about IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) commands, refer to *IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) documentation on IBM Knowledge Center*.

1. Perform the following steps that must be carried out on IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) components prior to an IBM Spectrum Scale upgrade.
  - a. Stop IBM Spectrum Archive (LTFS) by issuing the following command on all IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes.

```
ltfsee stop
```
  - b. Unmount the media by issuing the following command on all IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes.

```
umount /ltfs
```
  - c. Deactivate failover operations by issuing the following command on all IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes.

```
dsmmigfs disablefailover
```
  - d. Stop the HSM daemons by issuing the following command on all IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes.

```
dsmmigfs stop
```
  - e. Stop the HSM service by issuing the following command on all IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes.

```
systemctl stop hsm.service
```

After these steps, proceed with downloading, extracting, and doing other steps prior to an installation toolkit upgrade precheck. For more information, see “Upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale components with the installation toolkit” on page 444.

2. Run the installation toolkit upgrade precheck by issuing the following commands.

```
cd /usr/lp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/installer
./spectrumscale upgrade precheck
```

Where 5.0.x.x is the release specific directory.



This precheck fails and lists all RPMs that are failing the dependency check. Ensure that the RPMs listed are what is expected when IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) is installed.

3. Set the environment variable to bypass the installation toolkit RPM dependency check.

```
export SSFEATURE_OVERRIDE_EXT_PKG_DEPS=true
```

4. Rerun the installation toolkit upgrade precheck by issuing the following command.

```
./spectrumscale upgrade precheck
```

This precheck should pass if no other problems are detected.

5. Run the installation toolkit upgrade by issuing the following command.

```
./spectrumscale upgrade run
```

6. Upgrade IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE), if needed.

7. Perform the following steps that must be carried out on IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) components after a successful IBM Spectrum Scale upgrade.

- a. Start the HSM service by issuing the following command on all IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes.

```
systemctl start hsm.service
```

- b. Start the HSM daemons by issuing the following command on all IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes.

```
dsmmigfs start
```

- c. Activate failover operations by issuing the following command on all IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes.

```
dsmmigfs enablefailover
```

- d. Mount the media by issuing the following command on all IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes.

```
ltfs -o devname=DEVICE /ltfs
```

- e. Start IBM Spectrum Archive (LTFS) by issuing the following command on all IBM Spectrum Archive Enterprise Edition (EE) nodes.

```
ltfsee start
```

After these steps, you must complete the upgrade to new code level to take advantage of the new functionality. For more information, see “Completing the upgrade to a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale” on page 464.

---

## Changing the IBM Spectrum Scale product edition

You can change the IBM Spectrum Scale product edition from your currently installed product edition either by using the installation toolkit or manually.

The available product edition change paths<sup>1</sup> are as follows.

1. IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition to IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition
2. IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition to IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition
3. IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition to IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition
4. IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition to IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition

The methods that can be used to change the product edition are as follows.

1. Installation toolkit (cluster online)<sup>2</sup>
2. Manual node by node (cluster online)<sup>3</sup>
3. Manual all nodes (cluster offline)

**Note:**

- <sup>1</sup> These are the only edition changes that are supported.
- <sup>2</sup> If you are planning to use the installation toolkit for changing the product edition, be aware that the product edition change by using the installation toolkit can be performed only when you are upgrading to a newer version of IBM Spectrum Scale. If you do not want to upgrade to a newer version of IBM Spectrum Scale, you must change the product edition manually.
- <sup>3</sup> You must change the whole cluster to the same product edition. If you are using the manual node by node method, ensure that the product edition is changed on each node in the cluster.

You can use one of the following sets of steps to change the IBM Spectrum Scale product edition.

- Use the following steps for changing the product edition by using the installation toolkit.
  1. Download from IBM FixCentral the installation image of the IBM Spectrum Scale edition that you are planning to change to.
  2. Extract the installation image.  
For performing an upgrade by using the installation toolkit, a key requirement is the cluster definition file.
  3. Obtain the cluster definition file by using one of the following options.
    - Copy the old cluster definition file `/usr/lpp/mmfs/SpectrumScale_version/installer/configuration/clusterdefinition.txt` to the newly extracted package location `/usr/lpp/mmfs/SpectrumScale_version/installer/configuration/clusterdefinition.txt`
    - Use the **`./spectrumscale config populate`** command to traverse the existing cluster and populate the cluster definition file.

For more information about obtaining the current cluster configuration, see Step 4 of “Performing online upgrade by using the installation toolkit” on page 451.

4. Run the installation toolkit upgrade precheck procedure.

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/installer
./spectrumscale upgrade precheck
```

5. Run the installation toolkit upgrade procedure.

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/installer
./spectrumscale upgrade run
```

With these steps, the product edition is changed and the applicable packages are installed on all nodes specified in the cluster definition file.

- Use the following steps to change the product edition manually, one node at a time.

**Note:** In the following steps, **rpm** and **dpkg** commands are used for installing and uninstalling packages. You can also use package manager commands such as **yum**, **zypper**, and **apt-get** for installing and uninstalling packages, if the respective repository is set up in your environment.

1. Download from IBM FixCentral the installation image of the IBM Spectrum Scale edition that you are planning to change to.
2. Extract the installation image.
3. Unmount all file systems on the node.  
`mmumount all`
4. Verify that file systems are unmounted.  
`mmismount -L -N NodeName`
5. Shut down GPFS on the node.  
`mmshutdown`
6. Uninstall the current license package using one of the following commands depending on your product edition change path and the operating system.
  - IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition to IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition

RHEL and SLES:

```
rpm -e License_Package_Name
```

You can obtain the license package name by using the **rpm -qa | grep gpfs.license** command.

Ubuntu:

```
dpkg -P License_Package_Name
```

You can obtain the license package name by using the **dpkg -l | grep gpfs.license** command.

- IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition to IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition

RHEL and SLES:

```
rpm -e License_Package_Name
```

You can obtain the license package name by using the **rpm -qa | grep gpfs.license** command.

Ubuntu:

```
dpkg -P License_Package_Name
```

You can obtain the license package name by using the **dpkg -l | grep gpfs.license** command.

7. Install the new license package by using one of the following sets of commands depending on your product edition change path and the operating system.

- IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition to IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition

RHEL and SLES:

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_rpms  
rpm -ivh gpfs.license.da*.rpm
```

Ubuntu:

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_debs  
dpkg -i gpfs.license.da*.deb
```

- IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition to IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition

RHEL and SLES:

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_rpms  
rpm -ivh gpfs.license.dm*.rpm
```

Ubuntu:

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_debs  
dpkg -i gpfs.license.dm*.deb
```

- IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition to IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition

RHEL and SLES:

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_rpms  
rpm -ivh gpfs.license.adv*.rpm
```

Ubuntu:

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_debs  
dpkg -i gpfs.license.adv*.deb
```

- IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition to IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition

RHEL and SLES:

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_rpms  
rpm -ivh gpfs.license.dm*.rpm
```

Ubuntu:

```
cd /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_debs  
dpkg -i gpfs.license.dm*.deb
```

8. Start GPFS on the node.

```
mmstartup
```

9. Repeat the preceding steps on all nodes in the cluster.

- Use the following steps to change the product edition manually, all nodes at the same time.

**Note:** In the following steps, **rpm** and **dpkg** commands are used for installing and uninstalling packages. You can also use package manager commands such as **yum**, **zypper**, and **apt-get** for installing and uninstalling packages, if the respective repository is set up in your environment.

1. Download from IBM FixCentral the installation image of the IBM Spectrum Scale edition that you are planning to change to.

2. Extract the installation image.

3. Unmount all file systems.

```
mmumount all -a
```

4. Verify that file systems are unmounted.

```
mmismount -L
```

5. Shut down GPFS on all nodes.

```
mmshutdown -a
```

6. Uninstall the current license package using one of the following commands depending on your product edition change path and the operating system.

- IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition to IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition or IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition

RHEL and SLES:

```
mmsh -N NodeList rpm -e License_Package_Name
```

You can obtain the license package name by using the **rpm -qa | grep gpfs.license** command.

Ubuntu:

```
mmsh -N NodeList dpkg -P License_Package_Name
```

You can obtain the license package name by using the **dpkg -l | grep gpfs.license** command.

- IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition to IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition

RHEL and SLES:

```
mmsh -N NodeList rpm -e License_Package_Name
```

You can obtain the license package name by using the **rpm -qa | grep gpfs.license** command.

Ubuntu:

```
mmsh -N NodeList dpkg -P License_Package_Name
```

You can obtain the license package name by using the **dpkg -l | grep gpfs.license** command.

*NodeList* is a file that contains the list of nodes.

7. Use one of the following sets of commands depending on your product edition change path and the operating system.

- Install the new license package.

- IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition to IBM Spectrum Scale Data Access Edition

RHEL and SLES:

```
mmsh -N NodeList rpm -ivh /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_rpms/gpfs.license.da*.rpm
```

Ubuntu:

```
mmsh -N NodeList dpkg -i /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_debs/gpfs.license.da*.deb
```

- IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition to IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition

RHEL and SLES:

```
mmsh -N NodeList rpm -ivh /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_rpms/gpfs.license.dm*.rpm
```

Ubuntu:

```
mmsh -N NodeList dpkg -i /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_debs/gpfs.license.dm*.deb
```

- Install the new license package, and gpfs.adv and gpfs.crypto packages.
- IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition to IBM Spectrum Scale Data Management Edition  
RHEL and SLES:

```
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -ivh /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_rpms/gpfs.license.dm*.rpm
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -ivh /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_rpms/gpfs.crypto*.rpm
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -ivh /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_rpms/gpfs.adv*.rpm
```

Ubuntu:

```
mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -i /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_debs/gpfs.license.dm*.deb
mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -i /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_debs/gpfs.crypto*.deb
mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -i /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_debs/gpfs.adv*.deb
```

- IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition to IBM Spectrum Scale Advanced Edition  
RHEL and SLES:

```
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -ivh /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_rpms/gpfs.license.adv*.rpm
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -ivh /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_rpms/gpfs.crypto*.rpm
mmdsh -N NodeList rpm -ivh /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_rpms/gpfs.adv*.rpm
```

Ubuntu:

```
mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -i /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_debs/gpfs.license.adv*.deb
mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -i /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_debs/gpfs.crypto*.deb
mmdsh -N NodeList dpkg -i /usr/lpp/mmfs/5.0.x.x/gpfs_debs/gpfs.adv*.deb
```

*NodeList* is a file that contains the list of nodes.

8. Start GPFS on all nodes.

```
mmstartup -a
```

## Changing Express Edition to Standard Edition

Starting with release 4.2.3, IBM Spectrum Scale Express Edition is no longer available. Use this information for migrating from IBM Spectrum Scale Express Edition 4.2.2.x or earlier to IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition 4.2.3.x or later.

Before you begin, extract the IBM Spectrum Scale software as described in the “Extracting the IBM Spectrum Scale software on Linux nodes” on page 253 topic. For information about the location of extracted installation images, see “Location of extracted packages” on page 259.

Use one of the following sets of steps depending on the operating system and the IBM Spectrum Scale version.

### Red Hat Enterprise Linux and SLES

- To migrate from 4.1.1.x or 4.2.0.x or 4.2.1.x Express Edition to 4.2.3 Standard Edition or later on Red Hat Enterprise Linux and SLES, update the existing RPMs and install new RPMs by issuing this command.
- To migrate from 4.2.2.x Express Edition to 4.2.3 Standard Edition or later on Red Hat Enterprise Linux and SLES, use these steps.

1. Uninstall the Express Edition license RPM by issuing the following command.

```
rpm -e gpfs.license.exp*.rpm
```

2. Update the existing RPMs and install new RPMs by issuing the following command.

```
rpm -Uvh gpfs*rpm
rpm -ivh gpfs.compression*.rpm
rpm -ivh gpfs.license.std*.rpm
```

### Debian and Ubuntu

- To migrate from 4.1.1.x or 4.2.0.x or 4.2.1.x Express Edition to 4.2.3 Standard Edition or later on Debian and Ubuntu, update the existing packages and install new packages by issuing the following command.

```
dpkg -i gpfs*deb
```

- To migrate from 4.2.2.x Express Edition to 4.2.3 Standard Edition or later on Debian and Ubuntu, use these steps.
  1. Uninstall the Express Edition license package by issuing the following command.

```
dpkg -r gpfs.license.exp*deb
```
  2. Update the existing packages and install new packages by issuing the following command.

```
dpkg -i gpfs*deb
```

## AIX

- Depending on whether you want to be able to revert to the previous version without reinstalling or uninstalling or not, do one of the following sets of steps.
  - If you want to be able to revert to previous version without reinstalling or uninstalling, do one of following sets of steps:
    - To migrate from 4.2.0.x or 4.2.1.x Express Edition to 4.2.3 Standard Edition or later on AIX, use these steps.
      1. Update existing packages to 4.2.3 level or a later version by using the PTF images on FixCentral.
      2. Install additional packages from CD images.
    - To migrate from 4.2.2.x Express Edition to 4.2.3 Standard Edition on AIX, use these steps.
      1. Update existing packages to 4.2.3 level or a later version by using the PTF images on FixCentral.
      2. Install additional packages from CD images.
      3. After a successful update, uninstall the gpfs.license.exp package.
  - To revert to the previous version, do the following steps:
    1. Uninstall all additional packages installed from CD images.
    2. Reject the PTF images.
    3. If you are reverting to 4.2.2.x and you had uninstalled the gpfs.license.exp package for migrating to Standard Edition, install the gpfs.license.exp package.
  - If you can reinstall or uninstall to revert to the previous version, do one of the following sets of steps:
    - To migrate from 4.2.0.x or 4.2.1.x Express Edition to 4.2.3 Standard Edition or later on AIX, install 4.2.3 packages from CD images.
    - To migrate from 4.2.2.x Express Edition to 4.2.3 Standard Edition or later on AIX, use these steps.
      1. Install 4.2.3 or a later version packages from CD images.
      2. After a successful update, uninstall the gpfs.license.exp package.

## Windows

- To migrate from 4.2.2.x or earlier Express Edition to Standard Edition 4.2.3 or later on Windows, use these steps.
  1. Uninstall the current IBM Spectrum Scale packages (For example, gpfs.base-4.x.x.0-Windows.msi, gpfs.gskit-8.0.x.x.msi, and gpfs.x.license.msi).
  2. Reboot the system.
  3. Install gpfs.ext-4.x.x.-Windows-license.msi, gpfs.ext-4.x.x.0-Windows.msi, and gpfs.gskit-8.0.x.x.msi packages.

---

## Completing the upgrade to a new level of IBM Spectrum Scale

It is a good idea to use the cluster for a while with the new level of IBM Spectrum Scale installed, until you are sure that you are ready to permanently upgrade the cluster to the new level.

When you are ready to permanently upgrade the cluster, follow the steps in this topic to complete the upgrade. If you decide not to complete the upgrade, you can revert to the previous level of IBM Spectrum Scale. For more information, see “Reverting to the previous level of IBM Spectrum Scale” on page 468.

Before you begin this task, verify that you have upgraded all the nodes in the cluster to the latest licensed version of IBM Spectrum Scale.

When you run `mmchconfig release=LATEST` in Step 2 of these directions, you can add other parameters and their values to the command line:

```
mmchconfig release=LATEST <parameterN=value> <parameterN+1=value>...
```

The following table describes the parameters that are referred to in this topic.

Table 47. Other parameters with `mmchconfig release=LATEST`

| Parameter                                       | Purpose                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Comment                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>--accept-empty-cipherlist-security</code> | <p>You must specify this parameter if you want to continue running the cluster with the lowest level of security for communications between nodes or with other clusters. That is, you want the <code>cipherList</code> attribute to remain set to <code>EMPTY</code> or <code>undefined</code>.</p> <p>For more information, see the topic <i>Security mode</i> in the <i>IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide</i></p> | <p>It is a good idea to have some level of security for cluster communications:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set <code>cipherList</code> to <code>AUTHONLY</code> or to a supported cipher:<br/><code>mmchconfig cipherList=AUTHONLY</code></li> <li>Do not include the parameter <code>--accept-empty-cipherlist-security</code> when you run <code>mmchconfig release=LATEST</code>.</li> </ul> <p>For more information, see the topic <i>Security mode</i> in the <i>IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide</i></p> |
| <code>mmfsLogTimeStampISO8601={yes   no}</code> | <p>Setting this parameter to <code>no</code> allows the cluster to continue running with the earlier log time stamp format.</p> <p>For more information, see the topic <i>Security mode</i> in the <i>IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide</i></p>                                                                                                                                                                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set <code>mmfsLogTimeStampISO8601</code> to <code>no</code> if you save log information and you are not yet ready to switch to the new log time stamp format.</li> </ul> <p>After you complete the upgrade, you can change the log time stamp format at any time with the <code>mmchconfig</code> command.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Omit this parameter if you are ready to switch to the new format. The default value is <code>yes</code></li> </ul>                        |

1. Verify that the SHA message digest and the `cipherList` configuration variable are set to valid values.

**Note:**

- The SHA message digest is a hash result that is generated by a cryptographic hash function.
- The `cipherList` variable specifies the security mode for communications among nodes in the cluster and with nodes in other clusters.

Follow these steps:

- a. Display the current values by entering the following command. The listing shows both the command and example output:

```
# mmauth show .
Cluster name:      zounds.cluster (this cluster)
Cipher list:       (none specified)
SHA digest:        (undefined)
File system access: (all rw)
```

- b. If the value for the SHA digest is (undefined), follow these steps:
  - 1) Enter the following command to generate a public/private key pair and an SHA message digest:  
`mmauth genkey new`
  - 2) Enter `mmauth show .` again and verify that the value for SHA digest is no longer (undefined).
- c. If the value for **cipherList** is (none specified) or EMPTY, do one of the following actions:
  - If you want a level of security in communications between nodes and with other clusters, follow these steps:
    - 1) Set **cipherList** to AUTHONLY or to a supported cipher:  
`mmauth update . -l AUTHONLY`
    - 2) Enter `mmauth show .` again and verify that the value for **cipherList** is no longer (none specified) or EMPTY.
  - If you do not want a level of security cluster communications, let **cipherList** remain set to (none specified) or EMPTY.
2. Enter the following command to upgrade the cluster configuration data, upgrade the file systems, and enable new functionality. You can add the parameters that are described in Table 47 on page 465 to the command line:  
`mmchconfig release=LATEST`

**Note:** Until you run the **mmchconfig release=LATEST** command, the management GUI might not be fully operational at the new code level.

**Important:** If the **mmchconfig** command detects any nodes that are not available or cannot be reached, it lists the names of those nodes. If any such nodes are listed, correct the problem and run the command again until it verifies all the nodes and completes successfully.

**Note:** If the **mmchconfig** command fails with an error message that indicates that **cipherlist** is set to **EMPTY**, do one of the following actions:

- If you want the cluster to run with a higher security mode than **EMPTY**, set **cipherList** to AUTHONLY or to a supported cipher:  
`mmauth update . -l AUTHONLY`

Return to the first part of Step 2 and run the **mmchconfig** command as before.

- If you want the cluster to continue with the security mode set to **EMPTY**, return to the first part of Step 2 and run the **mmchconfig** command with the additional parameter **--accept-empty-cipherlist-security**.
3. If you have not already done so, assign an appropriate IBM Spectrum Scale license to each of the nodes in the cluster. See “IBM Spectrum Scale license designation” on page 143 for a detailed description of the IBM Spectrum Scale license types. To see what the minimum required IBM Spectrum Scale license is for each of the nodes in the cluster, enter the following command:  
`mmllslicense -L`  
  
 To assign an IBM Spectrum Scale server license to the nodes that require it, enter the following command:  
`mmchlicense server -N NodeList`  
  
 To assign an IBM Spectrum Scale client license to the nodes that require it, enter:  
`mmchlicense client -N NodeList`
  4. Enable backward-compatible format changes or upgrade all file systems to the latest metadata format changes.



**Attention:** Before you continue with this step, it is important to understand the differences between **mmchfs -V compat** and **mmchfs -V full**:

- If you enter **mmchfs -V compat**, only changes that are backward compatible with the previous file system version are enabled. Nodes in remote clusters that are running at the previous IBM Spectrum Scale version or later will still be able to mount the file system. Nodes running a IBM Spectrum Scale version earlier than the previous version will no longer be able to mount the file system. For example, if you are upgrading from IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.3.x to 5.0.2.x, a file system of version corresponding to IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.3.x will remain mountable from a remote cluster running IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.3.x or later. However, a file system of version corresponding to IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.0.0 will remain mountable from a remote cluster running IBM Spectrum Scale 4.2.0.0 or later.

Running in the compatibility mode might prevent enablement of new functionality that relies on disk structures available only with the latest version.

- If you enter **mmchfs -V full**, all new functions that require different on-disk data structures are enabled. Nodes in remote clusters that run an older IBM Spectrum Scale version will no longer be able to mount the file system. If any nodes that run an older IBM Spectrum Scale version have mounted the file system at the time this command is entered, the **mmchfs** command fails. This consideration might also apply to minor releases within the same major release. For example, release 4.1.0.x and release 4.1.1.x might have different metadata formats.

To enable backward-compatible format changes, enter the following command:

```
mmchfs FileSystem -V compat
```

To upgrade all file systems to the latest metadata format changes, enter the following command:

```
mmchfs FileSystem -V full
```

Certain new file system features might require more processing that cannot be handled by the **mmchfs -V** command alone. To fully activate such features, in addition to **mmchfs -V**, you must also run the **mmmigratefs** command. An example of such a feature is enabling fast extended attributes for file systems older than GPFS 3.4.

**Note:** The first mount of a file system after you run **mmchfs -V** might fail with a no-disk-space error. This situation might occur if the file system is relatively low on metadata disk space (10% or less free). If so, enter the command again. Typically the file system is mounted without a problem after the initial failed mount.

After completing the upgrade, you might need to enable cluster configuration repository (CCR) and fast extended attributes (fastea).

5. Enable cluster configuration repository (CCR) and fast extended attributes (fastea) as follows, if required.

- a. Enable the CCR in the cluster as follows.

```
mmchcluster --ccr-enable
```

- b. Enable fastea in the cluster as follows.

- 1) Check if fastea is enabled.

```
mmllsfs FileSystemName --fastea
```

A sample output is as follows.

| flag     | value | description                       |
|----------|-------|-----------------------------------|
| -----    | ----- | -----                             |
| --fastea | Yes   | Fast external attributes enabled? |

- 2) If it is not enabled, issue the following command to enable fastea.

```
mmmigratefs FileSystemName --fastea
```

For more information, see *mmmigratefs command* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

**Note:** The following features are a few among several IBM Spectrum Scale features that require fast extended attributes (fastea) to be enabled to work.

- Clones
  - Independent filesets
  - Encryption
  - Active file management (AFM)
6. If you use the **mmbackup** command to back up your file system and you have not done a full backup since GPFS 3.3 or later, a full backup might be necessary. For more information, see *File systems backed up using GPFS 3.2 or earlier versions of mmbackup* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Administration Guide*.
  7. If you have file audit logging enabled on any file systems, follow the steps in “Manually upgrading file audit logging authentication” on page 442.

**Note:** Ensure that you include the `gpfs.kafka` and `gpfs.librdkafka` packages as part of the upgrade process if those packages are currently installed.

---

## Reverting to the previous level of IBM Spectrum Scale

If you decide not to continue the upgrade to the latest level of GPFS, and you have not yet issued the **mmchfs -V** command, you can reinstall the earlier level of GPFS.

**Important:** Once a file system has been upgraded explicitly by issuing the **mmchfs -V full** command, the disk images can no longer be read by a prior version of GPFS. You will be required to re-create the file system from the backup media and restore the content if you choose to go back after this command has been issued. The same rules apply for file systems that are newly created with GPFS 5.0.

You can revert back to GPFS 4.2.x.

If you have performed backups with the **mmbackup** command using the 5.0 version and decide to revert to an earlier version, you must rebuild the **mmbackup** shadow database using the **mmbackup** command with either the **-q** or **--rebuild** option.

The procedure differs depending on whether you have issued the **mmchconfig release=LATEST** command or not.

## Reverting to a previous level of GPFS when you have *not* issued **mmchconfig release=LATEST**

If you have **not** issued the **mmchconfig release=LATEST** command, perform these steps.

1. Stop all user activity in the file systems.
2. Cleanly unmount all mounted GPFS file systems. Do not use force unmount.
3. Stop GPFS on all nodes in the cluster:
 

```
mmshutdown -a
```
4. Run the appropriate uninstallation program to remove GPFS from each node in the cluster. For example:
  - For Linux nodes (this example is only applicable on the IBM Spectrum Scale Standard Edition):
 

```
rpm -e gpfs.gpl gpfs.license.std gpfs.base gpfs.docs gpfs.gskit gpfs.msg.en_US
```
  - For AIX nodes:
 

```
installp -u gpfs
```
  - For Windows nodes, open the **Programs and Features** control panel and remove **IBM General Parallel File System**.

For the remaining steps, see IBM Spectrum Scale in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/ibmspectrumscale\\_welcome.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/ibmspectrumscale_welcome.html)), and search for the appropriate *IBM Spectrum Scale: Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide* for your release.

5. Copy the installation images of the previous GPFS licensed program on all affected nodes.

6. Install the original install images and all required PTFs.
7. For Linux nodes running GPFS, you must rebuild the GPFS portability layer.
8. Reboot all nodes.

## Reverting to a previous level of GPFS when you *have* issued **mmchconfig release=LATEST**

If you *have* issued the **mmchconfig release=LATEST** command, you must rebuild the cluster. Perform these steps.

1. Stop all user activity in the file systems.
2. Cleanly unmount all mounted GPFS file systems. Do not use force unmount.
3. Stop GPFS on all nodes in the cluster:  
`mmshutdown -a`
4. Export the GPFS file systems by issuing the **mmexportfs** command:  
`mmexportfs all -o exportDataFile`
5. Delete the cluster:  
`mmdelete -a`
6. Run the appropriate uninstallation command to remove GPFS from each node in the cluster. For example:
  - For Linux nodes:  
`rpm -e gpfs.gpl gpfs.license.xx gpfs.base gpfs.docs gpfs.msg.en_US`
  - For AIX nodes:  
`installp -u gpfs`
  - For Windows nodes, open the **Programs and Features** control panel and remove **IBM General Parallel File System**.

For the remaining steps, see IBM Spectrum Scale in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/ibmspectrumscale\\_welcome.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/ibmspectrumscale_welcome.html)), and search for the appropriate *IBM Spectrum Scale: Concepts, Planning, and Installation Guide* for your release.
7. Copy the installation images of the previous GPFS licensed program on all affected nodes.
8. Install the original installation images and all required PTFs.
9. For Linux nodes running GPFS, you must rebuild the GPFS portability layer.
10. Reboot all nodes.
11. Recreate your original cluster using the **mmcrcluster** command. Run the **mmchlicense** command to set the appropriate licenses after the cluster is created.
12. Use the **mmchconfig** command to restore any previously set configuration settings that are compatible with GPFS 4.2 or below.
13. Import the file system information using the **mmimportfs** command. Specify the file created by the **mmexportfs** command from Step 4:  
`mmimportfs all -i exportDataFile`
14. Start GPFS on all nodes in the cluster, issue:  
`mmstartup -a`
15. Mount the file systems if this is not done automatically when the GPFS daemon starts.

---

## Coexistence considerations

Each GPFS cluster can have multiple GPFS file systems that coexist on the cluster, but function independently of each other. In addition, each file system might have different data management programs.

**Note:** The GPFS Data Management API (DMAPI) and GPFS file system snapshots can coexist; however, access to the files in a snapshot using DMAPI is restricted. For more information, see *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

---

## Compatibility considerations

All applications that ran on the previous release of GPFS will run on the new level of GPFS. File systems that were created under the previous release of GPFS can be used under the new level of GPFS.

---

## Considerations for IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management

Upgrading to GPFS 3.3 or beyond requires consideration for IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management. IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management requires that all nodes in a cluster are configured with a DMAPI file handle size of 32 bytes.

During upgrade, it is possible to have older versions of GPFS that have a DMAPI file handle size of 16 bytes. Until all nodes in the cluster have been updated to the latest release and the DMAPI file handle size has been changed to 32 bytes, IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management must be disabled. Run **mmfslsconfig dmapiFileHandleSize** to see what value is set.

After all nodes in the cluster are upgraded to the latest release and you change the DMAPI file handle size to 32 bytes, you can enable IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management.

The DMAPI file handle size is configured with the **dmapiFileHandleSize** option. For more information about this option, see *GPFS configuration attributes for DMAPI* in *IBM Spectrum Scale: Command and Programming Reference*.

---

## GUI user role considerations

When the IBM Spectrum Scale is updated from 4.2.0.x to 4.2.1, no default group is created for the user role *User Administrator*.

If you need to assign *User Administrator* role to the admin user, you need to create a user group with *User Administrator* role. Perform the following steps to create a user group with *User Administrator* role:

1. Select **Access > GUI Users** in the IBM Spectrum Scale management GUI.
2. Click **Create Group** under **Groups** tab.
3. In the Create User Group window, enter the user group as *UserAdmin*.
4. Select user group role as **User Administrator**.

Now, you are ready to assign the User Administrator role to the admin users.

**Note:** This process is not required for fresh installation of IBM Spectrum Scale system. In case of fresh installation, the *User Administrator* role is granted to the group *UserAdmin* by default.

---

## Applying maintenance to your GPFS system

Before applying maintenance to your GPFS system, there are several things you should consider.

### Remember that:

1. There is limited interoperability between GPFS 5.0.x nodes and nodes running GPFS 4.2.y. This function is intended for short-term use. You will not get the full functions of GPFS 5.0.x until all nodes are using GPFS 5.0.x.
2. Interoperability between maintenance levels will be specified on a per-maintenance-level basis. See the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

3. When applying maintenance, the GPFS file systems will need to be unmounted and GPFS shut down on the node being upgraded. Any applications using a GPFS file system should be shut down before applying maintenance to avoid application errors or possible system halts.

**Note:** If the AIX Alternate Disk Install process is used, the new image is placed on a different disk. The running install image is not changed, and GPFS is not shut down. The new image is not used until the node is rebooted.

4. For the latest service information, see the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

To download fixes, go to the IBM Support Portal: Downloads for General Parallel File System ([www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Downloads/Software/Cluster\\_software/General\\_Parallel\\_File\\_System](http://www.ibm.com/support/entry/portal/Downloads/Software/Cluster_software/General_Parallel_File_System)) and obtain the fixes for your hardware and operating system.

To install the latest fixes:

- For Linux nodes, see Chapter 4, “Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Linux nodes and deploying protocols,” on page 245.
- For AIX nodes, see Chapter 5, “Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on AIX nodes,” on page 349.
- For Windows nodes, see Chapter 6, “Installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Windows nodes,” on page 353.

---

## Guidance for upgrading the operating system on IBM Spectrum Scale nodes

This topic provides high-level guidance for upgrading the operating system (OS) on your IBM Spectrum Scale nodes with focus on steps to be performed from the IBM Spectrum Scale side.

For OS specific upgrade steps, refer to the respective OS documentation.

### Order of upgrade

**Important:** Before upgrading the OS on a node, ensure that the new OS version that you are planning to upgrade to is supported on the current IBM Spectrum Scale version. For information on the supported OS versions, see Functional Support Matrices in IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ.

- If the new OS version that you are planning to upgrade to is supported on the current IBM Spectrum Scale version, upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale is not mandatory. Proceed with upgrading the OS.
- If the new OS version that you are planning to upgrade to is not supported on the current IBM Spectrum Scale version, do the following:
  1. Determine the IBM Spectrum Scale version on which the new OS version that you are planning to upgrade to is supported by referring to Functional Support Matrices in IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ.
  2. Upgrade IBM Spectrum Scale.
  3. After the IBM Spectrum Scale upgrade is completed, upgrade to the new OS version.

### Prerequisites for upgrading Linux distributions

- Download and mount the operating system installation image on each node that is being upgraded.
  - Create an OS base repository that points to the installation image on each node that is being upgraded.
    - If the repository name is the same as an old OS repository, clean the repository cache.
    - Verify that the repository works.
  - If required, download OFED drivers on each node that is being upgraded.
  - Note the current OS and OFED settings. You might need to restore them after the OS upgrade.
- It is assumed that mixed level of OS and drivers across nodes are supported by vendors.

- Note the current SELinux and firewall settings. Although an OS upgrade typically does not change these settings, it is recommended to note these settings.
- Check the file system space and ensure that /boot has adequate free space.

## OS upgrade flow

Do the following steps on each node on which the OS is being upgraded.

1. If a protocol node is being upgraded, do the following:
  - a. Suspend the protocol node and stop the protocol services running on the node by issuing the following command.

```
mmces node suspend --stop
```

- b. Wait for the protocol service monitor to change to the suspended state.

| # mmhealth node show ces |           |               |         |
|--------------------------|-----------|---------------|---------|
| Component                | Status    | Status Change | Reasons |
| -----                    |           |               |         |
| CES                      | SUSPENDED | 30 min. ago   | -       |
| AUTH                     | SUSPENDED | 30 min. ago   | -       |
| AUTH_OBJ                 | SUSPENDED | 30 min. ago   | -       |
| BLOCK                    | SUSPENDED | 30 min. ago   | -       |
| CESNETWORK               | SUSPENDED | 30 min. ago   | -       |
| NFS                      | SUSPENDED | 30 min. ago   | -       |
| OBJECT                   | SUSPENDED | 31 min. ago   | -       |
| SMB                      | SUSPENDED | 30 min. ago   | -       |

2. Disable the GPFS autoloading setting that causes GPFS to be started whenever the operating system reboots by issuing the following command.
 

```
mmchconfig autoloading=no -N NodeName
```
3. Unmount GPFS file systems on the node by issuing the following command.
 

```
mmumount all
```
4. Stop GPFS on the node by issuing the following command.
 

```
mmshutdown
```
5. Check if there are any residual GPFS processes running and kill them, if needed.
6. If required, uninstall the OFED driver using the bundled uninstallation script in the OFED package.
7. Perform the OS upgrade steps according to the respective documentation.
8. Reboot the node when the OS upgrade steps are completed.
9. If required, install the new OFED driver and reboot the node after OFED driver installation.
10. Restore any OS and OFED settings (if applicable) that have been overwritten during the upgrade.
11. Rebuild the GPFS portability layer. For more information, see “Building the GPFS portability layer on Linux nodes” on page 261.
12. Verify that no conflicting services have been started or enabled during the OS upgrade. For example, some versions of RHEL autostart a non-IBM version of NFS after upgrade and it conflicts with the CES NFS service of IBM Spectrum Scale.
13. Verify SELinux and firewall settings.
14. Enable the GPFS autoloading setting, if it was disabled earlier in this procedure, by issuing the following command.
 

```
mmchconfig autoloading=yes -N NodeName
```
15. Restart GPFS on the node by issuing the following command.
 

```
mmstartup
```
16. Verify that all file systems are mounted on the node by issuing the following command.
 

```
mmismount all
```
17. If a protocol node is being upgraded, do the following:

- a. Resume the protocol node and start the protocol services on the node by issuing the following command.

```
mmces node resume --start
```

- b. Ensure that CES IPs are hosted by this node and that all services are healthy by issuing the following commands.

```
mmces address list
mmces service list -a
mmces node list
mmhealth node show CES
mmhealth cluster show
```

Repeat these steps on all nodes on which the OS needs to be upgraded.

#### **Related tasks:**

“Upgrading the SMB package after upgrading OS to Ubuntu 18.04” on page 425

If you have upgraded the operating system on your protocol nodes from Ubuntu 16.04 to Ubuntu 18.04, ensure that the SMB package is upgraded to the version required for Ubuntu 18.04.

“Upgrading the performance monitoring packages after upgrading OS to Ubuntu 18.04” on page 428

If you have upgraded the operating system on your IBM Spectrum Scale nodes from Ubuntu 16.04 LTS to Ubuntu 18.04 LTS, additional steps are required to ensure that performance monitoring packages are upgraded to the version required for Ubuntu 18.04 LTS.

“Servicing IBM Spectrum Scale protocol nodes”

Use these steps to upgrade OS and to install kernel updates, firmware updates, and driver updates on IBM Spectrum Scale protocol nodes.

---

## **Servicing IBM Spectrum Scale protocol nodes**

Use these steps to upgrade OS and to install kernel updates, firmware updates, and driver updates on IBM Spectrum Scale protocol nodes.

It is advisable to match OS, kernel, firmware, and driver across all nodes within a cluster to help with performance and to ease debugging. As a part of this procedure, ensure the following:

- Before upgrading OS or installing kernel updates, refer to the IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ to ensure that the version of IBM Spectrum Scale currently running is supported on the version of OS that you are planning to upgrade to or the kernel update that you are planning to install: IBM Spectrum Scale FAQ in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/STXKQY/gpfsclustersfaq.html)).

It is possible that an IBM Spectrum Scale upgrade might be required to get to a version of IBM Spectrum Scale that supports the newly desired OS. If this is the case, upgrade IBM Spectrum Scale first and then the OS.

- If kernel update is for a new OS (RHEL 7.3 vs RHEL 7.2, for example), always update the OS before applying the kernel update.

- When taking nodes offline to upgrade OS or installing kernel updates, firmware updates, or driver updates, ensure the following:

- Quorum does not break
- Enough NSD nodes remain up to access NSDs
- The remaining nodes can handle the desired workload

1. Uninstall the applicable drivers as follows.

- a. Obtain and extract the applicable drivers.

- b. Suspend CES on the node being upgraded.

```
mmces node suspend -N NodeBeingUpgraded --stop
```

- c. Shut down GPFS on the node being upgraded.

```
mmshutdown -N NodeBeingUpgraded
```

- | d. Find the uninstallation script within the drivers package and execute it on the node being upgraded.
- | 2. Create a local repository for the OS upgrade.
  - | A repository must be created so that the OS can be upgraded. This repository can be DVD or ISO based. Make sure that you remove any repositories pointing to old OS versions.
- | 3. Upgrade the OS and reboot the node after the OS upgrade.
  - | For more information, see “Guidance for upgrading the operating system on IBM Spectrum Scale nodes” on page 471.
- | 4. Install the kernel update and reboot the node after the kernel update.
- | 5. Rebuild the GPFS portability layer using the **mmbuildgp1** command.
  - | For more information, see “Building the GPFS portability layer on Linux nodes” on page 261.
- | 6. Install the required firmware updates and reboot the node after the firmware update.
- | 7. Install the latest drivers, as applicable and reboot the node after the driver update.
- | 8. Verify that GPFS is active on the node and then resume CES.
  - | `mmgetstate -a`
  - | `mmces node resume -N NodeBeingUpgraded --start`
  - | `mmces node list`
  - | `mmces service list -a`
  - | `mmces address list`
- | 9. Repeat the preceding steps on each protocol node that needs to be serviced, one node at a time.



---

## Accessibility features for IBM Spectrum Scale

Accessibility features help users who have a disability, such as restricted mobility or limited vision, to use information technology products successfully.

---

### Accessibility features

The following list includes the major accessibility features in IBM Spectrum Scale:

- Keyboard-only operation
- Interfaces that are commonly used by screen readers
- Keys that are discernible by touch but do not activate just by touching them
- Industry-standard devices for ports and connectors
- The attachment of alternative input and output devices

IBM Knowledge Center, and its related publications, are accessibility-enabled. The accessibility features are described in IBM Knowledge Center ([www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter](http://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter)).

---

### Keyboard navigation

This product uses standard Microsoft Windows navigation keys.

---

### IBM and accessibility

See the IBM Human Ability and Accessibility Center ([www.ibm.com/able](http://www.ibm.com/able)) for more information about the commitment that IBM has to accessibility.



---

## Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the US. This material might be available from IBM in other languages. However, you may be required to own a copy of the product or product version in that language in order to access it.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not grant you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

*IBM Director of Licensing IBM Corporation North Castle Drive, MD-NC119 Armonk, NY 10504-1785 US*

For license inquiries regarding double-byte character set (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

*Intellectual Property Licensing Legal and Intellectual Property Law IBM Japan Ltd. 19-21, Nihonbashi-Hakozakicho, Chuo-ku Tokyo 103-8510, Japan*

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some jurisdictions do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM websites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those websites. The materials at those websites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those websites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you provide in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

*IBM Director of Licensing IBM Corporation North Castle Drive, MD-NC119 Armonk, NY 10504-1785 US*

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this document and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement or any equivalent agreement between us.

The performance data discussed herein is presented as derived under specific operating conditions. Actual results may vary.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

Statements regarding IBM's future direction or intent are subject to change or withdrawal without notice, and represent goals and objectives only.

All IBM prices shown are IBM's suggested retail prices, are current and are subject to change without notice. Dealer prices may vary.

This information is for planning purposes only. The information herein is subject to change before the products described become available.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to actual people or business enterprises is entirely coincidental.

#### COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs. The sample programs are provided "AS IS", without warranty of any kind. IBM shall not be liable for any damages arising out of your use of the sample programs.

Each copy or any portion of these sample programs or any derivative work must include a copyright notice as follows:

© (your company name) (year).

Portions of this code are derived from IBM Corp.

Sample Programs. © Copyright IBM Corp. \_enter the year or years\_.

If you are viewing this information softcopy, the photographs and color illustrations may not appear.

---

## Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, and [ibm.com](http://ibm.com) are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corp., registered in many jurisdictions worldwide. Other product and service names might be trademarks of IBM or other companies. A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the Web at Copyright and trademark information at [www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml](http://www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml).

Intel is a trademark of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft and Windows are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

UNIX is a registered trademark of the Open Group in the United States and other countries.

---

## **Terms and conditions for product documentation**

Permissions for the use of these publications are granted subject to the following terms and conditions.

### **Applicability**

These terms and conditions are in addition to any terms of use for the IBM website.

### **Personal use**

You may reproduce these publications for your personal, noncommercial use provided that all proprietary notices are preserved. You may not distribute, display or make derivative work of these publications, or any portion thereof, without the express consent of IBM.

### **Commercial use**

You may reproduce, distribute and display these publications solely within your enterprise provided that all proprietary notices are preserved. You may not make derivative works of these publications, or reproduce, distribute or display these publications or any portion thereof outside your enterprise, without the express consent of IBM.

### **Rights**

Except as expressly granted in this permission, no other permissions, licenses or rights are granted, either express or implied, to the publications or any information, data, software or other intellectual property contained therein.

IBM reserves the right to withdraw the permissions granted herein whenever, in its discretion, the use of the publications is detrimental to its interest or, as determined by IBM, the above instructions are not being properly followed.

You may not download, export or re-export this information except in full compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including all United States export laws and regulations.

IBM MAKES NO GUARANTEE ABOUT THE CONTENT OF THESE PUBLICATIONS. THE PUBLICATIONS ARE PROVIDED "AS-IS" AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, NON-INFRINGEMENT, AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

---

## **IBM Online Privacy Statement**

IBM Software products, including software as a service solutions, ("Software Offerings") may use cookies or other technologies to collect product usage information, to help improve the end user experience, to tailor interactions with the end user or for other purposes. In many cases no personally identifiable information is collected by the Software Offerings. Some of our Software Offerings can help enable you to

collect personally identifiable information. If this Software Offering uses cookies to collect personally identifiable information, specific information about this offering's use of cookies is set forth below.

This Software Offering does not use cookies or other technologies to collect personally identifiable information.

If the configurations deployed for this Software Offering provide you as customer the ability to collect personally identifiable information from end users via cookies and other technologies, you should seek your own legal advice about any laws applicable to such data collection, including any requirements for notice and consent.

For more information about the use of various technologies, including cookies, for these purposes, See IBM's Privacy Policy at <http://www.ibm.com/privacy> and IBM's Online Privacy Statement at <http://www.ibm.com/privacy/details> the section entitled "Cookies, Web Beacons and Other Technologies" and the "IBM Software Products and Software-as-a-Service Privacy Statement" at <http://www.ibm.com/software/info/product-privacy>.

---

## Glossary

This glossary provides terms and definitions for IBM Spectrum Scale.

The following cross-references are used in this glossary:

- *See* refers you from a nonpreferred term to the preferred term or from an abbreviation to the spelled-out form.
- *See also* refers you to a related or contrasting term.

For other terms and definitions, see the IBM Terminology website ([www.ibm.com/software/globalization/terminology](http://www.ibm.com/software/globalization/terminology)) (opens in new window).

### B

#### **block utilization**

The measurement of the percentage of used subblocks per allocated blocks.

### C

#### **cluster**

A loosely-coupled collection of independent systems (nodes) organized into a network for the purpose of sharing resources and communicating with each other. See also *GPFS cluster*.

#### **cluster configuration data**

The configuration data that is stored on the cluster configuration servers.

#### **Cluster Export Services (CES) nodes**

A subset of nodes configured within a cluster to provide a solution for exporting GPFS file systems by using the Network File System (NFS), Server Message Block (SMB), and Object protocols.

#### **cluster manager**

The node that monitors node status using disk leases, detects failures, drives recovery, and selects file system managers. The cluster manager must be a quorum node. The selection of the cluster manager node favors the quorum-manager node with the lowest node number among the nodes that are operating at that particular time.

**Note:** The cluster manager role is not moved to another node when a node with a lower node number becomes active.

#### **control data structures**

Data structures needed to manage file data and metadata cached in memory. Control data structures include hash tables and link pointers for finding cached data; lock states and tokens to implement distributed locking; and various flags and sequence numbers to keep track of updates to the cached data.

### D

#### **Data Management Application Program Interface (DMAPI)**

The interface defined by the Open Group's XDSM standard as described in the publication *System Management: Data Storage Management (XDSM) API Common Application Environment (CAE) Specification C429*, The Open Group ISBN 1-85912-190-X.

#### **deadman switch timer**

A kernel timer that works on a node that has lost its disk lease and has outstanding I/O requests. This timer ensures that the node cannot complete the outstanding I/O requests (which would risk causing file system corruption), by causing a panic in the kernel.

#### **dependent fileset**

A fileset that shares the inode space of an existing independent fileset.

#### **disk descriptor**

A definition of the type of data that the disk contains and the failure group to which this disk belongs. See also *failure group*.

#### **disk leasing**

A method for controlling access to storage devices from multiple host systems. Any host that wants to access a storage device configured to use disk leasing registers for a lease; in the event of a perceived failure, a host system can deny access,

preventing I/O operations with the storage device until the preempted system has reregistered.

**disposition**

The session to which a data management event is delivered. An individual disposition is set for each type of event from each file system.

**domain**

A logical grouping of resources in a network for the purpose of common management and administration.

**E**

**ECKD** See *extended count key data (ECKD)*.

**ECKD device**

See *extended count key data device (ECKD device)*.

**encryption key**

A mathematical value that allows components to verify that they are in communication with the expected server. Encryption keys are based on a public or private key pair that is created during the installation process. See also *file encryption key*, *master encryption key*.

**extended count key data (ECKD)**

An extension of the count-key-data (CKD) architecture. It includes additional commands that can be used to improve performance.

**extended count key data device (ECKD device)**

A disk storage device that has a data transfer rate faster than some processors can utilize and that is connected to the processor through use of a speed matching buffer. A specialized channel program is needed to communicate with such a device. See also *fixed-block architecture disk device*.

**F**

**failback**

Cluster recovery from failover following repair. See also *failover*.

**failover**

(1) The assumption of file system duties by another node when a node fails. (2) The process of transferring all control of the ESS to a single cluster in the ESS when the other clusters in the ESS fails.

See also *cluster*. (3) The routing of all transactions to a second controller when the first controller fails. See also *cluster*.

**failure group**

A collection of disks that share common access paths or adapter connection, and could all become unavailable through a single hardware failure.

**FEK** See *file encryption key*.

**fileset** A hierarchical grouping of files managed as a unit for balancing workload across a cluster. See also *dependent fileset*, *independent fileset*.

**fileset snapshot**

A snapshot of an independent fileset plus all dependent filesets.

**file clone**

A writable snapshot of an individual file.

**file encryption key (FEK)**

A key used to encrypt sectors of an individual file. See also *encryption key*.

**file-management policy**

A set of rules defined in a policy file that GPFS uses to manage file migration and file deletion. See also *policy*.

**file-placement policy**

A set of rules defined in a policy file that GPFS uses to manage the initial placement of a newly created file. See also *policy*.

**file system descriptor**

A data structure containing key information about a file system. This information includes the disks assigned to the file system (*stripe group*), the current state of the file system, and pointers to key files such as quota files and log files.

**file system descriptor quorum**

The number of disks needed in order to write the file system descriptor correctly.

**file system manager**

The provider of services for all the nodes using a single file system. A file system manager processes changes to the state or description of the file system, controls the regions of disks that are allocated to each node, and controls token management and quota management.



**fixed-block architecture disk device (FBA disk device)**

A disk device that stores data in blocks of fixed size. These blocks are addressed by block number relative to the beginning of the file. See also *extended count key data device*.

**fragment**

The space allocated for an amount of data too small to require a full block. A fragment consists of one or more subblocks.

**G**

**global snapshot**

A snapshot of an entire GPFS file system.

**GPFS cluster**

A cluster of nodes defined as being available for use by GPFS file systems.

**GPFS portability layer**

The interface module that each installation must build for its specific hardware platform and Linux distribution.

**GPFS recovery log**

A file that contains a record of metadata activity, and exists for each node of a cluster. In the event of a node failure, the recovery log for the failed node is replayed, restoring the file system to a consistent state and allowing other nodes to continue working.

**I**

**ill-placed file**

A file assigned to one storage pool, but having some or all of its data in a different storage pool.

**ill-replicated file**

A file with contents that are not correctly replicated according to the desired setting for that file. This situation occurs in the interval between a change in the file's replication settings or suspending one of its disks, and the restripe of the file.

**independent fileset**

A fileset that has its own inode space.

**indirect block**

A block containing pointers to other blocks.

**inode** The internal structure that describes the

individual files in the file system. There is one inode for each file.

**inode space**

A collection of inode number ranges reserved for an independent fileset, which enables more efficient per-fileset functions.

**ISKLM**

IBM Security Key Lifecycle Manager. For GPFS encryption, the ISKLM is used as an RKM server to store MEKs.

**J**

**journaled file system (JFS)**

A technology designed for high-throughput server environments, which are important for running intranet and other high-performance e-business file servers.

**junction**

A special directory entry that connects a name in a directory of one fileset to the root directory of another fileset.

**K**

**kernel** The part of an operating system that contains programs for such tasks as input/output, management and control of hardware, and the scheduling of user tasks.

**M**

**master encryption key (MEK)**

A key used to encrypt other keys. See also *encryption key*.

**MEK** See *master encryption key*.

**metadata**

Data structures that contain information that is needed to access file data. Metadata includes inodes, indirect blocks, and directories. Metadata is not accessible to user applications.

**metanode**

The one node per open file that is responsible for maintaining file metadata integrity. In most cases, the node that has had the file open for the longest period of continuous time is the metanode.

**mirroring**

The process of writing the same data to multiple disks at the same time. The

mirroring of data protects it against data loss within the database or within the recovery log.

### **Microsoft Management Console (MMC)**

A Windows tool that can be used to do basic configuration tasks on an SMB server. These tasks include administrative tasks such as listing or closing the connected users and open files, and creating and manipulating SMB shares.

### **multi-tailed**

A disk connected to multiple nodes.

## **N**

### **namespace**

Space reserved by a file system to contain the names of its objects.

### **Network File System (NFS)**

A protocol, developed by Sun Microsystems, Incorporated, that allows any host in a network to gain access to another host or netgroup and their file directories.

### **Network Shared Disk (NSD)**

A component for cluster-wide disk naming and access.

### **NSD volume ID**

A unique 16 digit hex number that is used to identify and access all NSDs.

**node** An individual operating-system image within a cluster. Depending on the way in which the computer system is partitioned, it may contain one or more nodes.

### **node descriptor**

A definition that indicates how GPFS uses a node. Possible functions include: manager node, client node, quorum node, and nonquorum node.

### **node number**

A number that is generated and maintained by GPFS as the cluster is created, and as nodes are added to or deleted from the cluster.

### **node quorum**

The minimum number of nodes that must be running in order for the daemon to start.

### **node quorum with tiebreaker disks**

A form of quorum that allows GPFS to run with as little as one quorum node

available, as long as there is access to a majority of the quorum disks.

### **non-quorum node**

A node in a cluster that is not counted for the purposes of quorum determination.

## **P**

**policy** A list of file-placement, service-class, and encryption rules that define characteristics and placement of files. Several policies can be defined within the configuration, but only one policy set is active at one time.

### **policy rule**

A programming statement within a policy that defines a specific action to be performed.

**pool** A group of resources with similar characteristics and attributes.

### **portability**

The ability of a programming language to compile successfully on different operating systems without requiring changes to the source code.

### **primary GPFS cluster configuration server**

In a GPFS cluster, the node chosen to maintain the GPFS cluster configuration data.

### **private IP address**

A IP address used to communicate on a private network.

### **public IP address**

A IP address used to communicate on a public network.

## **Q**

### **quorum node**

A node in the cluster that is counted to determine whether a quorum exists.

**quota** The amount of disk space and number of inodes assigned as upper limits for a specified user, group of users, or fileset.

### **quota management**

The allocation of disk blocks to the other nodes writing to the file system, and comparison of the allocated space to quota limits at regular intervals.

## R

### **Redundant Array of Independent Disks (RAID)**

A collection of two or more disk physical drives that present to the host an image of one or more logical disk drives. In the event of a single physical device failure, the data can be read or regenerated from the other disk drives in the array due to data redundancy.

### **recovery**

The process of restoring access to file system data when a failure has occurred. Recovery can involve reconstructing data or providing alternative routing through a different server.

### **remote key management server (RKM server)**

A server that is used to store master encryption keys.

### **replication**

The process of maintaining a defined set of data in more than one location. Replication involves copying designated changes for one location (a source) to another (a target), and synchronizing the data in both locations.

### **RKM server**

See *remote key management server*.

### **rule**

A list of conditions and actions that are triggered when certain conditions are met. Conditions include attributes about an object (file name, type or extension, dates, owner, and groups), the requesting client, and the container name associated with the object.

## S

### **SAN-attached**

Disks that are physically attached to all nodes in the cluster using Serial Storage Architecture (SSA) connections or using Fibre Channel switches.

### **Scale Out Backup and Restore (SOBAR)**

A specialized mechanism for data protection against disaster only for GPFS file systems that are managed by IBM Spectrum Protect Hierarchical Storage Management (HSM).

### **secondary GPFS cluster configuration server**

In a GPFS cluster, the node chosen to maintain the GPFS cluster configuration

data in the event that the primary GPFS cluster configuration server fails or becomes unavailable.

### **Secure Hash Algorithm digest (SHA digest)**

A character string used to identify a GPFS security key.

### **session failure**

The loss of all resources of a data management session due to the failure of the daemon on the session node.

### **session node**

The node on which a data management session was created.

### **Small Computer System Interface (SCSI)**

An ANSI-standard electronic interface that allows personal computers to communicate with peripheral hardware, such as disk drives, tape drives, CD-ROM drives, printers, and scanners faster and more flexibly than previous interfaces.

### **snapshot**

An exact copy of changed data in the active files and directories of a file system or fileset at a single point in time. See also *fileset snapshot*, *global snapshot*.

### **source node**

The node on which a data management event is generated.

### **stand-alone client**

The node in a one-node cluster.

### **storage area network (SAN)**

A dedicated storage network tailored to a specific environment, combining servers, storage products, networking products, software, and services.

### **storage pool**

A grouping of storage space consisting of volumes, logical unit numbers (LUNs), or addresses that share a common set of administrative characteristics.

### **stripe group**

The set of disks comprising the storage assigned to a file system.

### **striping**

A storage process in which information is split into blocks (a fixed amount of data) and the blocks are written to (or read from) a series of disks in parallel.

## subblock

The smallest unit of data accessible in an I/O operation, equal to one thirty-second of a data block.

## system storage pool

A storage pool containing file system control structures, reserved files, directories, symbolic links, special devices, as well as the metadata associated with regular files, including indirect blocks and extended attributes. The **system storage pool** can also contain user data.

## T

### token management

A system for controlling file access in which each application performing a read or write operation is granted some form of access to a specific block of file data. Token management provides data consistency and controls conflicts. Token management has two components: the token management server, and the token management function.

### token management function

A component of token management that requests tokens from the token management server. The token management function is located on each cluster node.

### token management server

A component of token management that controls tokens relating to the operation of the file system. The token management server is located at the file system manager node.

### transparent cloud tiering (TCT)

A separately installable add-on feature of IBM Spectrum Scale that provides a native cloud storage tier. It allows data center administrators to free up on-premise storage capacity, by moving out cooler data to the cloud storage, thereby reducing capital and operational expenditures. .

### twin-tailed

A disk connected to two nodes.

## U

### user storage pool

A storage pool containing the blocks of data that make up user files.

## V

**VFS** See *virtual file system*.

### virtual file system (VFS)

A remote file system that has been mounted so that it is accessible to the local user.

### virtual node (vnode)

The structure that contains information about a file system object in a virtual file system (VFS).

---

# Index

## Special characters

- ?
  - deleting old sensors 438
- /tmp/mmfs
  - collecting problem determination data in 243
- .afm
  - internal directory 53
- .pconflicts
  - internal directory 53
- .ptrash
  - internal directory 53
- (excluding a node
  - offline upgrade 454
- (marking a component offline(
  - during upgrade 454

## A

- access control lists (ACLs)
  - file system authorization 176
- access control on GPFS file systems
  - Windows 357
- access to file systems
  - simultaneous 2
- accessibility features for IBM Spectrum Scale 475
- adapter
  - invariant address requirement 149
- adding Cloud servicesnode
  - existing Cloud servicescluster 370
- adding LTFS nodes 341
- adding protocol nodes 340
  - with toolkit 337
- administration commands
  - GPFS 4, 5, 19
- AFM
  - cache eviction 63
  - caching modes 42
  - encryption 76
  - fileset disabling 75
  - global namespace 46
  - independent-writer (IW) 42
  - install 373
  - Limitations 77, 88
  - local-update (LU) 42
  - operation with disconnected home 65
  - Parallel data transfers 53
  - partial file caching 55
  - peer snapshot 60
  - planned maintenance
    - IW cache 73
  - planning 240
  - prefetch 55
  - primary gateway 45
  - psnap 60
  - read-only (RO) 42
  - resync on SW filesets 70
  - single-writer (SW) 42
  - UID and GID requirements on the cache and home clusters 240
  - upgrade 420

- AFM (*continued*)
  - WAN latency 41
  - workerthreads on cache cluster 240
- AFM DR
  - best practices 94
  - cache cluster
    - UID/GID requirements 241
  - changing
    - secondary site 86
  - characteristics
    - active-passive relationships 90
    - independent fileset 89
    - NFD exports 90
    - NFSv3 90
    - one-on-one relationships 89
  - failback
    - new primary site 86
    - old primary site 85
  - failover
    - secondary site 85
  - features 81
  - installing
    - AFM-based disaster recovery 375
  - Limitations 77, 88
  - planning 241
  - role reversal 84
  - RPO snapshots 82
  - secondary cluster
    - NFS setup 241
  - trucking
    - inband 91
    - outband 91
    - worker1threads on primary cluster 241
- AFM DR characteristics
  - failback 92
  - failover 92
  - trucking
    - inband 91
    - outband 91
- AFM Gateway node 12
- AFM mode
  - operations 49
- AFM node 12
- AIX
  - electronic license agreement 350
  - installation instructions for GPFS 349
  - installing GPFS 350
  - prerequisite software 349
- allocation map
  - block 14
  - inode 14
  - logging of 15
- allowing the GPFS administrative account to run as a service,
  - Windows 363
- antivirus software
  - Windows 356
- API 103
  - configuring 371
  - fields parameter 106
  - filter parameter 109
  - installing 371

- API (*continued*)
  - paging 111
- application programs
  - communicating with GPFS 19
- applying maintenance levels to GPFS 470
- architecture, GPFS 9
- assigning a static IP address
  - Windows 358
- asynchronous
  - delay 48
  - operations 48
- asynchronous delay
  - AFM 48
- atime value 175
- audit logging
  - installation 317
  - watch folder 318
- authentication 443
  - basic concepts 203
  - protocol user authentication 203
  - toolkit 313
- authentication planning
  - file access 206
  - object access 211
  - protocols 203, 205
- autoload attribute 162
- automatic mount
  - shared file system access 3

## B

- Backup considerations 238
- backup planning 185
- bandwidth
  - increasing aggregate 2
- best practices 89
- bin directory 251
- block
  - allocation map 14
  - size 172
- block allocation map 176

## C

- cache 15
- cache and home
  - AFM 43
- cache cluster
  - AFM 42
  - UID/GID requirements 241
- cache eviction 63
- cached
  - files 48
- cached and uncached files
  - AFM 48
- caching modes 42
- call home
  - configuration 319
  - installation 319
- Call home 426, 427
  - Upgrade 426
    - v4.2.0. to v4.2.1 or later 427
    - v4.2.1. to v5.0.0 426
- callbacks 443
- case sensitivity
  - Windows 356

- CCR 27
- CES
  - iscsi 40
  - overview 38
  - SMB limitations
    - exports 217
- CES IPs 311
- CES shared root file system 309
- changing
  - secondary site 86
- characteristics 89
- clean up
  - Cloud services 398
- clean up the environment 398
- cleanup procedures for installation 392
- cloud data sharing
  - creating a node class 367
  - security considerations 237
- Cloud data sharing 119
  - operation 119
- cloud providers
  - Cloud services 123
  - transparent cloud tiering 123
- Cloud services
  - creating a ndoe class 367
  - modifying 370
  - planning 227
  - security considerations 237
  - software requirements 228
  - upgrade 431
    - upgrade to 1.1.2.1 432
    - upgrade to 1.1.3 433
    - upgrade to 1.1.4 434, 435
    - upgrade to 1.1.5 436
    - upgrade to 1.1.6 437
- cluster configuration data files
  - /var/mmfs/gen/mmsdrfs file 26
  - content 26
- Cluster Export Services
  - overview 38
- cluster manager
  - description 10
  - initialization of GPFS 20
- cluster node
  - considerations 229
- Clustered configuration repository 27
- clustered watch 134, 135, 136, 137, 387, 389
  - installing 387
  - introduction 134
  - JSON 137
  - limitations 387
  - producers 134
  - remotely mounted file systems 389
  - requirements 387
  - watch folder 134
- coexistence considerations 470
- collecting problem determination data 243
- commands
  - description of GPFS commands 4
  - failure of 160
  - mmbackup 27
  - mmcallhome 426, 427
  - mmchcluster 161
  - mmchconfig 16, 17
  - mmchdisk 24
  - mmcheckquota 20
  - mmchfs 167, 177, 178

- commands (*continued*)
  - mmcrcluster 17, 158, 161, 349
  - mmcrfs 167, 177, 178
  - mmcrnsd 164
  - mmdefedquota 179
  - mmdefquotaon 179
  - mmdelnsd 164
  - mmedquota 179
  - mmfsck 15, 20, 24
  - mmlsdisk 24, 166
  - mmlsfs 15
  - mmlsquota 179
  - mmmount 20
  - mmrepquota 179
  - mmstartup 162
  - mmwinservctl 161
  - operating system 19
  - processing 24
  - remote file copy
    - rcp 161
    - scp 161
  - remote shell
    - rsh 161
    - ssh 161
- communication
  - cache and home 43
  - GPFS daemon to daemon 159
  - invariant address requirement 149
- comparison
  - live system backups 189
  - snapshot based backups 189
- compatibility considerations 470
- concepts
  - AFM DR 81
- conduits 135
- configuration
  - files 26
  - flexibility in your GPFS cluster 3
  - of a GPFS cluster 158
- configuration and tuning settings
  - configuration file 162
  - default values 162
  - GPFS files 5
- configuration of protocol nodes 343
  - object protocol 344, 345, 346
- configuration tasks
  - SMB export limitations 217
- configuring
  - api 371
- configuring a mixed Windows and UNIX cluster 362
- configuring a Windows HPC server 365
- configuring GPFS 302
- configuring quota
  - transparent cloud tiering 239
- configuring system for transparent cloud tiering 230
- configuring the GPFS Administration service, Windows 364
- configuring Windows 358
- considerations for backup
  - Transparent Cloud Tiering 238
- considerations for GPFS applications 241
  - exceptions to Open Group technical standards 241
  - NFS V4 ACL 241
  - stat() system call 241
- controlling the order in which file systems are mounted 181
- conversion
  - mode 52

- conversion of mode
  - AFM 52
- created files (maximum number) 181
- creating a node class
  - transparent cloud tiering 367
- creating GPFS directory
  - /tmp/gpfs1pp on AIX nodes 350
- creating the GPFS administrative account, Windows 363
- creating the GPFS directory
  - /tmp/gpfs1pp on Linux nodes 253

## D

- daemon
  - communication 159
  - description of the GPFS daemon 5
  - memory 15
  - quorum requirement 10
  - starting 162
- DASD for NSDs, preparing 166
- data
  - availability 2
  - consistency of 2
  - guarding against failure of a path to a disk 156
  - maximum replicas 178
  - recoverability 151
  - replication 177, 178
- data blocks
  - logging of 15
  - recovery of 15
- Data Management API (DMAPI)
  - enabling 180
- data protection 98
  - backing up data 97
  - commands 99
  - create and maintain snapshots 98
  - data mirroring 98
  - fileset backup 97
  - restoring a file system from a snapshot 98
  - restoring data 98
- data recovery
  - commands 99
- default data replication 178
- default metadata replication 177
- default quotas
  - description 179
  - files 14
- deleting authentication 213
- deleting ID mapping 213
- deleting old sensors
  - ? 438
- deploying protocols
  - authentication 338
  - existing cluster 337, 338
- deploying protocols on Linux nodes
  - procedure for 308, 313, 314, 316, 322, 444, 451
- deployment considerations 89, 94
- dfcommand (specifying whether it will report numbers based on quotas for the fileset) 180
- diagnosing errors 340
- differences between GPFS and NTFS
  - Windows 356
- direct access storage devices (DASD) for NSDs,
  - preparing 166
- directory, bin 251
- disabling protocols
  - authentication considerations 205

- disabling the Windows firewall 359
- disaster recovery
  - data mirroring 97
  - protocol cluster disaster recovery 97, 98
  - SOBAR 97
  - use of GPFS replication and failure groups 3
- disk descriptor replica 166
- disk usage
  - verifying 180
- disks
  - considerations 162
  - failure 155
  - file system descriptor 12
  - media failure 24
  - mmcrfs command 171
  - recovery 24
  - releasing blocks 24
  - stanza files 164
  - state of 24
  - storage area network 162
  - stripe group 12
- DMAPI
  - coexistence considerations 470
  - considerations for IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Space Management 470
- DMAPI file handle size considerations
  - for IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Space Management 470
- documentation
  - installing man pages on AIX nodes 351
  - installing man pages on Linux nodes 255
- domain
  - Active Directory 358
  - Windows 358

## E

- ECKD devices, preparing environment for 166
- electronic license agreement
  - AIX nodes 350
  - Linux nodes 253
- enabling
  - protocols 269
- enabling file system features 180
- enabling protocols
  - authentication considerations 205
  - existing cluster 339
- environment for ECKD devices, preparing 166
- environment, preparing 251
- ESS
  - adding protocol nodes 340
  - deploying protocols 340
- ESS awareness 325
- estimated node count 178
- events
  - file audit logging 130
- expiring a disconnected RO cache 67
- explanations and examples, installing GPFS and protocols 300, 301
- Express Edition
  - migrating to Standard 463
- Extended attributes (EAs)
  - planning 195
- external Kafka sink 136
- extracting GPFS patches 255
- extracting the IBM Spectrum Scale software 253

- extracting update SUSE Linux Enterprise Server and Red Hat Enterprise Linux RPMs 255
- extraction, packaging overview and 252

## F

- Fail-over scenarios 217
- failback
  - new primary site 86
  - old primary site 85
- failed fresh upgrade
  - upgrade rerun 457
- failover
  - secondary site 85
- failover in AFM 68
- failure
  - disk 155
  - Network Shared Disk server 155
  - node 151, 152, 153, 155
- failure groups 166
  - definition of 2
  - loss of 166
  - preventing loss of data access 155
  - use of 165
- features
  - AFM DR 81
- file audit logging 127, 128, 129, 130, 132, 379, 381, 382, 442, 443
  - attributes 130
  - consumers 128
  - events 130
  - fileset 128
  - install 381
  - installing 379
  - limitations 379
  - message queue 127
  - producers 127
  - records 129
  - requirements 379
- file authentication 206
  - setting up 313
  - toolkit 313
- File client limitations 217
- file name considerations
  - Windows 355
- File serving 216
- file system creation 176
- file system descriptor 166
  - failure groups 165
  - inaccessible 166
  - quorum 165
- file system features
  - enabling 180
- file system level backups 190
- file system manager
  - command processing 24
  - description 10
  - internal log file 177
  - mount of a file system 20
  - NSD creation considerations 164
  - quota management function 11
  - selection of 11
  - token management function 10
  - Windows drive letter 178
- file system name considerations
  - Windows 355



- file systems
  - administrative state of 5, 26
  - AFM node 12
  - authorization 176
  - block size 172
  - creating 167
  - descriptor 12
  - device name 171
  - disk descriptor 171
  - enabling DMAPi 180
  - interacting with a GPFS file system 19
  - internal log file 177
  - last time accessed 175
  - list of disk descriptors 177
  - maximum number of 14
  - maximum number of files 181
  - maximum number of mounted files 14
  - maximum size 14
  - maximum size supported 14
  - metadata 13
  - metadata integrity 12
  - mount options 179
  - mounting 3, 20, 172
  - mountpoint 178
  - number of nodes mounted by 178
  - opening a file 20
  - quotas 179
  - reading a file 21
  - recoverability parameters 177, 178
  - repairing 24
  - sample creation 182
  - shared access among clusters 1
  - simultaneous access 2
  - sizing 167
  - stripe group 12
  - time last modified 175
  - Windows drive letter 178
  - writing to a file 22, 23
- file systems (controlling the order in which they are mounted) 181
- files
  - /etc/filesystems 26, 27
  - /etc/fstab 26, 27
  - /var/mmfs/etc/mmfs.cfg 27
  - /var/mmfs/gen/mmsdrfs 26, 27
  - .toc 351
  - consistency of data 2
  - fileset.quota 14
  - GPFS recovery logs 15
  - group.quota 14
  - inode 14
  - installation on AIX nodes 349
  - maximum number of 14, 181
  - mmfslinux 7
  - structure within GPFS 12
  - user.quota 14
- files that can be created, maximum number of 181
- fileset backups 190
- fileset disabling
  - AFM 75
- fileset to home 52
  - AFM 52
- filesetdf option 180
- filesets 4
- firewall
  - Windows, disabling 359

- firewall recommendations
  - transparent cloud tiering 232
- Force flushing contents before Async Delay 53
- fresh transparent cloud tiering cluster
  - setting up 398
- fresh upgrade failure
  - solution 457
- Functional overview
  - REST API 104

## G

- gateway
  - node failure 61
  - recovery 61
- global namespace
  - AFM 46
- GPFS
  - adding file systems 338
  - adding LTFS nodes 341
  - adding nodes 338, 340, 341
  - adding nodes with toolkit 337
  - adding NSDs 338
  - adding protocol nodes 340
  - adding protocols with toolkit 337
  - administration commands 5
  - AFM Gateway node 12
  - application interaction 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24
  - architecture 9, 10, 12, 15, 17, 19
  - backup data 27
  - basic structure 5, 7
  - CES 38
  - CES node 12
  - cluster configuration data files 26
  - cluster configurations 7
  - cluster creation 158, 159, 160, 161, 162
  - Cluster Export Services 38
  - cluster manager 10
  - considerations for applications 241
  - daemon 5
  - daemon communication 17
  - deploying protocols 308, 313, 314, 316, 322, 323, 337, 444, 446, 451
    - authentication 338
  - diagnosing errors 340
  - disk considerations 164, 165, 166
  - disk storage use 12
  - enabling protocols 339
  - enabling protocols on Linux 269
  - Express Edition 463
  - failure recovery processing 25
  - file consistency 2
  - file structure 12, 14, 15
  - file system creation 167, 171, 172, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182
  - file system manager 10
  - for improved performance 2
  - hardware requirements 149
  - increased data availability 2
  - installing 243, 245, 246, 251, 252, 253, 255, 256, 261, 262, 270, 271, 272, 274, 276, 283, 288, 289, 300, 301, 302, 306, 308, 313, 314, 316, 322, 323, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 349, 350, 351, 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 362, 365, 368, 428, 444, 451
  - installing CES on Linux 268
  - installing on AIX nodes 349, 350, 351
  - installing on Linux 263

## GPFS (continued)

- installing on Linux nodes 245, 246, 251, 252, 253, 255, 256, 270, 271, 272, 274, 276, 283, 288, 300, 301, 302, 306, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 428
- installing on Windows nodes 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 362, 365
- installing packages on Linux 264, 267
- installing protocols on Linux 268
- installing with toolkit 283
- IP address usage 17
- kernel extensions 5
- management functions 10, 12
- memory usage 15, 16
- metanode 12
- migration 401, 404, 468, 469, 470
- multi-region object deployment 35, 225, 227
- network communication 17, 19
- NFS support 30
- NSD disk discovery 25
- object capabilities 36
- object storage support 33, 34, 35, 36
- OS upgrade 471
- pinned memory 16
- planning 143, 149, 150, 151, 155, 157, 158, 167, 183, 185, 186, 187, 189, 190, 192, 193, 203, 205, 206, 211, 213, 214, 215, 216, 221, 222, 223
- planning for transparent cloud tiering 229
- portability layer 7
- product editions 142, 147
- product overview 116
- protocol node 12
- protocols support 28, 30, 32, 33, 38
- quota files 14
- recoverability 151, 152, 153, 155, 157
- recovery logs 15
- S3 API 36
- servicing protocol nodes 473
- simplified administration 4
- simplified storage management 4
- SMB support 32
- software requirements 150
- special management functions 10
- strengths 1, 2, 3, 4
- stretch cluster use case 326
- system flexibility 3
- unified file and object access 34, 224
- uninstalling 391, 392, 397
- upgrade 403, 406, 414, 417, 465
- upgrading 401, 402, 403, 404, 406, 413, 414, 417, 423, 424, 425, 427, 428, 446, 465, 468, 469, 470
- upgrading from 3.5 408
- user interaction 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24

GPFS administration commands 17

GPFS administrative adapter port name 158

GPFS architecture 9

GPFS clusters

- administration adapter port name 158
- configuration data files 5
- configuration file 162
- configuration servers 160
- creating 158
- daemon
  - starting 162
- daemon communication 17
- establishing 243
- introduction 1
- naming 161

## GPFS clusters (continued)

- nodes in the cluster 159, 160, 161, 162
- operating environment 7
- planning nodes 158
- portability layer 261, 262
- recovery logs
  - creation of 15
  - unavailable 24
- server nodes 158
- starting 243
- starting the GPFS daemon 10, 162
- user ID domain 162

GPFS communications adapter port name 158

GPFS daemon communications 17

GPFS for Linux on Z, running 255

GPFS for Windows Multiplatform

- overview 353

GPFS introduction 1

GPFS limitations on Windows 354

GPFS patches, extracting 255

GPFS product structure 142

- capacity based licensing 147

GPFS strengths 1

GPFS, configuring 302

GPFS, installing 288

GPFS, installing over a network 351

GPFS, planning for 149

GPFS, reverting to a previous level 468, 469

GSKit 1

GUI

- overview 100

GUI without root privileges 282

guidelines for maintenance tasks 237

## H

hard limit, quotas 179

hardware requirements 149

Hardware requirements

- transparent cloud tiering 227

highly available write cache

- planning 198

home

- AFM 42

home cluster

- UID/GID requirements 241

How WORM works 122

HPC server (Windows), configuring 365

HSM space managed file system backups 193

## I

IBM Cloud Object Storage migration

- transparent cloud tiering 442

IBM Cloud Object Storage considerations 230

IBM Global Security Kit (GSKit) 1

IBM Spectrum Archive

- adding nodes 341

IBM Spectrum Protect 71

- backup planning 185, 186, 187, 189, 190, 192, 193
- file data storage 186
- fileset backups 192
- identify backup candidates 187
- metadata storage 186
- provisioning 185

IBM Spectrum Protect backup planning 185, 187

- IBM Spectrum Protect for Space Management 71
  - file system backups 193
- IBM Spectrum Scale 27, 89, 90, 91, 97, 98, 99, 127, 128, 129, 130, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 340, 341, 379, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 387, 389, 442, 443
  - 4.1 404
  - 4.2 404
  - 4.2.y 403
  - 5.0.x 403
  - Active File Management 41, 42, 43, 45, 46, 48, 49, 52, 53, 55, 60, 61, 63, 65, 67, 68, 70, 71, 73, 75, 76, 240, 373, 420
  - Active File Management - Disaster Recovery 241
  - Active File Management DR 79, 81, 82, 85, 86, 241, 375
  - adding file systems 338
  - adding nodes 338, 340, 341
  - adding nodes with toolkit 337
  - adding NSDs 338
  - adding protocols with toolkit 337
  - administration commands 5
  - AFM 41, 42, 43, 45, 46, 48, 49, 52, 53, 55, 60, 61, 63, 65, 67, 68, 70, 71, 73, 75, 76, 240, 373, 420
    - .afm 53
    - .pconflicts 53
    - .ptrash 53
    - asynchronous delay 48
    - cache cluster 42
    - cache eviction 63
    - cached and uncached files 48
    - caching modes 42
    - encryption 76
    - expiring a disconnected RO cache 67
    - Failover 68
    - fileset disabling 75
    - fileset to home 52
    - Force flushing contents before Async Delay 53
    - gateway node failure 61
    - gateway recovery 61
    - global namespace 46
    - home 42
    - IBM Spectrum Protect 71
    - Inode limits to set at cache and home 240
    - install 373
    - iw cache maintenance 73
    - NFS backend protocol 43
    - operation with disconnected home 65
    - Parallel data transfers 53
    - partial file caching 55
    - peer snapshot 60
    - planned maintenance 73
    - planning 240
    - prefetch 55
    - primary gateway 45
    - psnap 60
    - resync on SW filesets 70
    - revalidation parameters 46
    - synchronous or asynchronous operations 48
    - UID and GID requirements on the cache and home clusters 240
    - unplanned maintenance 73
    - upgrade 420
    - using mmbbackup 76
    - viewing snapshots at home 68
    - WAN latency 41
    - workerthreads on cache cluster 240
  - AFM communication
    - cache and home 43
  - AFM DR 79, 81, 82, 85, 86, 89, 91, 92, 94, 241, 375

- IBM Spectrum Scale *(continued)*
  - concepts 81
  - failback 85, 86
  - failover 85
  - installing 375
  - introduction 79
  - modes 81
  - planning 241
  - recovery time objective 81
  - role reversal 84
  - RPO snapshots 82
  - secondary cluster 241
  - secondary site 86
  - UID/GID requirements 241
  - worker1threads on primary cluster 241
- AFM inode limits 240
- AFM mode
  - operations 49
- AFM monitoring
  - cache and home 43
- AFM-based Asynchronous Disaster Recovery 81
  - role reversal 84
- application interaction 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24
- architecture 9, 10, 12, 15, 17, 19
- backup data 27
- basic structure 5, 7
- call home 377
- capacity based licensing 147
- CES 38
- CES BLOCK service 40
- CES iSCSI 40
- cluster configuration data files 26
- cluster configurations 7
- cluster creation 158, 159, 160, 161, 162
- Cluster Export Services 38
- cluster manager 10
- configuring and tuning system
  - transparent cloud tiering 230
- considerations for applications 241
- daemon 5
- daemon communication 17
- data protection 98
- deploying protocols 308, 313, 314, 316, 322, 323, 337, 444, 451
  - authentication 338
- diagnosing errors 340
- disk considerations 162, 164, 165, 166
- enabling protocols 339
- enabling protocols on Linux 269
- Express Edition 463
- failure recovery processing 25
- file audit logging 379
- file consistency 2
- file structure 12, 14, 15
- file system creation 167, 171, 172, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182
- for improved performance 2
- GUI 100
- hardware requirements 149
- increased data availability 2
- installation GUI 342
- installation toolkit 297, 298, 317, 318, 319, 325
- installing 243, 245, 246, 251, 252, 253, 255, 256, 261, 262, 270, 271, 272, 274, 276, 283, 288, 289, 300, 301, 302, 306, 308, 313, 314, 316, 322, 323, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 349, 350, 351, 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 362, 365, 368, 428, 444, 451

## IBM Spectrum Scale *(continued)*

- installing call home 377
- installing CES on Linux 268
- installing GUI 276
- installing on AIX nodes 349, 350, 351
- installing on Linux 263
- installing on Linux nodes 245, 246, 251, 252, 253, 255, 256, 270, 271, 272, 274, 276, 283, 288, 300, 301, 302, 306, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 428
- installing on Windows nodes 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 362, 365
- installing packages on Linux 264, 267
- installing protocols on Linux 268
- installing with toolkit 283
- IP address usage 17
- kernel extensions 5
- key features 1
- licensing 142, 147
- management functions 10, 12
- management GUI
  - manual installation 276
  - node classes 398
- manual installation 256, 270, 271, 272, 274, 428
- manual upgrade 427, 428
- memory usage 15, 16
- Migrating 404
- migration 401, 404, 423, 424, 425, 468, 469, 470
- multi-region object deployment 35, 225, 227
- network communication 17, 19
- NFS support 30
- node failure 151, 152, 153, 155
- non-protocol nodes 414
- NSD disk discovery 25
- object capabilities 36
- object storage planning 221, 222, 223
- object storage support 33, 34, 35, 36
- offline upgrade 454
- OpenStack cloud deployment 139
- OS upgrade 471
- pinned memory 16
- planning 143, 149, 150, 151, 155, 157, 158, 162, 167, 183, 185, 186, 187, 189, 190, 192, 193, 203, 205, 206, 211, 213, 214, 215, 216, 221, 222, 223, 233
- planning for transparent cloud tiering 229
- portability layer 7
- prerequisites for call home 377
- product edition 459
- product editions 142, 147
- product overview 116
- product structure 142
- protocol nodes 417
- protocols prerequisites 246
- protocols support 28, 30, 32, 33, 38
- recoverability 151, 152, 153, 155, 157
- S3 API 36
- servicing protocol nodes 473
- shared file system access 1
- simplified administration 4
- simplified storage management 4
- SMB support 32
- software requirements 150
- special management functions 10
- strengths 1, 2, 3, 4
- stretch cluster use case 326
- supported cloud providers 123
- supported NFS clients 215
- supported upgrade paths 402

## IBM Spectrum Scale *(continued)*

- system flexibility 3
- transparent cloud tiering
  - how it works 118
  - overview 116
- unified file and object access 34, 224
- uninstalling 391, 392, 397
- upgrade 403, 406, 465
  - non-protocol nodes 414
  - protocol nodes 417
- upgrade considerations 413
- upgrade process flow 446
- upgrading 401, 402, 403, 404, 406, 423, 424, 425, 426, 427, 428, 446, 458, 465, 468, 469, 470
  - non-protocol nodes 414
  - protocol nodes 417
- Upgrading 403, 414, 417
- upgrading from 3.5 408
- upgrading LTFS nodes 458
- user interaction 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24
- WORM solutions 122

### IBM Spectrum Scale 4.1.1

- Upgrade 406

### IBM Spectrum Scale AFM node 12

### IBM Spectrum Scale CES node 12

### IBM Spectrum Scale Client license 143

### IBM Spectrum Scale disk storage use 12

### IBM Spectrum Scale file system

- migrating SMB data 219

### IBM Spectrum Scale file system manager 10

### IBM Spectrum Scale for object storage

- manual install 271, 272
- multi-region object deployment 35, 225, 227
- object capabilities 36
- S3 API 36
- storage policies 33
- unified file and object access 34, 224
- upgrade to 5.0.x 423
- upgrading 423

### IBM Spectrum Scale FPO license 143

### IBM Spectrum Scale GUI

- upgrading to the latest version 430

### IBM Spectrum Scale information units xi

### IBM Spectrum Scale introduction 1

### IBM Spectrum Scale license designation 143

### IBM Spectrum Scale management API 103

- configuring 371
- fields parameter 106
- filter parameter 109
- Functional overview 104
- installing 371
- paging 111

### IBM Spectrum Scale metanode 12

### IBM Spectrum Scale NFS

- upgrading 425

### IBM Spectrum Scale object storage

- overview 33

### IBM Spectrum Scale overview 1

### IBM Spectrum Scale protocol node 12

### IBM Spectrum Scale protocols

- planning 203, 205, 206, 211, 213, 214, 215, 216, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 227

### IBM Spectrum Scale quota files 14

### IBM Spectrum Scale recovery logs 15

### IBM Spectrum Scale Server license 143

### IBM Spectrum Storage Suite 147

- IBM Tivoli Storage Manager for Space Management
  - DMAPI file handle size considerations 470
- IBM Z, DASD tested with Linux on 166
- IBM Z, running GPFS for Linux on 255
- IDMU (Identity Mapping for Unix (IDMU) / RFC 2307
  - Attributes) 362
- Independent writer
  - AFM mode 49
- independent-writer (IW) 42
- indirect blocks 13, 15
- indirection level 13
- initialization of the GPFS daemon 20
- inode
  - allocation file 14
  - allocation map 14
  - cache 16
  - logging of 15
  - usage 13, 23
- Inode limits to set at cache and home 240
- install
  - manual 381
  - query
    - uninstall 368
- installation cleanup procedures 392
- installation GUI 342
- installation toolkit 314
  - audit logging 317
  - call home configuration 319
  - ESS awareness 325
  - limitations 289, 323
  - mixed operating system support 297
  - populating cluster definition file 323
  - preparing 298
  - product edition change 459
  - stretch cluster 326
  - upgrade flow chart 446
  - upgrade process flow 446
  - upgrading LTFS nodes 458
  - watch folder 318
- installation toolkit(
  - offline upgrade 454
- installing 383
  - AFM-based disaster recovery 375
  - api 371
  - CES 268
  - cloud data sharing 368
  - Cloud services 368
  - clustered watch 387
  - manually 263
  - transparent cloud tiering
    - on GPFS nodes 368
- installing and configuring OpenSSH, Windows 365
- installing Cygwin 359
- installing GPFS 283, 288
  - on Windows nodes 360, 362
  - over a network 351
- installing GPFS (Ubuntu)
  - verifying the GPFS installation 270
- installing GPFS and protocols, examples 300, 301, 308, 316
- installing GPFS on AIX nodes
  - creating the GPFS directory 350
  - directions 351
  - electronic license agreement 350
  - files used during 349
  - man pages 351
  - procedures for 350
  - table of contents file 351

- installing GPFS on AIX nodes (*continued*)
  - verifying the GPFS installation 351
  - what to do before you install GPFS 349
- installing GPFS on Linux nodes
  - building the GPFS portability layer 261
    - using the Autoconfig tool 262
    - using the mmbuildgpl command 262
  - electronic license agreement 253
  - installing the software packages 256, 270, 271, 272, 274, 276, 428
  - man pages 255
  - procedure for 246, 252, 253, 255, 256, 270, 271, 272, 274, 276, 283, 288, 300, 301, 302, 306, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 428
  - verifying the GPFS installation 270
    - what to do before you install GPFS 245
- installing GPFS on Windows nodes 353
- installing GPFS prerequisites 358
- installing IBM Spectrum Scale on Linux nodes
  - creating the GPFS directory 253
  - License Acceptance Process (LAP) Tool 253
- installing packages
  - manually 264
  - NSDs 267
  - with toolkit 283
- installing protocols 246, 252, 283, 322, 342
- installing Tracefmt 359
- installing Tracelog 359
- interoperability of
  - transparent cloud tiering 123
- introduction
  - AFM DR 79
  - file audit logging 127
  - transparent cloud tiering 116
- invariant address adapter
  - requirement 149
- IP address
  - private 17
  - public 17

## J

- joining an Active Directory domain 358
- JSON 137
  - attributes 130
  - events 130
- JSON attributes 137

## K

- Kafka 136
  - external sink 136
- kernel extensions 5
- kernel memory 15

## L

- latest level of file system
  - migrating 180
- License Acceptance Process (LAP) Tool 253
- license designation 143
- limitations
  - clustered watch 387
- Limitations
  - SMB clients limitations 217
  - SMB share limitations 217

- limitations of
  - transparent cloud tiering 123
- Linux
  - building the GPFS portability layer 261
  - using the mmbuildgpl command 262
  - installation instructions for GPFS 245
  - installing GPFS 252
  - kernel requirement 150
  - prerequisite software 251
- Linux on Z, DASD tested with 166
- Linux on Z, running GPFS 255
- load balancing across disks 2
- Local updates
  - AFM mode 49
- local-update (LU) 42

## M

- maintenance
  - iw cache 73
- maintenance levels of GPFS, applying 470
- maintenance tasks
  - planning 237
- man pages
  - installing on AIX nodes 351
  - installing on Linux nodes 255
- management API
  - fields parameter 106
  - filter parameter 109
  - paging 111
- management GUI
  - installing 322
  - node classes 398
  - nodeclasses 276
  - uninstalling 397
- management GUI node classes
  - removing nodes 398
- manual installation 256, 263, 264, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 274, 428
  - object 272
- manual upgrade
  - performance monitoring 427
  - Ubuntu 18.04 428
- maxFilesToCache parameter
  - memory usage 16
- maximum data replicas 178
- maximum metadata replicas 177
- maximum number of files 181
- maximum number of files that can be created 181
- maxStatCache parameter
  - memory usage 16
- memory
  - non-pinned 16
  - pinned 16
  - usage 15
- message queue 136
  - clustered watch 134
  - watch folder 134
- message queue services monitor 136
- metadata 13
  - default 177
  - maximum replicas 177
  - replication 177
- metanode 12
- migrating
  - reverting to the previous level of GPFS 468, 469
- migrating file system format to the latest level 180

- migrating IBM Cloud Object Storage 442
- Migrating SMB data from traditional filer 219
- migrating SMB data from traditional NAS 219
- migrating SMB data to IBM Spectrum Scale 219
- migration
  - GUI user role considerations 470
- mixed Windows and UNIX cluster, configuring 362
- mmbackup command 27, 99
- mmbackupconfig command 99
- mmcesdr command 99
- mmchcluster command 161
- mmchconfig command 16, 17
  - defining a subset of nodes 5, 19
- mmchdisk command 24
- mmcheckquota command 20
- mmchfs command 167, 177, 178
- mmcrcluster command 17, 158, 161, 349
- mmcrfs command 167, 177, 178
- mmcrnsd command 164
- mmdefedquota command 179
- mmdefquotaon command 179
- mmdeinsd command 164
- mmedquota command 179
- mmfsck command 15, 20, 24, 99
- mmimagebackup command 99
- mmimgrestore command 99
- mmlsdisk command 24, 166
- mmlsfs command 15
- mmlsquota command 179
- mmmount command 20
- mmmsgqueue 443
  - command 443
- mmmsgqueue config 443
- mmrepquota command 179
- mmrestoreconfig command 99
- mmrestorefs command 99
- mmstartup command 162
- mmwinservctl command 161
- modes
  - AFM DR 81
- monitoring
  - cache and home 43
- mount options 179
- mount-priority option 181
- mounting a file system 20, 172, 178
- mounting of file systems, controlling the order of the 181
- mountpoint 178
- moving SMB data from a traditional filer 219
- mtime values 175
- multi-node Cloud services
  - set up 369
- multi-node setup for Cloud services 369
- multi-region object deployment
  - authentication planning 225
  - data protection planning 227
  - enabling 345
  - Keystone endpoints 225
  - monitoring planning 227
  - network planning 227
  - overview 35
  - performance considerations 227
  - planning 225, 227
- Multiple Path I/O (MPIO)
  - utilizing 156

## N

- network
  - communication within your cluster 2
- network communication
  - administration commands 19
- network considerations 229
- Network File System (NFS)
  - access control lists 176
  - deny-write open lock 171
- network installing GPFS 351
- Network Shared Disk (NSD)
  - creation of 164
  - disk discovery 25
  - server disk considerations 162
  - server failure 155
  - server node considerations 164
- NFS
  - backend protocol 43
  - upgrade to 5.0.x 425
- NFS planning 214
  - file system considerations 215
  - NFS client considerations 216
- NFS support
  - overview 30
- NFS-supported clients 215
- node quorum 152, 153
  - definition of 152
  - selecting nodes 155
- node quorum with tiebreaker disks
  - definition of 152
  - selecting nodes 155
- nodes
  - acting as special managers 10
  - cluster manager 10
  - descriptor form 159
  - designation as manager or client 159
  - estimating the number of 178
  - failure 151, 152, 153, 155
  - file of nodes in the cluster for installation 349
  - file system manager 10
  - file system manager selection 11
  - in a GPFS cluster 158
  - in the GPFS cluster 159
  - quorum 159
- nofilesetdf option 180
- non-pinned memory 16
- NSD
  - backend protocol 43
- number of files that can be created, maximum 181

## O

- Object
  - upgrade to 5.0.x 423
- object authentication 211
  - setting up 313
  - toolkit 313
- object capabilities 36
- object heatmap data tiering 37
- object installation
  - Ubuntu 16.04 LTS and 18.04 LTS 272
- object storage
  - overview 33
- object storage planning 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 227
  - authentication method 223
  - backup 223

- object storage planning (*continued*)
  - cluster host name 222
  - disaster recovery 223
  - load balancing 222
  - SELinux considerations 223
- object support
  - overview 33
- Open Secure Socket Layer 1
- OpenSSL 1
- operating system
  - calls 20, 21, 22, 23
  - commands 19, 20
- order in which file systems are mounted, controlling the 181
- overview
  - of GPFS for Windows Multiplatform 353
  - transparent cloud tiering 116

## P

- packaging overview and extraction 252
- pagepool parameter
  - affect on performance 22
  - in support of I/O 16
  - memory usage 15
- Parallel data transfers 53
- partial file caching 55
- patches (GPFS), extracting 255
- patches (GPFS), extracting SUSE Linux Enterprise Server and Red Hat Enterprise Linux 255
- PATH environment variable 349
- peer snapshot 60
- performance
  - pagepool parameter 22
  - use of GPFS to improve 2
  - use of pagepool 16
- performance considerations
  - Cloud services 233
  - transparent cloud tiering 233
- performance monitoring tool
  - manual installation 274
- Performance Monitoring tool 314
  - manual installation 428
  - pmswift 428
  - uninstalling 397
- Persistent Reserve
  - reduced recovery time 157
- pinned memory 16
- planned maintenance
  - IW cache 73
- planning
  - highly available write cache 198
  - IBM Spectrum Scale 237
  - NFS 214, 215, 216
  - object storage 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 227
  - SMB 216, 217
    - SMB fail-over scenarios 217
    - SMB upgrades 217
  - systemd 202
  - transparent cloud tiering 227
- Planning
  - extended attributes (EAs) 195
  - Quality of Service for I/O operations (QoS) 194
- planning considerations 149
  - cluster creation 158
  - disks 162
  - file system creation 167
  - hardware requirements 149

- planning considerations (*continued*)
  - IBM Spectrum Scale license designation 143
  - product structure 142, 147
  - recoverability 151
  - software requirements 150
- planning for
  - cloud data sharing 227
  - IBM Spectrum Scale 233
- planning for IBM Spectrum Scale 227
- planning for maintenance activities
  - Cloud services 237
- policies 4
- populating cluster definition file
  - limitations 323
- port forwarding 282
- portability layer
  - building 261
  - using the mmbuildgpl command 262
  - description 7
- pre-installation steps
  - transparent cloud tiering 367
- preparing direct access storage devices (DASD) for NSDs 166
- preparing environment for ECKD devices 166
- preparing the environment 251
- prerequisites
  - for Windows 358
- prerequisites for installing protocols 246, 252
- primary gateway 45
- private IP address 17
- producers
  - clustered watch 134
  - lightweight events 127
- product edition
  - changing 459
- programming specifications
  - AIX prerequisite software 349
  - Linux prerequisite software 251
  - verifying prerequisite software 251, 349
- protocol exports
  - fileset considerations 183
- protocol node configuration 343
  - object protocol 344, 345, 346
- protocol nodes
  - driver updates 473
  - firmware updates 473
  - kernel updates 473
  - servicing 473
  - upgrading 414, 417
- protocols prerequisites 246, 252
- protocols support
  - overview 28
- protocols, deploying 308, 316
- protocols, installing 246, 322, 342
- psnap 60
- PTF support 470
- public IP address 17

## Q

- Quality of Service for I/O operations (QoS)
  - planning 194
- quorum
  - definition of 152
  - during node failure 152, 153
  - enforcement 10
  - file system descriptor 165
  - initialization of GPFS 20

- quorum (*continued*)
  - node 152, 153
  - selecting nodes 155
- quota support
  - Cloud services 239
- quotas
  - default quotas 179
  - description 179
  - files 14
  - in a replicated system 179
  - role of file system manager node 11
  - values reported in a replicated file system 179

## R

- rcp command 161
- Read only
  - AFM mode 49
- read operation
  - buffer available 21
  - buffer not available 21
  - requirements 21
  - token management 22
- read-only (RO) 42
- recommendations for maintenance tasks
  - Cloud services 237
- recoverability
  - disk failure 155
  - disks 24
  - features of GPFS 2, 25
  - file systems 24
  - node failure 152
  - parameters 151
- recovery time
  - reducing with Persistent Reserve 157
- recovery time objective
  - AFM DR 81
- reduced recovery time using Persistent Reserve 157
- Redundant Array of Independent Disks (RAID)
  - preventing loss of data access 155
- reinstall 382
- remote 443
  - cluster 443
  - file systems 132
- remote cluster 443
- remote command environment
  - rcp 161
  - rsh 161
  - scp 161
  - ssh 161
- remotely
  - mounted 132
- remotely mounted 381
  - file system 381
- remotely mounted file systems 132
  - clustered watch 389
- removing GPFS, uninstalling 391
- repairing a file system 24
- replication
  - affect on quotas 179
  - description of 3
  - preventing loss of data access 155
- reporting numbers based on quotas for the fileset 180
- Requests
  - REST API 105
- requirements 381, 383
  - clustered watch 387



- requirements (*continued*)
  - hardware 149, 379
  - OS 379
  - RPM 379
  - software 150
  - system 379
- Responses
  - REST API 109
- REST API 103
  - configuring 371
  - Functional overview 104
  - installing 371
  - Requests 105
  - Responses 109
- resync on SW filesets 70
- revalidation
  - AFM 46
  - parameters 46
- reverting to a previous level 468, 469
- role reversal
  - AFM DR 84
- RPM database
  - query
    - RPM commands 368
- RPM package
  - covert
    - deb package 368
- RPMs (update), extracting SUSE Linux Enterprise Server and Linux 255
- RPO snapshots 82
- rsh command 161
- running GPFS for Linux on Z 255

## S

- S3 API
  - overview 36
- scalegmt user 282
- scp command 161
- secondary cluster
  - NFS setup 241
- secure communication
  - establishing 37
- security
  - shared file system access 1
- security considerations
  - transparent cloud tiering 237
- self-extracting package 252
- servicing protocol nodes 473
- servicing your GPFS system 470
- set up multi-nodes 369
- setting quota limit
  - transparent cloud tiering 239
- setting up a multi-node 369
- shared file system access 1
- shared segments 15
- shell PATH 251
- Single writer
  - AFM mode 49
- single-writer (SW) 42
- sizing file systems 167
- SMB
  - planning 217
  - Ubuntu 18.04 425
  - update to 4.2.3.x 424
  - update to 5.0.x 424, 425
  - upgrade to 5.0.x 425

- SMB (*continued*)
  - upgrading 424, 425
- SMB connections
  - SMB active connections 216
- SMB data migration 219
- SMB data migration using Robocopy 219
- SMB migration prerequisites 219
- SMB planning 216
  - SMB file serving 216
- SMB share limitations 217
- SMB support 32
  - overview 32
- snapshot based backups 189
- snapshots
  - coexistence considerations with DMAPi 470
- SOBAR 98
- soft limit, quotas 179
- softcopy documentation 255, 351
- software requirements 150
- Software requirements
  - transparent cloud tiering 228
- Specifying whether the dfcommand will report numbers based on quotas for the fileset 180
- spectrum scale API 103
- spectrumscale 283
- spectrumscale installation toolkit 283, 337
  - adding file systems 338
  - adding node definitions 302
  - adding nodes 338
  - adding NSD nodes 303
  - adding NSDs 338
  - authentication 313
  - configuration options 302
  - creating file systems 305
  - debugging 340
  - deploying protocols 308, 313, 314, 337
    - debugging 316
    - logging 316
  - deploying protocols authentication 338
  - diagnosing errors 340
  - enabling protocols 339
  - installing GPFS 306
  - installing IBM Spectrum Scale 306, 308, 313, 314, 316
  - installing management GUI 322
  - limitations 288, 289, 323
  - options 288, 289
  - overview 283
  - populating cluster definition file 322, 323
  - preparing 298
  - setting installer node 301
  - upgrade 444, 451
  - upgrade flow chart 446
  - upgrade process flow 446
  - upgrading 444, 451
- ssh command 161
- start replication
  - AFM 76
- starting GPFS 162
- stat cache 16
- stat() system call 16, 23
- stop replication
  - AFM 76
- Storage Area Network (SAN)
  - disk considerations 162
- storage management
  - filesets 4
  - policies 4

- storage management (*continued*)
  - storage pools 4
- storage policies 33
- storage policies for object 33
- storage pools 4
- stretch cluster 326
- strict replication 177
- structure of GPFS 5
- support
  - failover 2
- support and limitation for Windows 354
- supported NFS clients in IBM Spectrum Scale 215
- SUSE Linux Enterprise Server and Linux RPMs (update),
  - extracting 255
- synchronous
  - operations 48
- synchronous or asynchronous operations
  - AFM 48
- system calls
  - open 20
  - read 21
  - stat() 23
  - write 22
- systemd
  - planning 202

## T

- Thanks 425
- tiebreaker disks 153
- token management
  - description 10
  - large clusters 2
  - system calls 20
  - use of 2
- toolkit installation 283, 337
- Tracefmt program, installing 359
- Tracelog program, installing 359
- transparent cloud tiering
  - considerations 237
  - creating a node class 367
  - firewall recommendations 232
  - hardware requirements 227
  - IBM Cloud Object Storage considerations 442
  - installing
    - on GPFS nodes 368
  - interoperability and limitations 123
  - overview 118
  - planning 227, 233
  - security 237
  - software requirements 228
  - tuning and configuring 230
  - upgrade to 1.1.2 432
  - upgrade to 1.1.2.1 432
  - upgrade to 1.1.3 433
  - upgrade to 1.1.4 434, 435
  - upgrade to 1.1.5 436
  - upgrade to 1.1.6 437
  - working mechanism 118
- Transparent Cloud Tiering
  - backup considerations 238
- tuning system for transparent cloud tiering 230

## U

- Ubuntu Linux packages (update), extracting 255
- UID and GID requirements on the cache and home
  - clusters 240
- uncached
  - files 48
- unified file and object access
  - authentication 224
  - authentication planning 224
  - deploying 345
  - enable after 4.2 migration 346
  - enable after upgrade to 4.2 346
  - high-level workflow 345
  - identity management modes 224
  - objectization schedule 224
  - objectizer planning 224
  - overview 34
  - planning 224
  - prerequisites 224
- unified file and object access modes
  - planning 224
- uninstall
  - GPFS permanently 391
  - transparent cloud tiering 398
- UNIX and Windows (mixed) cluster, configuring 362
- UNIX, Identity Mapping for Unix (IDMU) / RFC 2307
  - Attributes 362
- unplanned maintenance
  - IW cache 73
- update
  - GUI user role considerations 470
- update SUSE Linux Enterprise Server and Red hat Enterprise
  - Linux RPMs, extracting 255
- update Ubuntu Linux packages, extracting 255
- upgrade
  - Cloud services 431
- Upgrade 426
  - v4.2.0. to v4.2.1 or later 427
  - v4.2.1. to v5.0.0 426
- upgrade considerations
  - performance monitoring 413
  - protocols 413
- upgrade from 1.1.1 to 1.1.2
  - transparent cloud tiering 432
- upgrade rerun
  - installation toolkit 457
- Upgrades 217
- upgrading 443
  - authentication 443
  - completing the upgrade 465
  - file audit logging 442
  - offline upgrade 402
  - online upgrade 402, 413
  - performance monitoring 413
  - protocols 413
  - supported paths 402
  - toolkit 444, 451
- upgrading from version 3.5 408
- upgrading IBM Spectrum Scale GUI 430
- upgrading operating system 471
- upgrading OS 471
- user-defined node class 367
  - Cloud services 367
- using CES 38
- using mmbbackup 76

## V

- verifying
  - GPFS for AIX installation 351
  - GPFS for Linux installation 270
  - GPFS installation (Ubuntu) 270
  - prerequisite software for AIX nodes 349
  - prerequisite software for Linux nodes 251
- verifying disk usage 180
- viewing snapshots at home 68

## W

- WAN
  - considerations 229
- WAN considerations 229
- watch folder 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 383, 384, 385, 443
  - clustered watch 387
  - installation 385
  - installing 385
  - intro 133
  - introduction 133
  - limitations 384
  - manual 385
  - manual installation 385
  - manually 385
  - manually installing 385
- Windows
  - access control on GPFS file systems 357
  - allowing the GPFS administrative account to run as a service 363
  - antivirus software 356
  - assigning a static IP address 358
  - case sensitivity 356
  - configuring 358
  - configuring a mixed Windows and UNIX cluster 362
  - configuring the GPFS Administration service 364
  - creating the GPFS administrative account 363
  - differences between GPFS and NTFS 356
  - disabling the firewall 359
  - drive letter 178
  - file name considerations 355
  - file system name considerations 355
  - GPFS limitations 354
  - Identity Mapping for Unix (IDMU) / RFC 2307
    - Attributes 362
  - installation procedure 353
  - installing and configuring OpenSSH 365
  - installing Cygwin 359
  - installing GPFS on Windows nodes 360, 362
  - joining an Active Directory domain 358
  - overview 353
  - prerequisites 358
  - static IP address, Windows 358
  - support and limitations 354
- Windows HPC server, configuring 365
- worker1threads on primary cluster 241
- workerthreads on cache cluster 240
- Working of
  - Cloud data sharing 119
- Write Once Read Many solution 122
- write operation
  - buffer available 23
  - buffer not available 23
  - token management 23







Product Number: 5641-DM1  
5641-DM3  
5641-DM5  
5641-DA1  
5641-DA3  
5641-DA5  
5737-F34  
5737-I39  
5737-J34  
5765-DME  
5765-DAE

Printed in USA

SC27-9567-03

